LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
00003703447

THE LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

A

THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GRAMMAR

OF THE

French Tongue;

IN WHICH

THE PRESENT USAGE IS DISPLAYED,

AGREEABLY TO THE DECISIONS OF

THE FRENCH ACADEMY.

By M. DE LEVIZAC.

REVISED AND CORRECTED BY

MR. STEPHEN PASQUIER, M.A.

OF THE UNIVERSITY OF PARIS, AND TEACHER OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE TO THE CHARTER-HOUSE SCHOOL.

SEVENTH AMERICAN EDITION,

WITH THE VOLTARIAN ORTHOGRAPHY, ACCORDING TO THE DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH ACADEMY.

[Stereotyped by A. Chandler.]

NEW-YORK:

W. E. DEAN, PRINTER & PUBLISHER, 32 ANN-STREET.

COLLINS & HANNAY; N. & J. WHITE; J. B. COLLINS; ROE LOCKWOOD; MONSON BANCROFT, AND CHARLES H. BANCROFT, NEW-ORLEANS.

1834.

PC2109
.L7
1834a

Southern District of New-York, ss.

BE IT REMEMBERED, That on the 27th day of January, A. D. 1829, in the fifty-third year of the Independence of the United States of America, W. E. Dean, of the said district, hath deposited in this office the title of a book, the right whereof he claims as proprietor, in the words following, to wit:

" A Theoretical and Practical Grammar of the French Tongue: in which the present usage is displayed, agreeably to the decisions of the French Academy. By M. De Lévizac. Revised and corrected by Mr. Stephen Pasquier, M. A. of the University of Paris, and teacher of the French Language to the Charter-house School. Seventh American Edition, with the Voltarian Orthography, according to the Dictionary of the French Academy."

In conformity to the Act of the Congress of the United States, entitled " An Act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the time therein mentioned;" and also to an act, entitled " An act, supplementary to an act, entitled, an Act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies during the times therein mentioned, and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving, and etching historical and other prints."

FRED. J. BETTS,
Clerk of the Southern District of New-York.

By Transfer.
APR 7 1923

H. W. Burbeck
1835 Nov

PREFACE.

THE distinguished success that has attended the Grammar of M. de Lévizac, which has been adopted by the most celebrated Schools in England, is a sufficient proof that it is one of the most useful that has hitherto appeared: it has, indeed, one advantage, that will always secure it a preference above every other: all the principles it contains, as well as the Orthography of Voltaire, are sanctioned by the authority of the French Academy, and by all the Grammarians of eminence, who for nearly a century have laboured to ascertain and fix the true rules of the French Language. Another advantage, not less valuable, is, that almost all the phrases given as examples or exercises, being drawn from the Dictionary of the Academy, or the most approved French writers, the Student of this Grammar will store his mind with none but pure and correct forms of speech, and will not be liable to contract vicious modes of expression, and imbibe error while aiming at instruction. The proprietors have been particularly careful with respect to the correctness and simplicity of the present Edition, which they have submitted to a strict revision, and which, on a comparison, will be found to surpass preceding Editions, both in the copiousness of its remarks and its general perspicuity.

EXPLANATION

OF THE ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE EXERCISES

m.	stands for masculine.
f.	- feminine.
pl.	- plural.
s. *or* sing.	- singular.
h m.	- *h* mute.
h asp.	- *h* aspirated.
pr.	- preposition.
art.	- article.
pr.-art.	- article contracted.
pron.	- pronoun.
inf-1	- present of the infinitive.
inf-2	- the past.
inf-3	- participle present.
inf-4	- participle past.
ind-1	- present of the indicative.
ind-2	- imperfect.
ind-3	- preterit definite.
ind-4	- preterit indefinite.
ind-5	- preterit anterior.
ind-6	- pluperfect.
ind-7	- future absolute.
ind-8	- future anterior.
cond-1	- present of the conditional.
cond-2	- first conditional past.
cond-3	- second conditional past.
imp.	- imperative.
subj-1	- present of the subjunctive.
subj-2	- imperfect.
subj-3	- preterit.
subj-4	- pluperfect.

* in the exercises denotes that the word under which it is placed, is not expressed in French.

— denotes that the English word (see page 74) is spelt alike in French, or at least the part under which this sign is placed.

= denotes that the French word differs from the English only by its termination, as directed page 75.

Those French words which are followed by the above signs, are to take the form which they point out.

In the *Third part* the * is no longer placed under the word, but after it.

In filling the exercises, the order of the figures placed sometimes in the phrases after the French words, is to be observed.

In the exercises, when several English words are included between a parenthesis, they must be translated by the only words placed under.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE.
The French Alphabet	1
General Observations	2
The Vowels	2
Accentuation and Punctuation	3
Table I. The seventeen Simple Sounds	4
Table II. Coalition of Letters, representing the 17 Simple Sounds	5
Table III. The Diphthongs	6 & 7
Observations upon the two first Tables	8
Of the Y.	9
Exercises on Monosyllables	10
——— Dissyllables	12
——— Words of three Syllables	14
Of Consonants	17
Of Gender	37
A Vocabulary, French and English	46
GRAMMAR.	
Introduction	71
Apostrophe and Elision	73* and fol.

PART I.

OF WORDS CONSIDERED IN THEIR NATURE AND INFLECTIONS.

Chapter I.

Of the Substantive	76
Substantive Common	77
——— Proper	77
Collectives	77
Of Masculine Gender	77
Feminine Gender	77
Of Singular Number	77
Plural Number	78
Of the Formation of the Plural	78
General Rule	78

Chapter II.

Of the Article	80
Elision of the Article	80
Contraction of the Article	81
Cases in which contraction does not take place	82
General Rules on the Article	83
Of the Article in a partitive sense	84

Chapter III.

PAGE.
Of the Adjective 85
Of the Formation of the Feminine of Adjectives . . 86
Exceptions 88
Of the Formation of the Plural of Adjectives . . . 89
——— Degrees of Signification of Adjectives . . . 91
——— Positive 91
——— Comparative of Superiority 91
——— Inferiority 92
——— Equality 92
On MEILLEUR, MOINDRE, and PIRE 93
Of the Superlative 94
Agreement of the Adjective with the Substantive . . 95
Nouns and Adjectives of Number 97

Chapter IV.

Of the Pronoun 100
1. Of the Personal Pronoun 100
Pronouns of the First Person . . . 101
——— Second Person . . . 101
——— Third Person . . . 102
Reflected or Reciprocal Pronouns . . . 105
Of EN and Y. . . . . 106 and 107
2. Possessive Pronouns 108
Of those that always agree with a Noun *expressed* . 108
——— with Nouns *understood* . 109
3. Of Relative Pronouns 111
4. Of Pronouns Absolute 112
5. Of Demonstrative Pronouns 113
6. Of Indefinite Pronouns 114
First Class 114
Second Class 116
Third Class 117
Fourth Class 118

Chapter V.

Of Verbs 118
Characteristics of Verbs 118
The Five Sorts of Verbs 120
Of Conjugations 122
Of the Auxiliary Verb AVOIR 128
The same Verb with a Negative 130
——— interrogatively and affirmatively . . 131
——— interrogatively and negatively . . 132
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb ETRE . . . 134
1. Conjugation in ER 140
2. ——— IR 149
3. ——— OIR 156
4. ——— RE 160
Conjugation of the Pronominal Verbs 166
——— Passive Verbs 174

PAGE.
Conjugation of the Neuter Verbs 175
Of the Impersonal Verbs 176
Conjugation of the impersonal Verb FALLOIR . . . 177
——————————— Y AVOIR . . . 179
Of the Irregular Verbs 180
Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation . . . 180
——————————— Second Conjugation . . . 182
——————————— Third Conjugation . . . 189
——————————— Fourth Conjugation . . . 194
Irregular Verbs of the First Branch of the Fourth Conjugation 194
——————————— Second Branch . . . 200
——————————— Third Branch 201
——————————— Fourth Branch 202
Observations 207
Table of the Primitive Tenses of the Four Regular Conjugations 208
——————————— Irregular and Defective Verbs 208

CHAPTER VI.

Of Prepositions. 211

CHAPTER VII.

Of the Adverb 218

CHAPTER VIII.

Of Conjunctions 223

CHAPTER IX.

Of Interjections 228

PART II.

SYNTAX,

OR WORDS CONSIDERED IN THEIR CONSTRUCTION.

CHAPTER I.

Of the Substantive 229
Of Compound Nouns 229

CHAPTER II.

Of the Article 231
A comparative Table on the Use of the Article . . 232

CHAPTER III.

Of the Adjective. 235
Difference of Construction between the English and French Languages 237

PAGE.
Regimen of the Adjectives 238
Promiscuous Exercises 239

CHAPTER IV.

Of the Pronouns 241
1. Of Personal Pronouns 241
Of the Place of Personal Pronouns . . 241
Of Personal Pronouns used as Subject . . 241
Of Personal Pronouns used as Regimen . . 242
2. Of the Relative Pronouns 246
3. Of Pronouns Absolute 249
4. Of Demonstrative Pronouns 252
5. Of Indefinite Pronouns 254
First Class 254
Second Class 257
Third Class 259
Fourth Class 264

CHAPTER V.

A general Exercise on the Pronouns 266
Of the Verb 268
Agreement of the Verb with the Subject . . 268
Of the Regimen of Verbs 271
—— Nature and Use of Moods and Tenses . . 274
—— Indicative 274
—— Conditional 277
—— Imperative 278
—— Subjunctive 279
—— Infinitive 280
—— Participle 281
—— Participle Present 281
—— Past 283
Agreement of the Participle Past with its Subject . . 283
—— with its Regimen . . 285

CHAPTER VI.

Of the Adverbs 289
Situation of Adverbs 289

CHAPTER VII.

Of the Conjunctions 291
—— Conjunction QUE 291
Government of Conjunctions 293
Conjunctions that are followed by an Infinitive . . 293
—— govern the Indicative . . . 294
—— Subjunctive . . . 295
Promiscuous Exercises 295

PART III.

IDIOMS, OR WORDS CONSIDERED IN THEIR PARTICULAR RULES.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE.
Of the Substantive 300

CHAPTER II.

Of the Article 303
Cases in which the Article is to be used . . . 303
——————————— not used 308

CHAPTER III.

Of the Adjective 312
——————— with the Article 312
The Place of Adjectives 314
Regimen of Adjectives 317
Adjectives of Number 318

CHAPTER IV.

Of Pronouns 320
PRONOUNS PERSONAL 320
On the Pronoun SOI 326
Cases in which the Pronouns ELLE, ELLES, EUX, LUI, LEUR, may apply to things 327
Difficulty respecting the Pronoun explained . . . 330
Repetition of the Personal Pronouns 332
Relation of the Pronouns of the Third Person to a Noun expressed before 335
Explanation of some Difficulties attendant on the POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS 337
RELATIVE PRONOUNS.—Of QUI 341
Of QUE 344
Of LEQUEL and DONT 345
Of QUOI and où . . . . . 346 and 347
ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.—Of QUI, QUE, and QUOI . . 347
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS 349
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.—Of ON 353
Of QUINCONQUE and CHACUN 354
Of PERSONNE, L'UN ET L'AUTRE, & NI L'UN NI L'AUTRE, TOUT, & RIEN 356
Of TOUT 357
Of QUELQUE—QUE and QUEL QUE . . . 358 and 359

CHAPTER V.

Of the VERB.—Agreement of the Verb with its Subject . 360
Of the Collective Partitive 361
Place of the Subject, with regard to the Verb . . 363
Government of Verbs 367
On the Use, proper and accidental, of Moods and Tenses, Indicative 369
Use of the Conditional 376
REMARK on the Use of the Conditional and Future . . 378
Use of the Subjunctive 379

PAGE.
Relations between the Tenses of the Indicative . . 382
——————————— Subjunctive and those of the Indicative 384
Farther Observations upon the Conditional and Subjunctive . 388
Relations between the Tenses of the different Moods . . 389
——— of the Indicative 389
——— to the Conditional, &c. 390
——— of the Present and Future Absolute, &c. . . 391
Principal Relations with the Subjunctive . . . 392
Of the Infinitive 393

CHAPTER VI.

Of Prepositions 395
The Use of the Article with Prepositions . . . 397
Repetition of the Prepositions 398
Government of Prepositions 399

CHAPTER VII.

Of the Adverb—Of the Negative NE 400
Of the Place of the Negatives 401
Of the Use of PAS and POINT 401
When may both PAS and POINT be omitted? . . . 402
When ought both PAS and POINT to be omitted? . . 403
On PLUS and DAVANTAGE 406
On SI, AUSSI, TANT, and AUTANT 408

CHAPTER VIII.

Of Grammatical Construction 409
Of Inversion 413
Of the Ellipsis 414
Of the Pleonasm 415
Of the Syllepsis 416

CHAPTER IX.

Of Grammatical Discordances, Amphibologies and Gallicisms 417
Of Amphibologies 418
Of Gallicisms 419
FREE EXERCISES 423
Phrases on some Difficulties of the French Language . . 433
On the Collective Partitives 433
Of some Verbs which cannot be conjugated with AVOIR . 433
On the Personal Pronouns 434
On Words of Quantity 434
On SOI, LUI, SOI-MEME, and LUI-MEME 435
On the Relative Pronouns 436
On the Demonstrative Pronouns 436
On the Verbs AVOIR employed impersonally . . . 437
Promiscuous Phrases 438
Phrases in which the Article is used 440
——————————— omitted . . . 441
On the Pronoun LE 442
On the Participle Past 443
On the Principal Relations of Moods and Tenses . . 443
On the Negative NE 445
On some Delicacies of the French Language . . . 446

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

GRAMMAR, in general, is the art of *speaking* and *writing* correctly.

To speak—is to convey our thoughts by means of articulated sounds.

To write—is to render those thoughts permanently visible by means of certain Signs, or Characters, called *Letters*, and their number disposed in order constitutes what is called the ALPHABET.

FRENCH ALPHABET.

ROMAN LETTERS.		ITALIC LETTERS.		OLD PRO.	NEW PRO.
A	a	*A*	*a*	*ah*	*ah*
B	b	*B*	*b*	*bay**	*be**
C	c	*C*	*c*	*say*	*ke*
D	d	*D*	*d*	*day*	*de*
E	e	*E*	*e*	*a*	*a*
F	f	*F*	*f*	*eff*	*fe*
G	g	*G*	*g*	*jay*†	*ghe*
H	h	*H*	*h*	*ahsh*	*he*
I	i	*I*	*i*	*e*	*e*
J	j	*J*	*j*	*jee*†	*je*†
K	k	*K*	*k*	*kah*	*ke*
L	l	*L*	*l*	*ell*	*le*
M	m	*M*	*m*	*emm*	*me*
N	n	*N*	*n*	*enn*	*ne*
O	o	*O*	*o*	*o*	*o*
P	p	*P*	*p*	*pay*	*pe*
Q	q	*Q*	*q*	*ku*‡	*ke*
R	r	*R*	*r*	*heir*	*re*
S	s	*S*	*s*	*ess*	*se*
T	t	*T*	*t*	*tay*	*te*
U	u	*U*	*u*	*u*‡	*u*‡
V	v	*V*	*v*	*vay*	*ve*
X	x	*X*	*x*	*eeks*	*kse*
Y	y	*Y*	*y*	*e grec*	*e grec*
Z	z	*Z*	*z*	*zed*	*ze*

* Here both the old pronunciation and the new are expressed by English sounds, and in the new the letter *e* after each consonant is sounded as in the English word *buttery*.

† The two consonants *g* and *j* are sounded in the Alphabet like *s* in *pleasure*, or *z* in *azure*.

‡ See the second note, page 4.

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

The French Alphabet contains, as we see, *twenty-five letters*, which are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

A *vowel* is the simple emission of the *voice* forming an articulate sound by itself.

A *consonant*, on the contrary, cannot be articulated without the assistance of a *vowel*.

The vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*, which sometimes has the sound of *one i*, and sometimes of *two*.

The nineteen remaining letters, *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *h*, *j*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *q*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *v*, *x*, *z*, are consonants.

THE VOWELS.

The French language comprehends more distinct simple sounds than are here represented by the above five vowels; for, according as these are pronounced close or broad, short or long, with the appropriate accentuation, they furnish—*ten simple sounds*.

N.B. Add to these—*three* other *simple sounds*, each represented by the combination of two vowels, and

Lastly—*four nasal simple sounds*, which again, for want of more appropriate signs, are represented by the coalition of *n* or *m* with the above vowels, and they complete the number of

} *seventeen simple sounds.*—See Table I. p. 4.

The vowels are either long or short;

The long vowels require more, the sort vowels less time in pronouncing, thus:

a is long in	pâte	*dough*	and short in	*patte*	*paw*
e ———	tempête	*storm*	———	*trompette*	*trumpet*
i ———	gîte	*abode*	———	*petite*	*little*
o ———	hôte	*host*	———	*hotte*	*wicker basket*
u ———	flûte	*flute*	———	*hutte*	*hut*

Besides the *simple* there are also the *compound* sounds, in which two vowels are distinctly heard by a single emission of the voice ; these are the *diphthongs*. See Table III. p. 6 and 7.

The sound of one or more letters, pronounced with a single emission of the voice, is called a syllable ; one or more syllables make a word.

ACCENTUATION AND PUNCTUATION.

In reading, due attention should be paid to the *accents* and *cedilla*, to the *apostrophe*, *diœresis*, *hyphen*, &c. the two former of which are peculiar to the French language.

There are *three accents*, the

- *acute* (´) never placed but on *e*, as in *bonté*.
- *grave* (`) placed over *a*, *e*, *u*, as in *violà*, *procès*, *où*.
- *circumflex* (^) employed over any long vowel, as *plâtre*, *rêve*, *épître*, *apôtre*, *bûche*.

The *cedilla* is a kind of comma placed under *c*, giving it the sound of *s* before *a*, *o*, *u*, as in *façade*, *façon*, *reçu*.

The *apostrophe* (') marks the suppression of a *vowel* before another *vowel*, or *h* mute, as in *l'église*, *l'oiseau*, *l'homme*, *s'il vient*, for *la église*, *le oiseau*, *le homme*, *si il vient*.

The *diœresis* (¨) is placed over the vowels *e*, *i*, *u*, to intimate that they are to be pronounced distinctly from the vowels by which they are accompanied.

The *hyphen* (-) is particularly used in connecting compound words, as in *Belles-lettres*, *tout-puissant*, *chefs-d'œuvres*, *arc-en-ciel*, &c.

All the other distinctive marks, as the *comma*, *semi-colon*, *colon*, *period*, *interrogation*, *note of admiration* and *exclamation*, *parenthesis*, &c. &c. are the same in the French as in the English language.

TABLE III.

Diphthongs.

Compound Sounds represented by examples.

7	*i*	ia	fiacre	*hackney-coach*
1 or 2	*a*		galimatias	*nonsense*
7	*i*	iai	je défiai	*I challenged*
4	*é*	ié	amitié	*friendship*
		iez	vous riez	*you laugh*
		iai	biais	*bias*
7	*i*	iè	bière	*beer*
5	*è*	ie	ciel	*heaven*
		iai	je purifiais	*I purified*
7	*i*	io	violon	*violin*
8 or 9	*o*	iau	miauler	*to mew*
7	*i*	iu	reliure	*binding*
10	*u*			
7	*i*	ieu	relieur	*bookbinder*
11 or 12	*eu*		mieux	*better*
7	*i*	iou	chiourme	*crew of a galley*
13	*ou*			
7	*i*	ian	viande	*meat*
14	*an*	ien	audience	*audience*
7	*i*	ien	chrétien	*christian*
15	*in*			
7	*i*	ion	passion	*passion*
16	*on*			
8	*o*	oi	bois	*wood*
2	*â*	oï	boîte	*box*
		oie	foie	*liver*
8	*o*	oe	moelle	*marrow*
6	*ê*	oi	voisin	*neighbour*
		eoi	nageoire	*fin*
8	*o*	oin	besoin	*want*
15	*in*			
10	*u*	ua	nuage	*cloud*
1	*a*			
		uai	je remuai	*I moved*
10	*u*	ue	éternuer	*to sneeze*
4	*é*	ué	dénué	*stript*
		uée	nuée	*cloud*

TABLE III.

Diphthongs Continued.

Compound Sounds represented by examples.

10	*u*	ue	menuet	*minuet*
5	*è*	uai	il *suait*	*he perspired*
10	*u*	ui	bu*isson*	*bush*
7	*i*	uie	parapl*uie*	*umbrella*
10	*u*	uo	impét*uo*sité	*impetuosity*
8	*o*			
10	*u*	ueu	l*ueur*	*glimmering*
11	*eu*			
10	*u*	ueu	majest*ueux*	*majestic*
12	*eû*			
10	*u*	uan	n*uance*	*shade*
14	*an*	uen	influence	*influence*
10	*u*	uin	*Juin*	*June*
15	*in*			
10	*u*	uon	t*uons*	*let us kill*
16	*on*			
13	*ou*	oua	r*ouage*	*wheel-work*
1	*a*			
		oue	dénouer	*to untie*
13	*ou*	oué	déjoué	*frustrated*
4	*é*	ouée	fille enjouée	*cheerful girl*
		ouai	je jouai	*I played*
13	*ou*	oue	fouetter	*to whip*
5	*è*	ouai	je dénouais	*I untied*
13	*ou*	oui	combouis	*cart grease*
7	*i*	ouie	l'ouïe	*hearing*
13	*ou*	oueu	boueur	*scavenger*
11	*eu*			
31	*ou*	oueu	noueux	*knotty*
12	*eû*			
13	*ou*	ouan	louange	*praise*
14	*an*	ouen	Rouen	*Rouen, a city*
13	*ou*	ouin	babouin	*baboon*
15	*in*			
13	*ou*	ouon	jouons	*let us play*
16	*on*			

OBSERVATIONS

Upon the two first Tables.

Am, *an*, do not take the nasal sound when *m* or *n* are doubled, as in *constamment*, *année*. *Am* is not nasal at the end of some foreign names, as *Abram*, *Roboam*, &c. ; except *Adam*, which has the nasal sound.

Em and *en* are articulated as in the English words *hem* and *men :*

1. In words taken from foreign languages ; as *Jerusalem*, *item*, *hymen*, *pollen*, *solen*, *amen*, &c. and also in *lemme*, *gemme*, *décemvirat*, *décemvirs*, *étrenner*, *ennemi*, *moyennant*, *penne*, *pennage*, and in the second syllable of the compound word *empenné*.

2. In some persons and tenses of the verbs, *tenir*, *venir*, *prendre*, and their compounds, as *que je vienne*, *que tu soutiennes*, *qu'il comprenne*, &c. in the pronouns feminine, *la mienne*, *la tienne*, *les siennes*, in many other words, as *antienne*, *magicienne*, *Vienne*, *en Autriche*, &c.

3. In many nouns and persons of verbs ending in *ène*, *ème*, as in *arène*, *ébène*, je me *promène*, il *égrène*, il *sème*, where however the *e* is somewhat more open.

But *em* in *femme*, and *en* in *enorgueillir*, *ennoblir*, and *ennui*, must be pronounced as if spelt with *a*, *famme*, *anorgueillir*, *annoblir*, &c. and *len* in the second syllable of so-*len*-nel and derivatives has only the sound of *la*.

Aen has the sound of the French nasal *an* in *Caen*, a town in Normandy.

And *aon* has the same sound in *Laon*, another town in France, in *faon* a fawn, and in *paon* a peacock ; but these letters have the sound of *on* in *taon* an oxfly.

N in the monosyllable *en*, both when a preposition and when a pronoun, in *on*, *mon*, *ton*, *son*, pronouns, and in *bon*, *bien*, and *rien* ceases to be nasal when these words are immediately followed by a vowel or an *h* mute, as *en Italie*, *on en aura*, *mon ami*, *c'est un bon homme*, *on a bien essayé*, *je suis bien-aise qu'il n'ait rien oublié*. But *en* and *on* remain nasal, when placed after the verbs to which they belong ; as *donnez-en à votre sœur. A-t-on essayé ? va-t'-en au logis.*

Im and *in* are not nasal,

1. In the word *intérim*, and in proper names taken from foreign languages, as *Sélim*, *Ephraïm*, *Ibrahim*. However the nasal sound is preserved in *Benjamin*, *Joachim*, *séraphin*, *chérubin*.

2. In the beginning and middle of words, when *m* or *n* is followed by a vowel or an *h* mute, as *inanimé*, *inimaginable*, *unanimité*, &c.

3. Whenever *m* or *n* is doubled, as *immoler*, *immersion*, *innover*, *inné*, *innocent*, though in this latter word only one *n* is sounded.

Un has the sound of *u* close in *une*, *unième*, *unanime*, and of *eun* in *jeune homme*, when followed by a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, as *un homme*, *un esprit*, *aucun ami*, *commun accord*.

Um is pronounced *omm* in some words adopted from the Latin, as *centumvirs*, *album*, *quinquennium*, *ladanum*, *laudanum*, *géranium*.

U after the consonants *q* and *g* is generally silent, as in *quatre*, *guerre*, &c. See those letters, p. 21 and 27.

OF THE Y.

This letter when alone, or when preceded, or followed by a consonant, is pronounced as simple *i*, except in *pays*, *paysan*, *paysage*, and even *abbaye*, which are pronounced *pé-is*, *pé-isan*, *pé-isage*, *abé-ie*. *Y* between two vowels is pronounced *ii*, and when preceded by *a*, it gives to this letter the sound of *ai*, and when by *o* or *u*, it gives to them the sound of the diphthongs *oi* or *ui*. The vowel which follows the *y* is pronounced like one of the diphthongs *ia*, *ie*, &c. for which reason we have deferred speaking of the *y* till after the diphthongs.

Ab-ba-ye	*abbey*	nous é-ga-yons	*we enliven*
a-bo-yer	*to bark*	es-su-yer	*to wipe*
ap-pu-yer	*to support*	mo-yen	*means*
ba-la-yer	*to sweep*	net-to-yer	*to clean*
bé-ga-yer	*to stammer*	je pa-yais	*I was paying*
cra-yon	*pencil*	je ra-ye-rais	*I would erase*
cro-ya-ble	*credible*	ro-yau-me	*kingdom*
é-cu-yer	*esquire*	vo-ya-ge	*voyage*
il ef-fra-ya	*he frightened*	vo-ya-geur	*traveller*

EXERCISES—*On Monosyllables, or words of one syllable.*

Gras	*fat*	il rend	*he returns*
ma	*my*	il sent	*he smells, feels*
ta	*thy*	je vends	*I sell*
sa	*his, her, its*	je	*I*
la	*the, her, it*	me	*me*
las	*tired*	né	*not*
pas	*step*	te	*thee*
un plat	*a dish*	ce	*this, that*
bac	*ferry-boat*	se	*himself, &c.*
sac	*sack, bag*	le	*the, him, it*
arc	*arch, bow*	de	*of*
parc	*park*	lé	*breadth* (of cloth)
bal	*ball*	né	*born*
cap	*cape*	mais	*but*
car	*for*	mes	*my*, pl.
par	*by, through*	tes	*thy*, pl.
part	*share*	ses	*his, her, its*, pl.
art	*art*	les	*the, them*
char	*chariot*	pré	*meadow*
dard	*dart*	près	*near*
lard	*bacon*	prêt	*ready*
tard	*late*	ver	*worm*
quand	*when*	vers	*toward*, or *verse*
rang	*rank*	vert	*green*
blanc	*white*	il perd	*he loses*
sans	*without*	il sert	*he serves*
dans	*in*	cerf	*stag*
gland	*acorn*	serf	*bondman*
pan	*skirt of a coat*	peur	*fear*
cran	*notch*	il meurt	*he dies*
plant	*plantation*	pleurs	*tears*
plan	*plan*	leur	*their*
flanc	*flank*	sel	*salt*
grand	*great*	tel	*such*
en	*in*	quel	*which*
il fend	*he splits*	sec	*dry*
gens	*people*	bec	*beak*
lent	*slow*	chef	*chief*
main	*hand*	bref	*short*
il ment	*he lies*	neuf	*new*, or *nine*
il pend	*he hangs*	Est	*East*
il prend	*he takes*	vingt	*twenty*
ceint	*girt*	crin	*horse-hair*
cinq	*five*	lin	*flax*
sain	*wholesome*	brin	*sprig*
sein	*bosom*	pain	*bread*
saint	*holy*	pin	*pine*
seing	*signature*	vin	*wine*

fi	*fie*	front	*forehead*
fils	*son*	rond	*round*
frit	*fried*	blond	*light (hair)*
lis	*lily*	pont	*bridge*
pris	*taken*	long	*long*
prix	*price*	fond	*bottom*
ris	*laugh*	ils font	*they do*
riz	*rice*	jonc	*rush*
ni	*neither, nor*	non	*no*
nid	*nest*	gond	*hinge*
si	*if*	nom	*name*
il fit	*he did*	plomb	*lead*
mis	*put*	nu	*naked*
plis	*folds*	du	*of the*, sing. m.
fil	*thread*	il dut	*he owed*
vil	*vile*	bru	*daughter-in-law*
vif	*lively*	brut	*rough*
sot	*fool*	il but	*he drank*
tôt	*soon*	cru	*raw*
clos	*shut up*	il crut	*he believed*
nos	*our*	je fus	*I was*
vos	*your*	jus	*juice*
gros	*big*	lu	*read*
trop	*too much*	il lut	*he read*
trot	*trot*	plus	*more*
croc	*hook*	tu	*thou*
or	*gold*	vu	*seen*
bord	*edge*	flux	*flux*
fort	*strong*	glu	*bird lime*
tort	*wrong*	duc	*duke*
je sors	*I go out*	suc	*juice*
sort	*fate*	sur	*upon*
port	*port*	mur	*wall*
il mord	*he bites*	nul	*no, none*
vol	*theft*	bout	*end*
choc	*shock*	joug	*yoke*
roc	*rock*	nous	*we, us*
bloc	*block*	vous	*you*
troc	*exchange*	clou	*nail*
dot	*dowry*	cou	*neck*
on	*one, people, they*	coup	*blow, stroke*
bon	*good*	trou	*hole*
bond	*bound*	mou	*soft*
ton	*thy*	tout	*all*
son	*his, her, its*	toux	*cough*
ils sont	*they are*	pou	*louse*
mon	*my*	cour	*yard*
don	*gift*	il pleut	*it rains*
dont	*of which, &c.*	peu	*little, few*
donc	*therefore*	il veut	*he is willing*

ON DISSYLLABLES,

Or Words of Two Syllables.

A-bus	*abuse*	clé-ment	*clement*
a-chat	*purchase*	cli-mat	*climate*
ac-teur	*actor*	cloi-son	*partition*
â-ge	*age*	co-hue	*throng*
â-me	*soul*	com-mun	*common*
an-neau	*ring*	com-pas	*compasses*
ar-deur	*ardour*	com-te	*earl*
ar-gent	*money*	con-gé	*holiday*
as-tre	*star*	con-te	*tale*
au-cun	*none*	co-quin	*rogue*
a-veu	*confession*	cor-deau	*line*
a-vis	*advice*	cô-té	*side*
au-tre	*other*	cou-ple	*couple*
bal-con	*balcony*	cou-reur	*runner*
ban-que	*bank*	cous-sin	*cushion*
bar-que	*a bark*	cou-vent	*convent*
ba-teau	*boat*	crê-me	*cream*
bâ-ton	*stick*	cri-me	*crime*
beau-té	*beauty*	crot-te	*dirt*
bê-gue	*stammerer*	croû-te	*crust*
bê-te	*beast*	da-me	*lady*
beur-re	*butter*	dan-seur	*dancer*
bi-ble	*bible*	dé-bit	*sale*
blâ-me	*blame*	de-bout	*erect*
bon-heur	*happiness*	de-mi	*half*
bon-té	*goodness*	dé-pôt	*deposit*
bos-quet	*grove*	dé-sert	*wilderness*
bou-quet	*nosegay*	des-sert	*dessert*
bour-geon	*bud*	dis-cours	*speech*
bour-ru	*surly*	dou-leur	*pain*
bras-seur	*brewer*	é-cu	*crown*
bri-gand	*robber*	en-clin	*inclined*
brus-que	*abrupt*	en-fant	*child*
bru-te	*brute*	é-poux	*spouse*
buf-fet	*cupboard*	es-poir	*hope*
bu-reau	*office*	é-tain	*pewter*
bus-te	*bust*	être	*being*
ca-deau	*present*	ex-cès	*excess*
ca-fé	*coffee*	festin	*feast*
ca-hot	*jolt*	fê-te	*festival*
ca-non	*cannon*	fi-lou	*pickpocket*
ca-ve	*cellar*	fla-con	*decanter*
cau-se	*cause*	flam-beau	*flambeau*
cer-cle	*circle*	flû-te	*flute*
ci-seau	*chisel*	fo-rêt	*forest*
ci-seaux	*scissors*	fou-dre	*thunderbolt*

four-mi	*ant*	meu-ble	*furniture*
fri-pon	*knave*	mon-de	*world*
fu-reur	*fury*	mons-tre	*monster*
gaie-té	*cheerfulness*	mou-le	*mould*
gar-çon	*boy*	mou-lin	*mill*
ga-teau	*cake*	ni-gaud	*silly fellow*
ga-zon	*turf*	nou-veau	*new*
gen-dre	*son-in-law*	œu-vre	*work*
gen-re	*gender*	on-guent	*ointment*
gi-got	*leg of mutton*	or-dre	*order*
gla-çon	*piece of ice*	ou-bli	*oblivion*
goû-té	*luncheon*	pa-rent	*relation*
gout-te	*drop*	par-rain	*godfather*
grâ-ce	*favour*	pâ-te	*dough*
gron-deur	*grumbler*	pâ-té	*pie*
gru-au	*oatmeal*	pat-te	*paw*
guè-re	*little*	pê-che	*fishing, peach*
guer-re	*war*	pé-ché	*sin*
gueu-le	*mouth of a beast*	pê-cheur	*fisherman*
gui-de	*guide*	pé-cheur	*sinner*
' hai-ne	*hatred*	pei-ne	*trouble*
' hâle	*sunburning*	pein-tre	*painter*
' hal-le	*market-hall*	pè-re	*father*
' har-pe	*harp*	peu-ple	*people*
' hâ-te	*haste*	peu-reux	*fearful*
' hau-teur	*height*	pin-te	*pint*
' ha-sard	*chance*	plu-me	*feather*
' hê-tre	*beech*	por-trait	*picture*
hom-me	*man*	pour-pre	*purple*
hon-neur	*honour*	prin-ce	*prince*
' hon-te	*shame*	pru-neau	*prune*
hor-reur	*horror*	ra-goût	*ragout*
hô-te	*landlord*	rè-gle	*rule*
hu-main	*human*	rè-gne	*reign*
im-pie	*impious*	rei-ne	*queen*
ju-ge	*judge*	ren-te	*annuity*
jour-née	*day*	rê-ve	*dream*
lai-teux	*milky*	ri-re	*laughing*
la-quais	*footman*	rou-te	*road*
lar-cin	*theft*	ru-se	*trick*
lar-geur	*breadth*	sa-bre	*sabre*
li-queur	*liquor*	sa-lut	*salute*
lo-gis	*dwelling*	sa-tin	*satin*
lon-gueur	*length*	sau-ce	*sauce*
mar-bre	*marble*	sau-teur	*tumbler*
mar-chand	*tradesman*	sé-jour	*residence*
ma-ri	*husband*	si-gnal	*signal*
mè-re	*mother*	si-gne	*sign*

som-bre	*dark*	to-me	*volume*
sou-hait	*wish*	tou-pie	*top*
sou-pe	*soup*	tour-neur	*turner*
sou-ris	*smile*	traî-neau	*sledge*
su-cre	*sugar*	trô-ne	*throne*
sus-pect	*suspicious*	trou-peau	*flock*
ta-che	*spot*	veu-ve	*widow*
tâ-che	*task*	vi-gne	*vine*
tam-bour	*drum*	zè-le	*zeal*
tom-beau	*grave*	zé-le	*zealous*

WORDS OF THREE SYLLABLES.

A-bî-me	*abyss*	bra-vou-re	*valour*
a-bré-gé	*abridgment*	breu-va-ge	*drink*
a-bri-cot	*apricot*	bro-de-rie	*embroidery*
ab-so-lu	*absolute*	brou-et-te	*wheelbarrow*
ab-sur-de	*absurd*	brû-lu-re	*burning*
ac-tri-ce	*actress*	brus-que-ment	*bluntly*
af-fai-re	*business*	ca-do-nas	*padlock*
am-pou-le	*blister*	cam-pa-gne	*country*
ap-pé-tit	*appetite*	ca-rè-me	*tent*
â-pre-té	*asperity*	car-ros-se	*coach*
a-rai-gnée	*spider*	cein-tu-re	*girdle*
ar-moi-re	*cabinet*	ce-pen-dant	*however*
ar-tis-te	*artist*	cham-pi-gnon	*mushroom*
as-si-du	*assiduous*	cha-pe-lier	*hatter*
a-tro-ce	*atrocious*	cha-pel-le	*chapel*
au-ber-ge	*inn*	cha-pi-tre	*chapter*
a-voi-ne	*oats*	char-la-tan	*quack*
aus-tè-re	*austere*	char-ret-te	*cart*
ba-bio-le	*bawble*	châ-ti-ment	*chastisement*
bas-ses-se	*baseness*	chau-de-ment	*warmly*
bâ-ti-ment	*building*	chau-diè-re	*copper*
bê-le-ment	*bleating*	chauf-fa-ge	*fuel*
ber-gè-re	*shepherdess*	chaus-su-re	*shoes, stockings*
bê-ti-se	*stupidity*	ci-viè-re	*hand-barrow*
bien-fai-sant	*benevolent*	cla-ve-cin	*harpsichord*
bien-sé-ant	*becoming*	clo-a-que	*sewer*
bien-ve-nu	*welcome*	co-li-que	*colic*
blan-châ-tre	*whitish*	col-lé-ge	*college*
bles-su-re	*wound*	col-li-ne	*hill*
boi-se-rie	*wainscot*	co-lon-ne	*column*
bor-du-re	*edging*	co-lo-ris	*colouring*
bou-lan-ger	*baker*	co-mé-die	*comedy*
bou-ta-de	*whim*	co-mé-dien	*comedian*
bou-ti-que	*shop*	com-mer-çant	*merchant*
bras-se-rie	*brewhouse*	com-pa-gnie	*company*

com-pa-gnon	*companion*	es-pè-ce	*kind*
con-dui-te	*behaviour*	es-quis-se	*sketch*
con-qué-rant	*conqueror*	es-tra-gon	*stragon*
con-quê-te	*conquest*	é-tei-gnoir	*extinguisher*
cons-tam-ment	*constantly*	é-tour-di	*thoughtless*
con-ti-gu	*contiguous*	é-vê-ché	*bishoprick*
cor-don-nier	*shoemaker*	é-veil-lé	*awake*
co-ri-a-ce	*tough*	ex-ces-sif	*immoderate*
cor-ni-chon	*girkin*	ex-em-ple	*example*
cou-chet-te	*couch*	fa-bu-leux	*fabulous*
cou-ron-ne	*crown*	fa-ça-de	*front*
cou-te-las	*hanger*	fa-ïen-ce	*delft-ware*
cou-te-lier	*cutler*	fa-ri-neux	*mealy*
cou-tu-re	*seam*	fa-rou-che	*fierce*
cra-moi-si	*crimson*	fi-las-se	*flax*
cré-du-le	*credulous*	fleu-ris-te	*florist*
cri-ti-que	*critic*	fai-bles-se	*weakness*
cru-au-té	*cruelty*	fo-lâ-tre	*playful*
cui-si-ne	*kitchen*	fou-droy-ant	*thundering*
cul-bu-te	*tumble*	four-bis-seur	*sword-cutler*
cu-re-dent	*tooth-pick*	four-ru-re	*fur*
dé-com-bres	*rubbish*	fram-boi-se	*raspberry*
dé-goû-tant	*disgusting*	fri-su-re	*curling*
dé-jeû-ner	*breakfast*	frois-su-re	*bruising*
dé-meu-re	*abode*	gi-ro-fle	*cloves*
dés-hon-neur	*dishonour*	go-be-let	*tumbler, goblet*
des-po-te	*despot*	gou-lû-ment	*greedily*
dis-ci-ple	*pupil*	gué-ri-son	*cure*
dis-grâ-ce	*disgrace*	gui-mau-ve	*marsh-mallow*
dro-guis-te	*druggist*	hâ-lei-ne	*breath*
droi-tu-re	*uprightness*	' har-di-ment	*boldly*
é-cha-faud	*scaffold*	' ha-ri-cot	*French bean*
é-chel-le	*ladder*	hor-lo-ge	*clock*
é-che-veau	*skein*	hor-ri-ble	*horrid*
é-cu-me	*froth*	hô-tes-se	*landlady*
em-pe-reur	*emperor*	i-gno-rant	*ignorant*
em-plâ-tre	*plaster*	im-men-se	*immense*
em-plet-te	*purchase*	im-pu-ni	*unpunished*
en-clu-me	*anvil*	in-cen-die	*conflagration*
en-ga-geant	*engaging*	in-con-nu	*unknown*
en-ne-mi	*enemy*	in-gé-nu	*ingenuous*
en-sei-gne	*sign*	in-hu-main	*inhuman*
é-pa-gneul	*spaniel*	in-sec-te	*insect*
é-pi-ce	*spice*	ins-truc-tif	*instructive*
é-pi-cier	*grocer*	i-voi-re	*ivory*
é-pou-se	*wife*	i-vro-gne	*drunkard*
es-ca-lier	*stair-case*	ja-quet-te	*jacket*
es-pa-ce	*space*	jour-na-lier	*journeyman*

lai-tiè-re	*milk-woman*	puis-san-ce	*power*
lan-gou-reux	*languishing*	que-rel-le	*quarrel*
len-til-le	*lentil*	ra-piè-re	*rapier*
li-ma-çon	*snail*	ra-tiè-re	*rat-trap*
ma-ga-sin	*warehouse*	ré-col-te	*crop*
mal-a-droit	*awkward*	ré-ser-vé	*reserved*
ma-nœu-vre	*manœuvre*	res-sour-ce	*resource*
mar-mi-ton	*scullion*	re-trai-te	*retirement*
mas-cu-lin	*masculine*	rê-ve-rie	*meditation*
mé-con-tent	*discontented*	rou-geâ-tre	*reddish*
mé-moi-re	*memory*	rus-ti-que	*rural*
mé-na-ger	*thrifty*	scan-da-leux	*scandalous*
men-son-ge	*falsehood*	scru-pu-leux	*scrupulous*
mé-pri-se	*mistake*	sé-an-ce	*sitting*
mé-tho-de	*method*	ser-ru-re	*lock*
mo-des-tie	*modesty*	sif-fle-ment	*whistling*
mon-ta-gnard	*highlander*	sim-ple-ment	*plainly*
mou-tar-de	*mustard*	so-bri-quet	*nick name*
mur-mu-re	*murmur*	so-len-nel	*solemn*
na-tu-rel	*natural*	son-net-te	*little bell*
nau-fra-ge	*shipwreck*	so-no-re	*sonorous*
né-an-moins	*nevertheless*	sou-cou-pe	*saucer*
no-bles-se	*nobility*	soup-çon-neux	*auspicious*
noi-râ-tre	*blackish*	spec-ta-cle	*sight*
o-bli-geant	*obliging*	splen-di-de	*splendid*
om-bra-ge	*shade*	suc-ces-seur	*successor*
op-pro-bre	*disgrace*	su-prê-me	*supreme*
o-ra-geux	*stormy*	symp-tô-me	*symptom*
or-fè-vre	*goldsmith*	tein-tu-re	*dying*
or-phe-lin	*orphan*	ten-dres-se	*tenderness*
pa-moi-son	*fainting fit*	té-né-breux	*dark*
pan-tou-fle	*slipper*	thé-â-tre	*theatre*
pa-pe-tier	*stationer*	thé-iè-re	*tea-pot*
pa-ra-sol	*umbrella*	toi-let-te	*toilet*
pa-ren-te	*kinswoma*	tour-ne-vis	*screwdriver*
pa-rois-se	*parish*	tou-te-fois	*nevertheless*
pas-sa-ble	*tolerable*	tri-che-rie	*cheat*
pois-sar-de	*fishwoman*	tri-om-phe	*triumph*
poi-tri-ne	*breast*	trom-pet-te	*trumpet*
por-tiè-re	*coach door*	tu-mul-te	*tumult*
pos-tu-re	*posture*	va-can-ces	*holidays*
po-ta-ge	*porridge*	ver-get-te	*brush*
pous-siè-re	*dust*	ver-mis-seau	*small worm*
pré-tex-te	*pretence*	vic-toi-re	*victory*
prin-ces-se	*princess*	vi-gou-reux	*vigorous*
pro-mes-se	*promise*	vil-la-geois	*countryman*
pro-tec-teur	*protector*	voi-tu-re	*carriage*
pué-ril	*childish*	zé-phi-re	*zephyrus*

OF CONSONANTS.

B, *b*, this letter has the same sound as in English.

Bal	*ball*	bo-bi-ne	*bobbin*
Ba-bel	*Babel*	bar-ba-ris-me	*barbarism*
ba-bil	*prating*	bi-bli-o-thè-que	*library*
ba-bouin	*baboon*	bur-les-que	*burlesque*

B is always pronounced in the middle of words, as *ab-di-quer*, *sub-ve-nir*, *ob-vi-er ;* and at the end of proper names, as *Job*, *Caleb*, *Moab ;* also in the words *radoub*, the refitting of a ship, *rumb*, point of the compass ; but it is never sounded in *plomb*, lead.

When double, as in *abbé*, abbot ; *rabbin*, rabbin ; *sabbat*, sabbath ; and their derivatives, only one of these letters is sounded ; however, in *Abbeville* and *abbatial* the sound of the double *b* is distinctly heard.

C, *c*, has the sound of { *k*, or English *c* in *cart*, before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, *n*, *r*, but of
s, or *c* in *cedar*, *cider*, *cymbal*, before *e*, *i*, and *y*.

C sounded as *k*.		*C* sounded as *s*.	
Cal-cul	*calculation*	ce-ci	*this*
ca-co-pho-nie	*cacophony*	cé-ci-té	*blindness*
clé-ri-cal	*clerical*	cé-ta-cée	*cetaceous*
Cra-co-vie	*Cracow*	cer-ceau	*hoop*
co-que-li-cot	*wild-poppy*	Cir-cé	*Circe*
cro-co-di-le	*crocodile*	ci-li-ce	*hair-cloth*
cris-tal	*crystal*	cy-ni-que	*cynic*
cu-cur-bi-te	*cucurbite*	cy-près	*cypress*

C is not sounded in the middle of words before *q*, *ca*, *co*, *cu*, *cl*, *cr*, as *socque*, *acquérir*, *accabler*, *acclimater*, *acclamation*, *accomplir*, *acoutrer*, *accréditer*, *ecclésiastique*, which are pronounced *so-que*, *a-quérir*, *a-cabler*, &c. except, however, in the words *pec-cable*, *pec-cant*,

pec-cadille, *pec-cavi*, *sac-cholatique*, in which the sound of the double *c* is distinctly heard.—It has the sound of *k* before *ce* and *ci*, as in *suc-cès*, *ac-cident*, *vac-cine*, &c. and takes the sound of *s* before *a*, *o*, *u*, when there is a cedilla under it, as in *façade*, *façon*, *reçu*.

C is sounded as *g* hard in *second*, and its derivatives, and by many in *Claude*, and *Reine-Claude*, and even by some, but improperly, in *secret*.

C, at the end of words, is usually pronounced *k*, as in *cognac*, *lac* (a lake), *avec*, *bec*, *pic*, *syndic*, *roc*, *froc*, *estoc*, *duc*, *aquéduc*, *agaric*, *arc*, *zinc*, &c. and in the singular of *échec* ; but it is not sounded in *croc*, *ac-croc*, *arc-boutant*, *banc*, *broc*, *clerc*, *marc d'argent*, *cric*, *estomac*, *flanc*, *jonc*, *lacs* (toils), *tabac*, *tronc*, *échecs*, nor in *donc* before a consonant ; but

It is always sounded in *croc-en-jambe*, *franc étourdi*, *du blanc au noir*, and in both syllables of *mic-mac*, *tric-trac*, *cric-crac*, *ric-à-ric*, and *porc-épic*.

In words ending in *ct*, both consonants are generally sounded, as in *tact*, *contact*, *intact*, *exact*, *inexact*, *abject*, *correct*, *direct*, *infect*, *strict*, *succinct* ; but neither of them in *aspect*, *suspect*, *circonspect*, *amict*, *instinct*, *distinct* ; and only *c* in *respect*, though both letters are always heard in *suspecte*, *circonspecte*, *respecte*, *distincte*, as well as in the middle of other similar words, as *recteur*, *vecteur*, *séducteur*, *rédacteur*, *humecter*, *injecter*, *dactyle*, *ductile*, *tactique*, &c.

Ch has two sounds, { one, which is most general, like *sh* in *she*, *shake* ; the other, which very rarely occurs, is that of *k* in *chimera*.

Examples of *sh*.

Chat	*cat*	ar-chi-tra-ve	*architrave*
che-val	*horse*	chou-et-te	*screech-owl*
cher-cher	*to seek*	chû-te	*fall*
chi-che	*stingy*	chu-cho-ter	*to whisper*
ar-chi-tec-te	*architect*	chy-le, &c. &c.	*chyle*

and in many proper names, as *Achille, Joachim, Chérubin, Zachée,* &c.

Examples of *ch* as *k*.

A-chab	Cham	Za-cha-rie	Cal-chas
A-ché-lo-üs	Cha-na-an	Ma-chi-a-vel	Bac-chus
An-ti-o-chus	Chi-o	Mi-chel-an-ge	Cha-ron
A-chaie	Cho-rè-be	Pul-ché-rie	Ci-vi-ta-Vec-chia
A-na-char-sis	Chos-ro-ès	Ti-cho-Bra-hé	
a-na-cho-rè-te	Chal-da-ï-que	Dyr-ra-chi-um	Zu-rich
ar-chan-ge	Chal-dée	chi-ro-man-cie	é-cho
Ar-chan-gel	cha-os	chœur	scho-lie
ar-ché-ty-pe	ché-li-doi-ne	cho-ris-te	cha-li-bé
ar-chon-tes	Cher-so-né-se	or-ches-tre	chon-dril-le
ar-chi-é-pis-co-pal	chi-li-ar-que	i-cho-reux	chi-ra-gre
chal-cá-doi-ne	chal-co-gra-phie	cho-rè-ge	ar-cha-ïs-me
eu-cha-ris-tie	ca-té-chu-mè-ne	Na-bu-cho-do-no-sor	

Examples of *cht* as *k*.

Yacht, U-trecht, Maes-tricht } are pronounced { Yak, Utrek, Mastrik } without sounding the *t*.

Ch takes the sound of a hard *g* in *drachme*, and is dropped in *almanach ;* and on account of their Italian origin in *vermicelle* and *violoncelle*, *c*, without *h*, takes the sound of the English *sh*.

Ch has uniformly the sound of *k*, in all words where it is followed by a consonant, as *Christ, chrétien, Chloris, chronique, isochrone, chronomètre, Arachné, ichneumon, téchnique*, &c.

D, d, has the same sound as in English.

Dé-da-le	*labyrinth*	Dry-a-de	*Dryad*
do-du	*plump*	dro-ma-dai-re	*dromedary*
din-don	*turkey*	dé-di-ca-toi-re	*dedicatory*

D is always sounded in the middle of words, as *adjectif, adverbe, admirable.*

It is likewise heard at the end of proper names, as in *David, Obed, Gad, Alfred*, &c. and in some other

words, as *Cid*, *Sud*, *Sund*, *Talmud*, *éphod*, *lamed*. At the end of many words before a vowel, or *h* mute, *d* takes the sound of *t*, as, *quand il viendra ; un grand homme ; vend-il ?* &c. however, it is never sounded in *bond*, *gond*, *fond*, *nid*, *nœud*, *nuid*, and *pied ;* except in *de fond-en-comble*, *de pied-en-cap*, *tenir pied-à-boule*, *avoir un pied-a-terre*, where it is sounded as *t*.

D is sounded double in some few words derived from the Latin, as in *ad-dition*, *ad-ducteur*, *red-dition*.

F, *f*, is sounded like the same letter in English.

Example.

Far-fa-det	*hobgoblin*	fé-bri-fu-ge	*febrifuge*
fau-fi-ler	*to baste (in sewing)*	fruc-ti-fi-er	*to fructify*
fet-fa	*edict of the Mufti*	fi-fre	*fifer*
fan-fa-ron	*boaster*	for-fait	*crime*

Final *f* is sounded in all words ending in *if*, which amount to nearly 260, mostly adjectives, and in *raf*, *bref*, *brief*, *chef*, *fief*, *nef*, *nerf*, *grief*, *serf*, *relief*, *méchef*, *Azof*, *lof*, *tof*, *tuf*, *ouf*, *pouf*, *œuf*, *veuf*, *bœuf*, and *neuf*, (new) ; but not in *clef*, *cerf*, *éteuf*, *chef-d'œuvre*, *œuf*, *frais*, nor in the plural of *nerf*, *œuf*, *bœuf*, and *neuf* (new). In *neuf* (nine), when alone, or when it terminates the sentence, *f* is distinctly sounded, but it takes the sound of *v* before a vowel, and is silent before a consonant.

When it is doubled, only one of these letters is sounded : however, in some few words, as *effusion*, *affâdir*, *effraction*, it seems more proper to sound both.

G, *g*, has { before *a*, *o*, *u*, the hard sound of *g* in the English word *go*, and before *e*, *i*, *y*, the soft sound of *s* in *pleasure*.

Examples of *g* hard.

Gan-grê-ne	*gangrene*	gut-tu-ral	*guttural*
Gro-nin-gue	*Groningen*	gom-me	*gum*
gai	*cheerful*	gla-ce	*looking-glass*
go-gue-nard	*joker*	Gor-go-ne	*Gorgon*

Examples of *g* soft.

Geai	*jay*	gé-né-ral	*general*
gé-or-gi-ques	*georgics*	gens	*people*
gen-re	*gender*	gin-gem-bre	*ginger*
gé-mir	*to groan*	gym-ni-que	*gymnastic*

G final has the hard sound in *joug*, and in proper names, as *Agag*, *Doeg*, but it takes the sound of *k* in *rang*, *sang*, and *long* masculine before a vowel ; and also in *bourg*. It is silent in *faubourg*, *Luxembourg*, &c. and in *Bourg-l'abbé*, *Bourg-la-Reine*, &c. ; and likewise in *sang-sue*, *de sang-froid*, *sang-de-dragon*, in *rang*, *sang*, *long*, before a consonant, and always in *doigt*, *legs*, *poing*, *vieux-oing*, *hareng*, *étang*, *seing*, and *vingt*.

Bourg-mestre is pronounced *bourgue-mestre*, and by some persons it is now, and not improperly, written in the latter manner.

Gu forms a distinct syllable in the inflections of the verb *ar-gu-er ;* is strongly sounded in *aiguë*, *suraiguë*, *ciguë*, *ambiguë*, *contiguë*, *exiguë*, and *bésaiguë ;* has a mixed sound with the following *i* in *aiguille*, *aiguillade*, *aiguillonner*, *aiguiser*, and derivatives, and in the proper names, *d'Aiguillon*, *de Guise*, *le Guide*. But the *u* in the inflections of more than forty verbs ending in *guer*, and in many other words, where it stands before *e* and *i*, being intended only to give *g* the hard sound, is entirely silent, as in *bague*, *bègue*, *figue*, *dogue*, *fougue*, *fugue*, *onguent*, *langue*, *longue*, *nargue*, *vergue*, *morgue*, *distingue*, *guê*, *gui*, *guérir*, *guinder*, *guise*, *languir*, *guinguette*, &c.

Gua takes the mixt sound of the diphthong *goua* in some few words, as *lingual*, *paraguante*, *Gaudeloupe*, *Guadalquivir*, *Guatimala*, *Guastalla*.

When *g* is doubled, only one is sounded, except before *e* and *i*, then the first *g* retains the *hard*, and the second adopts the *soft* sound, as in *sug-gérer*, *sug-ges-tion*.

G before *h*, and before several consonants in the middle of words, retains its hard sound, as in *Berghen*, *Enghien*, *église*, *énigme*, *segment*, *amygdales*. Before *l* there are two exceptions, in the words, *imbroglio* and *de Broglio*, where it is sounded liquid, as in *seraglio*, and these words are generally pronounced as if written *imbroille*, *de Broille*.

Gn has two sounds { one hard, as in the English word *ignorant*, and the other liquid, as in the last syllable of *onion*.

Examples of the hard sound.

Gni-de	gna-pha-li-um	ag-na-ti-que	rég-ni-cole
Gno-me	gnos-ti-que	cog-na-ti-que	mag-né-sie
gno-mi-de	ag-nat	ag-nus	stag-nant
gno-mi-que	ag-na-ti-on	ig-née	stag-na-ti-on
gno-mon	cog-nat	ig-ni-cole	di-ag-nos-tique
gno-mo-ni-que	cog-na-ti-on	ig-ni-ti-on	mag-nat

G is silent in *signet*, and *Regnard*, a French writer of comedies, pronounced *sinet*, *Renard*.

H, *h*, when aspirated, is sounded with a strong guttural impulse, and when mute, it has no power but that of showing etymology.

H *aspirated in*		H *is mute in*	
'Hâbler	*to romance*	ha-bit	*coat*
'ha-che	*axe*	her-be	*grass*
'ha-ïr	*to hate*	heu-re	*hour*
'har-pe	*harp*	heu-reux	*happy*
'haut	*high*	hé-ro-ï-ne*	*heroine*
'hé-ros*	*hero*	hé-ro-ï-que*	*heroic*
'hé-ris-son	*hedge-hog*	hé-ro-ïs-me*	*heroism*
'hi-deux	*hideous*	his-toi-re	*history*
'hon-te	*shame*	hi-ver	*winter*
'hur-ler	*to howl*	hor-reur	*horror*
and about 160 more words.		and about 135 other cases.	

All generally noted in my dictionary and others.

* Observe, that *h* is aspirated in *'hêros*, but not in its derivatives.

H is never aspirated in the middle of a word, except when that word is the compound of another beginning with an *h* aspirated, as in *s'aheurter*, *dêhâler*, *déhanché*, *déharnacher*, *enharnacher*, *s'enhardir*, *dehors*.

N. B. Though there is no aspirated *h* before *onze*, *onzième*, and *oui*, we pronounce and write more generally *le onze*, *le onzième*, than *l'onze*, *l'onzième*, and say always *le oui et le non* without elision, and final *s* in *mes*, *tes*, *ses*, *nos*, *vos*, *leurs*, *ces*, and *les*, is never sounded when placed before any of these words, as *tous vos oui et vos non ; sur les onze heures*, and even before *une* in *sur les une heure*.

For what concerns *h* placed after *c* or *g*, see the remarks on those two letters, p. 18 and 22.

H, after *r* or *t*, is always silent, as *rhéteur*, *Rhône*, *rhubarbe*, *thé*, *Thomas*, *thym*.

J, *j*, has constantly the sound of *z* in *azure*, or *s* in *pleasure*.

EXAMPLE.

Jus	*gravy*	jou-jou	*toy*
ja-mais	*never*	ju-ju-be	*jujube*
jo-vi-al	*jovial*	jeu-nes-se	*youth*

K, *k*, has always a hard sound, as in the English word *king*.

This letter can hardly be considered as belonging to the French alphabet, as it is found only in some few words borrowed from foreign languages, as

Kan-gu-rou	*kanguroo*	ki-os-que	*Turkish pavilion*
ker-mès	*cochineal*	ky-ri-el-le	*tedious enumeration*

L, *l*, has two sounds, the { first, is precisely the same as *l* in the English words *lily*, *law*, &c. / second, resembles that of *ill* in *brilliant*.

Example of the First.

La-té-ral	*lateral*	li-las	*lilach*
lé-gis-la-teur	*legislator*	lo-cal	*local*
li-bel-le	*libel*	lu-ni-so-lai-re	*lunisolar*

Example of the Second.

Bail	*lease*	cail-lou-ta-ge	*pebble-work*
som-meil	*sleep*	mer-veil-leux	*wonderful*
œil	*eye*	œil-la-de	*glance*
é-cu-reuil	*squirrel*	Guil-lau-me	*William*
or-gueil*	*pride*	or-gueil-leux*	*proud*
fe-nouil	*fennel*	gri-bouil-let-te	*scramble*
tail-le	*shape*	ga-zouil-le-ment	*warbling*
tail-la	*he did cut*	bar-bouil-lage	*scrawl*
tail-lé	*cut*	cha-mail-lis	*squabble*
tail-lis	*copse*	o-reil-le	*ear*
tail-lons	*let us cut*	pé-ril	*danger*
tail-leur	*tailor*	pé-ril-leux	*dangerous*
tail-lu-re	*kind of embroidery*	oil-le	*olio*
Neuil-ly	*Neul-ly*	im-bro-glio	*intricacy*

As the pronunciation of this letter is attended with some difficulty, observe that the final syllables, *ail*, *eil*, *œil*, *euil*, *ueil*, and *ouil*, are always *liquid*; so are in any situation *aill*, *eill*, *œill*, *euill*, *ueill*, and *ouill*, followed by a vowel, as is seen in the list of examples just given.

* There is a perceptible difference between the vowel sound of the second syllable of *orgueil* and *orgueilleux*: the former is pronounced like *œil*, and the latter like the second syllable of *sommeil*.

L final, preceded simply by *i*, is liquid in some few words, of which the following is nearly a list; *avril*, *babil*, *Brésil*, *cil*, *gril*, *grésil*, *péril*, and *gentil*, when before a vowel, though in some even of these the *l* is occasionally dropped in familiar conversation; in other

words of this termination, the *l* is usually suppressed, as in *fusil*, *outil*, *chenil*, &c. pronounced *fusi*, *outi*, *cheni*.

In *fils* a son, or sons, the *l* is mute ; but in *fil*, *fils*, thread, threads, it is always heard, but is not liquid.

The same remark applies to *poil*, pronounced *poèl*, the hair of an animal, and to *il* the personal pronoun ; in the plural of this latter *ils* the *l* is sometimes rejected and sometimes pronounced, though the first mode is preferable.

Observe that *Milhaut*, *Pardalhac*, and *Sully*, proper names, are pronounced *liquid*, contrary to the established rule, and that the two latter are nearly the only known instances of an *l* or *ll* sounded *liquid*, without being immediately preceded by the vowel *i*.

Ill, in the middle of a word, is generally liquid, there being no exceptions of this rule but those words which begin immediately by *ill*, as *illégal*, *illuminer*, &c. and the following, *distiller*, *instiller*, *osciller*, *scintiller*, *titiller*, *vaciller*, *fritillaire*, *imbécille*, *mille*, *tranquille*, with their derivatives and inflections when verbs, and *ville* with its compounds, as also *Achille*, *campanille*, *codicille*, *fibrille*, *Gille*, *maxillaire*, *pupille*, *la Sibylle*, and *sille*.

In most of these exceptions *ll* are both sounded, as well as in several other words, in which these letters are preceded by other vowels, as *allégorie*, *allusion*, *appellatif*, *appellation*, *belligérant*, *belliqueur*, *collation de bénéfices*, *follicule*, *malléole*, *veliéité*, *collusion*, *constellation*, *constellé*, *ébullition*, *Gallican*, *Gallicisme*, *intellect*, &c. *malléable*, *médullaire*, *palliatif*, *pellicule*, *équipoller*, *hellénisme*, and in proper names, as *Apollon*, *Bellone*, *Dolabella*, *Pallas*, *Sylla*, &c.

M, *m*, corresponds in sound with the same letter in English.

EXAMPLES.

Mar-me-la-de	*marmalade*	mo-mie	*mummy*
mar-mot-te	*marmot*	mo-ment	*moment*
mé-mo-ra-ble	*memorable*	Mus-sul-man	*Mussulman*
mir-mi-don	*myrmidon*	mur-mu-re	*murmur*
mi-mi-que	*mimic*	mys-tè-re	*mystery*

M, though usually sounded in the middle of words before *n*, as in *amnistie*, *calomnie*, *hymne*, *insomnie*, *somnambule*, *automnal*, is yet mute in *damner*, and its derivatives, and in the substantive *automne*.

When double, only one of these letters is usually sounded, except, 1st. in proper names, as, *Em-manuel ;* 2dly, in words beginning with *imm*, as *im-mortel*.

In words in which *em* is followed by *m*, as *emmencher*, it is pronounced like *an*, with the nasal sound.

When this letter is final, see tables first and second (p. 4 and 5), and the accompanying observations (p. 8 and 9), where we necessarily, in part, discussed the nature of this letter.

N, *n*, has the same sound as in English.

EXAMPLES

A-na-nas	*pine-apple*	non-ne	*nun*
Né-nu-far	*Nenuphar*	non-obs-tant	*notwithstanding*
na-ti-o-nal	*national*	Ni-ni-ve	*Nineveh*
no-mi-nal	*nominal*	noc-tur-ne	*nocturnal*
no-na-gé-nai-re	*a man of ninety*	nym-phe	*nymph*

When *n* follows the letter *g*, see *gn* (p. 22).

N is often nasal, see TABLE I. (p. 4), and TABLE II. (p. 5), and our observations (p. 8 and 9).

N takes the sound of *s* in *monsieur*, pronounced *mossieu*.

N after *e* before *t* final in the third person plural of any French verb is constantly silent, and the *e* is mute, as *ils consentent au marché*, *ils aimaient à rire*, *ils lurent un chapitre ;* here the final *t* is only sounded before a vowel.

When *n* is doubled, one only is generally pronounced, except in *an-nexe*, *an-nal*, *an-nuel*, *an-notation*, *an-nuler*, *in-né*, *in-nové*, *in-novation*, and a few other cases.

P, *p*, is sounded as in English.

EXAMPLES.

Pa-pil-lon	*butterfly*	pou-pée	*doll*
pe-pin	*pippin*	po-pu-lai-re	*popular*
pied-plat	*mean fellow*	pour-pre	*purple*
prin-ci-pe	*principle*	pur-pu-rin	*purplish*
pro-pos	*discourse*	py-ra-mi-de	*pyramid*

P followed by *h* has the sound of *f*, as *philosophe*, *phosphore*, *physique*.

P preserves its sound in the middle of a word, as in *adapter*, *adopter*, *capter*, *captieux*, *baptismal*, *aptitude*, *exception*, *exemption*, *inepte*, *contempteur*, *gypse*, *Septembre*, *Septuagêsime*, *corruption*, *rupture*, *apsides*, *rapsodies*, *symptôme*.

But it is not heard in *baptême*, *baptiser*, *baptistaire*. *Baptiste*, *cheptel*, *exempt*, *exempter*, *sculpter*, *sculpteur*, *sculpture*, *je romps*, *il corromp*, *sept*, *septième*, *temps*, et *printemps*, nor in *prompt*, *prompte*, and its derivatives.

Final *p* is always sounded in *Alep*, *cap*, *Gap*, *jalap*, and *julep*, it is also heard in *trop*, *beaucoup*, when before a vowel, but never in *champ*, *camp*, *drap*, *loup*, *sirop*, and *galop*.

In *laps*, *relaps*, and *rapt*, both the final consonants are pronounced, but neither in *ceps de vigne*.

When *p* is doubled, only one is generally sounded; however, in such words as *lippitude*, *hippocentaure*, *hippopotame*, *Hippomène*, *Agrippa*, *Agrippine*, *Philippiques*, and *Hippias*, both are distinctly heard.

Q, *q*, has generally the hard sound of *k* in *king*.

As this letter is constantly followed by the vowel *u*, except in *cinq*, and *coq*, we shall simply remark, that

Qu has three sounds, that of
- *k*, by far the most general before any vowel.
- *kou* before *a* in some particular words.
- *ku* before *e*, or *i* in some others.

Examples of *k*.

Quai	*wharf*	ques-tion	*question*
qua-li té	*quality*	sé-ques-tre	*sequestration*
quel-que	*some*	queue	*tail*
qui-con-que	*whosoever*	a-queux	*watery*
qui-pro-quo	*blunder*	a-qué-duc	*aqueduct*
quo-li-bet	*pun*	é-qui-vo-que	*ambiguity*
quin-qui-na	*Peruvian bark*	se re-quin-quer	*to trick oneself out*
que-nouil le	*distaff*		

&c. &c. &c.

Examples of *kou.*

A-qua-ti-que	*aquatic*	qua-ter-ne	*quaternion*
é-qua-teur	*equator*	qua-dra-gé-nai-re	*a man of forty*
é-qua-ti-on	*equation*		
qua-kre	*quaker*	qua-dra-gé-si-mal	*quadragesimal*
qua-dra-tu-re	*quadrature*		
qua-dri-ge	*ancient chariot with four horses*	a-qua-ti-le	*aquatile*
		a-qua-rel-le	*aquatinta*
		li-qua-ti-on	*liquation*
qua-dru-pé-de	*quadruped*	in-quar-to	*quarto size*
qua-dru-ple	*quadruple*	lo-qua-ci-té	*loquacity*

Examples of *ku.*

E-ques-tre	*equestrian*	é-qui-mul-ti-ple	*equimultiple*
li-que-fac-ti-on	*liquefaction*	é-qui-ta-ti-on	*horsemanship*
ques-teur	*questor*	quin-tu-ple	*quintuple*
ques-tu-re	*questure*	quin-ti-le	*quintile*
quin-quen-nium	*quenquennium*	quin-quen-nal	*quinquennial*
équi-la-tè-re	*of equal dimensions*	quin-dé-cem-virs	*quindecemviri*
		quin-qué-rè-me	*ancient galley*
é-qui-la-té-ral	*equilateral*	quin-quer-ce	*a term of the ancient gymnasium*
é-qui-an-gle	*equiangular*		
é-qui-dis-tant	*equidistant*		

In *quinquagénaire*, a man of fifty, and *quinquagésime*, quinquagesima, the first syllable corresponds with the sound of *qu* in *équestre*, and the second corresponds with the sound of *qu* in *aquatique*. This letter is never doubled.

R, r, is sounded as in English, but much stronger.

EXAMPLES.

Ra-re-té	*scarcity*	rhyth-me	*rhythm*
ras-su-rer	*to hearten*	sour-dre	*to spring*
ra-bou-gri	*stunted*	cour-roux	*wrath*
re-brous-ser	*to turn back*	il-cou-ra	*he will run*
ri-gou-reux	*rigorous*	cor-ro-de-ra	*it will corrode*
rom-pre	*to break*	cor-ro-bo-re-ra	*it will corroborate*
rou-vrir	*to open again*		
ru-gir	*to roar*	ir-ra-di-a-ti-on	*irradiation*
ru-ral	*rural*	ir-ro-ga-ti-on	*irrogation*
rus-tre	*a boor*	tor-ré-fac-ti-on	*torrefaction*

R is always sounded at the end of words after the

vowels, *a*, *i*, *o*, *u*, except in *Monsieur*, pronounced, as we have said, *Mos-sieu*.

Er, in the following adjectives and substantives, constantly rhymes with *air*, which is pronounced alike in both languages.

EXAMPLES.

Cher	*acar*	ou-tre-mer	*ultramarine*
cuil-ler	*spoon*	bel-vé-der	*belvidere*
fer	*iron*	Lu-ci-fer	*Lucifer*
ver	*worm*	Pa-ter	*the Lord's prayer*
mer	*sea*	fra-ter	*ignorant medical practitioner*
fier	*haughty*		
gas-ter	*stomach*	ma-gister	*village school-master*
hi-er	*yesterday*		
hi-ver	*winter*	Stat-hou-der	*Stadtholder*
a-mer	*bitter*	Ju-pi-ter	*Jupiter*
can-cer	*cancer*	Al-ger	*Algiers*
en-fer	*hell*	Gess-ner	*Gessner*
é-ther	*ether*	Ni-ger	*Niger, a river*
a-vant-hier	*the day before yesterday*	Sad-der	*Sadder, a holy book of the Persians*

In all other substantives, ending in *er*, the *r* is silent, and the *e* pronounced *close* and *short* as in *clarté*.

When the following adjectives and a few others precede immediately a substantive which they qualify, if this begins with a vowel, the *r* is pronounced, but in no other case.

***R* sounded**	Le premier acte	*the first act*
	son dernier ouvrage	*his last work*
	un singulier évènement	*a singular event*
	un entier abandon	*an entire cession*
	un léger obstacle	*a slight obstacle*

***R* not sounded**

Il est le *premier* à vous permettre et le *dernier* à vous tenir parole.—*He is the first to promise and the last to keep his word.*

C'est un homme *léger* et inconstant, *entier* en tout ce qu'il veut, et *singulier* en tout ce qu'il fait.—*He is a light versatile character, positive in all he undertakes, and singular in all he does.*

Final *r* in the present of the infinitive of all the verbs of the first conjugation, is always pronounced when im-

mediately followed by a word beginning with a vowel, when the style is dignified, but in conversation this distinction is seldom observed.

Rh. See *h* (p. 23).

When this letter is double, only one is pronounced, except, 1st. in *aberration*, *abhorrer*, *horreur*, *errer*, *torréfier*, and their derivatives; 2dly, in words beginning with *irr*, as *irrévocable*, *irrégulier*, *irruption*, &c.; 3dly, in the future and conditional of the verbs *acquérir*, *courir*, *mourir*, and their derivatives—*j'acquer-rai*, *je mourrais*, *nous cour-ri-ons*, &c.

S, *s*, has two sounds, the { *hard*, as in the English word *sister*. { *soft*, as in *rose* and *please*.

In the following list of words the first *s* has the *hard*, and the second the *soft sound*.

EXAMPLES OF BOTH SOUNDS

Sai-son	*season*	sour-noi-se	*a sullen woman*
sai-sie	*seizure*	sup-po-sez	*suppose*
sé-sa-me	*sesamum*	sé-dui-sant	*alluring*
si-se	*situate*	Su-se	*Susa*
Sou-bi-se	*Soubise*	su-sin	*quarter-deck*
sot-ti-se	*silly action*	Sy-ra-cu-se	*Syracuse*
sous-en-ten-te	*mental reservation*	Syn-thè-se	*Synthesis*

S has uniformly the *hard* sound at the beginning of words, except in *Sbire*, *Svelte*, *Sganarelle* and *Sdili* for *Délos*, where it has the *soft* sound; and in familiar conversation *aller à Sedan; il est le second de sa classe*, are pronounced as if these words were written *azdan*, *le zgon*. Before *ch*, *s* is mute, as in *Schall*, *Schaffhouse*, *Schelling*, *Schis-e*, *Schorl*.

Sh in *shérif*, a sheriff, is sounded as in English.

When *s* is followed by *ce*, *ci*, *cy*, the sound of only one of these consonants is heard, as in scène, science, Scythie, &c. except, however, in *aces-cence*, *convalescence*, *efferves-cence*, *efflores-cence*, *turges-cence*, *incandes-cence*, *réminis-cence*, *résipis-cence*, *mis-cible*, *res*

cinder, sus-ception, sus-citer, sus-citation, vis-cère, vis-céral, trans-cendance, and a few others, where *s* cannot be rescinded without altering the pronunciation. In all other combinations, *sc* takes the sound of *sk*, as *scapulaire, scolie, sclérotique, scribe, esclave, scrupule,* &c.

S preserves the *hard* sound in the middle of a word, when preceded or followed by a consonant, as in *transe, transir, Transylvanie, convulsion, valse, espace, ustensile, statistique,* &c. &c. However it takes the *soft* sound, or that of *z* in *Alsace, Arsace, Asdrubal, asbeste, balsamine, balsamique, bisbille, Israël, Israélite, Esdras, Thisbé, presbitère, transaction, transiger, transitoire, intransitif, transalpin, Lesbos, Isboseth, Brisgaw, Ryswick, Louisbourg, Augsbourg, Presbourg, Philipsbourg,* and some few others.

S takes the soft sound when between two vowels, as in *base, thèse, bise, rose, ruse,* &c. Except in compound words, where it preserves the *hard* sound of the *initial s* of its root ; as in *désuétude, entresol, monosyllabe, polysyllabe, parasol, tournesol, présséance, présupposer, resaisir, resaluer, vraisemblable,* and some derivatives.

St final, see final *t* (p. 33.)

Final *s* is always heard in *as, atlas, argus, bibus, blocus, bolus, agnus, fœtus, calus, sinus, Phébus, les us, virus, en sus, aloès, bis, jadis, iris, gratis, lapis, le lis, la Lys* (a river), *maïs, métis, vis, tournevis, Amadis, Adonis, Paris,* (the shepherd), *pathos, Athos, Lesbos, Minos, Délos, Paros, Brutus, Vénus, Régulus, Protésilas, Blas, Gil Blas, Las Casas,* and many more foreign proper names.

In almost all other cases final *s* is silent when the next word begins with a consonant, as *au moins vous ne pouvez pas dire, que je vous répète toujours les mêmes choses ;* but it generally takes the *soft* sound of *z* before another word, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, as *aurez vous au moins alors assez de patience, pour,* &c.

Though there is no *s*, in *quatre*, yet, before *yeaux* it is, in conversation, pronounced as if ending in that letter.

Finally, *ss* have generally the sound of a single *s* pronounced *hard*, as in *je ressassasse*, *assassinasse*, *Mississippi*, &c.; except in some few words, where both are heard, *assation*, *assonance*, *dissonance*, *accessible*, *inaccessible*, *admissible*, *inadmissible*, *missive*, *scissile*, *scission*, *scissure*, *fissure*, *fissipède*, *assentiment*, *asservir*. Thus there is a difference in pronunciation between these phrases: *C'est un homme à* SENTIMENS; *il aime à* SERVIR *ses amis;* and *il faut son* ASSENTIMENT; *cet ambitieux voudrait* ASSERVIR *l'univers;* and again between *l'alun de plume est* SCISSILE and LA SICILE *est une île triangulaire*, &c. the double *ss* must be distinctly heard.

T, *t*, has two sounds, the { *first*, *hard*, as in the English word *tit*, / *second*, *soft*, like *c* in *cedar* and *civil*.

FIRST SOUND.

Examples of *t hard* before vowels and diphthongs.

Tac-ti-que	*tactics*	ti-are	*tiara*
tes-ta-teur	*testator*	bas-ti-on	*bastion*
thé-â-tre	*theatre*	ques-ti-on	*question*
to-ta-li té	*totality*	mix-ti-on	*mixture*
tour-te-rel-le	*turtle-dove*	com-bus-ti-on	*combustion*
ti-tu-lai-re	*titulary*	bi-jou-tier	*jeweller*
ti-thy-ma-le	*tithymal*	Ma-thi-as	*Mathias*
chré-tien	*christian*	Pon-thieu	*Ponthieu*
dy-nas-tie	*dynasty*	tu sou-tiens	*thou supportest*
le tien	*thine*	&c. &c. &c.	

SECOND SOUND.

T is *soft* before *i*, connected with some other following vowel or vowels, in some particular words, that are given as exceptions to the *first sound* of *t*.

EXAMPLES.

Par-ti-al	*partial*	ac-ti-on	*action*
par-ti-a-li-té	*partiality*	bal-bu-ti-er	*to stammer*
par-ti-el	*partial*	in-i-ti-er	*to initiate*
pa-ti-en-ce	*patience*	bal-bu-ti-a	*he stuttered*
im-pa-ti-en-ce	*impatience*	bal-bu-tie-ment	*stammering*
quo-ti-ent	*quotient*	in-i-ti-é	*initiated*
cap-ti-eux	*captious*	in-i-ti-a-ti-on	*initiation*
ar-gu-tie	*cavil*	Ve-ni-ti-en	*Venetian*
cau-ti-on-ne-ment	*bail*	se pré-cau-ti-on-ner	*to be cautious*

Sti, *xti*, *thi*, preserve invariably the *first sound* of *t* before any letter.

To complete this second list, observe that *t* always takes the sound of *c*.—1st. In all adjectives ending in *-tial*, *-tiel*, *-tient*, *-tieux*, and their derivatives ;—2dly. In all the inflexions of the two verbs quoted, *balbutier*, and *initier ;*—3dly, in several hundred words ending in *tion*, when *tion* is not immediately preceded by an *s*, or an *x* ; and finally, in the following additional list of words, ending in *-tie* and *-tien*, viz. the substantives *calvitie*, *facétie*, *impéritie*, *inertie*, *minutie*, *péripétie*, *primatie*, *prophétie*, *suprématie*, *aristocratie*, *démocratie*, *théocratie ;* in the names of countries, as *Béotie*, *Croatie*, *Dalmatie*, *Galatie ;* and of nations, or persons, as *Béotien*, *Egyptien*, *Capétien*, *Dioclétien*, *Domitien*, *Gratien*, *Le Titien*, and some few others.

T final is always sounded in *apt*, *rapt*, *fat*, *malt*, *mat*, *pat*, *opiat*, *exeat*, *transeat*, *vivat*, *spalt*, *spath*, *Goliath*, *net*, *fret*, *tacet*, *Thibet*, *aconit*, *déficit*, *granit*, *introït*, *prétérit*, *transit*, *subit*, *dot*, *Astaroth*, *azimut*, *brut*, *comput*, *chut*, *bismuth*, *indult*, *luth*, *lut*, *occiput*, *sinciput*, and both *s* and *t* are articulated in *Le Christ*, *l'est* (east), *l'ouest*, *Brest*, *lest*, *test*, *Pest*, *toast*, and *entre le zist et le zest ;* but neither of these letters is heard in *Jésus Christ*, which is pronounced *Jésu Cri*.

T final is likewise generally heard, when the following word begins with a vowel or *h* mute, as *c'est un petit homme*, &c. &c. ; however, there are many words in which it always remains silent, as *mort*, *tort*, *goût*,

court, *bât*, *mât*, *lit*, *respect*, *instinct*, *navet*, *assassinat*, *artichaut*, *défaut*, *debout*, *brulôt*, *statut*, &c. so that a person would almost be regarded with astonishment who should affectedly sound it in these sentences : *L'assaut a été terrible.—Le contrat est signé et le dépôt est chez moi.—Le gigot est cuit et le ragoût aussi.—Avant de pêcher mettez l'appât à la ligne.—J'ai fait un bon marché ; voyez, l'achat est là ;* such a pronunciation would be barbarous and often equivocal.

T is always silent in the conjunction *et*, pronounced *é*, therefore to avoid what is called *hiatus* in French verse, this word is never placed before a vowel.

For words ending in *ct*, see page 18.

When this letter is doubled, only one is heard, except in *atticisme*, *attique*, *Atticus*, *battologie*, *guttural*, and *pittoresque*.

V, *v*, has the same sound in French as in English.

EXAMPLES.

Val-ve	*valve*	vi-vre	*to live*
val-vu-le	*valvule*	vi-vo-ter	*to live poorly*
vau-de-vil-le	*ballad*	vi-re-vol-te	*quick irregular walk*
ver-ve	*poetic fire*	vi-re-veau	*windlass*
vi-va-ce	*vivacious*	veu-ve	*widow*
vis-à-vis	*opposite*	veu-va-ge	*widowhood*

This letter, when doubled, is represented by the character *w*, which is met with in some foreign words, and is always pronounced as a simple *v*, as in *Wigh*, *Wolfram*, *Warwick*, *Windsor*, *Walcourt*, *Wallon*, *Warsovie*, *Westphalie*, *Wirtemberg*, *Wolga*, *Weser*, *Wendover*, *Ryswick*, &c. except in *wist* and *wiski*, where it has the English sound ; but in *Newton*, the first syllable *new* is pronounced as *neu* in *neu*tralité.

X, *x*, has the five different sounds of
- *ks*, in *axe*, *expense*
- *gz*, in *exhibit*, *exhale*
- *k*, in *excellent*, *exsiccative*
- *ss*, in *bliss*, *mossy*
- *z*, in *Xenophon*.

EXAMPLES

Of the first sound, *ks*.

Ax-e	*axis*	A-lex-an-dre	*Alexander*
sex-e	*sex*	Xan-tip-pe	*Xantippe*
ri-xe	*altercation*	ox-y-gè-ne	*oxygen*
box-er	*to box*	pa-ra-do-xe	*paradox*
lu-xe	*luxury*	flu-xi-on	*defluxion*

EXAMPLES

Of the second sound, *gz*.

Xa-vi-er	*Xaverius*	ex-a-men	*examination*
Xé-no-phon	*Xenophon*	ex-au-cer	*to hear favourably*
ex-il	*exile*	ex-haus-ser	*to raise*
ex-or-de	*exordium*	ex-hi-ber	*to produce*
ex-u-bé-ran-ce	*exuberance*	ex-hu-mer	*to disinter*

EXAMPLES

Of the third sound, *k*.

Ex-cé-der	*to exceed*	ex-sic-ca-ti-on	*exsiccation*
ex-cel-ler	*to excel*	ex-suc-ci-on	*exsuction*
ex-cès	*excess*	ex-su-da-ti-on	*exsudation*
ex-cep-ter	*to except*	ex-su-der	*exude*
ex-ci-se	*excise*	ex-ci-per	*to plead an exception*

EXAMPLES

Of the fourth sound, *ss*.

Aix	*Aix*	Soixante	*Sixty*
Aix-la-Chapelle	*Aix-la-Chapelle*	Bruxelles	*Brussels*
Auxerre	*Auxerre*	Luxeuil	*Luxeuil*
Auxonne	*Auxonne*	and some few more.	

EXAMPLES

Of the fifth sound, *z*.

Deuxième	*second*	dix écus	*ten crowns*
sixième	*sixth*	dix hommes	*ten men*
dixième	*tenth*	deux aunes	*two ells*
dix-huit	*eighteen*	beaux yeux	*fine eyes*
dix-neuf	*nineteen*	&c. &c.	

The first sound of this letter *ks* is by far the most general.

The second sound *gz* takes place in all words beginning with *x* or *ex* followed by a vowel, or the letter *h*, as le *Xanthe*, *Xénocrates*, *Ximenès*, *exorable*, and several others with those already mentioned in the second exemplification.

The third sound *k* is limited to words beginning with *exce*, *exci*, and *exs*.

The fourth sound *ss* is only found in the above quotations, and in *six* and *dix* when unaccompanied by substantives, as in de *seize ôtez six*, *reste dix*, where *six* and *dix* are pronounced with the hissing sound of *ss* in the English word *bliss*.

Final *x* is generally pronounced as *z*, when the next word begins with a vowel or *h* mute, otherwise it is silent, as *Il est heureux auprès de vous, et malheureux loin de vous : le flux et reflux de la mer*, &c. except in the following words, where it has always the sound of *ks*. *Ajax*, *Astianax*, *borax*, *storax*, *Halifax*, *Hipponax*, *Dax*, *climax*, *thorax*, *Pertinax*, *Syphax*, *index*, *perplex*, *Béatrix*, *Erix*, *Felix*, *préfix*, *phénix*, *Fox*, *Palafox*, *Coysevox*, *lynx*, *sphinx*, *larynx*, *syrinx*, *onyx*, *Styx*, and *Pollux*.

N. B. *X* takes the sound of *sh* only in *Don Quixote*, generally pronounced *Don Kishot*, or rather *ghishot*.

Z, *z*, is generally pronounced as *z* in *zone*, or *s* in *rose*.

EXAMPLES.

Zi-za-nie	*tare*	zig-zag	*zigzag*
zé-nith	*zenith*	zin-zo-lin	*reddish purple*
zô-ne	*zone*	Zuy-der-zée	*Zuyder-zee*

Except some few words, as *assez*, *chez*, *nez*, *sonnez*, (two sixes), and some proper names, as *Alvarez*, *Suarez*, *Metz*, *Senez*, *Rhodez*, &c. *z final* is the distinctive mark of almost all the second persons plural in the French verbs, where it is generally heard, when followed by a word beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, otherwise it is only sounded in the proper names already mentioned.

Z is doubled in a few words taken from the Italian language, as *lazzi*, (dumb show), *mezzanine*, *mezzo terminé*, *mezzo-tinto*, and in some names of towns, or provinces, as *Arezzo*, *l'Abruzze*, &c.

OF GENDER.

Gender in all languages marks the distinction of sex, and as there are only two of these, the French agreeably to this view have but two genders, the masculine and feminine: the neuter they do not admit.

The masculine gender expresses the male kind, as *un homme*, a man; *un lion*, a lion.

The feminine gender denotes the female kind, as *une femme*, a woman; *une lionne*, a lionness.

The gender of nouns, in inanimate objects, is generally expressed by their termination; thus, final *e* mute is the distinctive mark of the *feminine gender*, every other final letter is the sign of the *masculine*. This would be an excellent rule, were it universal; but this is far from being the case from the number of exceptions, and it is with the intention of affording the learner a tolerable clue on this head, that we have here laid down the following concise rules, which will clear up some of the chief difficulties.

A TABLE OF SUBSTANTIVES

That are Masculine in one signification, and Feminine in another.

Masculine.		*Feminine.*
Assistant, helper	*Aide*	Aid, help, support
eagle ; a great genius	*aigle*	a Roman standard
an angel	*ange*	a kind of thornback
an alder-tree	*aune*	an ell, a sort of measure
barb, a Barbary horse	*barbe*	beard
bard, a poet	*barde*	a slice of bacon ; horse-armour
red-breast	*berce*	cow-parsnip
a sort of privateer	*câpre*	caper, an acid pickle
a scroll, or ornament in painting	*cartouche*	cartouch, cartridge
a caravan, a hoy	*coche*	a notch ; a sow
cornet, a standard-bearer	*cornette*	a woman's head-dress when in dishabille
a couple, a man and wife	*couple*	a brace, a pair, two of a sort
Croat, a Croatian soldier	*cravate*	a cravat, a neckcloth
a crape	*crêpe*	a pancake
an echo, the return of sound	*echo*	Echo, a nymph
ensign, a standard-bearer	*enseigne*	a sign post
example, model, instance	*exemple*	a copy for writing
a gimlet, a piercer	*forêt*	a wood, a forest
a large tun	*foudre*	lightning, thunderbolt
keeper, warden	*garde*	watch ; hilt ; nurse
hoar-frost	*givre*	a snake, or serpent (in heraldry)
the rolls, a register	*greffe*	a graft
gules in heraldry	*gueule*	the mouth of beasts
guide, director	*guide*	rein, for governing a horse
heliotrope, sunflower	*héliotrope*	heliotrope ; jasper
iris, the rainbow ; iris of the eye	*iris*	sprig-crystal ; a proper name
lacker, a kind of varnish	*laque*	lacca, gum-lac
a book	*livre*	a pound
a hat of otter's hair	*loutre*	an otter
handle of a tool	*manche*	a sleeve ; English channel
a labourer	*manœuvre*	the working of a ship
memoir ; a bill	*mémoire*	memory
thanks	*merci*	pity, mercy

N. B. Of this table it is to be remarked, that the French word stands in the middle column, and its signification on the right hand and on the left. When it has the meaning which stands on the left, it is masculine ; when that which stands to the right, it is feminine.

Masculine.		*Feminine.*
mood; mode	*mode*	fashion
a pier, or mound	*môle*	mole, moon-calf
mould, cast, form	*moule*	muscle, a shell-fish
a ship-boy	*mousse*	moss, a plant
the philosopher's stone	*œuvre*	action; an author's works
office, business; prayers	*office*	pantry, larder, buttery
ombre, a game at cards	*ombre*	shade, shadow
page of a prince, &c.	*page*	page in a book
a merry andrew	*paillasse*	a straw-bed
a hand's breadth	*palme*	the branch of a palm tree; victory
pantomime	*pantomime*	a dumb show
easter, easter-day	*pâque*	the passover
a comparison	*parallele*	a parallel line
pendulum	*pendule*	a clock
le Perche, in France	*perche*	pole; perch, a fish
summit, highest pitch	*période*	period, epocha
any body, nobody (*a pronoun*)	*personne*	a person (*a noun*)
spade, at cards	*pique*	a pike
gnatsnapper, a bird	*pivoine*	peony, a flower
a plane-tree	*plane*	plane, an instrument
a stove; a canopy	*poêle*	a frying-pan
post; a military station	*poste*	the post for letters
punto at cards	*ponte*	the laying of eggs
purple colour; purples (a disease)	*pourpre*	purple fish; purple dye
a pretence	*prétexte*	pretexta [ament
quadril at cards	*quadrille*	party of horse in a tour-
the calling back a hawk	*réclame*	a catch-word (in printing)
rest, relaxation	*relâche*	harbour [tance
a glass coach	*remise*	a coach-house; a remit-
a sort of pear-tree	*sans-peau*	a sort of pear
Satyr, a sylvan god	*satyre*	a satire, a lampoon
serpentarius	*serpentaire*	snake-root, dragon's wort
nap, slumber	*somme*	sum; load; name of a fi-
a smile	*souris*	a mouse [ver
a porter	*suisse*	Switzerland
holder, a book-keeper	*teneur*	tenor, purport, content
a tour; turn; trick	*tour*	tower; rock at chess
triumph	*triomphe*	a trump
trumpeter	*trompette*	trumpet
space	*vague*	a wave, surge
a vase, vessel	*vase*	the slime in ponds, lakes, &c.
a hat of vigonia wool	*vigogne*	a vigon, a llama
a veil	*voile*	a sail

SUBSTANTIVES DENOTING SPECIES,

which have a fixed Gender independently of termination.

1 God, his angels, cherubim and seraphim, are of masculine gender.

2 *All* terms seeming to constitute an appellation, and all *proper names* of men and women are of the gender of the sex to which they respectively belong, as are likewise all names of animals, when the male is distinguished from the female by a different denomination; but when the same name is used for both male and female, as *un élĕphant*, *un zèbre*, *une panthère*, *un vautour*, *un cygne*, *une caille*, *une perdrix*, *un barbeau*, *une truite*, *un congre*, its gender must then, like that of any inanimate object, be determined by its termination. Here the only difficulty respects substantives ending in *e* mute, all the rest being of the masculine gender, with such exceptions as will be seen in page 45.

3 All *diminutives of animals*, when there is but one common denomination for both sexes, are of the masculine gender, whatever may be the gender of the original from which they are derived, as *un lionceau*, *un souriceau*, *un perdreau*, *un cornillas*, *un carpillon*, *un couleuvreau*, *un vipĕreau*, *un bécasseau*, &c. except *une bécassine;* but these two latter, although derived from the word *bécasse*, and belonging to the *genus*, are not of the same *species*. In other cases, the diminutives follow the gender their sex indicates, as *un poulain*, *une pouliche*, *un cochet*, *une poulette*.

4 Diminutives of inanimate objects more generally follow the gender of their roots, as *batelet*, *maisonnette*, *globule*, from *bateau*, *maison*, *globe*, &c. however, *corbillon*, *soliveau*, *cruchon*, *savonnette*, *trousseau*, from *corbeille*, *solive*, *cruche*, *savon*, and *trousse*, and many others do not.

5 All the names of the days, months, and seasons of the year, are of the *masculine gender*, except *automne*, which is of both genders; when, however, the diminutive *mi* (half) is prefixed to the name of a month, the compound word then takes the feminine gender, as *la mi-mai*, *la mi-août*, &c. except also *la mi-carême* and saint-days, as *la saint-Jean*, *la Toussaint*, &c.

6 All names
- of *trees*, except *yeuse*, a sort of oak,
- of *shrubs*, with some exceptions,
- of *metals*, without excepting *platine*, formerly feminine.
- of *minerals*, a few excepted,
- of *colours*, without excepting *l'Isabelle*, *le Feuille-morte*, &c. though they have a feminine termination,

} are masculine.

7 All names
- of *mountains*, except those chains which have no singular,
- of *winds*, except *la bise*, *la tramontane*, *la brise*, and *les moussons*,
- of *towns*, except those which necessarily take the article *la* before them, as *la Rochelle*, *la Ferté-sur-Aube*, &c. and some others,

} are masculine.

8 Ordinal, distributive and proportional numbers, adjectives and infinitives of verbs, prepositions and adverbs, all these, when used substantively, are masculine, as *le tiers*, *le quart*, *un cinquième*, *le quadruple*, *le beau*, *le sublime*, *le boire*, *le manger*, *le mieux*, *le pour*, *le contre*, *un parallèle* (a comparison), &c. except *la moitié*, and the elliptical forms of speech, *une courbe*, *une tangente*, *une perpendiculaire*, *une parallèle*, *une antique*, used for *une ligne courbe*, *une ligne tangente*, &c. *Antique* is feminine, for the same reason ; the word *médaille*, or *statue* appearing to be understood.

9 All names of *virtues* are of the feminine gender, except *courage*, *mérite*.

GENDERS OF NOUNS MOSTLY DEPENDING ON THEIR TERMINATION.

10 It will be recollected that final *e* mute constitutes the feminine gender, and every other final letter the masculine.

11 *All names of states*, *empires*, *kingdoms*, and *provinces*, are of the gender which their terminations indicate ; except *le Bengale*, *le Mexique*, *le Péloponèse*, *le Maine*, *le Perche*, *le Rouergue*, *le Bigorre*, *le Vallage*, *la Franche-comté*, and perhaps a few more.

12 The names of fruits, grain, plants, and flowers, follow pretty generally the gender of their terminations, but there are too many exceptions to be introduced here.

TABLE

SHEWING THE GENDER OF ALL WORDS THAT DO NOT END IN *e* MUTE.

Masculine.			*Feminine.*	
0	o	-tié	amitié, inimitié, moitié, pitié	4
11	Aparté, arrété, bénédicité, comté, côté, été, páté, traité, té, thé, Léthé	-té	absurdité, beauté, charité, cité, dignité, fidélité, générosité, &c. &c.	500
40	alibi, biribi, lundi, gui, grand merci, &c.	-i	Fourmi, merci, gagui, après-midi	4
15	convoi, effroi, &c.	-oi	foi, loi, paroi	3
30	ergo, vertigo, indigo, &c.	-o	albugo, virago	2
10	fichu, cru, écu, tissu, &c.	-u	bru, glu, tribu, vertu	4
200	aloyau, anneau, &c. &c.	-au	eau, peau, surpeau, sans-peau	4
6	bref, chalef, chef, fief, grief, relief	-ef	clef, nef, soif	3
3	daim, essaim, abatfaim	-aim	faim, male-faim	2
100	an, ban, cran, écran, pan, &c.	-an	maman	1
200	bain, baise-main, avant-main, garde-main, tourne-main, essuie-main, gain, frein, basin, &c.	-in	fin, main, nonnain	6
4	scion, bastion, bestion, Ixion	-cion -sion -tion -gion -nion -xion	succion, cession, friction, gestion, région, opinion, réflexion, fluxion, &c. &c. &c.	1100
30	gabion, taudion, million, lion, ardélion, fourmilion, trémion, capion, turion, camion, lampion, septentrion, brimborion, gavion, &c.	-bion -dion -lion -mion -pion -rion -vion	rébellion, dent-delion, alluvion	3

	Masculine.			*Feminine.*	
8	alcyon, clayon, crayon, rayon, sayon, trayon, lamproyon, Amphictyons	-yon			0
1	brise-raison	-aison		cargaison, &c. &c.	30
11	peson, bison, grison, groison, horizon, tison, oison, poison, contre-poison, buson	-eson -ison -uson		garnison, guérison, prison, trahison, cloison, foison, moison, pamoison, toison, camuson	11
15	basson, caisson, cavesson, taisson, poisson, cosson, buisson, frisson, hérisson, maudisson, nourrisson, palisson, polisson, unisson, saucisson	-sson		paisson, boisson, moisson, cuisson, salisson, mousson	6
4	arcanson, échanson, tenson, pinson	-nson		chanson	1
20	charançon, caveçon pinçon, suçon, &c.	-çon		façon, contrefaçon, malfaçon, leçon, rançon	5
30	bridon, guéridon, &c.	-don		dondon	1
150	tendron, jeune tendron, baron, &c.	-lon -ron		laideron, souillon, tatillon	3
70	abattis, appentis, iris, tourne-vis, &c.	-is		brebis, souris, chauve-souris, vis, iris	5
15	bois, mois, carquois, harnois, &c.	-ois		fois	1
12	adent, chiendent, liondent, claquedent, cure-dent, occident, trident, &c.	-dent -gent		dent, surdent, gent	3
700	acharnement, assortiment, &c.	-ment		jument	1
250	ballet, billet, bosquet, minuit, conduit, reduit, &c. billot, brulot, complot, &c. bout, goût, ragoût, &c.	-et -uit -ot -out		forêt, nuit, dot, glout	4

	Masculine.		*Feminine.*	
15	faix, choix, crucifix, prix, &c. taux, houx, courroux, époux, &c.	-ix -aux -oux	paix, croix, noix, poix, voix, perdrix, chaux, faux, toux	9
20	art, départ, champart, rempart, effort, port, fort, tort, &c.	-art -ort	hart, part, mort, malemort	4
40	fer, ver, hiver, &c. air, éclair, &c. tour, contour, four, &c.	-er -air -our	cuiller, mer, chair, cour, tour	5
900	bonheur, malheur, labeur, honneur, déshonneur, cœur, anticœur, crève-cœur, chœur, choufleur, pleurs, équateur, secteur, &c. &c. &c.	-eur	aigreur, ampleur, ardeur, blancheur, candeur, chaleur, chandeleur, clameur, couleur, douceur, douleur, épaisseur, erreur, fadeur, défaveur, ferveur, fleur.	76

passe-fleur, sans-fleur, fraîcheur, frayeur, froideur, fureur, grandeur, grosseur, hauteur, horreur, humeur, laideur, langueur, largeur, lenteur, liqueur, longueur, lourdeur, lueur, maigreur, moiteur, noirceur, odeur, pâleur, pésanteur, peur, primeur, profondeur, puanteur, pudeur, impudeur, rigueur, roideur, rondeur, rougeur, rousseur, rumeur, saveur, senteur, sœur, souleur, splendeur, sueur, teneur, terreur, tiédeur, torpeur, touffeur, tumeur, valeur, non-valeur, vapeur, verdeur, vigueur, and mœurs; *besides* basseur, rancœur, trémeur, *three words now obsolete, making in the whole the number of seventy-six.*

There are a great many proper names of females, which, though they may not have the feminine termination, are of that gender, as the learner, from their nature, will easily comprehend, such are, among the heathens, *Pallas, Cérès, Thétis, Vénus, Junon, Didon,* &c.; among christian names, *Sarah, Deborah, Elizabeth, Agnès,* &c. and many of these are contractions, as *Fanchon* for *Fanny, Lison, Louison, Marion, Manon, Nanon, Jeanneton, Madelon, Tonton, Cataut, Margot, Goton, Babet, Babeau, Isabeau,* &c. [*See Article* 2. p. 40.]

As this list of exceptions will be found pretty accurate, all other nouns, that belong to this termination, must be strictly considered as being of the masculine gender, since they are not enumerated in this Table.

A

VOCABULARY

FRENCH AND ENGLISH.

*** In the following Vocabulary, the Gender has been affixed only to those Nouns that are not comprised in the preceding Rules.

Of the Universe in General.

Dieu	*God*	soleil	*sun*
créateur	*creator*	rayon du soleil	*sun-beam*
Jésus-Christ	*Jesus Christ*	lune	*moon*
trinité	*trinity*	éclipse	*eclipse*
Saint-Esprit	*Holy Ghost*	orage, *m.*	*storm*
ange	*angel*	tonnerre, *m*	*thunder*
archange	*archangel*	éclair	*lightning*
prophète	*prophet*	brouillard	*fog*
messie	*messiah*	pluie	*rain*
sauveur	*saviour*	arc-en-ciel	*rain-bow*
rédempteur	*redeemer*	ondée	*shower*
Vierge-Marie	*Virgin Mary*	neige	*snow*
apôtre	*apostle*	grêle	*hail*
évangéliste	*evangelist*	glace	*ice*
martyr	*martyr*	gelée	*frost*
saint	*saint*	dégel	*thaw*
paradis	*paradise*	rosée	*dew*
ciel	*heaven*	créature	*creature*
enfer	*hell*	globe, *m.*	*globe*
diable	*devil*	sphère	*sphere*
nature	*nature*	hémisphère, *m.*	*hemisphere*
univers	*universe*	horizon	*horizon*
monde, *m.*	*world*	degré	*degree*
élément	*element*	longitude	*longitude*
terre	*earth*	latitude	*latitude*
eau	*water*	points cardinaux, *pl.*	*cardinal points*
feu	*fire*		
air	*air*	orient, *or* est	*east*
firmament	*sky*	occident, *or* ouest	*west*
étoile	*star*		
planète	*planet*	septentrion, *or* nord	*north*
comète	*comet*		
constellation	*constellation*	midi, *or* sud	*south*

climat	*climate*	récif*	*reef of rocks*
région	*region*	brisans*	*breakers, surf*
continent	*continent*		
Europe	*Europe*	cime	*top*
Asie	*Asia*	pierre	*stone*
Afrique	*Africa*	pont	*bridge*
Amérique	*America*	chaussée	*causeway*
empire, *m.*	*empire*	gué	*ford*
royaume, *m.*	*kingdom*	quai	*warf*, or *quay*
république	*republic*	route	*road*
pays	*country*	sentier	*path*
colonie	*colony*	fossé	*ditch*
principauté	*principality*	gravier	*gravel*
électorat	*electorate*	sable, *m.*	*sand*
province	*province*	sablon	*small sand*
comté	*shire* or *county*	poussière	*dust*
île	*island*	océan	*ocean*
presqu'île	*peninsula*	mer	*sea*
péninsule		golfe, *m.*	*gulf*
chersonèse		baie	*bay*
cap	*cape*	rade	*road (for ships)*
promontoire, *m.*	*promontory*	anse	*creek*
isthme, *m.*	*isthmus*	canal	*channel*
montagne	*mountain*	détroit	*strait*
mont	*mount*	courant	*current*
colline	*hill*	marée	*tide*
sommet	*summit*	flux	*flowing*
pente, *or* penchant	*declivity*	reflux	*ebbing*
		vague	*wave*
hauteur	*eminence*	flots, *pl. or*	*billows*
vallée	*valley*	ondes, *pl.*	*waves*
vallon	*vale*	hâvre, *m.*	*haven*
abîme, *m.*	*abyss*	port	*harbour*
désert	*desert*	lac	*lake*
plaine	*plain*	rivière	*river*
marais	*marsh*, or *fen*	fleuve, *m.*	*great river*
rive	*bank (of a river)*	embouchure	*mouth of a river*
rivage, *m.*	*shore*	ruisseau	*brook*
côte	*coast*	débordement	*overflow*
rocher*	*rock*	déluge, *m.*	*deluge*
roche*	*rock*	inondation	*inundation*
roc*	*rock*	écluse	*flood-gate sluice*
écueil*	*shoal*		
banc*	*ledge of rocks*	digue	*dike*

* These seven words do not convey in French the same idea: the four latter relate to the sea.

étang	*pond*	nuage, *m.*	*cloud*
vivier	*fish-pond*	nielle	*blight*
réservoir	*bason*	humidité	*dampness*
abreuvoir	*horse-pond*	serein	*mildew*
bain	*bath*	tourbillon	*whirlwind*
citerne	*cistern*	orage, m.	*storm*
fontaine	*fountain*	tempête	*tempest*
source	*spring*	calme, *m.*	*calm*
puits	*well*	éternité	*eternity*
pompe	*pump*	temps	*time*
bateau	*boat*	siécle, *m.*	*age* or *century*
barque	*bark*	époque	*epoch*
bac	*ferry-boat*	période, *m.*	*period*
coche d'eau, *m.*	*barge*	date	*date*
gabare	*lighter*	an, année	*year*
navire, *m.*	*ship*	mois	*month*
vaisseau	*vessel*	janvier	*january*
paquet-bot	*packet-boat*	février	*february*
flamme	*blaze*	mars	*march*
étincelle	*spark*	avril	*april*
chaleur	*heat*	mai	*may*
fumée	*smoke*	juin	*june*
incendie, *m.*	*conflagration*	juillet	*july*
chauffage, *m.*	*fuel*	août	*august*
charbon	*coals*	septembre	*september*
charbon-de-terre	*pit-coal*	octobre	*october*
		novembre	*november*
charbon-de-bois	*charcoal*	décembre	*december*
		semaine	*week*
braise	*small coal*	jour	*day*
tourbe	*turf*	journée	*day*
mottes, *pl.*	*peat*	aujourd'hui	*to-day*
bois	*wood*	demain	*to-morrow*
bûche	*log of wood*	hier	*yesterday*
fagot	*faggot*	lundi	*monday*
coupeaux, *pl.*	*chips*	mardi	*tuesday*
cendre	*ashes*	mercredi	*wednesday*
suie	*soot*	jeudi	*thursday*
feu	*fire*	vendredi	*friday*
atmosphère	*atmosphere*	samedi	*saturday*
vent	*wind*	dimanche	*sunday*
zéphyr	*zephyr*	heure	*hour*
vapeur	*vapour*	demi-heure	*half an hour*
lumière	*light*	quart-d'heure	*quarter of an hour*
ténèbres, *pl.*	*darkness*		
chaleur	*heat*	aurore	*aurora*
froid	*cold*	aube	*dawn*
nue, nuée	*cloud*	matin	*morning*

matinée	*forenoon*	carnaval	*carnival*
midi	*noon*	carême, *m.*	*lent*
l'après-midi	*the afternoon*	mi-carême	*midlent*
l'après-dînée		pâque	*easter*
soir	*evening*	pentecôte	*whit-sunday*
soirée		la Saint-Jean	*midsummer*
crépuscule *m.*	*twilight*	l'avent	*advent*
nuit	*night*	noël	*christmas*
minuit	*midnight*	fête	*festival*
minute	*minute*	équinoxe, *m.*	*equinox*
seconde	*second*	solstice, *m.*	*the solstice*
moment	*moment*	canicule	*the dog-days*
instant	*instant*	fenaison	*hay-harvest*
saison	*season*	moisson	*harvest*
printemps	*spring*	vendage	*vintage*
été	*summer*	tonte	*shearing-time*
automne	*autumn*	semailles, *pl.*	*sowing-time*
hiver	*winter*	congé	*holiday*

OF MAN.

genre-humain	*mankind*	orphelin	*orphan (boy)*
homme	*man*	orpheline	*orphan (girl)*
femme	*woman*	héritier	*heir*
sexe	*sex*	héritière	*heiress*
enfant	*child*	maître	*master*
garçon	*boy*	maîtresse	*mistress*
fille	*girl*	hôte	*landlord*
vierge	*virgin*	hôtesse	*landlady*
virginité	*virginity*	domestique	*man servant*
enfance	*infancy*	servante	*maid servant*
jeunesse	*youth*	voisin	*neighbour*
adolescence	*adolescence*	voisine	*neighbour (female)*
virilité	*manhood*		
vieillesse	*old age*	compagnon	*companion*
décrépitude	*decrepitude*	compagne	*companion (female)*
jeune homme	*youth* or *lad*		
jeune fille	*young girl*	corps	*body*
vieillard	*old man*	membre, *m.*	*member*
géant	*giant*	tronc	*trunk*
nain	*dwarf*	tête	*head*
pigmée, *m.*	*pigmy*	crâne, *m.*	*scull*
mari	*husband*	front	*forehead*
femme	*wife*	visage, *m.*	*face*
veuf	*widower*	traits, *pl.*	*features*
veuve	*widow*		

œil	*eye*	cerveau	*brain*
yeux, *pl.*	*eyes*	cervelle	
sourcils, *pl.*	*eye-brows*	squelette, *m.*	*skeleton*
paupière	*eye-lid*	cœur	*heart*
nez	*nose*	poumon	*lungs*
narines, *pl.*	*nostrils*	foie, *m.*	*liver*
bouche	*mouth*	rate	*spleen*
lèvres, *pl.*	*lips*	estomac	*stomach*
dent	*tooth*	entrailles, *pl.*	*entrails*
gencives, *pl.*	*gums*	sang	*blood*
mâchoire	*jaw-bone*	humeurs, *pl.*	*humours*
langue	*tongue*	glande	*gland*
palais	*palate*	poil	*hair*
joues, *pl.*	*cheeks*	chair	*flesh*
fossette	*dimple*	peau	*skin*
menton	*chin*	pores, *m. pl.*	*pores*
barbe	*beard*	nerf	*nerve*
tempes, *pl.*	*temples*	artère	*artery*
oreille	*ear*	veine	*vein*
cheveux, *pl.*	*hair*	os	*bone*
cou	*neck*	moëlle	*marrow*
gosier	*throat*	ride	*wrinkle*
sein	*bosom*	bouton	*pimple*
mamelle	*breast*	santé	*health*
ventre, *m.*	*belly*	tempérament	*constitution*
ceinture	*waist*	embonpoint	*plumpness*
côté	*side*	maigreur	*leanness*
hanche	*haunch*	teint	*complexion*
cuisses, *pl.*	*thighs*	rougeur	*redness*
genou	*knee*	pâleur	*paleness*
jarret	*ham*	port	*countenance*
rotule	*knee-pan*	démarche	*gait*
jambe	*leg*	geste, *m.*	*gesture*
mollet	*calf of the leg*	vivacité	*liveliness*
pied	*foot*	enjoûment	*sprightliness*
talon	*heel*	gaîeté	*gaity*
orteil	*toe*	beauté	*beauty*
bras	*arm*	charmes, *m. pl.*	*charms*
coude, *m.*	*elbow*	attraits, *pl.*	*attractions*
aisselle	*the arm-pit*	appas, *pl.*	*beauties*
épaule	*shoulder*	agrément	*pleasantness*
main	*hand*	laideur	*deformity*
poing	*fist*	taille	*shape, size*
poignet	*wrist*	voix	*voice*
doigt	*finger*	parole	*speech*
pouce, *m.*	*thumb*	silence, *m.*	*silence*
ongle, *m.*	*nail*	action	*action*
côte	*rib*	mouvement	*motion*

repos	*rest*
grimace	*grimace*
ris, rire *m.*	*laughter*
souris	*smile*
sourire *m.*	
humeur	*ill temper*
soupir	*sigh*
gémissement	*groan*
assoupissement	*drowsiness*
sommeil	*sleep*
songe *m.*	*vision*
rêve *m.*	*dream*
souffle *m.*	*blast*
haleine	*breath*
respiration	*respiration*
éternuement	*sneezing*
vue	*sight*
ouïe	*hearing*
odorat	*smell*
goût	*taste*
toucher	*touch*
sentiment	*sense*
obscurité	*darkness*
ombre	*shade*
son	*sound*
bruit	*noise*
odeur	*smell*
puanteur	*stench*
saveur	*relish*
sensations *pl.*	*sensations*
chatouillement	*tickling*
plaisir	*pleasure*
joie	*joy*
douleur	*pain*
faim	*hunger*
soif	*thirst*
dégoût	*surfeit*
maladie	*disease*
mal	*complaint*
incommodité	*illness*
infirmité	*infirmity*
indisposition	*disorder*
mal-de-dents	*tooth-ache*
mal-de-tête	*head-ache*
mal-aux-yeux	*complaint in the eyes*
migraine	*megrim*

vertige *m.*	*dizziness*
évanouissement	*swooning*
défaillance	*fainting*
faiblesse	*swoon*
démangeaison	*itching*
pesanteur	*heaviness*
engourdissement	*numbness*
insomnie	*want of sleep*
coup	*blow*
contre-coup	*counter-blow*
égratignure	*scratch*
écorchure	*excoriation*
entorse	*sprain*
foulure	*strain*
enflure	*swelling*
tumeur	*tumour*
meurtrissure	*bruise*
contusion	*contusion*
blessure	*wound*
cicatrice	*scar*
ulcère *m.*	*ulcer*
gangrène	*mortification*
coupure	*cut*
brûlure	*burn*
cor	*corn*
durillon	*callosity*
enrouement	*hoarseness*
rhume *m.*	*cold*
toux	*cough*
coqueluche	*hooping-cough*
surdité	*deafness*
frénésie	*frenzy*
folie	*lunacy*
rage	*madness*
goutte	*gout*
convulsions *pl.*	*convulsive-fits*
vapeurs *pl.*	*vapours*
fièvre	*fever*
frisson	*shivering*
accès	*fit*
délire *m.*	*delirium*
crise	*crisis*
médecine	*physic*
médecin	*physician*
chirurgien	*surgeon*
apothicaire	*apothecary*

accoucheur	*man-midwife*	régime *m.*	*diet*
sage-femme	*midwife*	sirop	*syrup*
consultation	*consultation*	agonie	*dying hour*
ordonnance	*prescription*	mort	*death*
remède *m.*	*remedy*	cadavre *m.*	*corpse*
drogues *pl.*	*drugs*	vie	*life*
poudres *pl.*	*powders*	guérison	*recovery*
pillules *pl.*	*pills*	rechute	*relapse*
saignée	*bleeding*	symptôme *m.*	*symptom*
lancette	*lancet*	convalescence	*fair way of recovery*
gouttes *pl.*	*drops*		
bain	*bath*		

OF THE MIND AND ITS FACULTIES.

âme	*soul*	souvenir	*remembrance*
esprit	*mind*	oubli	*forgetfulness*
génie *m.*	*genius*	stupidité	*stupidity*
raison	*reason*	passions *pl.*	*passions*
entendement	*understanding*	affections *pl.*	*affections*
jugement	*judgment*	amour	*love*
sens	*sense*	amours *f. pl.*	*amours*
pensée	*thought*	haine	*hatred*
idée	*idea*	désir	*desire*
imagination	*imagination*	crainte, peur	*fear*
fantaisie	*fancy*	appréhension	*apprehension*
caprice *m.*	*caprice*	espérance	*hope*
volonté	*will*	confiance	*confidence*
liberté	*liberty*	honte	*shame*
bel-esprit	*wit*	timidité	*bashfulness*
opinion	*opinion*	hardiesse	*boldness*
sentiment	*sentiment*	assurance	*confidence*
vérité	*truth*	colère	*anger*
erreur	*error*	courroux	*wrath*
vraisemblance	*likelihood*	fureur	*fury*
probabilité	*probability*	rage	*rage*
apparence	*appearance*	ressentiment	*resentment*
méprise	*mistake*	vengeance	*revenge*
bévue	*oversight*	dépit	*spite*
science	*science*	déplaisir	*displeasure*
connaissance	*knowledge*	tristesse	*sadness*
pénétration	*penetration*	chagrin	*grief*
sagacité	*sagacity*	peine	*sorrow*
disposition	*disposition*	désespoir	*despair*
inclination	*inclination*	doute *m.*	*doubt*
capacité	*capacity*	soupçon	*suspicion*
mémoire	*memory*	envie	*envy*

jalousie	*jealousy*	adresse	*dexterity*
pitié	*pity*	chasteté	*chastity*
miséricorde	*mercy*	innocence	*innocence*
compassion	*compassion*	libéralité	*liberality*
terreur	*terror*	générosité	*generosity*
épouvante	*fright*	reconnoissance	*gratitude*
indignation	*indignation*	frugalité	*frugality*
vertu	*virtue*	prospérité	*prosperity*
charité	*charity*	adversité	*adversity*
justice	*justice*	mœurs *pl.*	*manners*
tempérance	*temperance*	bonheur	*happiness*
sobriété	*sobriety*	récompense	*reward*
force	*fortitude*	prix	*prize*
modestie	*modesty*	présent	*present*
civilité	*civility*	don	*gift*
pudeur	*bashfulness*	prêt	*loan*
politesse	*politeness*	grâce	*grace*
honnêteté	*honesty*	réputation	*fame*
complaisance	*complaisance*	vice *m.*	*vice*
douceur	*sweetness*	défaut	*defect*
bonté	*goodness*	imperfection	*imperfection*
amitié	*friendship*	avarice	*avarice*
union	*union*	avidité	*greediness*
concorde	*concord*	orgueil	*pride*
paix	*peace*	paresse	*idleness*
tranquillité	*tranquillity*	fainéantise	*slothfulness*
patience	*patience*	lâcheté	*sluggishness*
prudence	*prudence*	nonchalance	*carelessness*
économie	*economy*	luxe *m.*	*luxury, pomp*
habileté	*skill*	mollesse	*effeminacy*
industrie	*industry*	impureté	*lewdness*
soin	*care*	débauche	*revel*
diligence	*diligence*	dissolution	*dissoluteness*
exactitude	*exactness*	libertinage *m.*	*libertinism*
honneur	*honour*	désordre *m.*	*disorderly life*
probité	*probity*	déréglement	*licentiousness*
désintéressement	*disinterestedness*	mépris	*contempt*
		raillerie	*jest*
sagesse	*wisdom*	moquerie	*mockery*
constance	*constancy*	médisance	*slander*
bienveillance	*benevolence*	calomnie	*calumny*
émulation	*emulation*	crime *m.*	*crime*
faveur	*favour*	malice	*malice*
valeur	*valour*	méchanceté	*wickedness*
bravoure	*bravery*	tromperie	*deceit*
courage *m.*	*courage*	parjure *m.*	*perjury*
finesse, ruse	*cunning*	friponnerie	*knavery*

fourberie	*roguery*	exil	*exile*
enchantement	*witchcraft*	banissement	*banishment*
injustice	*injustice*	pusillanimité	*pusillanimity*
tort	*wrong*	trahison	*treachery*
usure	*usury*	perfidie	*perfidiousness*
achat	*purchase*	punition	*punishment*
vente	*sale*	châtiment	*chastisement*
troc	*barter*	légèreté	*levity*
gage *m.*	*pledge*	coquetterie	*coquetry*
dépôt	*trust*	badinage *m.*	*sport*
contrat	*contract*	larcin	*robbery*
marché	*bargain*	vol	*theft*
bassesse	*meanness*	fripponnerie	*knavish trick*
impudence	*impudence*	tromperie	*deceit*
effronterie	*effrontery*	ivrognerie	*drunkenness*
audace	*audaciousness*	ivresse	*ebriety*
témérité	*temerity*	assassinat	*murder*
poltronnerie	*cowardice*	meurtre *m.*	*manslaughter*
opiniâtreté	*stubbornness*	mensonge *m.*	*lie*
obstination	*obstinacy*	fausseté	*falsehood*
cruauté	*cruelty*	conte *m.*	*tale*
dispute	*dispute*	serment	*oath*
querelle	*quarrel*	malheur	*misfortune*
brouillerie	*broil*	folie	*folly*
babil	*babbling*	extravagance	*madness*
caquet	*prating*	coutume	*custom*
inconstance	*inconstancy*	usage *m.*	*use*
ingratitude	*ungratefulness*	pratique	*practice*
ambition	*ambition*	habitude	*habit*
prodigalité	*prodigality*	licence	*licentiousness*
gourmandise	*gluttony*	excês	*excess*
impolitesse	*rudeness*	tour	*trick*
incivilité	*incivility*	bagatelles *pl.*	*trifles*
dissention	*dissension*	faute	*fault*
impatience	*impatience*	faiblesse	*weakness*
imprudence	*imprudence*	faible *m.*	*foible*
négligence	*negligence*	affront	*affront*
malhonnêteté	*rudeness*	outrage *m.*	*outrage*
déshonneur	*disgrace*	insulte	*insult*

OF MEATS AND DRINKS.

nourriture	*nourishment*	provisions	*provisions*
alimens *pl.*	*food*	repas	*meal*
vivres *m. pl.*	*victuals*	déjeûner	*breakfast*

dîner	*dinner*	verjus	*verjuice*
goûter	*afternoon's luncheon*	anchois	*anchovies*
		épices *pl.*	*spices*
souper	*supper*	poivre *m.*	*pepper*
collation	*collation*	gingembre *m.*	*ginger*
festin	*feast*	muscade	*nutmeg*
régal	*treat*	mâcis	*mace*
pain	*bread*	girofle *m.* (clous de)	*cloves*
croûte	*crust*		
mie	*crumb*	canelle	*cinnamon*
farine	*flour*	oublies *pl.*	*wafers*
son	*bran*	sucre *m.*	*sugar*
pâte	*dough*	cassonade	*moist sugar*
levain	*leaven*	dessert	*dessert*
morceau	*bit, morsel*	fruit	*fruit*
tranche	*slice*	pâté	*pie*
bouchée	*mouthful*	gâteau	*cake*
viande	*meat*	tourte, tarte	*tart*
bouilli	*boiled meat*	biscuit	*biscuit*
rôt, rôti	*roast meat*	macaron	*macaroon*
bœuf	*beef*	crêpe	*pancakes*
mouton	*mutton*	confitures *pl.*	*sweetmeats*
agneau	*lamb*	gelée	*jelly*
veau	*veal*	marmelade	*marmalade*
porc	*pork*	conserve	*conserve*
venaison	*venison*	tablettes *pl.*	*lozenges*
volaille	*fowls*	dragées *pl.*	*sugar-plums*
gibier	*game*	pralines *pl.*	*crisp-almonds*
gigot	*a leg of mutton*	fromage *m.*	*cheese*
andouille	*chitterlings*	beurre *m.*	*butter*
saucisse	*sausage*	lait	*milk*
jambon	*ham*	crême	*cream*
lard	*bacon*	œuf	*egg*
moutarde	*mustard*	coque	*shell*
soupe	*soup*	blanc	*white*
potage *m.*	*pottage*	jaune *m.*	*yolk*
bouillon	*broth*	boisson	*drink*
consommé	*jelly broth*	liqueur	*liquor*
ragoût	*ragout*	thé	*tea*
fricassée	*fricassee*	café	*coffee*
jus	*gravy*	chocolat	*chocolate*
sauce	*sauce*	limonade	*lemonade*
poisson	*fish*	ponche *m.*	*punch*
salade	*sallad*	vin	*wine*
sel	*salt*	bière	*beer*
huile	*oil*	eau-de-vie	*brandy*
vinaigre *m.*	*vinegar*	nectar	*nectar*

ambroisie	*ambrosia*	hydromel	*mead*
cidre *m.*	*cider*	sirop	*syrup*
poiré	*perry*	lie	*dregs*

OF DRESSING APPAREL, &c.

habillement	*dress*	guêtres *pl.*	*gaiters*
hardes	*clothes*	souliers	*shoes*
habit complet	*a suit of clothes*	escarpins *pl.*	*pumps*
habit	*coat*	semelle	*sole*
veste	*waistcoat*	bottes *pl.*	*boots*
gilet	*under-waistcoat*	boucles *pl.*	*buckles*
manches *pl.*	*sleeves*	cuir	*leather*
poches *pl.*	*pockets*	chapeau	*hat*
bouton	*button*	perruque	*wig*
doublure	*lining*	jupe	*petticoat*
couture	*seam*	jupon	*under-petticoat*
culotte	*breeches*	satin	*satin*
pantalon	*pantaloon*	taffetas	*taffety*
gousset	*fob*	gaze	*gauze*
drap	*cloth*	coiffure	*head-dress*
soie	*silk*	coiffe	*hood*
velours	*velvet*	collier	*necklace*
serge	*serge*	boucles d'oreilles *pl.*	*ear-rings*
basin	*dimity*		
flanelle	*flannel*	gants *pl.*	*gloves*
étoffe	*stuff*	mitaines *pl.*	*mittens*
manteau	*cloak*	tablier	*apron*
surtout	*surtout*	mules *pl.*	*slippers*
redingote	*riding-coat*	pantoufles *pl.*	
linge *m.*	*linen*	bague	*ring*
toile	*linen-cloth*	bijou	*jewel*
batiste	*cambric*	bracelet	*bracelet*
mousselin	*muslin*	dentelle	*lace*
linon	*lawn*	blonde	*blond-lace*
chemise	*shirt*	éventail	*fan*
jabot	*frill*	manchon	*muff*
cravate	*cravat*	agrafe	*clasp*
bas *pl.*	*stockings*	épingle	*pin*
jarretières *pl.*	*garters*	aiguille	*needle*
laine	*wool*	étui	*case*
fil	*thread*	dé	*thimble*
coton	*cotton*	masque *m.*	*mask*
maille	*stitch*	voile *m.*	*veil*
trou	*hole*	tabatière	*snuff-box*
chaussons *pl.*	*socks*	tabac	*snuff*

tabac (à fûmer)	*tobacco*	conserves *pl.*	*preserves*
bourse	*purse*	bouquet	*nosegay*
argent	*money*	canne	*cane*
porte-feuille *m.*	*pocket-book*	cordon	*string*
ciseaux *pl.*	*scissars*	épée	*sword*
crayon	*pencil*	montre	*watch*
mouchoir	*handkerchief*	boîte	*case*
lunettes *pl.*	*spectacles*	chaîne	*chain*
lorgnette	*opera-glass*	cachet	*seal*

OF A HOUSE AND FURNITURE.

maison	*house*	salle	*parlour*
hôtel	*nobleman's house*	salon	*parlour*
		escalier	*stair-case*
hôtellerie	*inn*	office	*pantry*
château	*castle*	cuisine	*kitchen*
palais	*palace*	garde-manger *m.*	*store-room*
couronne	*crown*		
trône *m.*	*throne*	boulangerie	*bake-house*
sceptre *m.*	*sceptre*	brasserie	*brew-house*
aile	*wing*	lingerie	*laundry*
pavillon	*pavilion*	écurie	*stable*
fondemens *pl.*	*foundation*	remise	*coach-house*
mur, muraille	*wall*	puits	*well*
bâtiment	*building*	étage *m.*	*story*
matériaux *pl.*	*materials*	appartement	*apartment*
pierre	*stone*	chambre	*room*
brique	*brick*	antichambre	*antichamber*
mortier	*mortar*	salle-à-manger	*dining-room*
chaux	*lime*	salon-de-compagnie	*drawing-room*
plâtre *m.*	*plaster*		
ciment	*cement*	cabinet-de-toilette	*dressing-room*
tuile	*tile*		
ardoise	*slate*	chambre-à-coucher	*bed-room*
charpente	*timber work*		
poutre	*beam*	galerie	*gallery*
solive	*joist*	cabinet	*closet*
échelle	*ladder*	boudoir	*lady's closet*
cave	*vault*	garde-robe	*wardrobe*
cellier	*cellar*	porte	*door*
tonneau	*cask*	porte-cochère	*gate*
futaille	*vessel*	seuil	*threshold*
boutique	*shop*	jalousie	*blinds*
atelier	*work-shop*	gond	*hinge*
magasin	*warehouse*	marteau	*knocker*
vestibule *m.*	*hall*	serrure	*lock*

clé, *or* clef	*key*
verrou	*bolt*
fenêtre	*window*
vitre	*glass*
volet	*shutter*
balcon	*balcony*
store *m.*	*blind*
grenier	*garret*
toit	*roof*
gouttière	*gutter*
malle	*trunk*
boîte	*box*
caisse	*chest*
cassette	*casket*
coffre *m.*	*coffer*
logement	*lodging*
ameublement	*furniture*
cheminée	*chimney*
âtre *m.* foyer	*hearth*
soufflet	*bellows*
pelle	*shovel*
pincettes *pl.*	*tongs*
fourgon	*poker*
garde-cendre *m.*	*fender*
coquemar	*boiler, copper*
bouilloire	*boiler, copper*
couvercle *m.*	*lid*
poêle	*frying-pan*
poêlon	*skillet*
casserole	*saucepan*
fourneau	*stove*
allumette	*match*
pierre-à-fusil	*flint*
briquet	*steel*
four	*oven*
essuie-main	*towel*
bassinoire	*warming-pan*
panier, corbeille	*basket*
porcelaine	*china-ware*
faïence	*delft-ware*
poterie	*earthen-ware*
pot	*pot*
cruche	*pitcher*
lampe	*lamp*
lanterne	*lantern*
savon	*soap*
amidon	*starch*
balaia	*broom*
banc	*bench*
escabeau	*stool*
plancher	*floor*
parquet	*inlaid floor*
plafond	*ceiling*
lambris	*wainscot*
cloison	*partition*
tapisserie	*hangings*
tapis	*carpet*
lit	*bed*
alcove	*alcove*
châlit	*bedstead*
chevet	*bolster*
oreiller	*pillow*
paillasse	*straw-mattress*
matelas	*mattress*
draps *pl.*	*sheets*
couvertures *pl.*	*bed-clothes*
courte-pointe	*counterpane*
rideau	*curtain*
tringle	*curtain-rod*
anneau	*ring*
sofa	*sofa*
fauteuil	*elbow-chair*
siége *m.*	*seat*
chaise	*chair*
coussin	*cushion*
armoire	*press*
commode	*chest of drawers*
trumeau	*pier-glass*
toilette	*toilet*
miroir	*looking-glass*
peigne *m.*	*comb*
pomade	*pomatum*
poudre	*powder*
houppe	*puff*
parfum	*perfume*
tableau	*picture*
dessin	*drawing*
coloris	*colouring*
portrait	*portrait*
paysage *m.*	*landscape*
miniature	*miniature*
chandelier	*candlestick*
bougeoir	*flat candlestick*

bobèche	*socket*
chandelle	*candle*
bougie	*wax-light*
cire	*wax*
mouchettes *pl.*	*snuffers*
porte-mouchettes *m.*	*snuffer-pan*
éteignoir	*extinguisher*
vergettes *pl.*	*brush*
buffet	*cup-board*
cabaret	*tea-board*
tasse	*cup*
soucoupe	*saucer*
théière	*tea-pot*
cafetière	*coffee-pot*
chocolatière	*chocolate-pot*
sucrier	*sugar-basin*
jatte	*bowl*
table	*table*
nappe	*cloth*
serviette	*napkin*
assiette	*plate*
plat	*dish*
couteau	*knife*
cuiller, *or* cuillère	*spoon*
salière	*salt-cellar*
huillier	*oil-cruet*
moutardier	*mustard-pot*
aiguière	*ewer*
coupe, tasse	*cup*
gobelet	*goblet*
verre *m.*	*glass*
bouteille	*bottle*
bouchon	*cork*
tire-bouchon *m.*	*cork-screw*
carafe	*decanter*
bibliothèque	*library*
bureau	*bureau*
tiroir	*drawer*
cachet	*seal*
lettre	*letter*
enveloppe	*cover*
adresse	*direction*
signature	*signature*
sonnette	*bell*
estampe	*print*
médaille	*medal*

OF THE CITY.

ville	*town, city*
village *m.*	*village*
bourg	*borough*
rue	*street*
carrefour	*cross-way*
passage *m.*	*passage*
place	*square*
cul-de-sac	*no thoroughfare*
pyramide	*pyramid*
obélisque *m.*	*obelisk*
pavé	*pavement*
ruisseau	*kennel*
marché	*market*
denrées *pl.*	*provisions*
boucherie	*meat-market*
poissonnerie	*fish-market*
friperie	*old clothes shop*
édifice *m.*	*edifice*
façade	*front*
frontispice *m.*	*frontispiece*
portail	*portal*
colonne	*column*
pilastre *m.*	*pilaster*
base	*base*
piédestal	*pedestal*
statue	*statue*
arcade	*arcade*
portique *m.*	*portico, or piazza*
aqueduc	*aqueduct*
dôme *m.*	*dome*
paroisse	*parish*
comédie	*play-house*
théâtre *m.*	*stage*
coulisses *pl.*	*scenery*
décorations	*decorations*
toile	*curtain*
foyer	*green-room*
orchestre *m.*	*orchestra*

parterre *m.*	*pit*	trésorerie	*treasury*
loge	*box*	amirauté	*admiralty*
amphitéâtre *m.*	*first gallery*	arsenal	*arsenal*
paradis	*upper gallery*	faubourgs	*suburbs*
billet	*ticket*	boulevards *pl.*	*bulwarks*
couvent	*convent*	remparts *pl.*	*ramparts*
monastère *m.*	*monastery*	barrière	*turnpike*
cellule	*cell*	guinguette	*tea-garden*
hermitage *m.*	*hermitage*	forge	*forge*
solitude	*solitude*	verrerie	*glass-house*
retraite	*retirement*	fonderie	*foundery*
université	*university*	carrosse *m.*	*coach*
collége *m.*	*college*	impériale	*roof*
école	*school*	portière	*coach door*
pension	*boarding school*	glaces *pl.*	*windows*
parlement	*parliament*	timon	*coach-pole*
chambre-haute, *ou* des pairs	*house of lords*	roue	*wheel*
		essieu	*axle-tree*
chambre basse, *ou* des communes	*house of commons*	équipage *m.*	*equipage*
		harnais *pl.*	*harness*
		rênes *pl.*	*reins*
prison	*prison*	bride	*bridle*
cachot	*dungeon*	licou	*halter*
hopital	*hospital*	selle	*saddle*
infirmerie	*infirmary*	bât	*pack-saddle*
taverne	*tavern*	arçon	*saddle-bow*
cabaret	*public-house*	sangle	*girth*
auberge	*inn*	étriers *pl.*	*stirrup*
café	*coffee-house*	éperons *pl.*	*spurs*
enseigne	*sign*	berline	*berlin*
affiche	*bill*	cabriolet	*gig*
pont	*bridge*	chaise	*chaise*
arche	*arch*	fiacre *m.*	*hackney-coach*
pilier	*pillar*	charrette	*cart*
bateau	*boat*	fourgon	*waggon*
quai	*key, on a river*	remise	*coach house*
bourse	*exchange*	rasoir	*razor*
banque	*bank*	cuir	*strap*
agiotage *m.*	*stock-jobbing*	moule	*mould*
douane	*custom-house*	machine	*machine*
poste	*general post*	moulin	*mill*
petite-poste	*twopenny post*		

OF TRADES, ARTS, PROFESSION, &c.

boulanger	*baker*	relieur	*book-binder*
perruquier	*hair-dresser*	libraire *m.*	*bookseller*
forgeron	*blacksmith*	chaudronnier	*brazier*

brasseur	*brewer*	serrurier	*locksmith*
boucher	*butcher*	maçon	*bricklayer*
ébéniste	*cabinet-maker*	maître d'hôtel	*steward*
charpentier	*carpenter*	mercier	*mercer*
charron	*wheel-wright*	meûnier	*miller*
sculpteur	*carver*	peintre	*painter*
chimiste	*chymist*	pâtissier	*pastry-cook*
horloger	*clock-maker*	paveur	*paviour*
confiseur	*confectioner*	colporteur	*pedlar*
carrossier	*coach-maker*	parfumeur	*perfumer*
tonnelier	*cooper*	médecin	*physician*
corroyeur	*currier*	plâtrier	*plasterer*
coutelier	*cutler*	plombier	*plumber*
fourbisseur	*sword-cutler*	potier	*potter*
teinturier	*dyer*	imprimeur	*printer*
distillateur	*distiller*	sellier	*saddler*
droguiste	*druggist*	lingère	*sempstress*
graveur	*engraver*	couturière	*mantua-maker.*
maréchal	*farrier*	tailleur	*tailor*
poissonnier	*fishmonger*	cordonnier	*shoe-maker*
fondeur	*founder*	pelletier	*skinner*
fruitier	*fruiterer*	forgeron	*smith*
fourreur	*furrier*	chirurgien	*surgeon*
jardinier	*gardener*	apothicaire	*apothecary*
doreur	*gilder*	arpenteur	*surveyor*
verrier	*glass-maker*	tanneur	*tanner*
vitrier	*glazier*	tourneur	*turner*
gantier	*glover*	entrepreneur	*undertaker*
orfèvre	*goldsmith*	tapissier	*upholsterer*
joaillier, bijoutier	*jeweller*	horloger	*watch-maker*
		tisserand	*weaver*
épicier	*grocer*	perruquier	*wig-maker*
armurier	*armourer*	ouvrage	*work*
chapelier	*hatter*	ouvrier	*work-man*
aubergiste	*innkeeper*	ouvrière	*work-woman*
menuisier	*joiner*	manœuvre	*labourer*

OF THE COUNTRY, HUSBANDRY, FLOWERS, TREES, &c.

campagne	*country*	hameau	*hamlet*
chemin	*way*	enclos	*close*
sentier	*foot-way*	château	*castle*
boue	*mud*	terre	*estate*
fange	*mire*	cour	*yard*
poussière	*dust*	basse-cour	*poultry-yard*
bourbier	*slough*	colombier	*pigeon-house*
ornière	*cart-rut*	laiterie	*dairy*

écurie	*stable*	jardin	*garden*
fruiterie	*fruit-loft*	jardinage *m.*	*gardening*

OF HERBS AND PLANTS.

aloès	*aloe*	moutarde	*mustard*
angélique	*angelica*	capucine	*nasturtium*
artichaut	*artichoke*	ortie	*nettle*
asperge	*asparagus*	oignon	*onion*
mélisse	*balm*	persil	*parsley*
basilic	*basil*	panais	*parsnip*
fève	*bean*	pois	*peas*
haricot	*french-bean*	pariétaire	*pellitory*
poirée	*beet*	plante	*plant*
betterave	*beet-root*	plantain	*plantain*
bourrache	*borage*	pavot	*poppy*
bardane	*burdock*	pomme-de-terre	*potatoe*
primprenelle	*burnet*	courge	*pumpkin*
chou	*cabbage*	pourpier	*purslain*
carotte	*carrot*	rave	*radish*
céleri	*celery*	radis	*Spanish radish*
cerfeuil	*chervil*	roseau	*reed*
choux-fleurs *pl.*	*cauliflowers*	rue	*rue*
mâches *pl.*	*corn-sallad*	jonc	*rush*
cresson	*cresses*	rhubarbe	*rhubarb*
concombre *m.*	*cucumber*	safran	*saffron*
dent-de-lion	*dandelion*	sauge	*sage*
patience	*dock*	sarette	*savery*
chicorée	*endive*	ciboule	*scallion*
fenouil	*fennel*	échalote	*shallot*
fougère	*fern*	oseille	*sorrel*
ail	*garlic*	véronique	*speedwell*
calebasse	*gourd*	épinards *pl.*	*spinage*
ciguë	*hemlock*	tanaisie	*tansy*
herbe	*herb*	ivraie	*tare*
raifort	*horse-radish*	estragon	*stragon*
joubarbe	*house-leek*	chardon	*thistle*
lierre *m.*	*ivy*	thym	*thyme*
poireau	*leek*	serpolet	*wild thyme*
laitue	*lettuce*	trèfle *m.*	*trefoil*
réglisse	*licorice*	navet	*turnip*
mauve	*mallows*	valériane	*valerian*
guimauve	*marsh-mallows*	végétaux *pl.*	*vegetables*
marjolaine	*marjoram*	légumes *m. pl.*	*vegetables, greens*
réséda	*mignonette*		
menthe	*mint*	vervaine	*vervain*
gui	*mistletoe*	absynthe	*wormwood*
mousse	*moss*	mille-feuille	*yarrow*

FLOWERS.

fleuriste	*florist*	chèvre-feuille m.	*honey-suckle*
parterre	*flower garden*	seringat	*seringa*
fleur	*flower*	lilas	*lilac*
iris	*crocus*	souci	*marigold*
primevére	*cowslip*	amaranthe	*amaranth*
narcisse m.	*narcissus*	pavot	*poppy*
jacinthe	*hyacinth*	coquelicot	*wild-poppy*
tulipe	*tulip*	ponceau	
violette	*violet*	bluet, barbeau	*blue-bell*
pensée	*pansy*	tournesol	*sun-flower*
marguérite	*daisy*	camomille	*camomile*
impériale	*turk's cap*	belle-de-nuit	*great night-shade*
martagon	*mountain-lily*	éternelle	*cassidony*
lis	*lily*	immortelle	
muguet	*may-lily*	balsamine	*balsam*
oreille-d'ours	*auricula*	ancolie	*columbine*
anémone	*anemone*	passe-rose	*hollyhock*
renoncule	*ranunculus*	hépatique	*hepatica*
jonquille	*jonquil*	pied-d'alouette	*lark-spur*
giroflée	*stock-gilliflower*	pivoine	*piony*
œillet	*pink*	scabieuse	*scabious*
campanule	*bell-flower*	julienne	*rocket*
gantelée		planche	*bed*
rose	*rose*	plate-bande	*flower-border*
jasmin	*jasmine*		
tubéreuse	*tuberose*		

OF TREES AND SHRUBS.

arbre m.	*tree*	pommier	*apple-tree*
arbrisseau	*shrub*	poirier	*pear-tree*
écorce	*bark*	prunier	*plumb-tree*
branche	*branch*	arbousier	*arbutus*
feuille	*leaf*	frêne	*ash-tree*
graine	*seed*	tremble	*aspen*
rejeton	*sucker*	hêtre	*beech-tree*
abricotier	*apricot-tree*	bouleau	*birch-tree*
cerisier	*cherry-tree*	buis	*box*
châtaignier	*chesnut-tree*	genêt	*broom*
citronnier	*lemon-tree*	sureau	*elder-tree*
coignassier	*quince-tree*	orme	*elm*
figuier	*fig-tree*	sapin	*fir-tree*
noyer	*walnut-tree*	coudrier	*hazel-tree*
oranger	*orange-tree*	houx	*holly*
pêcher	*peach-tree*	lilas	*lilac*

tilleul	*lime-tree*	épine	*thorn*
myrte	*myrtle-tree*	buisson	*thorn-bush*
chêne	*oak*	aubépine	*white-thorn*
osier	*osier*	vigne	*vine*
romarin	*rosemary*	saule	*willow-tree*
églantier	*sweet briar*	if	*yew-tree*

FRUITS.

amande	*almond*	melon	*melon*
pomme	*apple*	mûre	*mulberry*
abricot	*apricot*	brugnon	*nectarine*
cerise	*cherry*	noisette	*nut*
guigne	*black-heart cherry*	orange	*orange*
		pêche	*peach*
châtaigne	*chesnut*	poire	*pear*
marron	*horse chesnut*	citrouille	*pumpion*
groseilles *pl.*	*currants*	coin	*quince*
groseille	*gooseberry*	framboise	*rasberry*
figue	*fig*	fraise	*strawberry*
aveline	*filbert*	noix	*walnut*
raisin	*grapes*	épine-vinerte	*barberries*
prune	*plum*	grenade	*pomegranate*
reine-claude	*green-gage*	olive	*olive*
citron	*lemon*	cerneaux	*kernels of walnuts*
ananas	*pine-apple*		
nêfle	*medlar*	raisins-secs	*raisins*

PROMISCUOUS WORDS.

grange	*barn*	commune	*common*
hutte	*hut*	plaine	*plain*
chaumière	*thatched-house*	garenne	*warren*
seigneurie	*manor*	fondrière	*bog*
dime	*tithe*	marais	*marsh*
métairie	*farm*	plate-bande	*border*
sillon	*ridge*	serre	*green-house*
pré, prairie	*meadow*	serre-chaude	*hot-house*
arpent	*acre*	boulingrin	*bowling-green*
fossé	*ditch*	berceau	*bower*
champ	*field*	bosquet	*grove*
pâturage *m.*	*pasture-ground*	grotte	*grotto*
terroir	*soil*	vignoble *m.*	*vineyard*
parc	*park*	pépinière	*nursery*
haie	*hedge*	taillis	*coppice*
bruyère	*heath*	hallier	*thicket*
dunes	*downs*	paysage *m.*	*landscape*
lande	*waste-land*	perspective	*prospect*

vue	*view*	millet	*millet*
cascade	*cascade*	lin	*flax*
canal	*canal*	chanvre *m.*	*hemp*
agriculture	*agriculture*	chènevis	*hemp-seed*
labourage *m.*	*tillage*	épi	*ear (of corn)*
bétail	*cattle*	gerbe	*sheaf (of corn)*
fumier	*dung*	tige	*stalk*
terreau	*mould*	tuyau	*blade*
récolte	*crop*	paille	*straw*
moisson	*harvest*	chaume *m.*	*stubble*
vendange	*vintage*	foin	*hay*
houblon	*hops*	fourrage *m.*	*fodder*
grain	*corn*	fermier	*farmer*
blé	*wheat*	paysan	*peasant*
orge	*barley*	laboureur	*ploughman*
avoine	*oats*	moissonneur	*reaper*
riz	*rice*	faucheur	*mower*
seigle *m.*	*rye*	berger	*shepherd*

OF QUADRUPEDS.

bête	*beast*	bouvillon	*bullock*
animal	*animal*	renne *m.*	*rein-deer*
animal domestique	*tame beast*	brebis	*ewe*
		mouton	*wether*
bête-de-somme	*beast of burden*	bélier	*ram*
monture	*beast for the saddle*	agneau	*lamb*
		chèvre	*she-goat*
cheval	*horse*	bouc	*he-goat*
cavale	*mare*	chevreau	*kid*
jument	*mare*	cochon	*hog*
étalon	*stallion*	porc	*pig*
poulain	*colt*	pourceau	*pig*
pouliche	*filly*	truie	*sow*
bidet	*poney*	cochon-de-lait	*sucking pig*
âne	*ass*	cochon-d'inde	*guinea pig*
ânesse	*milk-ass*	verrat	*boar*
ânon	*young ass*	sanglier	*wild boar*
mulet	*mule*	laie	*wild sow*
mule	*she-mule*	marcassin	*young wild boar*
bête-à-cornes	*horned beast*	bête-fauve	*deer*
bœuf	*ox*	cerf	*stag*
buffle *m.*	*buffalo*	biche	*hind*
taureau	*bull*	faon	*fawn*
vache	*cow*	daim	*fallow-deer*
génisse	*heifer*	daim-mâle	*buck*
veau	*calf*	daim-femelle	*doe*

chevreuil	*roe-buck*	lice	*hound-bitch*
chevrette	*roe*	lévrier	*greyhound*
chamois	*chamois*	levrette	*greyhound bitch*
lion	*lion*	dogue	*bull dog*
lionne	*lioness*	doguin	*whelp*
lionceau	*lion's whelp*	mâtin	*mastiff*
tigre	*tiger*	limier	*blood-hound*
tigresse	*tigress*	bichon	*lap-dog*
ours	*bear*	épagneul	*spaniel*
ourson	*bear's cub*	basset	*terrier*
zèbre *m*	*zebra*	barbet	*shagged-dog*
giraffe	*giraffa*	chien-d'arrêt	*pointer*
léopard	*leopard*	meute de chiens	*pack of hounds*
caméléopard	*camelopard*		
rhinocéros	*rhinoceros*	chat, matou	*cat, tom-cat*
hippopotame *m.*	*river-horse*	chatte	*cat, puss*
éléphant	*elephant*	chaton	*kitten*
chameau	*camel*	minon	*puss*
dromadaire *m.*	*dromedary*	minet, minette	*young kitten*
lama	*lama*	singe *m.*	*monkey*
buffle *m.*	*buffalo*	guenon	*ape*
hyène	*hyena*	magot, babouin	*baboon*
panthère	*panther*	gazelle	*antelope*
once	*ounce*	belette	*weasel*
licorne	*unicorn*	poutois	*pole-cat*
élan	*elk*	fouine	*pole-cat*
loup	*wolf*	genette	*wild cat*
louve	*she-wolf*	musc	*musk-ox*
louveteau	*wolf's cub*	loir	*dormouse*
lynx	*lynx*	marmote	*marmot*
renard	*fox*	taupe	*mole*
taisson	*brock*	rat	*rat*
blaireau	*badger*	souris	*mouse*
castor	*beaver*	tortue	*tortoise*
hermine	*ermine*	bétail, bestiaux	*cattle*
marte, zibeline	*marten. sable*	troupeau	*flock, herd*
écureuil		pâtre, berger	*shepherd*
hérisson	*hedge-hog*	bergère	*shepherdess*
porc-épic	*porcupine*	vacher, bouvier	*cow-herd*
loutre	*otter*	porcher	*swine-herd*
raton	*racoon*	chasse	*hunting*
furet	*ferret*	chasseur	*hunter*
lièvre	*hare*	braconnier	*poacher*
hase	*doe-hare*	gibier, venaison	*game*
levraut	*leveret*	fusil	*gun*
lapin	*rabbit*	gibecière	*pouch*
lapine	*doe-rabbit*	tiré	*shooting*
chien	*dog*	tireur	*shooter*
chienne	*bitch*	garde-chasse	*gamekeeper*

OF BIRDS.

oiseau	*bird*
oiselet, oisillon	*little bird*
volaille	*fowl*
coq	*cock*
poule	*hen*
poulet	*chicken*
poussin	*young chicken*
cochet	*cockerel*
poularde	*pullet*
chapon	*capon*
coq-d'Inde, dindon	*turkey-cock*
dinde	*turkey-hen*
dindonneau	*young turkey*
oie	*goose*
jar	*gander*
oison	*gosling*
canard	*drake*
cane	*duck*
caneton, canette	*duckling*
pigeon	*pigeon*
colombe	*dove*
serin, canari	*canary bird*
perroquet	*parrot*
perruche	*paroquet*
moineau, passereau	*sparrow*
hirondelle	*swallow*
martinet	*martin*
rossignol	*nightingale*
chardonneret	*goldfinch*
pinson	*chaffinch*
verdier	*greenfinch*
bouvreuil	*bullfinch*
linot, linote	*linnet*
rouge-gorge *m.*	*redbreast, robin*
merle *m.*	*blackbird*
grive	*thrush*
geai	*jay*
pie	*magpie*
alouette	*lark*
bergeronnette	*wagtail*
alcyon, *ou* martin-pêcheur	*king-fisher*
pivert	*woodpecker*
mésange	*tit*
pluvier	*plover*
roitelet	*wren*
vanneau	*lapwing*
butor	*bittern*
bec-figue *m.*	*beccafico*
étourneau	*starling*
sansonnet	*starling*
bruant	*yellow-hammer*
coucou	*cuckoo*
freux, grolle	*rook*
corbeau	*raven*
corneille	*crow*
hibou	*owl*
chouette	*screech-owl*
buse	*buzzard*
choucas	*chough*
aigle	*eagle*
aiglon	*eaglet*
épervier	*sparrow-hawk*
émouchet	*musket-hawk*
milan	*kite*
faucon	*falcon*
cormoran	*cormorant*
plongeon	*diver*
héron	*heron*
cigogne	*stork*
outarde	*buskard*
pélican	*pelican*
autour	*gos-hawk*
vautour	*vulture*
griffon	*griffin*
huppe	*lapwing*
mouette	*gull*
perdrix	*partridge*
bartavelle	*large red partridge*
perdreau	*young partridge*
caille	*quail*
cailleteau	*young quail*
faisan	*pheasant*
faisandeau	*young pheasant*
bécasse	*woodcock*
bécassine	*snipe*
ortolan	*ortolan*
tourterelle	*turtle-dove*

gélinotte	*wood-hen*	autruche	*ostrich*
francolin	*heath-cock*	pintade	*pintado*
ramier	*wood-pigeon*	fou-de-bassan	*gannet*
macreuse	*sea-duck*	pingoin	*razor-bill*
sarcelle	*teal*	chauvre-souris	*bat*
grue	*crane*	chasse-aux-oiseaux	*fowling*
courlis	*curlew*		
foulque	*coot, moorcock,* or *hen*	appeau	*bird-call*
		gluaux	*lime twigs*
poule-d'eau	*moor-hen*	trébuchet	*bird-trap*
paon	*peacock*	filets	*nets*
paonne	*pea-hen*	oiseleur	*bird-catcher*
paonneau	*young peacock*	oiselier	*bird-seller*
cigne *m.*	*swan*	volière	*aviary*

OF FISHES.

poisson	*fish*	homard, langouste	*lobster*
esturgeon	*sturgeon*		
turbot	*turbot*	écrevisse-de-mer	
saumon	*salmon*		
rouget	*roach*	écrevisse	*crawfish*
brochet	*pike*	crabe *m.*	*crab*
carpe	*carp*	crevette	*prawn*
truite	*trout*	chevrette	*shrimp*
perche	*perch*	anguille	*eel*
cabillaud	*fresh cod*	anchois	*anchovy*
morue	*stock-fish*	goujon	*gudgeon*
raie	*skate*	véron	*minnow*
tanche	*tench*	lotte, barbotte	*eel-pout*
éperlan	*smelt*	loche	*loach, groundling*
maquereau	*mackerel*		
surmulet	*mullet*	morue salée	*salt-fish*
carrelet	*flounder*	barbue	*dab*
barbeau	*barbel*	marsoin	*sea-hog, porpoise*
alôse	*shad*		
sole	*sole*	espadon	*saw-fish*
sardine	*sprat*	porcelaine	*sea-snail*
thon	*tunny*	tortue	*tortoise*
plie	*plaice*	huître	*oyster*
congre *m.*	*conger*	pétoncle	*cockle*
merlan	*whiting*	moule	*muscle*
merluche	*haddock*	baleine	*whale*
hareng	*herring*	cachalot	*cachalot*
sèche	*cuttle fish*	requin	*shark*
limande	*burt, bret fish*	dauphin	*dolphin*
lamproie	*lamprey*	chien-marin	*sea-dog*

loup-marin	*sea-wolf*	nageoires	*fins*
hérisson-de-mer	*sea-urchin*	écailles	*scales*
		coquilles	*shells*
frai	*fry*	arrêtes	*bones*
frétin	*young fish*	pinces, braques	*claws*
laite	*soft roe*	appât, amorce	*bait*
œufs	*spawn, hard roe*	pêcheur	*fisherman*
		pêche	*fishery*
museau	*snout*	pêche-à-la-ligne	*angling*
ouies	*gills*		

OF REPTILES AND INSECTS.

grenouille	*frog*	pou	*louse*
serpent	*serpent*	lente	*nit*
couleuvre	*adder*	puce	*flea*
vipère	*viper*	punaise	*bug*
scorpion	*scorpion*	chenille	*caterpillar*
spic	*aspick*	papillon	*butterfly*
basilic	*basilisk*	mouche	*fly*
dragon	*dragon*	abeille	*bee*
tarentule	*tarantula*	frelon	*hornet*
crapaud	*toad*	bourdon	*drone*
lézard	*lizard*	guêpe	*wasp*
sang-sue	*leech*	taon	*oxfly*
limace	*slug*	cousin	*gnat*
ver	*worm*	cantharide	*Spanish-fly*
ver-luisant	*glow-worm*	hanneton	*cockchafer*
ver-coquin	*vine-grub*	sauterelle	*grasshopper*
ver-à-soie	*silk-worm*	cigale	*balm-cricket*
escargot	*snail*	araignée	*spider*
escarbot	*beetle*	toile-d'araignée	*cobweb*
grillon	*cricket*		
perce-oreille *m.*	*ear-wig*	essaim-d'abeilles	*swarm of bees*
teigne	*moth*		
ciron	*hand-worm*	miel	*honey*
fourmi	*ant*	cire	*wax*
charançon	*weevil*	rayon-de-miel	*honeycomb*
cloporte *m.*	*wood-louse*	ruche	*hive*
tique	*tick*	fourmilière	*ant-hill*

OF METALS, &c.

or	*gold*	platine	*platina*
argent	*silver*	vermeil	*silver-gilt*

cuivre	*copper*	soufre	*sulphur*
airain	*brass*	nitre	*nitre*
laiton	*latten-wire*	saltpêtre	*saltpetre*
bronze	*bronze*	bitume	*bitumen*
similor	*pinchbeck*	antimoine	*antimony*
fer	*iron*	arsenic	*arsenic*
fil-d'archal	*wire*	alum	*alum*
acier	*steel*	couperose *f.*	*copperas*
fer-blanc	*iron-tinned*	vitriol	*vitriol*
étain	*tin, pewter*	carmin	*carmine*
plomb	*lead*	pastel	*pastel*
mercure	*mercury*	ocre *f.*	*ochre*
vif-argent	*quicksilver*	vermillion	*red-lead*

OF COLOURS.

blanc	*white*	rouge	*red*
noir	*black*	jaune	*yellow*
bleu	*blue*	brun	*brown*
vert	*green*	pourpre	*purple*
gris	*grey*	écarlate	*scarlet*
orangé	*orange colour*	indigo	*indigo*

OF PRECIOUS STONES.

diamant	*diamond*	améthyste	*amethyst*
topaze	*topaz*	cornaline	*cornelian*
émeraude	*emerald*	onyx	*onyx*
saphir	*sapphire*	agathe	*agate*
escarboucle	*carbuncle*	corail	*coral*
rubis	*ruby*	perle	*pearl*

OF THE PRINCIPAL COUNTRIES.

France	*France*	Hollande	*Holland*
Italie	*Italy*	les Pays-Bas	*the Netherlands*
Espagne	*Spain*	Angleterre	*England*
Portugal	*Portugal*	Ecosse	*Scotland*
Turquie	*Turkey*	Irlande	*Ireland*
Allemagne	*Germany*	Russie	*Russia*
Suisse	*Switzerland*	Danemarc	*Denmark*
Prusse	*Prussia*	Suède	*Sweden*
Pologne	*Poland*	Norvége	*Norway*
Bohême	*Bohemia*	Tartarie	*Tartary*
Hongrie	*Hungary*	Arabie	*Arabia*

Perse	*Persia*	Monoémugi	*Monoemugi*
Inde	*India*	Caffrerie	*Caffraria*
Chine	*China*	Abyssinie	*Abyssinia*
Mogol	*Mogul*	Canada	*Canada*
Bengale	*Bengal*	Pensylvanie	*Pennsylvania*
Malabar	*Malabar*	Maryland	*Maryland*
Japon	*Japan*	Virginie	*Virginia*
Barbarie	*Barbary*	Caroline	*Carolina*
Egypte	*Egypt*	Géorgie	*Georgia*
Biledulgerid	*Biledulgerid*	Pérou	*Peru*
Zaara	*Zaara*	Paraguay	*Paraguay*
Nigritie	*Nigritia*	Chili	*Chili*
Guinée	*Guinea*	Brésil	*Brazil*
Ethiopie	*Ethiopia*	Guiane	*Guiana*
Zanguebar	*Zanguebar*	St. Domingue	*St. Domingo*
Monomotapa	*Monomotapa*	Jamaïque	*Jamaica*

INTRODUCTION TO THE EXERCISES

The learner is to render the English definite article *the* by
- *le* before a noun masculine
- *la* before a noun feminine
- *l'* before a noun masculine or feminine begining with a vowel or *h* mute

} in the singular.

- *les* before nouns of either gender in the plural and the indefinite.

a or *an* by
- *un* before a noun masculine singular.
- *une* before a noun feminine singular.

EXAMPLES.

Le livre	*the book*	*les* plantes	*the plants*
la rue	*the street*	*un* homme	*a man*
*l'*ame	*the soul*	*une* femme	*a woman*
*l'*histoire	*the history*	*un* héros	*a hero.*

EXERCISES.

The wood; *the* forest; *the* houses; *the* men; *the* court; *bois* m. *forêt* f. *maisons* pl. *hommes* pl. *cour* f.
the foot; *the* arms; *the* room; *the* garden; *the* windows; *pied* m. *bras* pl. *chambre* f. *jardin* m. *fenêtres* pl.
a history; *a* novel; *a* foreigner; *a* walk; *a* day; *histoire* f. *roman* m. *étranger* m. *promenade* f. *jour* m.
a night; *the* sun; *the* moon; *the* stars; *a* body; *a* card; *nuit* f. *soleil* m. *lune* f. *étoiles* pl. *corps* m. *carte* f.
a crown.
écu m.

He will render the English prepositions
of and *from* by *de*
to..... by *à*

} and when followed by the article, thus:

of the by { *du* before a noun masculine singular beginning with *a consonant* or *h* aspirated; *de la* before a noun feminine singular; *de l'* before any noun beginning with *a vowel* or *h* mute; *des* before any noun in the plural.

to the by { *au* before a noun masculine singular beginning with *a consonant* or *h* aspirated; *à la* before a noun feminine singular; *à l'* before any noun beginning with *a vowel* or *h* mute; *aux* before any noun in the plural.

And when these prepositions are followed by *a* or *an*, thus:

of a by { *d'un* before a noun masculine; *d'une* before a noun feminine

to a by { *à un* before a noun masculine; *à une* before a noun feminine.

EXAMPLES.

Du parc	*of the park*	à l'esprit	*to the mind*
de la rivière	*of the river*	aux carrosses	*to the coaches*
de l'esprit	*of the mind*	d'un jour	*of a day*
des carrosses	*of the coaches*	d'une nuit	*of a night*
au parc	*to the park*	à un jour	*to a day*
a la rivière	*to the river*	à une nuit	*to a night*

EXERCISES.

The palace *of the* king; *of the* queen; *of the* man; *of the* men; *to the* king; *to the* queen; *to the* man; *to the* men;
palais m. *roi* m. *reine* f. *homme h* m. *hommes* pl.

from a balcony; *from a* window; *of a* prince; *to a* princess;
balcon m. *fenêtre* f. —m. *princesse* f.

of the gardens; *of the* evening; *to the* courtiers; *of a* table; *to the* master; *to a* lady; *of the* soul; *of the* horse; *to a* cat;
jardins pl. *soir* m. *courtisans* pl. —— f. *maître* m. *dame* f. *âme* f. *cheval* m. *chat* m.

of the houses; *of a* carpet.
maisons pl. *tapis* m.

These same prepositions, when followed by the possessive pronouns, *my, thy, his, her, its, our, your*, and *their*, will be both rendered thus:

			singular m.	singular f.	plural m. and f.
of	*my*	by *de*	*mon*	*ma*	*mes*
	thy		*ton*	*ta*	*tes*
	his, her, or *its*		*son*	*sa*	*ses*
	our		*notre*	*notre*	*nos*
	your		*votre*	*votre*	*vos*
	their		*leur*	*leur*	*leurs*
to	*my*	by *à*	*mon*	*ma*	*mes*
	thy		*ton*	*ta*	*tes*
	his, her, its		*son*	*sa*	*ses*
	our		*notre*	*notre*	*nos*
	your		*votre*	*votre*	*vos*
	their		*leur*	*leur*	*leurs*

and likewise, when followed by the demonstrative *this* or *that*, *these* or *those*:

of this or *that*, by *de*
to this or *that*, by *à*
{ *ce* before a noun masculine beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated
{ *cet* before a noun masculine beginning with a vowel or *h* mute
{ *cette* before a noun feminine

of these or *those*, by *de ces*
to these or *those*, by *à ces*
} before nouns plural of either gender.

EXAMPLES.

de mon père	*of my father*	à leur travail	*to their work*
à ta mère	*to thy mother*	de cette terrasse	*from this terrace*
de son frère	*of his brother*	de ce lieu	*of that place*
de notre ville	*of our town*	de cette homme	*of this man*
à votre maison	*to your house*	de ces arbres	*of these trees*

EXERCISES.

Of my clothes; *of thy* handkerchief; *of his* pocket: *of your* *habits* pl. *mouchoir* m. *poche* f.
letters; *of our* treasure; *to their* house; *of this* steeple; *of that* *letters* pl. *trésor* m. *maison* f. *clocher* m.
hero; *of this* tower; *of these* models; *of my* sister; *to* *héros* m *h* asp. *tour* f. *modèles* pl. *sœur* f.
your relations; the top *of this* mountain; *to my* friend; *parens* pl. *sommet* m. *montagne* f. *ami* m.
of these pleasures; *of our* duties; *to their* connexions; *of* *plaisirs* pl. *devoirs* pl. *liaisons* pl.
his acquaintances; *to my* neighbours.
connaissances pl. *voisins* pl.

The *Apostrophe* (') marks, we have said, page 3, the suppression of a *vowel* before another *vowel*, or *h* mute, as in *l'église* for *la église*, &c.

This suppression is called ELISION; *a*, *e*, *i*, are the only vowels liable to be thus cut off, and even of the suppression of the last of these, only two instances occur, viz. in the conjunction *si* before the pronoun, singular and plural, *il*, *ils*.

The *a* is suppressed only in *la* feminine, both when an article and a pronoun.

But the ELISION of *e* occurs, not only in the masculine article and pronoun *le*, but also in many other monosyllables, such as *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *de*, *ce*, *ne*, *que*,

and in the compound of *que*, such as, *parceque, quoique, puisque, jusque, vû que*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

	la	*in*	l'amitié	la amitié	*the friendship*
	la	—	l'herbe	la herbe	*the grass*
	le	—	l'oiseau	le oiseau	*the bird*
	le	—	l'honneur	le honneur	*the honour*
	je	—	j'ai	je ai	*I have*
	me	—	il m'oublie	il me oublie	*he forgets me*
	te	—	je t'aime	je te aime	*I love thee*
	se	—	il s'habille	il se habille	*he dresses himself*
	le	—	vous l'aidez	vous le aidez	*you help him*
	la	—	vous l'obligez	vous la obligez	*you oblige her*
	ce	—	c'est vrai	ce est vrai	*it is true*
	de	—	un coup-d'œil	un coup de œil	*a glance*
	ne	—	n'oubliez pas	ne oubliez pas	*do not forget*
	que	—	qu'attendez vous?	que attendez vous?	*what do you expect?*
of	*si*	—	s'il arrivait	*si* il arrivait	*if it happened*
	si	—	s'ils pouvaient	*si* ils pouvaient	*if they could*
	parceque	—	parcequ'il faut	parceque il faut	*because it is requisite*
	quoique	—	quoiqu'il fasse	quoique il fasse	*whatever he may do*
	puisque	—	puisqu'on vous dit	puisque on vous dit	*since they tell you*
	jusque	—	jusqu' à demain	jusque à demain	*till to-morrow*
	vû que	—	vû qu'il obtiendra	vû que il obtiendra	*since he will obtain*
	dèsque	—	dèsqu'on saura	dèsque on saura	*as soon as it will be known*
	quelque	—	quelqu'un vient	quelque un vient	*somebody comes*

for

It is allowable either to retrench, or to retain the final *e* of the preposition *entre*, between, among, when it is placed before the pronouns *eux*, *elles*, and *autres;* but it is always rescinded in the following compound words:

Entr'acte	*an interlude*	*for*	entre-acte
s'entr'aider	*to help one another*		se entre-aider
entr'ouïr	*to hear imperfectly*		entre-ouïr
entr'ouvrir	*to half open*		entre-ouvrir

and in a few others; but it is indifferent to say:

entre eux	or	entr'eux	between them
entre elles		entr'elles	between them
entre autres choses		entr'autres choses	among other things

EXERCISE.

The soul; *the* heroine; *the* mind; he loves *him*; she *âme* f. *héroïne* f. *esprit* m. *il aime* 2 *le* 1: *elle* loves *her*; *I* love this man; you do not understand 2 *la* 1; *je aime homme* m. *vous* * *ne'entendez* 2 *pas* 3 *me*; he esteems *thee*; he goes away; *it* was *the* golden age; *me* 1: *il estime* 2 *te* 1; *se en-va ce était de or* 2 *âge* 1; do *not* go there; *if* he comes: *if* they please: *what* has he * *ne allez pas là*; *si vient*; *ils veulent*; *que a-t-il* said? *till* night; *though* he says; *since* he knows *dit*? *jusque au soir* m. *quoique dise*; *puisque sait*; *when* he saw: *between* them; somebody is come. *lorsque vit*; *entre eux*; *quelque un est venu*.

N. B. In the following French negative modes of speech, which answer to the accompanying English translation, the *caret* points out the place which the French verb must occupy, whenever it is not in the infinitive mood.

Not	ne ^ pas / ne ^ point	je ne *suis* pas, &c.	*I am not*, &c.
		nous n'*avons* point	*we have not*
never	ne ^ jamais	il ne *joue* jamais	*he never plays*
nothing	ne ^ rien	vous ne *dites* rien	*you say nothing*
nobody	ne ^ personne	je ne *vois* personne	*I see nobody*
not a jot	ne ^ goutte	je ne *vois* goutte	*I do not see*, or *I see not in the least*
no where	ne ^ nulle part	je ne *vais* nulle part	*I go no where*

But in compound tenses, it is the auxiliary verb that parts the negative *ne* from the *pas*, or *point*, &c. that accompany it, as nous n'*avons* point parlé, *we have not spoken*; on n'*aurait* jamais cru, *one could never have believed*.

N. B. The addition of *pas*, or *point*, to the negative particle *ne*, must not be considered as a second negation: but only as a complementary part of it. For in such cases, *pas*, *point*, *goutte*, are mere restrictive terms, nearly resembling the English words, jot, bit, tittle, sometimes added to not, with this difference, that *pas* and *point* in French have nothing trivial in them.

EXERCISE.

I do *not* say, I have *not* said; I have *never* seen; I *never*
* *dis* *ai* *dit* *ai* *vu*
(tell a falsehood); I do *nothing*; I have done *nothing*; is he
mens *fais* *fait* *est-il*
not arrived? does *not* he come? I see *nothing*; has he *never* seen?
arrivé * 2 *vient* 1 *vois* *a-t-* *vu*
he *never* loses his time; that (is worth) *nothing*; I met *nobody*.
perd *temps* m. *cela* *vaut* *rencontrai*

There are many words which are alike in both languages, and others which differ only in their termination.

The expressions, which are perfectly alike, are particularly those that have the following terminations:

-al	as	animal, cardinal, fatal, général, local, moral, natal, original, principal, &c.
-ble		capable, fable, &c. bible, éligible, &c. noble, double, soluble, insoluble, &c.
-ace		face, grimace, grâce, place, préface, race surface, trace, &c.
-ance		chance, complaisance, extravagance, ignorance, lance, tempérance, &c.
ence		abstinence, conférence, continence, diligence, éloquence, patience, &c.
-ice		artifice, auspices, édifice, justice, injustice, office, orifice, précipice, solstice, &c.
-acle		miracle, oracle, obstacle, réceptacle, tabernacle, spectacle, &c.
-ade		ambuscade, cavalcade, brigade, esplanade, sérénade, retrograde, &c.
-age		âge, adage, bandage, cage, cordage, image, page, plumage, rage, &c.
-ege		collége, privilége, sacrilége, siége, sortilége, &c.
-ge		vestige, doge, barge, charge, orange, forge, rouge, refuge, déluge, &c.
-ule		globule, ridicule, animalcule, corpuscule, formule, module, mule, pustule, valvule, &c.
-ile		bile, débile, agile, docile, ductile, facile, fragile, nubile, reptile, versatile, &c.
-ine		carabine, fascine, doctrine, heroïne, machine, marine, famine, mine, rapine, &c.
ion		action, fraction, légion, nation, opinion, passion, question, religion, &c.

-ant	as	arrogant, constant, élégant, éléphant, pétulant, piquant, poignant, vigilant, &c.
-ent	——	absent, accident, compliment, augment, content, élément, fréquent, serpent, &c.

Many other English words require only the change of termination, in the following manner :

-gy	into	-gie	as	*energy*	energie
-ary	——	-aire	—	*military*	militaire
-ory	——	-oire	—	*glory*	gloire
-cy	——	-ce	—	*clemency*	clémence
-ty	——	-té	—	*beauty*	beauté
-ous	——	-eux	—	*dangerous*	dangereux
-our	——	-eur	—	*favour*	faveur
-or	——	-eur	—	*error*	erreur
-ine	——	-in	—	*clandestine*	clandestin
-ive	——	-if	—	*expressive*	expressif
-ry	——	-rie	—	*fury*	furie
-dy	——	-die	—	*perfidy*	perfidie

N. B. Adjectives in { -eux, -if, -in } make their feminine in { -euse, -ive, -ine }

EXERCISE.

The beauty of that fable; the horror of vice; the utility
f. f. f. *h.* m. art. m. f.
of science; the atrocity of this action; the violence of his
art. f. f. f. f.
passions; the simplicity of that machine; an audacious
pl. f. f. 2.
conspirator; the absurdity of that opinion; the military
m. 1 f. f. pl. 2
evolutions; an industrious nation; an important victory; an
pl. 1 2 f. 1. 2 f. 1
alimentary pension; a dangerous animal; a figurative
2. f. 1 2 m. 1 2
expression; a famous general; his constant generosity, he is
f. 1. m. 2 f. 1 *il est*
incapable of attention; his imprudence is visible; his fidelity
son f.
is indubitable; she is very attentive; your clemency is
elle est très- f. f.
admirable; the destruction of his fortune was the consequence
f. f. *fut* f

of his temerity ; she is very scrupulous ; his condition is horrible ;
f. *très-* f. f.
his parents are very miserable ; this history is incontestable ;
pl. *sont très-* pl. f.
your facility is prodigious ; his perfidy is odious ; it was an hor-
f. f. f. *ce était*
rible famine : the sublimity of his sentiments is still preferable
f. f. m. *encore*
to the energy of his expressions ; it was a decisive action ; the
f. f. 2 f. 1
carnage was terrible ; that obstacle is invincible ; this
m. *fut* *cet* m.
instrument is not harmonious ; the prosperity of the wicked is
m. f. *méchans* pl.
not durable ; your insidious presents are not acceptable ; his
2 pl. *sont* pl.
memory is truly extraordinary ; that is his principal occupation :
f. *vraiment* *ce est* f. f.
a central position ; his extravagance is visible ; these argu-
f. 2. f. 1 *son* f. *ces* m.
ments are insoluble.
pl.

PART I.

OF WORDS CONSIDERED IN THEIR NATURE AND INFLECTIONS.

There are, in French, nine sorts of words, or parts of speech, namely,

1. Substantive, or Noun,
2. Article,
3. Adjective,
4. Pronoun,
5. Verb,
6. Adverb,
7. Preposition,
8. Conjunction,
9. Interjection.

CHAP. I.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE, OR NOUN.

The substantive is a word, which serves to name a person, or thing, as *Pierre*, Peter ; *livre*, book, &c.

There are two sorts of substantives, the *substantive*

proper, or *proper name*, and the *substantive common*, also called *appellative*.

The *proper name* is that which is applied to a particular person, or thing, as *César*, Cesar; *la Tamise*, the Thames.

The *substantive common* is that which belongs to a whole class of objects. The word *homme*, man, is a substantive common, as it is applicable to any individual, as *Peter*, *Paul*, *John*, &c.

Of these nouns, some are *collective*, and others *abstract*.

Collectives express either a whole mass, as *une armée*, an army: *une forêt*, a forest: or a partial assemblage, as *une quantité de*, &c. a certain quantity of; *la plupart*, most part, &c.

Abstract nouns are the names of qualities abstracted from their subjects, as, *surface*, *rondeur*, *science*, *sagesse*; surface, roundness, knowledge, wisdom, &c.

In substantives, are to be considered *Gender* and *Number*.

OF GENDER.

There are *only* two genders, the *masculine* and *feminine*.

The masculine belongs to the male kind, as *un homme*, a man; *un lion*, a lion, &c.

The feminine belongs to the female kind, as *une femme*, a woman; *une lionne*, a lioness, &c.

This distinction has, through imitation, been extended to all substantives, as, *un livre*, a book, is masculine; *une table*, a table, is feminine, &c. see p. 37, 40, &c.

OF NUMBER.

There are two numbers; the *singular* and the *plural*.

The *singular* expresses *one single* object, as *un homme*, *un livre*.

The *plural* announces *more* objects *than one*, as *des hommes, des livres.*

Proper names have no plural, as *Londres, Paris, Milton*, &c.

OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF FRENCH SUBSTANTIVES.

GENERAL RULE.

The singular is generally changed into a plural, by adding an *s*. as

Singular.		Plural.	
le roi	the king	*les rois*	the kings
la reine	the queen	*les reines*	the queens

EXCEPTIONS.

FIRST EXCEPTION.

Sing.		Plural.		Singular.			Plural.	
-s, *-x*, *-z*	remain unalterable.	*-s*, *-x*, *-z*	as	le fils,	*the son ;*		les fils,	*the sons.*
				la voix,	*the voice ;*		les voix,	*the voices.*
				le nez	*the nose ;*		les nez	*the noses.*

SECOND EXCEPTION.

Sing.		Plural.		Singular.			Plural.	
-au, *-eu*, *-œu*, *-ou*	take an *x* and make	*-aux*, *-eux*, *-œux*, *-oux*	as	bateau	*boat ;*		bateaux,	*boats.*
				feu	*fire ;*		feux,	*fires.*
				vœu,	*vow ;*		vœux,	*vows.*
				bijou,	*jewel ;*		bijoux,	*jewels.*

THIRD EXCEPTION.

Sing.		Plural.		Singular.			Plural.	
-al †	are changed into	*-aux*	as	cheval,	*horse ;*		chevaux,	*horses.*
-ail ‡		*-aux*		travail,	*work ;*		travaux,	*works.*

* Those in *-ou*, that take *x* in their plural, are *chou, caillou-bijou, genou, hibou, joujou, pou ;* the others now follow the general rule and take *s*, as *clou, clous ; verrou, verrous*, &c.

† Several nouns in *-al*, as *bal, cal, pal, régal, carnaval, local*, &c. follow however the general rule, simply taking *s*.

‡ Those in *-ail*, making their plural in *aux*, are particularly *bail, sous-bail, corail, émail, soupirail, travail, vantail, ventail ;* the rest, as *attirail, détail, éventail, gouvernail, portail, sérail*, &c. follow the general rule.

FOURTH EXCEPTION.

Sing.		Plural.		Singular.		Plural.	
*-ant** *-ent**	now drop their *t* in polysyllables	*-ans* *-ens*	as	enfant, moment,	*child ;* *moment ;*	enfans, momens,	*children.* *moments.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
These six are irregular	ail	*garlick*	aulx	*heads of garlick*
	bétail	*cattle*	bestiaux	*cattle*
	aïeul	*grandfather*	aïeux	*ancestors*
	ciel	*heaven*	cieux	*heavens*
	œil	*eye*	yeux	*eyes*
	bercail	*sheepfold*	*has no plural*	

EXERCISE.

The flowers of the gardens ; the niceties of the languages ;
fleur *jardin* *délicatesse* *langue*
the palaces of the kings ; the woods of those countries ;
palais *roi* *bois* *pays*
the walnuts of their orchards : the pictures of those painters ;
noix *verger* *tableau* *peintre*
the feathers of these birds ; the melody of their voices ; the
plume *oiseau* =f. s *voix*
gods of the pagans ; the jewels of my sisters ; the cabbages
dieu *païen* *bijou* *sœur* *chou*
of our gardens ; these charming places ; the horses of my
jardin *charmans* 2 *lieu* 1 *cheval*
stables ; the fans of these ladies ; the (front gates) of those
écurie *éventail* *dame* *portail*
churches ; the actions of my ancestors ; the evils of this
église — *aïeul* *mal*
life ; the victories of those generals ; the works of those
vie = — *travail*
architects ; the corals of those seas ; the (learned men) of
—tecte *corail* *mer* *savant*
those times ; the presents of my parents ; the teeth of your
temps-là — — *dent*
combs ; the playthings of our children : the heads of these
peigne *joujou* *enfant* *tête*
nails.
clou.

* Only polysyllables in *-nt* drop the *t*, but monosyllables retain it, as *chant, chants ; gant, gants; dent, dents;* &c. except, however, *gent, gens.*

CHAP. II.

OF THE ARTICLE.

The *Article* is a small word prefixed to substantives, to determine the extent of their signification.

The French article is { *le* before a mascu. substantive / *la* before a femin. substantive } the plural is *les* for both genders.

EXAMPLE.

Sing. { *le* jour *the day* / *la* nuit *the night* } plur. { *les* jours *the days* / *les* nuits *the nights.*

EXERCISE.

The sun, *the* moon, and *the* stars, are *the* glory of *soleil* m. *lune* f. *étoile*, f. pl. *sont* =f.
nature. *The* king, *the* queen, and *the* princes are well art—f. *roi* m. *reine* f. —m. pl. *très-*
pleased. *The* rose, *the* violet, *the* tulip, *the* narcissus, *satisfaits.* —f. *violette* f. *tulipe* f. *narcisse* m.
the hyacinth, *the* gilliflower, *the* jasmine, *the* lily, *the* *jacinthe* f. *giroflée* f. *jasmin* m. *lis* m.
honeysuckle, *the* ranunculus, are *the* delight of *the* sight, *chèvre-feuille* m. *renoncule* f. *délices* f. pl. *vue* f.
Poetry, painting, and *music*, are (sister arts). *The* art. *poésie* f. art. *peinture* f. art. *musique* f. *sœur* f. pl.
day and the night are equally necessary.
jour m. *nuit* f. *également* *nécessaires.*

The article is subject to elision and contraction. (*See p.* 73* and 72.)

Elision of the article is the omitting of the *e* in *le*, or the *a* in *la*, when these articles precede a noun beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute.

EXAMPLE.

l'argent / l'histoire } instead of { *le* argent *the money* / *la* histoire *the history*

But in this case the place of the letter thus omitted is supplied by an apostrophe.

EXERCISE.

The soul of man without cultivation is like a *âme* f. art. *homme h* m. *sans culture* f. *est comme* diamond (in the rough). *The* history of Spain is sometimes *diamant* m. *brut* =*h* m. *Espagne est quelquefois* very interesting. (Look at) *the* amaranth and *the* anemone; *très-intéressante.* *Considérez* *amaranthe* f. —f. what beauty! Self-love and pride are always the *quelle*=f. art. *amour-propre* art. *orgueil sont toujours* offspring of a weak mind. Honesty, inno- *parluge* m. *faible* 2 *esprit* m. 1. art. *Honnêteté, h.* m. art. cence, honour, and *the* love of virtue are — art. *honneur h* m. *amour* art. *vertu* f. (very much) esteemed. Summer, autumn, and winter, *très-estimés* art. *été* art. *automne* art. *hiver h* m. are very changeable. France is separated from Italy by the *variables* art.— *séparée de* art. *Italie par* Alps, and from Spain by the Pyrenees. *Alpes*, pl. art. —pl.

Contraction in grammar is the reducing of two syllables into one, and takes place, when the preposition *a*, or *de* precedes the article; in which case, instead of putting *de le* before a masculine singular, beginning with a consonant, or *h* aspirated, *du* must be employed; instead of *à le*, *au* must be used; and before the plural substantives of both genders, *de les* is changed into *des*, and *à les* into *aux*.

Thus	Du roi	is instead of	*de le* roi	*of the king*
	du héros	——	*de le* héros	*of the hero*
	au roi	——	*à le* roi	*to the king*
	au héros	——	*à le* héros	*to the hero*
	des rois	——	*de les* rois	*of the kings*
	des reines	——	*de les* reines	*of the queens*
	aux rois	——	*à les* rois	*to the kings*
	aux reines	——	*à les* reines	*to the queens*

EXERCISE.

The top *of the* mountains, and the bottom *of the* vallies *sommet* m. *montagne* *fond* m. *vallée* are equally agreeable. Silk is soft *to the* touch. The *également agréables* art. *Soie* f. *douce* *toucher* m. happiness of a feeling man is to relieve *the* wants *of the* *bonheur* m. *sensible* 2 1 *de subvenir à* *besoin*

poor. A man given *to* pleasure was never a great man.
pauvre m. s. *livré* art. *plaisir* m. *fut* *grand*
He obeyed *the* orders *of the* king. The warbling *of* birds,
Il obéit à *ordres* *gazouillement* m. art. *oiseau*
the murmuring *of* streams, the enamel *of* meadows, the
—*re* m. art. *ruisseau* *émail* m. art. *prairie*
coolness *of* woods, the fragrance *of* flowers, and the sweet
fraîcheur f. art. *bois* *parfum* m. art *fleur* *douce*
smell *of* plants, contribute greatly *to the* pleasures of the
odeur f. art. *plante* *contribuent* *beaucoup*
mind and to the health *of the* body.
esprit *santé* f. *corps* m.

De and *à* are never contracted with *la*, before a feminine substantive singular beginning with a consonant.

EXAMPLES.

De la reine	of the queen	*à la reine*	to the queen

Nor are *de* and *à* contracted with *le* or *la*, before any substantive singular, beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, but then the article suffers elision.

EXAMPLES.

De l'esprit	of the mind	*de l'homme*	of man
A l'esprit	to the mind	*à l'homme*	to man
De l'âme	of the soul	*à l'âme*	to the soul
De l'histoire	of the history	*à l'histoire*	to the history

Contraction likewise does not take place, when the adjective *tout*, all, every, intervenes between *de*, or *à*, and the article.

EXAMPLES.

De tout le monde,	of every body.
De tous les hommes,	of all men.
A tout le monde,	to every body.
A tous les hommes,	to all men.
De toutes les vertus,	of all virtues.
A toutes les maisons,	to all houses.

EXERCISE.

The hope *of* success strengthened the cause *of*
espérance f. art. *réussite* f. *fortifia* —f.
virtue, and weakened the audaciousness *of* rebellion.
art. *vertu* f. *affaiblit* *audace* f. art. —f.
Fire *of* imagination, strength *of* mind, and
art. *Feu* m. art. —f. art. *force* f. art. *esprit* art.
firmness *of* soul, are gifts *of* nature. We saw
fermeté f. art. *âme* *des dons* m. pl. art. —f. *Nous vîmes*

with horror that man given up *to* avarice and vo-
avec = *livré* * art. — *à* art. *vo-*
luptuousness. Good cultivation is that which contributes
lupté f. art. *Bonne culture* f. *ce qui contribue*
most *to the* fertility *of the* soil. More or less pain
le plus = *terre* f. *Plus ou moins de peine*
is the lot *of* every body. The history of man under
partage m. *tout* art. *monde* m. = art. *dans*
all the circumstances *of* life, is the study of the
toutes art. *circonstance* f. art. *vie* f. *étude*
wise. Playfulness does not become all ages
sage m. art. *Enjouement* m. * *ne sied ni à* art.—m. pl.
nor all characters.
ni à art. *caractère*, m. pl.

I. General Rule. In French, the article always agrees in gender and number with the substantive to which it relates.

EXAMPLES.

Le *livre que je cherche*,	The book which I am looking for.
La *femme que je vois*,	The woman whom I see.
Les *hommes qui étudient*,	The men that study.

EXERCISE.

The father, mother, brothers, sisters,
père m. art. *mère* f. art. *frère* m. pl. art. *sœurs* f. pl.
uncles, aunts, and several other relations
art. *oncles* m. pl. art. *tante* f. pl. *pleusieurs autres parens* m. pl.
were present. What we value is health, frugality,
étaient présent. *Ce que nous estimons*, *c'est* art. *santé* f. art. = f.
liberty, vigour of mind and body; it is the love of
art. =f. art. *vigueur* f. art. art. *corps* m. *ce* *amour* m.
virtue, reverence for the gods, fidelity to all
art. f. art. *crainte* f. de *dieu* m. pl. art.=f. *envers*
mankind, moderation in prosperity, for-
art. *monde* m. art. —f. *dans* art. = f. art. *for-*
titude in adversity, courage, good morals, and the
ce f. art. = f. art. —m. art. *bonnes-mœurs*, f. pl.
abhorrence of flattery.
horreur f. *h.* m. art. =f.

II. General Rule. The article and the prepositions *à* and *de*, whether contracted or not, are invariably to be repeated before every substantive.

EXAMPLES.

L'*esprit*, les *grâces*, et *la beauté nous captivent*.	Wit, grace, and beauty, captivate us.
Je vis hier le *roi*, la *reine*, *et* les *princes*.	I saw yesterday the king, queen, and princes.
L'*ignorance est la mère de* l'*erreur*, de *l'admiration*, *et* des *préventions de toute espèce*.	Ignorance is the mother of error, admiration, and prejudices of every kind.

EXERCISE.

Innocence of manners, sincerity, obedience,
art. —f. art. *mœurs*, pl. art. =f. art. *obéissance* f.
and abhorrence of vice, inhabit this happy region.
art. *horreur h.* m. art. —m. *habitent heureuse* —f.
The plants of the gardens, the animals of the forests, the minerals
plante jardin m. — *forêt* f. —
of the earth, the meteors of the sky, must all concur
terre f. *météore ciel* m. *doivent tous concourir*
to store the mind with an inexhaustible variety. Neither
à enrichir par inépuisable 2 =f. 1 *
suffering, punishment, nor kindness make any
art. *peine*. f. art. *châtiment* m. * art. *caresse* f. pl. *ne font nulle*
impression on those minds. The lily is the emblem *of*
— *sur âme* pl. *lis* m. *symbole* m.
virginity, candour, innocence and
art. =f. *de* art. =f. *de* art. —f. *de* art.
purity.
pureté f.

Du, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, answering to the English partitive *some* expressed, or understood, have by way of ellipsis passed into habitual use.

EXAMPLES.

Je mange du *pain*.	I eat bread.
Il prend de la *peine*.	He takes some trouble.
Nous mangeons du *hachis*.	We eat some hash.
Elle conçoit de la *haîne*.	She conceives a hatred.
Vous avez de l'*amitié*.	You have some friendship.
Vous prenez de l'*humeur*.	You go into an ill humour.
Nous cueillons des *pommes*.	We gather apples.
Ils vendent des *oranges*.	They sell oranges.

EXERCISE.

Give me *some* bread and butter. Offer him *some*
donnez-moi pain m. pr. art. *beurre* m. *Offrez-lui*

meat. Take *some* salt. (There is) mustard. We
viande f. *Prenez sel* m. *Voilà* pr. art. *moutarde* f. *Nous*
have *some* girkins. Shall I offer you *some* chicken? Shall I
avons cornichons pl. *Vous offrirai-je poulet* m. *Vous*
help you to *some* fruit? I will take (with pleasure) *some*
servirai-je * —m. *Je prendrai volontiers*
broth. Bring me *some* bread. Pour me out *some* beer.
bouillon m. *Apportez-moi Versez-moi* * *bière* f.
Drink *some* wine. Take *some* tea. Put (in) *some* sugar
Buvez vin m. *Prenez thé* m. *Mettez-y sucre* m.
and milk. I hear *some* noise. There falls *some* hail.
pr. art. *lait* m. *J'entends bruit* m. *Il tombe grêle* f. s.
She has *some* pride. Have you any ink and
Elle a orgueil m. *Avez-vous* pr. art. *encre* f. pr. art.
pens? Put *some* oil and vinegar to the salad.
plumes pl. *Mettez huile*, *h* m. pr. art. *vinaigre* m. *sur salade* f.
Eat *some* lobster. He has received *some* gold and
Mangez pr. art. *homard* m. *h.* asp. *Il a reçu or* m.
silver.
pr. art. *argent* m.

CHAP. III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

The adjective is a word, which is added to a substantive to express its quality, as,

bon père	*good father*	bonne mère	*good mother*
beau livre	*fine book*	belle image	*fine image*

These words *bon*, *bonne*, *beau*, *belle*, are adjectives, as they express the qualities of *père*, *mère*, *livre*, *image*.

A word is known to be an adjective, when it can be properly joined with the word *personne*, or the word *chose*. Thus, *habile*, skilful, and *agréable*, agreeable, are adjectives, because we can say *personne habile*, skilful person; *chose agréable*, agreeable thing.

In French the adjective takes the *gender* and *number* of the substantive to which it relates. This difference of *gender* and *number* is generally marked by the termination.

OF THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

RULE I. *All* adjectives ending in the singular in *e* mute, are of *both* genders.

EXAMPLES.

Un homme aimable,	An amiable man.
Une femme aimable,	An amiable woman.

RULE II. *Whenever* the adjective does not end in *e* mute, the *e* mute is added to form its feminine.

EXAMPLES.

m.	prudent	*f.*	prudente	*prudent*
	sensé		sensée	*sensible*
	poli		polie	*polite*
	tortu		tortue	*crooked*
	instruit		instruite	*informed*

RULE III. Adjectives in *-el*, *-eil*, *-ien*, *-on*, and *-et*, to form their feminine double their last consonant and take *e* mute.

EXAMPLES.

m.	cruel	*f.*	cruel*le*	*cruel*	=50	of each termination.
	pareil		pareil*le*	*like*	= 3	
	ancien		ancien*ne*	*ancient*	=80	
	bon		bon*ne*	*good*	=18	
	net*		net*te*	*clean*	=34	

RULE IV. Adjectives ending in *f*, change this letter into *-v*, and take *e* mute.

EXAMPLES.

m.	bre*f*	*f.*	brè*ve*	*short*
	acti*f*		acti*ve*	*active*
	naï*f*		naï*ve*	*ingenuous*
	neu*f*		neu*ve*	*new*

RULE V. Adjectives ending in *-x* change *-x* into *s*, and take *e* mute.

EXAMPLES.

m.	honteu*x*	*f.*	honteu*se*	*ashamed*
	vertueu*x*		vertueu*se*	*virtuous*
	jalou*x*		jalou*se*	*jealous*

RULE VI. Adjectives, or rather *substantives*, ending in *-eur*, derived from verbs, *generally* change the *r* into *s*, and take *e* mute ; but several, mostly of Latin origin, require *-eur* to be changed into *-rice*, in others *-eur* is transformed into *-eresse*, and about twelve, as, *antérieur, citérieur, extérieur, intérieur, inférieur, meilleur, mineur, majeur, postérieur, supérieur, ultérieur, prieur*, take only an *e* mute, and follow the *Second Rule.*

EXAMPLE.

m.	trompeur	*f.*	trompeuse	*deceitful*
	menteur		menteuse	*lying*
	parleur		parleuse	*talkative*
m.	acteur	*f.*	actrice	*actor, actress*
	accusateur		accusatrice	*accuser*
	admirateur		admiratrice	*admirer*
m.	enchanteur	*f.*	enchanteresse	*enchanting*
	pécheur		pécheresse	*sinful*
	vengeur		vengeresse	*avenging*

EXERCISE.

She is *decent.* This house is well *situated.* This pear
Elle — *Cette maison*, f. *bien situé* *poire* f.
is too *ripe.* She is *tall* and well *formed.* This story is
trop mûr *grand* *bien fait* *histoire* f.
very *entertaining.* This person is very *unsteady.* This moun-
très-amusant *personne* f. *bien léger* *mon-*
tain is *steep.* This road is not very *safe.* The door is not
tagne f. *escarpé* *route* f. *sûr* *porte* f.
open. This room is *dark.* This street is too *narrow.* It is
ouvert. *chambre* f. *obscur* *rue* f. *étroit* *Ce*
an *ancient* custom. She has *carnation* lips. His
coutume f. *a* art. *vermeil* 2 *lèvre* f. pl. 1. *Sa*
memory will be *immortal.* His manners are *natural.* The
=f. *sera* — *tel.* *Ses manières* f. pl. *naïf*
engagement was *warm.* (That is) an *original* thought. This
action f. *fut rif* *voilà* *neuf* 2 *pensée* f. 1.
cloth is the *best* of all. They are *delusive* pro-
étoffe f. *meilleur* f pl. *Ce* *des trompeur* 2 *pro-*
mises. He seduces by his *fawning* manners. The
messe f. pl. 1. *séduit* *par* *flatteur* 2 *manières* f. pl. 1.
delightful valley of Tempe is in Thessaly.
délicieux *vallée* f. *Tempé* *dans* art. =f.

EXCEPTIONS TO THE SECOND RULE.

The following adjectives double the last consonant in forming the feminine.

m.	*f.*		*m.*	*f.*	
bas	basse	*low*	épais	épaisse	*thick*
cas	casse	*hoarse, broken*	métis	métisse	*mongrel*
gras	grasse	*fat*	gros	grosse	*big*
las	lasse	*tired*	sot	sotte	*silly*
exprès	expresse	*express*	vieillot	vieillotte	*oldish*
profès	professe	*professed*	*monk* or *nun* nul gentil	nulle gentille	*none* *genteel*

OTHER EXCEPTIONS TO THE SECOND AND FIFTH RULES.

The following adjectives form their feminine by doubling the *l* in the masculine before a vowel.

m.	*f.*		*m.*	*f.*	
beau, bel	belle	*fine*	fou, fol	folle	*mad*
nouveau, nouvel	nouvelle	*new*			
vieux, vieil	vieille	*old*	mou, mol	molle	*soft*

The following are entirely irregular.

m	*f.*		*m.*	*f.*	
blanc	blanche	*white*	faux	fausse	*false*
franc	franche	*frank*	roux	rousse	*red*
frais	fraîche	*fresh*	doux	douce	*sweet*
sec	sèche	*dry*	aigre-doux	aigre-douce	*tart*
Grec	Grecque	*Greek*	tiers	tierce	*third*, &c
public	publique	*public*	tors	torse, *or* torte	*twisted*
caduc	caduque	*decrepit*			
Turc	Turque	*Turkish*	coi	coite	*still, snug*
long	longue	*long*	favori	favorite	*favorite*
bénin	bénigne	*benign*	jumeau	jumelle	*twin*
malin	maligne	*malignant*	traître	traîtresse	*traitor*

N. B. *m.*: concret, discret, indiscret, inquiet, complet, incomplet, replet, suret, prêt — make *f.*: concrète, discrète, indiscrète, inquiète, complète, incomplète, replète, surète, prête — follow the second rule, except in the *additional accent*, and differing from the numerous terminations in *-et**, of the THIRD RULE.

Préfix m. makes *préfixe* f. and is the only adjective in *-x*, which preserves this letter and follows the SECOND RULE.

Some adjectives have no feminine, as *bisché*, *dispos*, *fat*, *paillet*, &c. ; others have no masculine, as *blette*, &c.

EXERCISE.

The grass is very *thick*. That soup is very *good*, but too *fat*.
herbe f. *soupe* f. *mais trop*
It is a *foolish* undertaking. There is *no* truth in all that.
sot *enterprise* f. *Il n'y a nul vérité* f. *dans tout celà*
This water is not *clean*. It is a very *silly* history. It is in the
eau f. *net*. *Ce* 2 *fol* 3 =f. 1. *à*
newest fashion. It is a *fine* statue. The law is *express* upon
nouveau mode f. *beau* =f. *loi* f. *sur*
that point. He lives in a state of *luxurious* idleness. This wax
—m. *Il vit dans* * * *mou oisiveté* f. *cire* f.
is not very *white*. She is as *fresh* as a rose. The paint
* *comme* —f. *peinture* f.
on that wainscot is not *dry*. His answer is a *mere* evasion.
de *lambris* m. *réponse* f. *franc défaite* f.
The thing is *public*. That plant possesses a *pernicious*
chose f. *herbe* f. *a* *malin* 2
property. She is of a *benevolent* character. The *avenging*
qualité f. 1. *a* * *bénin* 2 *humeur* f. *vengeur* 2
thunderbolt smote that impious wretch. He extended to
foudre f. 1. *frappa* *impie* m. * *tendit* 2 *
us a *protecting* hand. This woman is jealous and *deceit-*
nous 1 —*teur* 2. *main* f. 1. *femme* f. *jaloux* *faux-*
ful. His temper is mild. This colour is too *red*. These *old*
Son humeur f. *doux* *couleur* f. *trop roux*.
clothes are *good* for nothing.
hardes f. pl. *ne* *à* *rien*.

OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

GENERAL RULE. Every adjective forms its plural by the simple addition of *s*, as, *bon*, *bons*, *bonne*, *bonnes*, *poli*, *polis*, *polie*, *polies*. This rule is without exception as it regards the feminine termination ; but the masculine has the four following exceptions.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Adjectives ending in *-s* or *-x*, do not change their termination in the plural masculine, as *gros*, *gras*, *hideux*.

2. Those ending in *-au*, take *x* in the plural, as *beau*, *beaux*, *nouveau*, *nouveaux*.

3. Some adjectives in *-al*, change this termination into *aux*, as, *égal*, equal, *égaux ; général*, *généraux ;* but most of these have no plural masculine, as *amical*, *austral*, *boréal*, *canonial*, *conjugal*, *diamétral*, *fatal*, *filial*, *final*, *frugal*, *jovial*, *lustral*, *matinal*, *naval*, *pastoral*, *pectoral*, *special*, *vénal*, and some others.

4. Polysyllables ending in *-nt*, according to the most general practice, drop the *t* in the plural masculine, as *excellent*, *excellens ;* but monosyllables retain it, as *lent*, slow, *lents*. The adjective *tout*, all, makes *tous*.

EXERCISE.

They are *envious* and *jealous*. Those fowls are *big* and
Ils = *poulet* m. pl.
fat. Owls are *frightful* birds. (There
art. *Hibou* m. pl. *des* *hideux* 2 *oiseau* m. pl. 1. *Voilà*
are) some *beautiful* jewels. The two *new* operas
de beau *bijou* m. pl. *deux nouveau* — m. pl.
have succeeded. Men are only *equal* in the
ont réussi art. 2 *ne* 1 *que* 4 3 *par*
infirmities of nature. The *general* officers are
= art. — f. — 2 *officiers* m. pl. 1.
assembled. This fruit is *excellent*. His proficiency
— *blé* — m. pl. *sont* — *Ses progrès* m. pl.
is *slow*, but solid. *All* his friends have been very *glad* to
sont *solide* *ami* m. pl. *ont été* *bien-aise* *de*
see him. Those ladies are tired with walking. You
voir 2 *le* 1. *dame* f. pl. *las* *de* *marcher*. *Vous*
have powerful enemies, but their efforts will be vain
avez de *ennemi* m. pl. *mais leurs* — m. pl. *seront* —
and useless. The four cardinal points are the east,
inutile. *quatre* *point* m. pl. 1. *orient* m.
west, south, and north.
art. *occident* m. art. *midi* m. art. *nord* m.

OF THE DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

Grammarians commonly reckon *three* degrees of comparison ; the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

The *positive* is the adjective expressing the quality of an object, without any increase, or diminution, as *beau, belle.*

EXERCISE.

A child *gentle, amiable*, and *docile*, is beloved by every *enfant* m. *doux, aimable* — *aimé de tout* body. An *ingenuous* candour, an *amiable* simplicity and a *le monde.* — *nu* 2 =f. 1. =f.
lively artlessness are the charm of youth. The *piquant* 2 *naïveté* f. 1 *charme* m. art. *jeunesse* f.
sight of an *agreeable* landscape is a *varied* and rapid source *vue* f. *agréable paysage* m. *varié* 2 *rapidé* 3—f. 1 of *delightful* sensations.
delicieux 2 —f. pl. 1.

The *comparative* is so called, because it draws a comparison between two or many objects. When two things are compared, the one is either superior, inferior, or equal to the other ; hence three sorts of comparison, that of *superiority, inferiority*, and *equality.*

N. B. The adverbs *plus, moins*, and *aussi*, which mark these three kinds of comparison, are to be repeated before every adjective, when several are joined to the same substantive, and are followed by the conjunction *que*, rendered in English by *than* or *as.*

The *comparative of superiority* is formed by putting *plus*, more, before the adjective, and *que*, than, after it.

EXAMPLE.

La rose est plus belle que la violette,	The rose is more beautiful than the violet.

EXERCISE.

The republic of Athens was *more illustrious* than that
république f. *Athènes a été illustre celle*
of Lacedemon. Homer was perhaps a *greater* genius
Lacédémone. Homère était peut-être grand génie m.
than Virgil; but Virgil had a *more delicate* and *more refined*
Virgile; mais avait fin 2 *délicat*
taste than Homer. Milton appears (to me) *more sublime*
3 *goût* m. 1 *h* m. *paraît* 2 *me* 1
than all the other epic poets.
autre 1 *épique* 3 *poète* m. pl. 2.

The *comparative of inferiority* is formed by prefixing *moins*, less, to the adjective, and adding *que*, than, after it.

EXAMPLE.

La violette est moins belle que la rose. The violet is less beautiful than the rose.

EXERCISE.

Shipwreck and death are *less fatal* than the pleasures
art. *Naufrage* m. art. *mort* f. *funestes* pl. m.
which attack virtue. The violet is *less brilliant* to the
qui attaquent art. f. f. *brillant*
eye than the lily, a true emblem of modesty
m. pl. *lis* m.* *véritable* 2 *emblème* m. 1. art. = f.
and of pride. Autumn is *less varied* than
de art. *orgueil* m. art. *Automne* f. *varié* art.
spring, but it is richer.
printemps m. *elle riche.*

The *comparative of equality* is formed by placing *aussi*, as, before the adjective, and *que*, as, after it.

EXAMPLES.

La tulipe est aussi belle que la rose. The tulip is as beautiful as the rose.

EXERCISE.

Pope's images are *as perfect* as his style is har-
de Pope 2 art. — f. pl. 1 *parfait son* — *m.*
monious. Delicacy of taste is a gift of na-
= art. *Délicatesse* f. art. *goût* m. *don* m. art.

ture, *as scarce* as true genius. The love of our neighbour
—f. *rare* art. *vrai génie* m. *amour du* * *prochain*
is *as necessary* in society for the happiness of life,
= *dans* art. =f. *pour bonheur* m. art. *vie* f.
as in christianity for eternal salvation. It is *as easy*
art. —*nisme* m. art. —*nel* 2 *salut* m. 1. *aisé*
to do good, as to do evil.
de faire art. *bien* m. *de* art. *mal* m

The three following adjectives, *meilleur*, better, *pire*, worse, *moindre*, less, are comparatives in themselves.

N. B. As most beginners are apt to confound these comparative adjectives with the comparative adverbs, MIEUX, PIS, and MOINS, because they are generally rendered by the same English words *better*, *worse*, and *less*, it may be adviseable to subjoin here these comparative adverbs with their positives, that the difference of meaning may serve as a distinction.

Adjectives.

Meilleur, better, is the comparative of *bon*, good, and is used instead of *plus bon*, which is never said.

Pire signifies *plus mauvais*, worse, or more wicked, and is used instead of this.

Moindre means *plus petit*, less, or smaller, and is used instead of these terms.

Adverbs.

Mieux *, better, is the comparative of *bien*, well, and is used instead of *plus bien*, more well, which is said in neither language.

*Pis** is the comparative of *mal*, badly, and is used for *plus mal*, worse, which is likewise employed.

Moins is the comparative of *peu*, little, and is used for *plus peu*, which is never heard.

EXAMPLES.

Ce fruit-là est bon, mais celui-ci est meilleur.	*That fruit is good, but this is better.*
Sa condition est mauvaise, mais elle a été pire.	*His condition is bad, but it has been worse.*
Ma dépense est petite, mais la vôtre est moindre.	*My expense is small, but yours is smaller.*

* There are some instances of *pis* and *mieux* used adjectively, but this is not the place to notice them.

Il se conduit bien, mais elle se conduit encore mieux.	*He behaves well, but she behaves still better.*
Il se portait mal, mais il est pis que jamais.	*He was unwell, but he is worse than ever.*
Je parle peu, vous parlez encore moins.	*I speak little, you speak still less.*

EXERCISE.

His reasoning is not *better* than yours. Your style *is*
Son raisonnement m. *le vôtre.* *Votre* m.
(a great deal) *better* than that of his brother. The thickness of
de beaucoup *celui* *son* *épaisseur* f.
this wall is less than that of the next wall. This column
mur m. *celle* *voisin* 2 1 *colonne* f.
is *less* than the other in height and thickness. The remedy
autre en hauteur f. *en grosseur* f. *remède* m.
is *worse* than the disease. Your horse is *worse* than mine.
mal m. *cheval* m. *le mien.*

The adjective is in the *superlative* degree, when it expresses the quality in a very high, or in its highest state : hence there are two sorts of superlatives, the *absolute* and the *relative.*

The *superlative absolute* is formed by putting *très*, *fort*, *bien*, very, before the adjective ; it is called *absolute*, because it does not express any relation to other objects.

EXAMPLE.

Londres est une très-belle ville. London is a very fine city.

REMARK. The adverbs *extrêmement*, extremely, *infiniment*, infinitely, are likewise marks of the superlative absolute.

EXAMPLE.

Cet homme est extrêmement savant.	That man is extremely learned.
Dieu est infiniment heureux.	God is supremely happy.

EXERCISE.

That landscape is *very diversified*, *very extensive*, and *infi-*
paysage m. *varié* *étendu*
nitely agreeable on every side. The Alps are *very high* and
agréable de tout côte m. f. pl. *haut*

very steep. The style of Fenelon is *very rich*, and *very*
escarpé. —m. —
harmonious, but it is sometimes prolix; that of Bossuet is
= *il* *quelquefois prolixe ; celui*
extremely sublime, but it is sometimes harsh and unpolished.
élevé *dur* *rude.*

The *superlative relative* is formed by prefixing the article *le* to the comparatives *meilleur*, *moindre*, *pire*, and to the adverbs *plus* and *moins ;* it is called *relative*, as it expresses a relation to other objects.

EXAMPLES.

Londres est la plus belle des villes. London is the finest of cities.
Je préfère une maison de campagne au plus beau palais. I prefer a country-house to the finest palace.

Plus and *moins* with the article are repeated before every adjective.

EXERCISE.

The most beautiful comparison, that there is perhaps in
comparaison f. *que il y ait peut-être dans*
any language, is that which Pope has drawn from the Alps,
aucun *langue* f. *celle que* *tiré* f. *de*
in his Essay on Criticism. *The most able* men are
dans son Essai sur art. *Critique* f. *habile gens* m. pl.
not always *the most virtuous.* *The most ancient* and *most*
toujours *vertueux* f.
general of all kinds of idolatry, was the worship ren-
f. art. *espèce* f. pl. = *était* *culte* m. *ren-*
dered to the sun. *The least excusable* of all errors is
du *soleil* m. art. = f.
that which is wilful.
celle qui *volontaire.*

AGREEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE SUBSTANTIVE.

RULE I. The adjective always agrees in gender and number with the substantive to which it relates.

EXAMPLES.

Le bon père,	The good father.
La bonne mère,	The good mother.
De beaux jardins,	Fine gardens.
De belles promenades,	Fine walks.

Bon is masculine singular, because *père* is masculine, and in the singular ; *bonne* is feminine singular, because *mère* is feminine, and in the singular; *beaux* is in the masculine plural, because *jardins*, is masculine, and plural, &c.

EXERCISE.

These hills are *covered* with trees *loaded* with
coteau m. pl. *couvert de* *arbre* m. pl. *chargé de*
fruit, already *ripe*. A *pure* stream rolls its *limpid*
— m. pl. *déjà* *mur*. *clair ruisseau* m. *roule son* *limpide* 2
water through the midst of meadows *enamelled* with
cristal m. 1 *à* *milieu* m. *prairie* f. pl. *émaillé de*
flowers. (Every thing) interests the heart in this abode,
fleur f. pl. *tout* *intéresse* *cœur* m. *séjour* m.
which is *full* of charms. Fly, *inconsiderate* youth,
* * *plein* *attrait* m. pl. *Fuyez*, —*déré* 2 *jeunesse* f. 1
fly from the *enchanting* allurements of a *vain* world:
* —*teur* 2 *altrait* 1 —2 *monde* m. 1.
its *perfidious* sweets are a *slow* poison, which (would
ses —*de* 2 *douceur* f. pl. 1 *lent* 2—m. 1 *qui* *dé-*
destroy) in your soul the *noble* enthusiasm of goodness,
truirait dans *âme* — *enthousiasme* m. art. *bien* m.
and the *precious* seeds of *sublime* virtues.
= *germe* m. art. —2 *vertu* 1.

Rule II. When the adjective relates to two substantives singular of the same gender, it must be put in the plural, and agree with them in gender.

EXAMPLE.

Le roi et le berger sont égaux The king and the shepherd are
après la mort, equal after death.

EXERCISE.

Uprightness and piety are much *esteemed*, even by
art. *Droiture* f. art. *piété* f. *très* *estimé* *même de*
the wicked. A man in the most elevated,
méchant pl. *art. *dans* *élevé* 2 art. *état* 1
and a man in the most obscure situation, are equally
*art. *obscur* 2 art. *état* m. 1. *également*
precious in the eyes of God. Pilpay and Confucius are very
= *à* m. pl. *Dieu* — —
celebrated among the nations m. of Asia.
célèbre *parmi* *peuple* pl. art.

RULE III. When the two substantives, to which the adjective relates, are of different genders, the adjective is to be put in the masculine plural.

EXAMPLE.

Mon père et ma mère sont contens, My father and mother are contented.

EXERCISE.

His probity and disinterestedness are *known* (every where)
= f. *son désintéressement* m. *connu* *partout*
The love of life, and the fear of death, are
amour m. art. *vie* f. *crainte* art. *mort* f.
natural to man. Ignorance and self-love are
—*rel* art. art. —f. art. *amour-propre* m.
equally *presumptuous.* My sister and brother were very
présomptueux f. *mon* m. *ont été*
attentive to the instructions of their masters.
= — *maître* m. pl.

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

Numbers are divided into five classes, viz. *cardinal*, *ordinal*, *collective*, *distributive*, and *proportional.*

CARDINAL NUMBER.	ORDINAL NUMBER.		NUMERICAL COLLECTIVE NOUNS.	
1 un, une	*premier*	*first*	unité	*unit*
2 deux	deux*ième*, *second*	2d	couple, paire	*couple*
3 trois	trois*ième*	3d	trio	*trio*
4 quatre	quatr*ième*	4th	deux couples	*two couple*
5 cinq	cinqu*ième*	5th		
6 six	six*ième*	6th	demi-douzaine	*half a dozen*
7 sept	sept*ième*	7th		
8 huit	huit*ième*	8th	huitaine	*week*
9 neuf	neuv*ième*	9th	neuvaine	*nine days of prayer*
10 dix	dix*ième*	10th	dizaine	*half a score*
11 onze	onz*ième*	11th		
12 douze	douz*ième*	12th	douzaine	*dozen*

CARDINAL NUMBER.		ORDINAL NUMBER.		NUMERICAL COLLECTIVE NOUNS.	
13	treize	treizième	13th		
14	quatorze	quatorzième	14th		
15	quinze	quinzième	15th	quinzaine	*fortnight*, &c.
16	seize	seizième	16th		
17	dix-sept	dix-septième	17th		
18	dix-huit	dix-huitième	18th		
19	dix-neuf	dix-neuvième	19th		
20	vingt	vingtième	20th	vingtaine	*a score*
21	vingt-et-un	vingt-et-unième	21st		
22	vingt-deux	vingt-deux-ième, &c.	22d		
30	trente	trentième	30th	trentaine	*a score & a half*
31	trente-et-un, &c.	trente-unième	31st		
40	quarante	quarantième	40th	quarantaine	*two score*
41	quarante-et-un	quarante-unième	41st		
50	cinquante	cinquantième	50th	cinquantaine	*two score & a half*
51	cinquante-et-un	cinquante-unième	51st		
60	soixante	soixantième	60th	soixantaine	*three score*
61	soixante-et-un	soixante-unième	61st		
70	soixante-dix	soixante-dixième	70th		
71	soixante-onze	soixante-onzième	71st		
72	soixante-douze, &c.	soixante-douzième	72d		
80	quatre-vingt	quatre-vingtième	80th		*four score*
81	quatre-vingt-un, &c.	quatre-vingt-unième	81st		
90	quatre-vingt-dix	quatre-vingt-dixième	90th		
91	quatre-vingt-onze	quatre-vingt-onzième	91st		

CARDINAL NUMBER.		ORDINAL NUMBER.		NUMERICAL COLLECTIVE NOUNS.	
100	cent	cent*ième*	100th	1 centaine	1 *hundred*
101	cent-un, &c.	cent-un*ième* &c.	101st		
200	deux cents	deux-cent-*ième*	200th	2 centaines	2 *hundred*
1000	mille	mill*ième*	1000th	1 millier	1 *thousand*
2000	deux mille, &c.	deux-mill-*ième*, &c.	2000th	2 milliers	2 *thousand*
10,000	dix mille	dix-mill-*ième*	10,000th	1 myriade	1 *myriad*
1,000,000	mille fois mille	mil-lion-*ième*	millionth	1 million	1 *million*

Un milliard, or *billion*, a thousand millions, *un trillion*, &c

---

The formation of the ordinal number from the cardinal does not require any explanation, except that *-unième* is only found in compound numbers, where *premier* and *second* are inadmissible.

When mentioning the days of the month, the French make use of the cardinal instead of the ordinal number, and say, *le onze d'avril*, not *le onzième*, &c. *le vingt-cinq du mais prochain*, and not *le vingt-cinquième*, &c. except, however, that instead of *l'un du mois*, they say, *le premier*, the first day of, &c. and sometimes *le second*, though not so well, for *le deux;* but this mode proceeds no farther.

Mille never takes *s* in the plural, thus, *vingt mille* is twenty thousand, and not *vingt milles*, which would mean twenty miles; and when mentioning the christian

æra, it is customary to curtail this word into *mil*, and to write, for example, *l'an mil huit cent seize*, and never *l'an mille*, &c.

There are many other numerical expressions used in poetry, music, games, &c. as *distique*, *tercet*, *quatrain*, *sixain*, *huitain*, &c. *solo*, *duo*, *trio*, *quatuor*, *quinque*, *quinte*, *octave*, &c. *beset*, *sonnez*, &c.

Un millier is very often employed for one thousand *weight*, but *quintal* is never used except in the sense of one hundred weight.

The distributive numbers are those which express the different parts of a whole: as, *la moitié*, the half; *le quart*, the quarter; *un cinquième*, a fifth, &c.

The proportional denote the progressive increase of things; as, *le double*, the double; *le triple*, treble; *le centuple*, a hundred-fold, &c.

CHAP. IV.

OF THE PRONOUN.

A *pronoun* is a word substituted in the place of a noun.

There are several kinds of pronouns, as the *personal*, *possessive*, *relative*, *absolute*, *demonstrative*, and *indefinite*.

§ I.

OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns are used for the names of persons, or things.

There are three *persons:* the first who speaks; the second who is spoken to; and the third is the person, or thing spoken of.

PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON.

Singular.

Subject.	je			*I*	je loue Dieu	*I praise God*
Object.	me	*for*	à moi	*to me*	il me donne	*he gives me*
	me	——	moi	*me*	il me blesse	*he hurts me*
	moi	——	à moi	*to me*	donnez-moi	*give me*
	moi	——	moi	*me*	aidez-moi	*help me*

Plural.

Subj.	*nous*			*we*	nous louons Dieu	*we praise God*
Obj.	*nous*	*for*	à nous	*to us*	il nous donne	*he gives us*
	nous	——	nous	*us*	il nous blesse	*he hurts us*

They are both masculine and feminine, that is, of the same gender as the person, or persons they represent.

In general, *je* and *me* are put before the verb ; *moi* after it ; and *nous* before, but sometimes likewise after it.

EXERCISE.

I cast my eyes upon the objects which surrounded *me,*
portai vue f. *s. sur objet qui environnaient me,*
and saw with pleasure that all was calm and tranquil. Do
je vis avec que était calme tranquille *
you not see in all the features of my father that he is
3 1 4 *voyez* 2 *dans trait* m. pl. *que*
satisfied with *me ?* *We* have told the truth. What were
content de moi ? avons dit vérité f. *Que* *
they saying of *us ?* If *we* desire to be happy, *we* must
on 2 *disait* 1 *Si désirons de devons* 2
not deviate from the path of virtue.
1 3 *nous écarter de sentier* m. art.

PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

Singular.

Subj.	tu			*thou*	tu crains Dieu	*thou fearest God*
Obj.	te	*for*	à toi	*to thee*	il te parle	*he speaks to thee*
	te	——	toi	*thee*	il te voit	*he sees thee*
	toi	——	à toi	*to thee*	donne-toi la peine	*give thyself the trouble*
	toi	——	toi	*thee*	habille-toi	*dress thyself*

		Plural.		
Subj.	vous	*ye*, or *you*	vous louez Dieu	*you praise God*
Obj.	vous *for* à vous	*to you*	il vous parle	*he speaks to you*
	vous —— vous	*you*	il vous respecte	*he respects you*

In general *tu* and *te* are put before the verb ; *toi* after ; and *vous* before, but sometimes after it.

Remark. Politeness has led to the use of the plural *vous*, instead of the singular *tu* : as, *vous êtes bien bon*, you are very good, for *tu es bien bon*.

EXERCISE.

Thou art greater than I ; and from *thee* I have (at once)
es *moi* *toi* *ai* *en même*
learnt humility and wisdom. I (was telling)
temps 2 *appris* 1 art. = f. art. *sagesse* f. *disais*
thee that dancing is to the body what taste is to the mind.
te *que* art. *danse* f. m. *ce que* art. m.
You have shown us great talents ; when (will *you* show)
avez 2 *montré* 3 1 *de* —m. *quand montrerez-vous* 2
us great virtues ? How amiable *you* are ! How good *you* are
1 *de* f. pl. *Que* 3 1 *êtes* 2 3 1 2
to have thought of us ! (It was said) of *you* the other day,
de vous être occupé *On disait* *autre jour* m.
that *you* intended to spend a winter in London (in order to)
vous vous proposiez de passer m. *à* —*dres* *pour*
see every thing curious which that city presents.
voir tout *ee* =6 *que* 1 *cette* 2 *ville* 3 *offre* 4 *de* 5.

PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

		Singular.		
Sub.	il *m.*	*he*	il perd son temps	*he loses his time*
	elle *f.*	*she*	elle travaille toujours	*she is always at work*
Obj.	lui *m.* *for* à lui	*to him*	dites-*lui* que je *lui* parlerai	*tell him that I will speak to him*
	lui *f.* —— à elle	*to her*	dites-lui que vous *lui* donnerez	*tell* her *that you will give her*

Singular.

Object.	lui *m.*	*for*	le	*him*	je ne connais que *lui* de capable	*I know but him capable*
	le *m.*	*or*	lui	*him*	je *le* méprise	*I despise him*
	la *f.*	—	elle	*her*	je *la* respecte	*I respect her*
	elle *f.*		elle	*her*	Il ne connait qu'*elle*	*he knows but her*
	le *m.*	*for*	celà	*it*	je ne *le* savais pas	*I did not know it*

Plural.

Subject.	ils *m.*	—	—	*they*	*ils* chantent	*they sing* (gentlemen)
	elles *f.*	—	—	*they*	*elles* rient	*they laugh* (ladies)
Object.	leur *m.*	*for* à eux		*to them*	payez *leur* ce que vous *leur* devez	*pay* them *what you owe* to them (to men)
	leur *f.*	*for* à elles		*to them*	dites-*leur*, que je désire *leur* parler	*tell* them *that I wish to speak* to them (to ladies)
	les *m.*	*or*	eux	*them*	vous *les* trouverez	*you will find* them (men)
	les *f.*	*or*	elles	*them*	il *les* admire	*he admires* them (ladies)
	eux *m.*	—	—	*them*	je ne vois qu'*eux*	*I see but* them (gentlemen)
	elles	—	—	*them*	il ne connait qu'*elles*	*he knows but* them (ladies)

All the personal pronouns *je*, *tu*, *il*, *vous*, *ils*, and *elle*, *elles*, when subjects, are put after the verb in interrogations, as,

Singular.

Subject.	je	*I*	*dois*-je payer ?	*must I pay ?*
	tu	*thou*	as-tu dit ?	*hast* thou *said ?*
	il	*he*	chante-t-*il* bien ?	*does* he *sing* well ?
	elle	*she*	travaille-t-*elle ?*	*does* she *work ?*

	Plural.			
Subject.	nous	*we*	irons-*nous ?*	*shall we go ?*
	vous	*you*	viendrez-*vous ?*	*will you come ?*
	ils *m.*	*they*	chantent-*ils ?*	*do they sing ?*
	elles *f.*	*they*	travaillent-*elles ?*	*do they work ?*

Il, le, ils, eux, are always masculine : *elle, la, elles,* feminine ; and *les, leur,* of both genders, as well as *lui,* when meaning *to him,* or *to her ;* in other cases, *lui* exclusively belongs to the masculine.

All personal pronouns, when subjects, are placed before their verbs, except in interrogative sentences, and most of them likewise, when objects precede them, except in the imperative affirmative. But the objective *eux, elles, lui* for *le,* and *moi, toi, soi,* with one exception of this last, in *soi disant,* styling himself, are invariably placed after the verbs by which they are governed.

EXERCISE.

He loved *them,* because *they* were mild, attentive, and
aimait m. *parce que* *doux* =
grateful. *He* (was saying) (to *them*), do you not know
reconnaissant *disait* * 3 1 4 *savez* 2
that the property of merit is to excite envy ? *She*
que *propre* m. art. *mérite* m. *de exciter* art. *envie* f.
often exhorted me to the study which is the most useful,
souvent 2 *exhortait* 1 *étude* f. * * *utile*
that of the human heart. *They* make us love virtue, more
celle 2 m. 1. *font* *aimer* art. f.
by their examples than by their words. What has been
par leurs exemple pl. *parole* f. pl. *Que* 1 *on* 3 *a-t-2**
said of *them ?* Did they speak of *them ?* Do you not see
dit *eux ?* * *on* 2 *parlait* 1 *elle ?* * 4 1 5 *voyez* 3
her ? With what pleasure *she* plays !
2 *quel* *joue !*

REFLECTED AND RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

	Singular.		EXAMPLES.	
Object.	soi	with a *preposition*	chacun tire *à soi*	*every one draws* to himself
	soi	governed by the *verb*	l'égoïsme fait qu'on ne voit que *soi*	*egotism makes a person see none but* himself
Object.	se *for*	*à soi, à lui-même*	il *se* donne des louanges	*he gives* himself *praises*
	se *for*	*à elle-même*	elle *se* fait illusion	*she imposes* on herself
	se *for*	*soi,* or *lui-même*	il *se* perd	*he ruins* himself
	se *for*	*soi,* or *elle-même*	elle *se* flatte	*she flatters* herself.

	Plural.		EXAMPLES	
Object.	se *for*	*à eux-mêmes*	ils *s'*attribuent la gloire de, &c.	*they attribute* to themselves the glory of, &c.
	se *for*	*à elles-mêmes*	elles *se* prescrivent pour règle de, &c.	*they prescribe* to themselves *as a rule to*, &c.
	se *for*	*l'un à l'autre*	ils *s'*entredonnent, ou se font des cadeaux	*they exchange gifts*
	se *for*	*eux-mêmes*	ils *se* sont déshonorés	*they have disgraced* themselves
	se *for*	*elles-mêmes*	elles *se* sont flattées	*they have flattered* themselves
	se *for*	*l'un l'autre*	ils *s'*entr'aident	*they help* one another
	se *for*	*les uns les autres*	les rats, dit-on, *s'*entre-dévorent	*rats, it is said, eat* each other.

REMARK. *Se* is placed before a verb, and *soi*, after a preposition, and sometimes after a verb.

EXERCISE.

In a thousand instances we do not watch sufficiently over
* *mille* *occasion* f. *on* * *veille* *assez* *sur*
ourselves. The glory of the world (passes away) in an instant.
soi = f. *monde* m. *s'évanouit* *en* — m.
He gives *himself* (a great deal) of trouble. She tires *herself*.
donne se *beaucoup* *peine* f. *lasse se*
People should (very seldom) speak of *themselves*. Virtue is
On *doit* *rarement* *parler* *soi* art. f.
amiable in *itself*. We must take upon *ourselves* the care
de soi *On doit prendre* *sur* *soi* *soin* m.
of our own affairs.
ses propre affaire f. pl.

OF THE PRONOUN RELATIVE *en*.

EN *for*	de lui *of him*	cet homme vous plait, vous *en* parlez souvent	*that man pleases you, you speak* of him *often*
	d'elle *of her*	je ne crois pas cette femme sincère, je m' *en* méfie	*I do not believe that woman sincere, I distrust* her
	d'eux *of them*	ces fruits paraissent bons, j'*en* mangerais volontiers	*these fruits look good, I should like to eat* some of them
	d'elles *of them*	voilà de belles oranges, voulez-vous m'*en* donner ?	*these are beautiful oranges, will you give me* some
	de celà *of that*	on ne m'a pas trompé, j'*en* suis sûr	*I have not been imposed upon, I am sure* of it
	d'ici *hence*	il arriva ici, comme j'*en* partais	*he arrived here as I was setting off* from hence
	de là *thence*	vous allez à Paris, et monsieur *en* vient	*you are going to Paris, this gentleman comes* from thence.

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN, OR ADVERB *y*.

y for	à lui *to him*	c'est un honnête homme, fiez-vous-*y*	*he is an honest man, trust* to him.
	à elle *to her*	cette raison est solide, je m'*y* rends	*that reason is good, I yield* to *it.*
	à eux *to them*	ces argumens sont pressans, je n'*y* vois point de replique	*these arguments are cogent, I see no reply* to them.
	à elles *to them*	accablé de vos civilités, je ne sais comment *y* répondre	*loaded with your civilities, I do not know how to acknowledge* them.
	à cela *to it*	j'ai éprouvé cette perte quand j'*y* pensais le moins	*I experienced that loss, when I least thought of* it.
	ici *here*	nous partons de Londres, quand vous *y* venez	*we set off from London, when you came* hither.
	là *there*	c'est un endroit charmant, je compte m'*y* fixer	*It is a fine place, I intend to settle* there

REMARK. *Y* and *en* are always put before the verb, except with the imperative affirmative.

EXERCISE.

They speak (a great deal) *of it.* You like French authors, you are always speaking *of them.* That is a delicate affair; the success *of it* is doubtful. See them; I consent *to it*, but do not trust *them.* That is a fine appointment: he had long aspired *to it.* He has done it; but he will get nothing *by it.*

On parle beaucoup *aimes* art. *Français* 2 *auteur* 1 * 2 *parlez* 1 *Ce délicat* 2 = f. 1 *succès* m. *douteux* *Voyez* 1 *consens* 3 2 * 1 5 *vous* 2 *fiez* 4 *y* 3 *Ce charge* f. * *depuis long-temps* 3 *—rait* 2 1 *a fait* *ne* 1 *gagnera* 3 *rien* 4 *y* 2

§ II.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are adjectives, which denote the possession of things. When we say, *mon habit*, my coat ; *votre maison*, your house ; *son jardin*, his or her garden ; it is the same as saying *l'habit qui est à moi*, the coat which belongs to me ; *la maison qui est à vous*, the house which belongs to you ; *le jardin qui est à lui*, or *à elle*, the garden which belongs to him or to her.

Of these pronominal adjectives, *some* always agree with a noun *expressed*, and *the others* with a noun *understood ;* hence there are *two sorts* of possessive pronouns.

Of those that always agree with a noun *expressed*, some relate to *one* person, and others to *several.*

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES RELATING TO ONE PERSON.

	PERSON.	Singular.		Plural.	
for the	1*st*	mon, *m.*	ma, *f.*	mes, *m. f.*	*my*
	2*d*	ton, *m.*	ta, *f.*	tes, *m. f.*	*thy*
	3*d*	son, *m.*	sa, *f.*	ses, *m. f.*	*his, her, its*

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES RELATING TO MANY PERSONS.

	PERSON.	Singular.	Plural.	
of the	1*st*	notre, *m. f.*	nos, *m. f.*	*our*
	2*d*	votre, *m. f.*	vos, *m. f.*	*your*
	3*d*	leur, *m. f.*	leurs, *m. f.*	*their*

N. B. These possessive pronouns in French always agree in gender and number with the object *possessed*, and not with the *possessor* as in English, for which reason they must be repeated before every noun.

EXAMPLES.

Mon *père*, ma *mère*, *et* mes *frères sont à la campagne avec* vos *amis et* leurs *enfans*,

Mon *cousin est allé consoler* sa *sœur, qui a perdu* son *fils*,

My father, mother, and brothers are in the country, with your friends and their children.

My cousin is gone to visit and console his sister, who has lost her son.

Mon, *ton*, *son*, are also used before a noun feminine, when beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute; thus, *mon âme*, my soul; *ton humeur*, thy humour; *son amitié*, his friendship; must be said instead of *ma âme*, *ta humeur*, *sa amitié*.

EXERCISE.

My principles, *my* love of retirement, *my* taste
—*pe* *goût* m. *pour* art. *retraite* f. *amour* m.
for (every thing) that (is connected) with learning, and
tout *ce qui* *tient* *à* art. *instruction*,
my detestation of all spirit of party, (every thing) has
haîne f. *h.* asp. *pour* *esprit* *parti* *tout* *a*
induced me to prefer a life passed in the closet, to the
porté *préférer* * art. *vie* f. * *de* * *cabinet*
active life of the world. Do not think, *my* daughter, that *thy*
= 2 f. 1 m. * *pense* *que*
candour, *thy* ingenuousness, *thy* taste, so delicate and so
= f. *ingénuité* f. m. —*cat*
refined, and even *thy* graces, can shelter thee from
fin *même* — *puissent* *mettre à l'abri* *de*
censure. *His* wit, *his* talents, *his* honesty,
art. — f. *esprit* m. — m. *honnêteté* f. *h.* m.
and even *his* (good nature) make him beloved by every body.
même *bonhomie* f. *font* *aimer* *de tout le monde.*
Our constancy and *our* efforts will (at last) surmount all
= f. — m. * *enfin* 2 *surmonteront* 1
obstacles. I see nothing that can (be cen-
art. — m. pl. *vois* 2 *ne* 1 *rien* 3 *que on puisse* *re-*
sured) in *your* conduct. *Their* taste for the fantastical, the
prendre *dans* *conduite* f. *pour* *bizarre*, m.
monstrous, and the marvellous, gives to all *their* compo-
monstrueux, m. *merveilleux*, m. *donne* —
sitions, although very fine in themselves, an air of deformity,
f. *quoique* *en elles-mêmes*, — m. *difformité* f.
which shocks at first sight.
qui *choque à* art. *coup-d'œil.*

Of the pronouns, which always agree with nouns *understood*, some relate to one person, and others to several persons.

Those which relate only to one person are:

	m. Sing.	f. Sing.	m. Plur.	f. Plur.	
1st.	*Le mien*,	*la mienne*,	*les miens*,	*les miennes*,	mine
2d.	*Le tien*,	*la tienne*,	*les tiens*,	*les tiennes*,	thine
3d.	*Le sien*,	*la sienne*,	*les siens*,	*les siennes*,	his, her, its

Those which relate to several persons are :

	m. Sing.	f. Sing.	Pl. of both Gen.	
1st.	*Le nôtre,*	*la nôtre,*	*les nôtres,*	ours
2d.	*Le vôtre,*	*la vôtre,*	*les vôtres,*	yours
3d.	*Le leur,*	*la leur,*	*les leurs,*	theirs

N. B. The real use of these pronouns is to spare the repetition of the nouns, which have been expressed a lit tle before.

EXAMPLE.

Avez-vous toujours votre *cheval ? je n'ai plus* le mien.	Have you still your horse ? I have disposed of mine.

EXERCISE.

Is it your temper or *hers,* that hinders you from living well
ce *humeur* f. *qui* *empêche* *de* *vivre*
together ? If it be *yours,* it is easy for you to remedy
ensemble *ce est* *il* 2 *aisé* 3 * 1 *de porter remède*
it, by mastering (your temper) ; if it be *hers,* redouble your
y *en prenant sur vous-même ;* *ce* *redoublez de* *
complaisance, attention, and good behaviour ; it is
— *de* — *de* *procédé* m. pl. *il*
very seldom that this method (proves unsuccessful). If my
très-rare *ce* *moyen* *ne* *réussisse pas* *Si*
friends had served me with the same zeal as *yours,* it
avaient *servi* *même zèle* m. *que* *il*
is very certain that I (should have) succeeded : but *yours* have
très-sûr *aurais* *réussi* *ont*
been all fire, and *mine* all ice. All the pictures which we
été *de* *de glace* *tableau* m. *que*
expected from Rome are arrived : there are some that are a
attendions *arrivés* *il y en a* *qui*
little damaged ; but *yours, his,* and *mine,* are in good
peu *endommagés* *en*
condition. We know perfectly well what are your
état m. *savons parfaitement* * *quels*
amusements in town, and I assure you we are very
— *à* art. *ville* f. — *que* *sommes bien*
far from envying you them ; but if you knew
éloigné pl. *envier* 3 1 2 *connaissiez quels*
ours in the country, it (is most likely) you
sont *à* *campagne* f. *il y a toute apparence que*
(would not be long) in giving them the preference. You
ne tarderiez pas *à* *donner leur* — f.
have opened your heart to me with that noble frankness
avez *ouvert* — *franchise* f

which so well becomes an honest man: this confidence well
qui si 2 3 *sied* 1 *à honnête* *confiance* f. 2
deserves *mine*.
mérite 1.

REMARK. When through politeness *vous* is used for *tu*, then *votre*, *vos*, must take the place of *ton*, *ta*, *tes*, and *le vôtre*, *la vôtre*, *les vôtres*, be used for *le tien*, *la tienne*, *les tiens*, *les tiennes*.

EXAMPLES.

Que vous ressemblez peu à vos *ancêtres!*	How little you resemble your ancestors!
Quand vous aurez entendu nos *raisons, nous écouterons* les vôtres.	When you have heard our reasons, we will listen to yours.

§ III.

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Relative pronouns are those which relate to a preceding noun, or pronoun, called *the antecedent*. In the phrase, *l'homme qui joue*, the man who plays; *qui* relates to the substantive *homme*; *l'homme* is then the *antecedent* to the pronoun relative *qui*.

Qui	who	*Dieu* qui *voit tout*	God *who* sees every thing
	which	*les chevaux* qui *courent*	the horses *which* are running
Que	whom	*l'homme* que *vous cherchez*	the man *whom* you seek
	which	*les lois* que *nous observons*	the laws *which* we observe
Dont or *de qui*	of which	*l'insulte* dont *vous vous plaignez*	the insult *of which* you complain
	whose	*la nature* dont *nous ignorons les secrets*	nature *whose* secrets are unknown to us
	of whom	*les gens* de qui *vous parlez*	the people *of whom* you speak
Lequel, Laquelle Auxquels Auxquelles	which	*c'est une condition sans* laquelle *il ne veut rien faire*	it is a condition, without *which* he will do nothing
	to whom	*ceux* auxquels *il s'est adressé, ont refusé de le défendre*	those to *whom* he applied, refused to protect him

Quoi	what	*ce sont des choses à quoi vous ne pensez pas*	these are things of *which* you do not think
	which	*la cause, pourquoi on l'a arrêté, est connue*	the reason why he was arrested, is known

Qui, *que*, and *dont*, are of both genders and both numbers.

Lequel is a compound of *quel*, and the article *le*, *la*, *les*, with which it coalesces in the following manner :

Singular.		Plural.		
lequel	*laquelle*	*lesquels*	*lesquelles*	which
duquel	*de laquelle*	*desquels*	*desquelles*	of which
auquel	*à laquelle*	*auxquels*	*auxquelles*	to which

This pronoun always agrees in gender and number with its antecedent. *Quoi*, which sometimes supplies its place, is always governed by a preposition.

§ IV.

OF PRONOUNS ABSOLUTE.

Pronouns absolute are those which have no relation to an antecedent. They are the five following :

Qui	who	*je vous dirai qui l'a fait*	I will tell you *who* has done it
	whom	*vous pouvez consulter qui vous voudrez*	you may consult *whom* you please
	whom	*qui consulterez-vous ?*	*whom* will you consult ?
Que	what	*il ne sait que résoudre*	he does not know on *what* to determine
	what	*que ferez-vous ?*	*what* will you do ?
Quoi	what	*en quoi puis-je vous servir ?*	in *what* can I serve you ?
	what	*il y a là je ne sais quoi d'obscur*	there is in it, I do not know *what* obscurity

Quel	what	quelle *instabilité dans les choses humaines!*	*what* instability in human affairs!
	what	*il ne sait* quel *parti prendre*	he does not know *what* resolution to take
Lequel	which	lequel *aimez-vous le mieux de ces tableaux?*	*which* do you prefer of those pictures?
	which	*je sais bien* lequel *je choisirais*	I know well *which* I would choose

Qui applies only to persons. *Que* and *quoi* to things.

Quel, masc. *quelle*, fem. sing. *quels*, m. *quelles*, f. pl. always precede a substantive, the gender and number of which they take.

Lequel, *duquel*, *auquel*, &c. are used to mark a distinction between several objects.

§ V.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS, &c.

Demonstrative pronouns are those which point, as it were, to the objects spoken of. These are,

Singular.			Plural.		
masc.	*fem.*		*masc.*	*fem.*	
ce, cet*	cette	*this*, or *that*	ces	ces	*these*, or *those*
celui	celle	*this*, or *that*	ceux	celles	*these*, or *those*
celui-ci	celle-ci	*this*	ceux-ci	celles-ci	*these*
celui-là	celle-là	*that*	ceux-là	celles-là	*those*
ceci	———	*this*	these have no plural.		
cela	———	*that*			

m.	CE	before a consonant	CE *livre*	*the book*
	CE	before an *h* aspirated	CE *héros*	*that hero*
	CET	before a vowel	CET *enfant*	*this child*
	CET	before an *h* mute	CET *homme*	*that man*
f.	CETTE	before any feminine noun	CETTE *femme*	*that woman*

CE	when without a noun, intimates a person, or thing spoken of	as	*qui est*-ce ? ce *que je vous dis* est vrai	who is it ? what I tell you is true

EXERCISE.

Nothing is so opposite to *that* true eloquence, the office *ne* 2 *rien* 1 *opposé* *véritable* — f. *fonction* f. 2 (of which) is to 1 *de* 1 ennoble (every thing), as the use *ennoblir* 3 *tout* 2 * of *those* refined thoughts, and hunting after *those* light, *que emploi* m. *fin* 2 *pensée* f. 1. art. *recherche* f. *de* airy, unsolid ideas, which, like a leaf of *légér* 2 *délié* 2 *sans consistance* 4 *idée* f. 1 *comme feuille* f. beaten metal, acquire brightness only by losing *battu* 2 — m. 1 *ne prennent de* art. *éclat* m. *que en perdant* part of their solidity. *This* man has nothing in common * * art. = f. *h* m. *de commun* with *that* hero. *This* long restrained hatred broke *h* asp. 1 *long-temps* 3 *contenu* 4 *haine* f. 2 *éclata* out, and was the unhappy source of *those* dreadful events. *fut* *malheureux* — f. *terrible événement* m. pl. *It* is a great pleasure to me. *Ce* *plaisir* m. * *It* was a great pain to us. *fut* *déplaisir* m. * *nous*.

§ VI.

OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Indefinite pronouns are those which are of a vague and indeterminate nature.

They are of four sorts.

FIRST CLASS.

Those that are never joined to a substantive.

ON	one	on aime à se flatter	*one* is apt to flatter one's self	
	a man	on *n'est pas toujours maître de soi*	*a man* is not always master of his own temper.	

ON	a woman	on *n'est pas toujours maîtresse d'aller ou** l'on *veut*	it is not always in the power of a *woman* to go where *she* wishes
	somebody	on *frappe à la porte*	*somebody* knocks at the door
	people	on *pense et* * l'on dit *tout haut*	*people* think and say openly
	they	on *raconte diversement cette histoire*	*they* relate that story differently
	we	on *acquiert l'expérience à ses dépens*	*we* acquire experience at our own expense
	you	on *trouve partout des importuns*	*you* will find troublesome people every where
	I	on *prévient qu'on n'a point eu l'intention de*, &c.	*I* beg to observe that *I* had no intention to, &c.
	I	*Quand* on *vous dit que* * l'on *compte sur vous*	when *I* tell you that *I* depend upon you
	they	*si* * l'on *vous blâme et si* * *on le loue*, on *a tort*	if *they* blame you and praise him, they are wrong.

Quelqu'un	one somebody some one	*quelqu'un m'a dit*, somebody told me.
Quiconque	whoever whosoever	*quiconque connait les hommes, apprend à s'en défier*, whoever knows mankind, learns to distrust them.
Chacun	each every one	*chacun s'en plaint*, every one complains of him.

---

* Instead of	*et on* *ou on* *si on*	it is better for euphony to part these words with an *l'*	thus	et *l'on* ou *l'on* si *l'on*	when the next word does not begin with an *l*, as is seen by the examples

and * Instead of	les habitudes *qu'on contracte* ce après *quoi on court* *quoiqu'on* croie un homme à *qui on* reproche		say rather	les habitudes que *l'on* contracte ce après quoi *l'on* court bien que *l'on* croie un homme à qui *l'on* reproche

Autrui	other people / others	*n'enviez pas le bien d'autrui*, do not covet the property of others. *ne faites pas à autrui ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fît*, do not do to others what you would not have done to you.
Personne	nobody / no one	*la fierté ne convient à personne*, pride becomes nobody.
Rien	nothing / not any thing / any thing	*rien ne lui plaît*, nothing pleases him. *y a-t-il rien qui puisse lui plaire?* is there any thing that can please him?

EXERCISE.

If you (behave yourself) (in that manner), what will *people*
vous conduisez *ainsi* * *on* 2
say of you? *It* (is thought) that this *news* is true.
dira-t 1 *On croit* *nouvelle* f.
They write me word from Ispahan that thou hast left
écrit * — *as* *quitté* art.
Persia, and art now at Paris. *One* cannot read
Perse f. *que tu es actuellement à* *ne peut lire*
Telemachus, without becoming better: *we* there find (every
Télémaque m. *sons* *devenir meilleur, on y* *trouve par-*
where) a mild philosophy, noble and elevated sentiments: *we*
tout *doux* =f. *des*—2 *élève* 3. —1
there find in every line the effusions of a noble soul, and *we*
y *voit à chaque ligne* *épanchement* m. *beau* f.
admire precepts calculated to effect the happiness of
des précepte pl. *propre* *faire* *bonheur* m.
the world.
monde m.

SECOND CLASS.

Those which are always joined to a substantive.

Quelque	some	*si cela était vrai, quelque historien en aurait parlé*, if that were true, some historian would have mentioned it.
Chaque	each, every	*à chaque jour suffit sa peine*, the trouble of each day is sufficient of itself.
Quelconque	whoever / whatever	*il n'y a raison quelconque qui puisse l'y obliger*, no reason whatever can oblige him to it.

Certain	certain some	*certain homme*, a certain man. *certaines nouvelles*, some news.
Un	a, an	*j'ai vu un homme*, I saw a man; *prenez une orange*, take an orange

THIRD CLASS.

Those which are sometimes joined to a substantive, and sometimes not.

Nul	no, none	*nulle raisonne peut le convaincre*, no reason can convince him; *nul d'eux ne l'a rencontré*, not one of them has met him.
Pas un	no, not one	*il n'y a pas une erreur dans cet ouvrage*, there is no error in that work; *pas un ne le dit*, not one says so.
Aucun	no, none	*je ne connais aucun de vos juges*, I know none of your judges; *il n'a fait aucune difficulté*, he has made no difficulty.
Autre	other	*servez-vous d'une autre expression*, make use of another expression; *je vous prenais pour un autre*, I took you for another.
Même	same	*c'est le même homme que je vis hier*, he is the same man I saw yesterday; *cet homme n'est plus le même*, that man is no longer the same.
Tel.	such like	*il tint à peu près un tel discours*, he delivered nearly such a discourse; *je ne vis jamais rien de tel*, I never saw any thing like it.
Plusieurs	several many	*il est arrivé plusieurs vaisseaux*, several vessels are arrived; *il ne faut pas que plusieurs pâtissent pour un seul*, many must not suffer for one.
Tout	all every every thing	*tous les êtres créés*, all created beings; *tout disparaît devant Dieu*, every thing vanishes before God.

FOURTH CLASS.

Of those which are followed by QUE.

Qui que	whoever	*qui que tu sois*, whoever thou mayest be; *qui que ce soit*, whoever it may be.
Quoi que	whatever	*quoi que ce soit*, whatever it may be; *quoi que vous disiez*, whatever you may say.
Quel que	whoever whatever	*quel que soit cet homme*, whoever that man may be; *quel que soit votre courage*, whatever your courage may be.
Tel que	such as	*cette étoffe est telle que vous la voulez*, this stuff is such as you wish for.
Quelque—que	whatever however	*quelque raison que vous donniez*, whatever reason you may give; *quelque puissant que vous soyez*, however powerful you may be.
Tout—que	however	*tout savant qu'il est*, however learned he may be.

CHAP. V.

OF THE VERB.

The *Verb* is a word, the chief use of which is to express affirmation : it has persons, moods, and tenses.

In the phrase, *la vertu est aimable*, virtue is amiable, it is affirmed that the quality *aimable*, belongs to *la vertu;* likewise in this sentence, *le vice n'est pas aimable*, vice is not amiable, it is affirmed that the quality *aimable*, does not belong to *le vice;* the word *est* expresses this affirmation.

That concerning which we affirm, or deny a thing, is called the *subject*, and what is affirmed, or denied, is called its *attribute*. In the two preceding sentences *vertu* and *vice* are subjects of the verb *est*, and *aimable* is the attribute affirmed respecting the one, and denied with respect to the other.

There are in verbs *two numbers*, the singular and plural, and in each number *three persons*.

1. The first person is that who speaks; it is designated by *je*, I, in the singular, and by *nous*, we, in the plural; as, *je pense*, I think; *nous pensons*, we think.

2. The second is the person spoken to, expressed by *tu*, thou, in the singular, and by *vous*, you, in the plural; as, *tu penses*, thou thinkest; *vous pensez*, you think.

3. The third is the person spoken of, known by *il*, he, or *elle*, she, in the singular, and by *ils*, or *elles*, they, in the plural; as, *il*, or *elle pense*, he, *or* she thinks; *ils*, or *elles pensent*, they think.

All substantives, either common, or proper, are of the third person, when not addressed, or spoken to.

REM. A word is known to be a *verb*, when it admits the personal pronouns; thus, *finir*, to finish, is a verb, because we can say, *je finis*, *tu finis*, *il*, or *elle finit*, &c.

There are *five moods*, or modes of conjugating verbs.

1. The *infinitive mood* affirms, in an indefinite manner, without either number, or person; as, *aimer*, to love; *avoir aimé*, to have loved.

2. The *indicative* simply indicates and asserts a thing in a direct manner; as, *j'aime*, I love; *il aima*, he loved.

3. The *conditional* affirms a thing with a condition, as, *j'aimerais*, *si*, &c. I should love, if, &c.

4. The *imperative* is used for commanding, exhorting, requesting, or reproving; as, *aime*, love (thou); *aimons*, let us love.

5. The *subjunctive* subjects a thing to what precedes; as, *vous voulez*, *qu'il aime*, you wish that he may love; *que nous aimions*, that we may love.

There are three tenses, the *present*, which declares a thing now existing, or doing, as, *je lis*, I read ; the *past*, or *preterit*, denoting that the thing has been done, as, *j'ai lu*, I have read ; the *future*, denoting that the thing will be done, as, *je lirai*, I shall read. But these are subdivided, so that there are several preterit, and two future tenses.

There are five kinds of verbs, the *active*, *passive*, *neuter*, *pronominal*, and *impersonal*.

The *verb active* is that which expresses an action, the object of which is either declared, or understood. *Aimer*, to love, is a verb active, as it expresses an action, the object of which may be *quelqu'un*, some person, or *quelque chose*, some thing ; as, *aimer Dieu*, to love God ; *aimer l'étude*, to love study. The object of this action is called the *regimen*, or *goverment* of the verb active.

N.B. A simple question will show this *regimen*, as, *qu'est-ce que j'aime ?* what do I love ? answer, *Dieu*, God. *Dieu* is then the regimen of the verb *j'aime*.

In the French language the *passive verbs* are supplied by the verb *être*, as they are in English by the verb *to be*, and the participle past of the verb active followed by the preposition *de*, or *par*, the subject and regiment of the verb active being reversed. Thus to change the verbs from active to passive in these sentences, *mon père m'aime*, my father loves me ; *le milan a enlevé le canari*, the kite has carried off the canary ; they must be reversed in this way, *je suis aimé de mon père*, I am loved by my father : *le canari a été enlevé par le milan*, the canary has been carried off by the kite.

The *verb neuter*, is that which has no direct regiment as the verb active has. *Aller*, to go ; *marcher*, to walk, are verbs neuter, because we cannot say, *aller quelqu'un*, to go somebody ; *marcher quelque chose*, to walk something. *Plaire* to please, is likewise a verb neuter, as we cannot say in French *plaire quelqu'un*, to please somebody, but *plaire à quelqu'un*.

The *pronominal verbs* are those in which each person is conjugated through all the tenses, with a double personal pronoun.

as	*je me,*	I myself	*nous nous*	we ourselves
	tu te,	thou thyself	*vous vous*	you yourself *or* ye yourselves
	il se,	he himself	*ils se*	they themselves
	elle se,	she herself	*elle se*	

There are four sorts of *pronominal verbs.*

1. The *pronominal verb active*, when the action of the verb falls upon the subject, as, *je me flatte*, I flatter myself; *il se loue*, he praises himself. Almost all the active verbs are susceptible of being *reflected.*
2. The *pronominal verb neuter*, which indicates only a state, a disposition of the subject, as, *se repentir*, to repent, *se désister*, to desist, *s'enfuir*, to run away.
3. The *reciprocal verb* expresses a reciprocity of action between two, or more subjects, and consequently has no singular; such are *s'entr'aider*, to help one another, *s'entre-donner*, to give each other.
4. The *pronominal verb impersonal*, is only used in the third person singular. Active verbs frequently assume this form, in a passive sense, for the sake of brevity and energy; as, *il se bâtit*, there is building; *il se faisait*, there was doing; *il se conclut*, there was concluded; *il s'est dit*, it has been said; *il se donnera une grande bataille*, a great battle will be fought.

The *impersonal verb* is only used in the third person singular, with the pronoun *il*, and has no relation to any person or thing. *Neiger*, to snow, is an impersonal verb, as it cannot be applied to any person, or thing; *il neige*, it snows, *il neigeait*, it did snow.

Though the greatest part of the French verbs are

regular, there are, however, as in other languages, some that are *irregular*, and others that are *defective*. Regular verbs are those which are conjugated conformably to a general standard. Irregular verbs are those which do not conform to the verb employed as a model; and defective verbs are those which, in certain tenses, or persons, are not used.

OF CONJUGATIONS.

To conjugate a verb is to rehearse it with all its different inflections.

The French have four conjugations, which are easily distinguished by the termination of the present of the infinitive.

The	FIRST	ends in	*-er* as, parl*er*, aim*er*, chant*er*, donn*er*, &c
	SECOND		*-ir* as, fin*ir*, sent*ir*, ouvr*ir*, ten*ir*, &c.
	THIRD		*-oir* as, recev*oir*, apercev*oir*, dev*oir*, &c.
	FOURTH		*-re* as, rend*re*, plai*re*, paroi*tre*, reduis*re*, joind*re*, &c.

The French, like most modern nations, not having a sufficient number of inflections in their verbs to represent the great variety of their tenses, supply this deficiency with two auxiliary verbs, *avoir* and *être*, to have and to be.

Those tenses in a verb, whose inflections are derived pure and unmixed from the parent stock, are called *simple tenses*, and are always in French expressed by a *single word*. But the *tenses*, which are formed by the union of those of the verbs *avoir*, or *être*, with a participle past, are called *compound*, and necessarily consist of not less than *two*; or *three* words. Thus, *avoir*, *j'ai*, *j'avais*, *j'eus*, &c. *parler*, *je parle*, *je parlais*, &c. are simple tenses; but *avoir eu*, *j'ai eu*, *j'eus eu*, *j'avais eu*, *avoir parlé*, *j'ai parlé*, *j'eus parlé*, *j'ai eu parlé*, &c. are compound tenses.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *Avoir*, TO HAVE.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
PRESENT.		PAST	
avoir	*to have*	avoir eu	*to have had*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
ayant	*having*	ayant eu	*having had*
PAST.			
eu, *m.* eue, *f.*	*had*		

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		PRETERIT INDEFINITE, OR COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.			
j'ai	*I have*	j'ai	eu	*I have*	*had*
tu as	*thou hast*	tu as		*thou hast*	
il, *or* elle a	*he*, or *she has*	il a		*he has*	
nous avons	*we have*	nous avons		*we have*	
vous avez	*you have*	vous avez		*you have*	
ils, *or* elles ont	*they have*	ils ont		*they have*	

EXERCISE.

REM. In the following exercises, the substantive being taken in a partitive sense, it will be necessary to use the article, according to the direction given, page 84.

PRESENT.—I have books. Thou hast friends. He has
livre. *ami*
honesty. She has sweetness. We have credit. You have
honnêteté f. *h* m. *douceur* f. — m.
riches. They have virtues. They have modesty.
richesse pl. m. *vertu* f. = f.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.—I have had pleasure. Thou hast had
plaisir m.
gold. He has had patience. She has had beauty. We have
or m. —f. = f.
had honours. You have had friendship. They have had
honneur *amitié* f. m.
sentiments. They have had sensibility.
— f. = f.

IMPERFECT.—I had ambition. Thou hadst wealth. He had
bien m.

SIMPLE TENSES. COMPOUND TENSES.

PLUPERFECT, *or* COMPOUND OF THE

IMPERFECT.			IMPERFECT.	
j'avais	*I had*, or *did have*	j'avais	*I had*	
tu avais	*thou hadst*, or *didst have*	tu avais	*thou hadst*	
il avait	*he had*, or *did have*	il avait	*he had*	
nous avions	*we had*, or *did have*	nous avions	eu *we had*	*had*,
vous aviez	*you had*, or *did have*	vous aviez	*you had*	
ils avaient	*they had*, or *did have*	ils avaient	*they had*	

PRETERIT ANTERIOR, *or* COMPOUND

PRETERIT DEFINITE.			OF THE PRETERIT.	
j'eus	*I had*	j'eus	*I had*	
tu eus	*thou hadst*	tu eus	*thou hadst*	
il eut	*he had*	il eut	*he had*	
nous eûmes	*we had*	nous eûmes	eu *we had*	*had*
vous eûtes	*you had*	vous eûtes	*you had*	
ils eurent	*they had*	ils eurent	*they had*	

sincerity. She had graces. We had oranges. You had pears.
=f. — *poire*
They had apples. They had lemons
m. *pomme* f. *citron.*

PLUPERFECT. I had had apricots. Thou hadst had nectarines.
abricot *brugnon*
He had had walnuts. She had had hazel-nuts. We had had
noix *noisette.*
chesnuts. You had had figs. They had had medlars. They
châtaigne *figue* m. *nèfle* f.
had had filberts.
aveline.

PRETERIT DEFINITE. I had plums. Thou hadst cherries.
prune *cerise*
He had strawberries. She had pine-apples. We had almonds.
fraise *ananas* *amande*
You had currants. They had raspberries. They had
groseille m. *framboise* f.
grapes.
raisin m. pl.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.		
FUTURE ABSOLUTE.		FUTURE ANTERIOR.		
j'aurai	*I shall,* or *will have*	j'aurai	*I shall,* or *will have*	
tu auras	*thou shalt,* or *wilt have*	tu auras	*thou wilt have*	
il aura	*he will have*	il aurat	*he will have*	
nous aurons	*we shall have*	nous aurons	*we shall have*	*had*
vous aurez	*you shall have*	vous aurez	*you will have*	
ils auront	*they will have*	ils auront	*they will have*	

REM. In the following exercises, the addition of an adjective, after the substantive, will make no change in the remark on the preceding exercise.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.—I had had very black ink. Thou hadst had honest proceedings. She had had uncommon graces. We had had very ripe grapes. You had had exquisite melons. They had had ready money.

fort 2 *noir* 3 *encre* f. 1. *honnête* 2 *procédé* 1 *rare* 2 1. 2 *mûr* 3 1. *exquis* 2 —m. 1. *comptant* 2 *argent* m. 1.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.—I shall have studious pupils. Thou wilt have horrid pains. He will have ridiculous ideas. We shall have useless cares. You will have true and real pleasures. They will have poignant griefs.

appliqué 2 *élève* m. 1. *horrible* 2 *peine* f. 1. *ridicule* 2 *idée* f. 1. *inutile* 2 *soin* m. 1. 2 *réel* 3 m. 1. *cuisant* 2 *chagrin* m. 1.

REM. But if the adjective precedes the substantive, then *de*, or *d'*, only is to be used.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.—I shall have had good paper. Thou wilt have had excellent fruit. She will have had charming flowers. We shall have had good pens. You will have had

papier m. m. pl. *charmant fleurs* f, *plume* f.

CONDITIONAL.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.		
PRESENT.		PAST, *or* COMPOUND OF THE CONDITIONAL.		
j' aurais	*I should, could, or would have*	j'aurais eu	*I should have*	*had*
tu aurais	*thou should'st have*	tu aurais eu	*thou should-est have*	*had*
il aurait	*he should have*	il aurait eu	*he should have*	*had*
nous aurions	*we should have*	nous aurions eu	*we should have*	*had*
vous auriez	*you should have*	vous auriez eu	*you should have*	*had*
ils auraient	*they should have*	ils auraient eu	*they should have*	*had*

large buildings. They will have had fine clothes.
grand bâtiment m. *superbe habit* m.

PRESENT OF THE CONDITIONAL.—I should have fine engravings. Thou should'st have pretty playthings. He should have immense treasures. We should have beautiful pictures. You would have pretty houses. They should have long conversations.
gravure f. *joli joujou* m. — *trésor* m. *tableau* m. f. — f.

REM. The preceding remark holds good likewise after a word expressing quantity, such as *beaucoup*, a great deal, great many; *peu*, little, few; *plus*, more; *moins*, less; *trop*, too much, too many, &c. except *bien*, much, many, which requires *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*.

CONDITIONAL PAST.—I should have had *a great deal of* trouble. Thou would'st have had *more* pleasure. He would have had (*a vast deal*) *de* of knowledge. We should have had *more infiniment* opportunities of succeeding. You would certainly
peine f. *connaissance* f. pl. *de occasion* f. pl *réussir* *certainement*

N. B. { *J'eusse eu, tu eusses eu, il eût eu, nous eussions eu, vous eussiez eu, ils eussent eu*, I should have had, &c. is also used for the conditional past.

IMPERATIVE.

Aie, *or* aye	*Have (thou)*
Qu'il ait	*Let him have*
Ayons	*Let us have*
Ayez	*Have (ye)*
Qu'ils aient	*Let them have*

---

have had *many* advantages over him. They would have
1 *beaucoup de avantage sur lui*
had *many* enemies.
bien ennemi.

Observe that, when the verb is followed by several substantives, the proper article and preposition must be repeated before each.

IMPERATIVE.—Have complaisance, attention, and
— f. *égard* m. pl.
politeness. Let him have modesty, and more correct ideas.
politesse f. —f. 2 *juste* 1.
Let her have more decency. Let us have courage and firmness.
décence — m. *fermeté* f
Have gravy soup, nice roast-beef, and a pudding. Let
un gras 2 *soupe* f. 1 *un bon rosbif* m. *pouding* m.
them have ale, rum, and punch. Let them have manners,
m. *aile* f. *rum* m. *ponche* m. f. *mœurs* f. pl.
and conduct.
conduite f.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.—That I may have many friends. That thou
beaucoup
may'st have good reasons to give him. That he may have
donner lui
elevated sentiments. That we may have courage and mag-
élevé 2 —m. 1. *bravoure* f.
nanimity. That you may have delightful landscapes, and
= f. *délicieux* 2 *paysage* m. pl. 1.
beautiful sea-pieces. That they may have more condescension
marine f. pl. — *dance*
and more prepossessing manners.
2 *prévenant* 3 *manière* f. pl. 1.

PRETERIT.—That I may have had wine, beer, and cider.
vin m. *bière* f. *cidre* m.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES. COMPOUND TENSES.

PRESENT.		PRETERIT, *or* COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.			
Que*	*That*	Que*		*That*	
j'aie	*I may have*	j'aie		*I may have*	
tu aies	*thou may'st have*	tu aies		*thou may'st have*	
il ait	*he may have*	il ait	eu	*he may have*	*had*
nous ayons	*we may have*	nous ayons		*we may have*	
vous ayez	*you may have*	vous ayez		*you may have*	
ils aient	*they may have*	ils aient		*they may have*	

That thou may'st have had a good horse, and a fine dog.
cheval m. *chien* m.
That he may have had enlightened judges. That we may have
éclairé 2 *juge* m. 1.
had snow, rain, and wind. That you may have had a great
neige f. *pluie* f. *vent* m.
dining-room, a beautiful drawing-room, a pretty
salle-à-manger f. *superbe* *salon-de-compagnie* m. *joli*
dressing-room, and a charming bed-room. That
cabinet de toilette m. — *mant* *chambre-à-coucher* f.
they may have had vast possessions, fine meadows, and de-
vaste — f. *prairie* f. *de-*
lightful groves.
licieux 2 *bois* m. 1.

IMPERFECT.—That I might have a sword, musket, and
épée f. *fusil* m.
pistols. That thou might'st have a knife, a spoon, and a
pistolet m. *couteau* m. *cuillère* f.
fork. That we might have a penknife, pencils, and good
fourchette f. *canif* m. *pinceau* m.
copies. That he might have a coach, a good house, and
modèle m. *carrosse* m. f.

* REM. { The subjunctive, in French, is always preceded by the conjunction *que*, that, which is often suppressed in English.

SIMPLE TENSES. COMPOUND TENSES.

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT, *or* COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.			
Que	*That*	Que		*That*	
j'eusse	*I had*, or *might have*	j'eusse		*I might have*	
tu eusses	*thou might'st have*	tu eussēs		*thou might-est have*	
il eût	*he might have*	il eût	eu	*he might have*	had
nous eussions	*we might have*	nous eussions		*we might have*	
vous eussiez	*you might have*	vous eussiez		*you might have*	
ils eussent	*they might have*	ils eussent		*they might have*	

furniture, simple but elegant. That you might have
meuble, m. pl. — *mais* —
health and great respect. That they might have fruitful
santé f. *un considération* f. *fertile* 2
lands.
terre f. 1.

PLUPERFECT. That I might have had friendship. That thou
amitié f.
might'st have had gloves, boots, and horses. That he
gant m. *botte* f. *cheval* m.
might have had zealous and faithful servants. That we
zélé 2 *fidèle* 3 *domestique* m. 1.
might have had fine clothes, precious jewels, and magnificent
= 2 *bijou* m. 1 *magnifique* 2
furniture. That you might have had warm friends. That
1 *chaude* 2 1
they might have had greatness of soul and pity.
grandeur f. *pitié* f.

N.B. The verb *avoir*, serves not only as an auxiliary to conjugate its own compound tenses, but likewise the compound tenses of the verb *être*, and those of the active, the impersonal, and almost all the neuter verbs.

SENTENCES ON THE SAME VERB, WITH A NEGATIVE.

In the following sentences, the preposition *de* or *d'*, is put before the substantive, according as it begins with a consonant, or a vowel, *ne* between the personal pronoun and the verb, and *pas* or *point*, after the verb in the simple tenses, and between the verb and the participle in the compound tenses; as,

Je n'ai pas de livres,	*I have no books.*
Tu n'avais pas de bien	*Thou hadst no wealth.*
Elle n'eut pas d'honnêteté,	*She had no honesty.*
Nous n'avons pas eu d'amitié,	*We have had no friendship.*
Vous n'aviez pas eu de puissans amis,	*You had not had powerful friends.*
Ils n'auront pas d'ennemis redoutables,	*They will not have formidable enemies.*

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE. PRESENT. I have no precious medals.
= 2 *médaille* f. 1.
We have no useless things. PRETERIT INDEFINITE.
inutile 2 *chose* f. 1
I have had no constancy. We have had no generosity.
= f. = f.
IMPERFECT. Thou hadst not a beautiful park. You had no
parc m.
good cucumbers. PLUPERFECT. He had had no fine houses.
concombre m.
They had had no money. PRETERIT DEFINITE. He had not
argent m.
a skilful gardener. They had no carpets. PRETERIT ANTERIOR.
habile jardinier m. *tapis* m.
Thou hadst had no complaisance. You had had no
—f.
great talents. FUTURE ABSOLUTE. I shall have no great business.
—m. *af-*
We shall have no uncommon prints. FUTURE
faire f. pl. *rare* 2 *estampe* f. 1.
ANTERIOR. Thou shalt have had no consolation. You shall not
-- f.
have had quiet days.
tranquille 2 m. 1.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.—He should not have bad pictures. They
mauvais *tableau* m.
should have no leisure.
loisir m.

PAST.—I should have had no griefs. We should have
chagrin m. pl.
had no troubles.
peine f. pl.

IMPERATIVE.

Have no impatience. Let him not have absurd
sing. — *absurde* 2. f. pl.
ideas. Let us not have dangerous connexions. Have no such
1. = 2 *liaison* f. pl. *tel*
whims. Let them not have so whimsical a project.
caprice m. *bizarre* 2. *projet* m. 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.—That I may have no protectors. That we may
= m.
have no success.
succès m.

PRETERIT.—That he may have had no perseverance. That
= f.
they may have had no valour.
bravoure f.

IMPERFECT.—That thou might'st have no principles of taste.
principe m. *goût* m.
That you might not have a just reward.
juste récompense f.

PLUPERFECT.—That I might have had no good advice. That
avis m. pl.
we might have had no news.
nouvelle f. pl.

THE VERB *Avoir*, INTERROGATIVELY AND AFFIRMATIVELY.

In interrogations, the personal pronoun, accompanied by a hyphen (-), is placed after the verb, in the simple tenses, and between the verb and the participle, in the compound tenses, and, when the third person singular of the verb ends with a vowel, for euphony a *t* is added between it and the pronoun, preceded and followed by a hyphen, thus (-*t*-). See likewise the remarks, page 123.

Ai-je des livres ?	*Have I books ?*
Avais-tu du bien ?	*Hadst thou wealth ?*
Eut-elle de l'honnêteté ?	*Had she honesty ?*
Avons-nous eu de bons conseils?	*Have we had good advice ?*
Aviez-vous eu de la prudence ?	*Had you had prudence ?*
Aura-t-il de l'argent ?	*Will he have money ?*
Aura-t-elle eu des protecteurs?	*Will she have had protectors ?*

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.—Hast thou needles ? Have you *aiguille* f.
coloured maps ? PRETERIT INDEFINITE.—Have I had pens ? *enluminé* 2 *carte* f. 1. *plume* f.
Have we had convenient houses ? IMPERFECT.—Had she silk ? *commode* 2 f. 1. *soie* f.
Had they large buildings ? PLUPERFECT.—Had she had pins ? *grand bâtiment* m. *épingle* f.
Had they had extensive fields ? PRETERIT DEFINITE.—Had *spacieux* 3 *champ* m. 1.
he good shoes ? Had they looking-glasses ? PRETERIT ANTE- *soulier* m. f. *miroir* m.
RIOR.—Hadst thou had lace ? Had you had odoriferous *dentelle* f. *odoriférant* 2
shrubs. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.—Shall I have gold, silver, *arbuste* m. 1. m. *argent* m.
and platina. Shall we have (good luck) ? FUTURE ANTERIOR.— *platine* m. *bonheur* m.
Will she have had joy ? Will they have had company ? *joie ?* *compagnie* f.
CONDITIONAL. PRESENT.—Shouldst thou have happy *heureux*
moments ? Should you have good wine and nice cordials ?
— m. *vin.* m. *fin* 2 *liqueur* f. 1.
PAST.—Should he have had uncommon fruits ? Should they *rare* 2 m. 1.
have had rich clothes ?

THE SAME VERB INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

In sentences of this form observe the different rules that are prefixed to the exercises on the verb, and in sentences simply interrogative, always place *ne* at the beginning of sentences, and *pas*, or *point*, after the personal pronoun, whether in the simple, or compound tenses.

N'ai-je pas des livres ?	*Have I no books ?*
N'avais-tu pas des amis ?	*Hadst thou no friends ?*
N'a-t-elle pas beaucoup d'esprit ?	*Has she not a great deal of wit ?*
N'avons-nous pas eu de bons procédés ?	*Have we not acted fairly ?*
N'aviez-vous pas eu de nouvelles robes ?	*Had you not had new gowns ?*
N'aura-t-il pas des ressources ?	*Will he have no resources ?*
N'auront-elles pas eu des consolations ?	*Will they have had no consolations ?*

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.—Hast thou no diamonds? Have
diamant m.
you no indulgent parents? PRETERIT INDEFINITE.—Hast thou
—2 —m. 1.
not had contempt, and even hatred, for that man? Have
mépris m. *même haine* f. *h* asp. *pour cet*
you not had better examples? IMPERFECT.—Had he not a
meilleur exemple m.
rigid censor? Had they not inattentive children?
sévère 2 *censeur* m. 1. =2 *enfant* m. 1.
PLUPERFECT.—Had I not had other views? Had we not had
autre vue? f. pl.
amethysts, rubies, and topazes? PRETERIT DEFINITE.—Had I
améthyste f. *rubis* m. *topaze?* f.
no great wrongs? Had we not perfidious friends? PRETERIT
tort m. *perfide* 2 1
ANTERIOR.—Had he not used far-fetched expressions? Had
eu 2 *recherché* 3 —f. 1.
they not excellent models? FUTURE ABSOLUTE.—Wilt thou
— *modèle* m.
not lead a more regular life? Will you not have
avoir plus 2 *réglé* 3 *conduite* f. 1.
fashionable gowns? FUTURE ANTERIOR.—Shall I have had no
à la mode 2 *robe* f. 1.
sweetmeats? Shall we not have had a good preacher?
confitures? f. *prédicateur?* m.

CONDITIONAL. PRESENT.—Should she not have clear
clair 2
and just ideas? Would they not have more extensive know-
3 f. 1 2 *étendu* 3 *con-*
ledge? PAST.—Should she have had no patience?
naissances f. pl. 1.
Should they have had no rectitude?
f. *droiture?* f.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB, *être, to be.*

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
PRESENT.		PAST.	
Être	*to be*	Avoir été	*to have been*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Etan	*being*	ayant été	*having been*
PAST.			
été	*been*		

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		PRETERIT INDEFINITE.		
je suis	*I am*	j'ai	*I have*	
tu es	*thou art*	tu as	*thou hast*	
il, *or* elle est	*he*, or *she is*	il a	*he has*	
nous sommes	*we are*	nous avons	*we have*	
vous êtes	*you are*	vous avez	*you have*	
ils / elles sont	*they are*	ils ont	*they have*	
		été		*been*

EXERCISES.

As interrogative and negative sentences will now be promiscuously intermixed, the scholar will observe, that the adverb, in the following exercises, is to be placed before the adjectives ; and that whenever in interrogative sentences a substantive is the subject, it is to be placed at the head of the sentence, adding a pronoun for the interrogation immediately after the verb, as, *mon frère est-il venu ?* is my brother come ?

PRESENT.—I am very glad to see you. Art not thou pleased
aise *de voir* *satisfait*
with that book ? Is she really amiable ? We are happy.
de *véritablement* *heureux*
Are not you too condescending ? Are your friends still in
complaisant ? *encore à*
London ?
Londres ?

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.—Have not I been constant ? Hast

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.			
IMPERFECT.			PLUPERFECT.		
j'étais	*I was*	j'avais	*I had*		
tu étais	*thou wast*	tu avais	*thou hadst*		
il était	*he was*	il avait	*he had*		
nous étions	*we were*	nous avions	été	*we had*	*been*
vous étiez	*you were*	vous aviez		*you had*	
ils étaient	*they were*	ils avaient		*they had*	
PRETERIT DEFINITE.			PRETERIT ANTERIOR.		
je fus	*I was*	j'eus	*I had*		
tu fus	*thou wast*	tu eus	*thou hadst*		
il fut	*he was*	il eut	*he had*		
nous fûmes	*we were*	nous eûmes	été	*we had*	*been*
vous fûtes	*you were*	vous eûtes		*you had*	
ils furent	*they were*	ils eurent		*they had*	

thou always been steady? She has been faithful. Have we
posé *fidèle*
been firm and courageous? You have been charitable. Have
ferme = —
those men always been good and benevolent?
bienfaisant?

IMPERFECT.—I was too busy to see you. Wast not thou
occupé pour recevoir
troublesome? Was this girl idle? Were we not too un-
importun *fille paresseux* *in-*
tractable? You were not quiet enough. They were vain,
docile? *tranquille* 2 *assez* 1. f. —
frivolous, and coquettish.
frivole *coquette.*

PLUPERFECT.—I had hitherto been very indifferent. Hadst
jusqu'alors *insouciant.*
not thou been too imprudent? Had his wife been sufficiently
— *épouse* *assez*
modest and reserved? We had not yet been sufficiently
assez réservé *encore*

* REM. { PRET. ANT.—Exercises upon this tense would be as yet too complicated, as may be seen by this sentence; *à peine y eus-je été cinq ou six minutes, qu'il arriva*, I had scarce been there five or six minutes, when he arrived.

SIMPLE TENSES.			COMPOUND TENSES.		
FUTURE ABSOLUTE.			FUTURE ANTERIOR.		
je serai	*I shall* or *will be*	j'aurai		*I shall* or *will have*	
tu seras	*thou wilt be*	tu auras		*thou wilt have*	
il sera	*he will be*	il aura		*he will have*	
nous serons	*we shall be*	nous aurons	été	*we shall have*	*been*
vous serez	*you shall be*	vous aurez		*you will have*	
ils seront	*they shall be*	ils auront		*they will have*	

attentive. Had you been envious and jealous? They had not
appliqué = *jaloux*
been grateful.
reconnoisant.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.—Perhaps I was not sufficiently
Peut être que *assez*
prudent. Wast thou discreet enough on that occasion? Was
— *discret* 1 *en* — f.
not that princess too proud? We were very unhappy. Were you
— *cesse* *fier*
not too hasty? They were not much satisfied.
prompt *fort* *satisfait.*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.—To-morrow I shall be at home till
Demain *chez-moi jusqu'à*
(twelve o'clock). Wilt thou always be restless, brutal, and
midi *inquiet, bourru*
sour? Will your father be at home this evening?
chagrin *Monsieur* *chez-lui* *soir* m.
Shall we not be more diligent? Will you always then be
— 3 *donc* 2 1
capricious, obstinate, and particular? Will not your scholars be
quinteux *opiniâtre,* *pointilleux?* *écolier*
troublesome?
incommode?

FUTURE ANTERIOR.—Shall not I have been too severe? Thou
—
wilt have been too distrustful. Will not his sister have been
défiant *sœur*
whimsical and capricious? Shall not we have been eager
fantasque = *empressé* 2

CONDITIONAL.

SIMPLE TENSES.			COMPOUND TENSES.		
PRESENT.			PAST.		
je serais	*I should, would,* or *could be*	j'aurais	été	*I should have*	been
tu serais	*thou would'st be*	tu aurais		*thou would'st have*	
il serait	*he would be*	il aurait		*he would have*	
nous serions	*we should be*	nous aurions		*we should have*	
vous seriez	*you would be*	vous auriez		*you should have*	
ils seraient	*they would be*	ils auraient		*they would have*	

The conditional past, *J'eusse été, tu eusses été, il eût été, nous eussions été, vous eussiez été, ils eussent été,* is also used.

---

enough? Will you not have been inconsiderate? Will not the
1 *indiscret*
judges have been just?
juge

CONDITIONAL PRESENT. I would not be so rash.
téméraire.
Would'st thou be as consistent in thy behaviour as in thy lan-
conséquent dans conduite f. *pro-*
guage? Would not his son be ready in time? Should we be
pos m. pl. *fils prêt à*
always incorrigible? You would not be disinterested enough.
désintéressé 2 1
Would not those ladies be always virtuous?
dame vertueux?

PAST. (Had it not been for) your instructions, I should have
Sans conseil m. pl.
been proud and haughty. Would'st not thou have been
dédaigneux hautain
malicious and sarcastic? Would that man have been so
malin ricaneur tellement
destitute of common sense? Certainly we should not have been
dépourvu bon sens
so ridiculous. Would not you have been more kind and
si ridicule doux plus
indulgent? They would not have been so ungenteel.
complaisant? malhonnête.

IMPERATIVE.

Sois	*Be (thou)*
Qu'il soit	*Let him be*
Soyons	*Let us be*
Soyez	*Be (ye)*
Qu'ils soient	*Let them be*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES. COMPOUND TENSES.

PRESENT.			PRETERIT.		
que	*that*	que		*that*	
je sois	*I may, can,* or *should be*	j'aie		*I may, can,* or *should have*	
tu sois	*thou may'st be*	tu aies		*thou may'st have*	
il soit	*he may be*	il ait	été	*he may have*	*been*
nous soyons	*we may be*	nous ayons		*we may have*	
vous soyez	*you may be*	vous ayez		*you may have*	
ils soient	*they may be*	ils aient		*they may have*	

IMPERATIVE. Be liberal. Do not be so lavish. Let
sing. — sing. *prodigue*
us be equitable, humane, and prudent. Let us not be covetous.
— *humain,* — *avide.*
Be economical and temperate. Do not be thoughtless.
pl. *économe* *sobre* pl. *léger*

As the *third person* singular and plural of the imperative mood belong rather to the subjunctive, they are there exemplified.

It has already been observed, that before the *subjunctive* can form a complete sense, it must be preceded by another verb. For the sake of brevity, therefore, complete sentences will only be given on the present tense. This remark applies alike to the four conjugations.

SIMPLE TENSES. COMPOUND TENSES.

IMPERFECT.			PLUPERFECT.		
que je fusse	*that I might, or could be*	que j'eusse		*that I might or could*	*have been*
tu fusses	*thou might'st be*	tu eusses		*thou might'st*	
il fût	*he might be*	il eût	été	*he might*	
nous fussions	*we might be*	nous eussions		*we might*	
vous fussiez	*you might be*	vous eussiez		*you might*	
ils fussent	*they might be*	ils eussent		*they might*	

PRESENT. Is it possible I can be so credulous? They wish
— * — *le* *On désire*
thou may'st be more modest. Is it possible she can be so ob-
modeste *
stinate? They wish us to be more assiduous. It is not
têté *assidu* *On**
expected you should be timid. It is feared they may
s'attend *timide.* *On* craint* *ne*
be guilty.
coupable.

PRETERIT. That I should have been so hasty and impatient.
emporté si —
Thou should'st have been so puffed up with pride. That she
bouffi de
should have been so fickle. That we should have been so head-
volage *têtu*
strong. That you should have been so avaricious. That they
avare
should have been so unreasonable.
déraisonnable.

Observe, the verb *être* serves as an auxiliary to conjugate the passive verbs through all their tenses, the compound tenses of the pronominal verbs and those of about fifty neuter verbs.

IMPERFECT. That I should not be humane and generous.
humain =
That thou might'st be more careful. That she might not be so
soigneux.
arrogant. That we might be victorious. That you might not be
— =
so stern. That they might not be so cruel.
sévère.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

IN *ER*.

1 In verbs ending in *-ger*, the *e* is preserved in those tenses where *g* is followed by the vowels *a*, or *o*, in order to preserve to this letter its soft sound; as, *mangeant, jugeons, je négligeai.*

2 In verbs ending in *-cer*, for the same reason, a cedilla is put under *c*, when followed by *a*, or *o*; as, *suçant, plaçons, j'effaçai.*

3 In verbs ending in *-oyer* and *-uyer*, the *y* is changed into *i* before a mute *e*; as, *j'emploie, il essuie, j'appuierai, il nettoierait.*

4 This practice is extended by some to verbs in *-ayer* and *-eyer*, as, *il paie, j'essaierai, elle grasseye*, or *grasseie.*

5 In some few verbs ending in *-eler* and *-eter*, the *l* and *t* are doubled in those inflections, which receive an *e* mute after these consonants, as, from *appeler, il appelle*, from *jeter, je jetterai*, &c.

6 The first person singular of the present of the indicative changes *e* mute into acute *é* in interrogative sentences. The remark is also applied to some verbs of the second conjugation ending in *-vrir, -frir*, and *-lir*; as, *négligé-je ? aimé-je ? offré-je ? cueillé-je ?*

EXERCISE.

PLUPERFECT. That I might have been more studious. That
= ✗ =
thou might'st have been more circumspect. That she might
circonspect.
have been more attentive to her duty. That we might have
= *devoir* m. pl.
been less addicted to pleasure. That you might have been
livré à art. m. pl.
more assiduous and more grateful. That they might have
assidu *plus* *reconnaissant*
been less daring.
hardi.

PARADIGM, OR MODEL.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
PRESENT.		PAST.	
parl-*er*	*to speak*	avoir parl-*é*	*to have spoken*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
parl-*ant*	*speaking*	ayant parl-*é*	*having spoken*
PAST.			
parl-*é* m. -*ée* f.	*spoken*		

REMARKS.

1 All the regular verbs of the First Conjugation adopt the terminations of the verb *parler*; EXAM.

	parl-*er*	aim-*er*	expliqu-*er*	avou-*er*
	parl-*ant*	annonç-*ant*	engag-*eant*	défray-*ant*
	parl-*é*	agré-*é*	décri-*é*	dédommag-*é*
je	parl-*e*	dans-*e*	ignor-*e*	renvoi-*e*
tu	parl-*es*	dîn-*es*	rejet-*tes*	renouvel-*les*
il	parl-*e*	chant-*e*	bégai-*e*	grassey-*e*
nous	parl-*ons*	berç-*ons*	choy-*ons*	chang-*eons*
vous	parl-*ez*	régn-*ez*	essuy-*ez*	épel-*ez*
ils	parl-*ent*	caress-*ent*	ennu-*ient*	appel-*lent*

And so on through the whole verb.

2 Adverbs, with few exceptions, must be placed after the verb, in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses, when this adverb is only a single word.

3 The remarks prefixed to the exercises on the verb *avoir*, when *de* is to be placed between the verb and the substantive, ought to be attended to.

4 The article *the*, after the verb, must always be expressed in French, though often understood in English.

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE PRESENT. I willingly give that plaything to
volontiers donner *joujou* m.

INDICATIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

je parl-*e*	*I speak*	
tu parl-*es*	*thou speakest*	
il parl-*e*	*he speaks*	
nous parl-*ons*	*we speak*	
vous parl-*ez*	*you speak*	
ils parl-*ent*	*they speak*	

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

j'ai	parl-*é*	*I have*	*spoken*
tu as		*thou hast*	
il a		*he has*	
nous avons		*we have*	
vous avez		*you have*	
ils ont		*they have*	

your sister. Do I prefer pleasure to my duty? Dost
f. * *préférer* art. m. *devoir* m.
thou not irritate thy enemies? He does not propose salutary
irriter *ennemi* *proposer un* = 2
advice to his friends. We sincerely love peace and
avis m. 1 *sincèrement* art. *paix* f. art.
tranquillity. We do not neglect (any thing) to please you,
= f. * *négliger* *rien* *pour* *plaire*
Do you not admire the beauty of that landscape? Do not
admirer = f. *paysage* m. *
your parents comfort the afflicted? They (make use of) all
— *consoler* *affligé* m. pl. *employer*
means to succeed.
art. *moyen* m. *pour réussir.*

PRETERIT INDEFINITE. I have (given up) my favourite
céder *favori* 2
horse to my cousin. Hast thou not exchanged watches
cheval m. 1 — m. *changer de montres*
with my sister? Has the tutor given fine engravings to his
précepteur de *gravure* f. pl.
pupil? We have spoken (a long while) of your adventure.
pupille m. *long-temps* *aventure* f.
Have you not insisted too much upon that point? Have your
insisté * *sur* — m.
aunts prepared their ball dresses?
tante préparer *de bal* 2 *habit* m. pl. 1.

IMPERFECT. I unceasingly thought of my misfortunes.
sans cesse *penser* *à* *malheur* m. pl.
Didst thou dread his presence and firmness? He ex-
redouter — f. pron. *fermeté* f. *re-*
hibited in his person all the virtues of his ancestors. Did not
tracer en f. f. *ancêtre*

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.		
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.		
je parl-*ais*	*I did speak*, or *was speaking*	j'avais	parl-*é*	*I had*
tu parl-*ais*	*thou didst speak*	tu avais		*thou hadst*
il parl-*ait*	*he did speak*	il avait		*he had*
nous parl-*ions*	*we did speak*	nous avions		*we had*
vous parl-*iez*	*you did speak*	vous aviez		*you had*
ils parl-*aient*	*they did speak*	ils avaient		*they had*

spoken.

that woman accuse her friend of levity? We did not protect
accuser *ami* f. *légèreté* f. * *protéger*
that bad man. You despised a vain erudition. Did the
méchant *mépriser* — 2 — f. 1. *
Romans disdain so weak an enemy? The bees were there
Romain *dédaigner* *faible* 2 m. 1. *abeille* * *y*
sucking the cups of the flowers.
sucer *calice* m. *fleur.*

PLUPERFECT.—I had drained an unwholesome marsh.
dessécher *mal sain* 2 *marais* m. 1.
Had'st thou not married a man rich, but unluckily without
épouser *malheureusement sans*
education? Had his father rejected these advantageous
— f. *rejeter* *avantageux* 2
offers? We had not long listened to the singing of the
offre f. 1. *long-temps écouter* * *chant* m.
birds. Had you already studied geography and history?
oiseau m. *déjà* *étudier* art. = f. art. =
Had not his friends procured him a troop of cavalry?
procurer 2 *lui* 1 *compagnie* f. *cavalerie?*

There is a fourth preterit, called *preterit anterior indefinite*, which is used instead of the preterit anterior, when speaking of a time not entirely elapsed; as *j'ai eu achevé mon ouvrage ce matin, cette semaine*, &c. and not *j'eus achevé:* as it is found in every conjugation, I shall insert it here; *j'ai eu parlé, tu as eu parlé, il a eu parlé, nous avons eu parlé, vous avez eu parlé, ils ont eu parlé.*

SIMPLE TENSES. COMPOUND TENSES.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.		PRETERIT ANTERIOR.		
je parl-*ai*	*I spoke*	j'eus	parl-*é*	*I had*
tu parl-*as*	*thou spokest*	tu eus		*thou hadst*
il parl-*a*	*he spoke*	il eut		*he had*
nous parl-*âmes*	*we spoke*	nous eûmes		*we had*
vous parl-*âtes*	*you spoke*	vous eûtes		*you had*
ils parl-*èrent*	*they spoke*	ils eurent		*they had*

spoken

PRETERIT DEFINITE.—Did I not gladly give peaches
* *avec plaisir de* art. *pêche* f. pl.
and flowers to my neighbours? Thou forgottest an
pr. art. *fleurs* f. pl. *voisin* m. pl. *oublier*
essential circumstance. Did not your cousin relate that
essentiel 2 *circonstance* f. pl. * *raconter*
charming history with (a great deal) of grace? He lightly
—*mant* = f. *avec beaucoup* *légèrement*
judged of my intentions. Did we not shew courage,
juger * — * *montre de* art. — m. pr.—
constancy, and firmness? Did you visit the grotto
art. = f. pr—art. f. * *visiter grotte* f.
and the grove? They did not generously forgive their
bois m. * *généreusement* *pardonner à*
enemies.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.—I had soon wasted my money, and
bientôt manger *argent* m.
exhausted my resources. Hadst thou very soon reinforced thy
épuiser * *ressource* f. * *vite* *renforcer*
party? Had not Alexander soon surmounted all obstacles?
parti m. *Alexandre* *surmonter* *tous* art. = m. pl.
We had not soon enough shut the shutters, and (let down) the
tôt 2 *assez* 1 *fermer* *volet* *baisser*
curtains. Had you not quickly dined? In the twinkling
rideau *promptement dîner.* *Dans* * *un clin*
of an eye, they had dispersed the mob.
* *œil* *disperser* *populace* f.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.—I shall relieve the poor. Wilt
soulager *pauvre* m. pl.
thou faithfully keep that secret? Will he consult
fidèlement *garder* — m. *consulter de* art.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.		
FUTURE ABSOLUTE.		FUTURE ANTERIOR.		
je parl-*erai*	*I shall*, or *will speak*	j'aurai	*I shall*, or *will*	*have spoken.*
tu parl-*eras*	*thou shalt speak*	tu auras	*thou shalt*	
il parl-*era*	*he shall speak*	il aura	*he shall*	
nous parl-*erons*	*we shall speak*	nous aurons parl-*é*	*we shall*	
vous parl-*erez*	*you shall speak*	vous aurez	*you shall*	
ils parl-*eront*	*they shall speak*	ils auront	*they shall*	

enlightened judges? He will support you with all his credit.
éclairé 2 *juge* 1. *appuyer de* — m.
We shall not prefer pleasure to glory, and riches to
préférer art. m. art. f. art. pl. art.
honour. By such conduct, will you not afflict your father
tel 2 1 *conduite* f. 3. *affliger*
and mother? Will they astonish their hearers?
pron. *étonner* *auditeur* m. pl.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.—I shall soon have finished this book. By
achever m.
thy submission, wilt thou not have appeased his anger? Will
soumission f. *appaiser* *colère* f.
the king have triumphed over his enemies? We, perhaps, shall
triompher de 2 1
not have rewarded enough the merit of this good man.
récompenser *mérite* m. *de bien* 2 1
Will you not have flown to his assistance? Will our servants
voler *secours* m. *domestique* m.
have brought money?
apporter de art. *argent.*

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.—Should I form conjectures
former de art. —f. pl.
without number? Thou would'st not avoid so great a danger.
nombre m. *éviter* 2 3 1 4
Would not his attorney (clear up) that business? We would
procureur *débrouiller* *affaire* f.
(drive away) the importunate. Would you not discover
chasser *importun* m. pl. *dévoiler*

CONDITIONAL.

SIMPLE TENSES.			COMPOUND TENSES.		
PRESENT.			PAST		
je parl-*erais*	*I should, would.* or *could speak*	j'aurais		*I should, would,* or *could*	
tu parl-*erais*	*thou should'st speak*	tu aurais		*thou should'st*	
il parl-*erait*	*he should speak*	il aurait	parl-*é*	*he should*	*have spoken.*
nous parl-*erions*	*we should speak*	nous aurions		*we should*	
vous parl-*eriez*	*you should speak*	vous auriez		*you should*	
ils parl-*eraient*	*they should speak*	ils auraient		*they should*	

J'eusse parlé, tu eusses parlé, il eût parlé, nous eussions parlé, vous eussiez parlé, ils eussent parlé, is also used for the conditional past. This remark holds good for every verb.

---

that atrocious plot ? They would not unravel the clue of
atroce 2 *complot* m. 1. *démêler* *fil* m.
that intrigue
—f.

PAST.—I should have liked hunting, fishing, and the
aimer art. *chasse* f. art. *pêche* f.
country. Would'st thou not have played ? Would he not have
campagne f. *jouer*
bowed to the company ? Would we gladly have praised his
saluer * *compagnie* f. *avec plaisir* 2 *louer* 1
pride and incivility ? You would have awakened
orgueil m. pron. *malhonnêteté* f. *éveiller*
every body. Would those merchants have paid their debts ?
tout le monde *marchand* *payer* *dette* f. pl.

IMPERATIVE.—In all thy actions, consult the light of
Dans —f. pl. *consulter* *lumière* art.
reason. Never yield to the violence of thy passions.
f. *te abandonner* —f. —
Let us love justice, peace, and virtue. Let us not
art. —f. art. f. art. f.
cease to work. Sacrifice your own interest to the
cesser de travailler. *Sacrifier* * *intérêt* m. pl.

IMPERATIVE.

parl-*e**	*speak (thou)*
qu'il parl-*e*	*let him speak*
parl-*ons*	*let us speak*
parl-*ez*	*speak (ye)*
qu'ils parl-*ent*	*let them speak*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES. COMPOUND TENSES.

PRESENT.		PRETERIT.		
que	*that*	que	*that*	*have spoken*
je parl-*e*	*I may*, or *can speak*	j'aie parl-*é*	*I may*, or *can*	
tu parl-*es*	*thou may'st speak*	tu aies	*thou may'st*	
il parl-*e*	*he may speak*	il ait	*he may*	
nous parl-*ions*	*we may speak*	nous ayons	*we may*	
vous parl-*iez*	*you may speak*	vous ayez	*you may*	
ils parl-*ent*	*they may speak*	ils aient	*they may*	

public good. Do not omit such useful and interest-
2 *bien* 1 * *négliger de* art. *si utile* 2 *intéres-*
ing details.
sant 3 —m. pl. 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.—That I may not always listen to
écouter *
a severe censor of my defects. That thou should'st find
—2 = m. 1 *défaut* m. pl. *trouver*
real friends. That he would adorn his speeches with the graces
de vrai *parer* *discours de*
of a pure diction. That she would remain in her *boudoir*.
—2 —f. 1. *rester* — m.
That we should so hastily condemn the world. That
légèrement *condamner* *monde* m.

* REM. The second person singular of the imperative of this conjugation, and likewise of some verbs of the second ending in *vrir, frir, -lir*, take *s* after *e*, before the word *y* and *en*, as, *portes-en à ton frère*, carry some to thy brother; *offres-en à ta sœur*, offer some to thy sister; *cueilles-en aussi pour toi*, gather some alike for thyself; *apportes-y tes livres*, bring there thy books.

SIMPLE TENSES.			COMPOUND TENSES.	
IMPERFECT.			PLUPERFECT.	
que je parl-*asse*	*that I might, could, or would speak*	que j'eusse		*that I might, could, or would*
tu parl-*asses*	*thou might'st speak*	tu eusses		*thou might'st*
il parl-*ât*	*he might speak*	il eût	parl-é	*he might*
nous parl-*assions*	*we might speak*	nous eussions		*we might*
vous parl-*assiez*	*you might speak*	vous eussiez		*you might*
ils parl-*assent*	*they might speak*	ils eussent		*they might*

have spoken

you may pout incessantly. That they may work more willingly.
bouder sans cesse *travailler* *plus* *volontiers.*

PRETERIT.—That I may have caressed insolence, and flattered pride. That thou would'st have added nothing to that work. That he should have carried despair into the soul of his friend. That we may have blamed a conduct so prudent and so wise. That you may have exasperated so petulant a character. That they may not have taken advantage) of the circumstances.
caresser art. — f. *flatter* art. *ajouter* *ouvrage* m. *porter* art. *désespoir* m. *dans âme* *blâmer* *conduite* f. *sage* *exaspérer* — 2 *caractère* m. 1 *profiter* *circonstance* f. pl.

IMPERFECT.—That I should not copy his example. That thou might'st (give up) perfidious friends. That he might inhabit a hut instead of a palace. That we should fall at the feet of an illegitimate king. That you would respect the laws of your country. That they would
imiter *exemple* m. *abandonner de* art. — *de* 2 1 *habiter* *chaumière* f. *au lieu* *palais* m. *tomber à* *pied* m. *illégitime* 2 1 *respecter* *loi* f. pl. *pays* m.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

IN *-IR.*

This conjugation is divided into *four branches.*

The first branch contains upwards of two hundred and eighty regular verbs in *-ir*, exclusive of fifty-three more comprised in the three other branches, which may be considered as *exceptions*, and may be reduced to *thirteen roots*, with thirty-nine derivatives. By presenting some of the regular verbs of the *first* branch, which nearly resemble the *three following lists of exceptions*, the scholar will evidently see that the terminations in *-mir*, *-vir*, *-tir*, and *-nir*, are not absolutely the distinctive marks of the three other branches, the lists of which ought to be learned by heart.

1 BR.

ralent-*ir*	*to slacken*		
retent-*ir*	*to resound*	ressort-*ir*	*to be under the jurisdiction of a court*
appésant-*ir*	*to make heavy*		
nant-*ir*	*to pledge*	asserv-*ir*	*to inslave*
renform-*ir*	*to plaster*	sév-*ir*	*to use hard*
afferm-*ir*	*to strengthen*	assouv-*ir*	*to glut*
répart-*ir*	*to distribute*	appauvr-*ir*	*to impoverish*
avert-*ir*	*to inform*	tern-*ir*	*to tarnish*
sert-*ir*	*to set a stone*	vern-*ir*	*to varnish*
dessert-*ir*	*to unset a stone*	garn-*ir*	*to garnish*
sort-*ir* son plein et entier effet	*to obtain a full effect* (by law)	fourn-*ir*	*to furnish*
		bén-*ir*	*to bless*
		henn-*ir*, &c.	*to neigh*
assort-*ir*	*to match*		

---

not speak at random.
à-tort et à-travers.

PLUPERFECT. That I should not have burnt that work. That
brûler m.
thou might'st not have contemplated the beauties of the coun-
contempler = *cam-*
try. That he should have perfected his natural qualities.
pagne *perfectionner* —*rel* 2 =f. pl. 1.
That we might not have gained the victory. That you
remporter =f.
had enchanted the public. That they would have struck
— *ter* — m. *frapper*
their enemies with fear.
de crainte

	ROOTS.		DERIVATIVES.	
2 BR.	dor-*mir*	*to sleep*	redor-*mir*	*to sleep again*
			endor-*mir*	*to lull asleep*
			se rendor-*mir*	*to fall asleep again*
	men-*tir*	*to lie*	démen-*tir*	*to give the lie*
	sen-*tir*	*to feel*	consen-*tir*	*to consent*
			pressen-*tir*	*to foresee*
			ressen-*tir*	*to resent*
	par-*tir**	*to set out*	dépar-*tir*	*to divide*
			repar-*tir*	*to set out again*
	sor-*tir**	*to go out*	ressor-*tir*	*to go out again*
	ser-*vir*	*to serve*	desser-*vir*	*to clear the table*
	se repen-*tir*	*to repent*, has no derivative.		

3 BR.	ouv-*rir*	*to open*	rouv-*rir*	*to open again*
			entr'ouv-*rir*	*to half open*
	couv-*rir*	*to cover*	découv-*rir*	*to discover*
			recouv-*rir*	*to cover again*
	off-*rir*	*to offer*	mésoff-*rir*	*to underbid*
	souff-*rir*	*to suffer*, has no derivative.		

	ROOT.	DERIVATIVES.		ROOT.	DERIVATIVES.	
4 BR.	VENIR	av-*enir*	*to happen*	TENIR	s'abst-*enir*	*to abstain*
		circonv-*enir*	*to circumvent*			
		contrev-*enir*	*to contravene*		appart-*enir*	*to belong*
		conv-*enir**	*to agree*			
		dev-*enir*	*to become*		cont-*enir*	*to contain*
		disconv-*enir*	*to deny*		dét-*enir*	*to detain*
		inter-*venir*	*to intervene*			
		parv-*enir*	*to attain*		entret-*enir*	*to keep up*
		prév-*enir*	*to prevent*			
		prov-*enir**	*to proceed*			
		rev-*enir*	*to come again*		maint-*enir*	*to maintain*
		surv-*enir*	*to befall*		obt-*enir*	*to obtain*
		subv-*enir**	*to relieve*			
		se souv-*enir*	*to remember*		ret-*enir*	*to retain*
		se ressouv-*enir*	*to recollect*		sout-*enir*	*to uphold*

* N. B. *Partir*, *repartir*, *sortir*, and *ressortir*, of the second branch, take the auxiliary *être*. *Venir*, and its derivatives, are likewise conjugated with *être*, except *circonvenir*, *contrevenir*, *prévenir*, and *subvenir*, which take *avoir*; *convenir* also takes *avoir*, when it means *to suit*, but it takes *être*, when it signifies *to agree*. *Avenir* is a defective and obsolete verb, only used impersonally.

PARADIGMS.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

	BRANCH 1.	BRANCH 2.	BRANCH 3.	BRANCH 4.
Simple	*to punish*	*to feel*	*to open*	*to hold*
	pun-*ir*	sen-*tir*	ouv-*rir*	t-*enir*

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Simple	*punishing*	*feeling*	*opening*	*holding*
	pun-*issant*	sen-*tant*	ouv-*rant*	t-*enant*

PARTICIPLE PAST.

Simple	*punished*	*felt*	*opened*	*held*
	pun-*i*	sen-*ti*	ouv-*ert*	t-*enu*
Comp. pres.	*to have punished* / avoir pun-*i*	*felt* / sen-*ti*	*opened* / ouv-*ert*	*held* / t-*enu*
Comp. partic.	*having punished* / ayant pun-*i*			

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sim.	*I punish*	*feel*	*open*	*hold*
	je pun-*is*	sen-*s*	ouv-*re*	t-*iens*
	tu pun-*is*	sen-*s*	ouv-*res*	t-*iens*
	il pun-*it*	sen-*t*	ouv-*re*	t-*ient*
	nous pun-*issons*	sen-*tons*	ouv-*rons*	t-*enons*
	vous pun-*issez*	sen-*tez*	ouv-*rez*	t-*enez*
	ils pun-*issent*	sen-*tent*	ouv-*rent*	t-*iennent*

INDICATIVE. PRESENT. I choose this picture. I feel all
choisir *tableau* m.
the unpleasantness of your situation. Whence comest thou?
désagrément m. — *d'où* *venir*
Does he thus define that word? Does his mother (go out) so
ainsi définir *mot* m. *sortir*
soon? Do we not (set off) for the country? Do you not
tôt *partir* *campagne* f.
pity his sorrows? Do you not (tell a lie?) They are
compâtir à *mal* m. pl. *mentir*
finishing at this moment. They (act contrary) to your
finir *dans* * art. — m. *contrevenir*
orders.
ordre.

IMPERFECT. I fortified his soul against the dangers of
prémunir *contre* —

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Comp.	*I have punished*	*felt*	*opened*	*held*
	j'ai pun-*i*	sen-*ti*	ouv-*ert*	t-*enu*

IMPERFECT.

Simple	*I did punish*	*feel*	*open*	*hold*
	je pun-*issais*	sen-*tais*	ouv-*rais*	t-*enais*

PLUPERFECT.

Comp.	*I had punished*	*felt*	*opened*	*held*
	j'avais pun-*i*	sen-*ti*	ouv-*ert*	t-*enu*

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Simple	*I punished*	*felt*	*opened*	*held*
	je pun-*is*	sen-*tis*	ouv-*ris*	t-*ins*
	tu pun-*is*	sen-*tis*	ouv-*ris*	t-*ins*
	il pun-*it*	sen-*tit*	ouv-*rit*	t-*int*
	nous pun-*îmes*	sen-*tîmes*	ouv-*rîmes*	t-*înmes*
	vous pun-*îtes*	sen-*tîtes*	ouv-*rîtes*	t-*întes*
	ils pun-*irent*	sen-*tirent*	ouv-*rirent*	t-*inrent*

---

seduction. I served my friends warmly. Did'st not
art. — f. *servir* *avec chaleur*
thou amuse him with fair promises? He complied (at last)
entretenir *de* *beau promesse* f. pl. *consentir* *enfin*
with the wishes of his family. Did we not frequently
à *désir* m. pl. *famille* f. *fréquemment*
warn our friends of the bad state of their affairs? Did we
avertir *état*
sleep then? Did you not belie your character? Did
dormir alors? *démentir* *caractère* m.
not the enemies invade an immense country? Did the
envahir — 2 *pays* m. 1.
wild beasts often (come out) from the bottom of
sauvage 2 *bête* f. 1. *souvent* *sortir* *fond* m.
their mountains?
montagne.

PRETERIT. I softened my father by my submission. I
fléchir *soumission* f.
foresaw that terrible catastrophe. Thou did'st not (come again)
pressentir — 2 — f. 1 *revenir*
as thou had'st promised. He did not succeed through
comme *le* ind-2 *promis* *réussir* *par*

N. B. Only the first person of those tenses, which are invariably conjugated alike, will now be given, the scholar will easily supply the rest.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Comp.	*I had punished*	*felt*	*opened*	*held*
	j'eus pun-*i*	sen-*ti*	ouv-*ert*	t-*enu*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Simple	*I shall punish*	*feel*	*open*	*hold*
	je pun-*irai*	sen-*tirai*	ouv-*rirai*	t-*iendrai*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Comp.	*I shall have punished*	*felt*	*opened*	*held*
	j'aurai pun-*i*	sen-*ti*	ouv-*ert*	t-*enu*

CONDITIONAL

PRESENT.

Simple	*I should punish*	*feel*	*open*	*hold*
	je pun-*irais*	sen-*tirais*	ouv-*rirais*	t-*iendrais*

---

thoughtlessness. Did his daughter not (set out again)
étourderie f. *repartir*
immediately? Did not Alexander sully his glory by his pride?
sur-le-champ *ternir*
Did we (go out of the city) before him? We never betrayed
ville f. *avant lui* *trahir*
that important secret. Did you not agree to trust
— 2 — m. 1. *consentir de vous en rapporter*
to me? They served their country with courage. Did the
moi *pays* —
ancient philosophers enjoy great consideration?
philosophe m. pl. *jouir de un* — f.

FUTURE. Shall I not obtain this of you? What will be-
obtenir cela de *que de-*
come of thee, if I forsake thee. Will he not embellish
venir * *tu* *abandonner* *embellir*
his country-seat? He will not sleep quietly.
maison de campagne *tranquillement*
Shall we consent to that ridiculous bargain? With
2 *marché* m. 1. *avec de* art.
time and patience, you will compass your end. We
m. pr. art. f. *venir à-bout de dessein* m.
shall not sully the splendour of our life by an unworthy action.
éclat m. *indigne* 2 — 1
Will those men enrich their country by their industry? Will
enricher *pays* *industrie*
not our friends offer us their assistance?
offrir *secours*

PAST.

Comp.	*I should have punished* / j'aurais pun-*i*	*felt* / sen-*ti*	*opened* / ouv-*ert*	*held* / t-*enu*

IMPERATIVE.

Sim.	*punish (thou)*	*feel*	*open*	*hold*
	pun-*is*	sen-*s*	ouv-*re*	t-*iens*
	qu'il pun-*isse*	sen-*te*	ouv-*re*	t-*ienne*
	pun-*issons*	sen-*tons*	ouv-*rons*	t-*enons*
	pun-*issez*	sen-*tez*	ouv-*rez*	t-*enez*
	qu'ils pun-*issent*	sen-*tent*	ouv-*rent*	t-*iennent*

CONDITIONAL. I would open the door and the window. *porte* f. *fenêtre* f.
I should still cherish life. Would'st not thou interpose in *chérir* art. *intervenir*
that affair? Would my brother (set off again) without taking f. *repartir sans prendre*
leave of us? You would not succeed in injuring him in the *congé* *parvenir à nuire lui*
public opinion. Could'st thou soften that flinty heart? — 2 — f. 1. *attendrir de rocher* 2 1
Could they foresee their misfortune? Would men always *pressentir malheur* art.
(grow old) without growing wiser, if they reflected on the *vieillir sans devenir* inf-1 *réfléchir* ind-2 *sur*
shortness of life? *brièveté* f. art.

IMPERATIVE. Shudder with horror and terror. Support *Frémir de* = *de effroi* m. *Soutenir*
thy character in good and bad fortune. Do not art. *dans* art. *mauvais* — f.
obtain thy point, but by means consistent with *parvenir à* *fin* f. pl. *que par des moyens que avoue* 2 * art.
delicacy. Let us feed the poor. Let us again *délicatesse* 1 *nourrir* m. pl. *obtenir* art.
glory by our perseverance. Let us not divulge our secrets = f. — *découvrir* —
to every body. Never submit to so unjust a yoke. Do not *tout-le-monde* *fléchir sous* 2 *joug* m. 1.
maintain so absurd an opinion. Do not (come upon us) again *soutenir* — *de* 2 — f. 1 *survenir* *plus*
(in that unexpected manner.) *ainsi à l'improviste.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

	that I may punish	*feel*	*open*	*hold*
	que je pun-*isse*	sen-*te*	ouv-*re*	t-*ienne*
	que tu pun-*isses*	sen-*tes*	ouv-*res*	t-*iennes*
Sim.	qu'il pun-*isse*	sen-*te*	ouv-*re*	t-*ienne*
	que nous pun-*issions*	sen-*tions*	ouv-*rions*	t-*enions*
	que vous pun-*issiez*	sen-*tiez*	ouv-*riez*	t-*eniez*
	qu'ils pun-*issent*	sen-*tent*	ouv-*rent*	t-*iennent*

PRETERIT.

Comp.	*that I may have punished*	*felt*	*opened*	*held*
	que j'aie pun-*i*	sen-*ti*	ouv-*ert*	t-*enu*

IMPERFECT.

	that I might punish	*feel*	*open*	*hold*
	que je pun-*isse*	sen-*tisse*	ouv-*risse*	t-*insse*
	que tu pun-*isses*	sen-*tisses*	ouv-*risses*	t-*insses*
Sim.	qu'il pun-*ît*	sen-*tît*	ouv-*rît*	t-*înt*
	que nous pun-*issions*	sen-*tissions*	ouv-*rissions*	t-*inssions*
	que vous pun-*issiez*	sen-*tissiez*	ouv-*rissiez*	t-*inssiez*
	qu'ils pun-*issent*	sen-*tissent*	ouv-*rissent*	t-*inssent*

PLUPERFECT.

Comp.	*that I might have punished*	*felt*	*opened*	*held*
	que j'eusse puni	senti	ouvert	tenu

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.—That I may never blemish my reputation. That I may (be before-hand) with such dangerous enemies. I will not have thee (go out) this morning. That he may not enjoy his glory. That he may not obtain his ends. That *we* may become just, honest, and virtuous. That you may punish the guilty. That you may return covered with laurels. That they may establish wise and just laws. That they may agree about the conditions.

flétrir / f. / *prévenir* / *de* art. *si* = 2 / 1 / *veux* / *que* *tu* sub-1 / *matin* m. / *de* = f. / *parvenir à* / *fin* f. pl. / *devenir* / *honnête* / *vertueux*. / *coupable* pl. / *revenir* / *couvert* / *de* / *laurier* m. pl. / *établir* / *de* art. 2 / 3 1 / *convenir de* / —

THIRD CONJUGATION.

IN *-OIR.*

PARADIGM.

This conjugation contains only seven regular verbs, which are:

perc-*evoir*	*to receive*	déc-*evoir*	*to deceive*
aperc-*evoir*	*to perceive*	d-*evoir*	*to owe*
conc-*evoir*	*to conceive*	red-*evoir*	*to owe again*

And *recevoir*, which serves as paradigm. *Percevoir* is a law term, and *apercevoir* is often *reflected.*

OBSERVE. In verbs ending in *-cevoir*, the *c*, to preserve the *soft sound* of that letter, takes a *cedilla*, when followed by *o*, or *u*. See page 3.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
PRESENT.		PAST.	
rec-*evoir*	*to receive*	avoir reç-*u*	*to have received*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.			
rec-*evant*	*receiving*	ayant reç-*u*	*having received*
PAST.			
reç-*u*	*received*		

IMPERFECT.—That I might stun the whole neighbourhood.
étourdir 2 *tout* 1 *voisinage* m.
That I might not (bring about) my designs. That thou
venir à-bout de *projet* m. pl.
would'st (tell a wilful lie.) That he might not bear
mentir de dessein prémédité. *soutenir*
his disgrace with firmness. That we might disobey the laws.
—f. *fermeté* *désobéir. à*
That we should belong to that great king. That you might
appartenir
renounce your errors and prejudices. That they might
revenir de = pr. pron. *préjugé*
weaken the force of their reasons. That they might hold
affaiblir f. *raisonnement* *tenir à*
the most absurd ideas.
2 1.

INDICATIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
PRESENT.		PRETERIT INDEFINITE.	
I receive, &c.	*we receive*, &c.		
je reç-*ois*	nous rec-*evons*	j'ai reç-*u*	*I have received*
tu reç-*ois*	vous rec-*evez*	tu as, &c.	*thou*, &c.
il reç-*oit*	ils reç-*oivent*		
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
I did receive	*we did receive*	j'avais reç-*u*	*I had received*
je rec-*evais*	nous rec-*evions*		
PRETERIT DEFINITE.		PRETERIT ANTERIOR.	
I received	*we received*		
je reç-*us*	nous reç-*ûmes*	j'eus, reç-*u*	*I had received*
tu reç-*us*	vous reç-*ûtes*	tu eus, &c.	*thou*, &c.
il reç-*ut*	ils reç-*urent*		

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.—I perceive the summit of the Alps
apercevoir sommet Alpes f. pl.
covered with perpetual snow. What gratitude dost
de éternel 2 *neige* f. pl. 1 *reconnaissance* f.
thou not owe to her who (has discharged) the duty of a mother,
devoir celle 1 *remplir* 3 5
(to thee) (in thy infancy)? Does your scholar understand
près de 4 2 *écolier concevoir*
well that rule which is so simple? We do not owe a large
bien règle f. * * *devoir gros*
sum. Do you not perceive the snare? Ought firm
somme f. *piége* m. *Devoir* 5 *des* 1 3
and courageous men to yield to circumstances?
= 4 2 * *céder* art. *circonstance?*

IMPERFECT.—Did I not receive him kindly? Did he
le avec amitié?
see the castle from such a distance? We did not re-
apercevoir château si * *loin per-*
ceive our income. Did you not receive great civilities?
cevoir revenu m. pl *de honnêteté* f. pl.

SIMPLE TENSES. COMPOUND TENSES.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE. PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I shall receive *we*, &c. j'aurai reç-*u* *I shall have*
je reç-*evrai* nous rec-*evrons* *received.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT. PAST.

I should receive *we should*, &c. j'aurais reç-*u* *I should have*
je rec-*evrais* nous rec-*evrions* tu, &c. *received*

IMPERATIVE.

rec-*evons* *let us receive*
reç-*ois* *receive thou* rec-*evez* *receive ye*
qu'il reç-*oive* *let him receive* qu'ils reç-*oivent* *let them receive*

Did those tyrants conceive all the blackness of their crimes?
tyran *concevoir* *noirceur* f. —

PRETERIT.—I perceived him walking by moon
le qui se *promenait* *à* art. *clair de*
light. Did the queen conceive a great esteem for that
la lune m. *estime* f.
honest man. Did we not immediately perceive the snare?
de bien 2 1
You did not receive his letters in time. Did the ministers con-
lettres à-temps. — *tre*
ceive the depth of his plan.
profondeur f. — m.

FUTURE.—Shall I receive visits to-day? He will
de art. *visite aujourd'hui?*
not discover the spire of his village. We shall conceive
apercevoir *clocher* m. — m.
well founded hopes. Will you never conceive so
de art. *fondé* 2 *espérance* f. pl. 1.
luminous a principle? Shall men always owe their mis-
= 2 1 art. *mal-*
fortunes to their faults?
heur *faute* ?

CONDITIONAL.—Should I receive the offers of my enemy?
offre

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
PRESENT.		PRETERIT.	
that I may receive	*that we, &c.*	que j'aie reç-*u*	*that I may*
que je reç-*oive*	que nous rec-*evions*	que tu, &c.	*have re-*
que tu reç-*oives*	que vous rec-*eviez*	qu'il, &c.	*ceived*
qu'il reç-*oive*	qu'ils reç-*oivent*		
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
that I might, &c.	*that we might, &c.*	que j'eusse	*that I might*
que je reç-*usse*	que nous reç-*ussions*	reç-*u*	*have re-*
que tu reç-*usses*	que vous reç-*ussiez*	que tu, &c.	*ceived*
qu'il reç-*ût*	qu'ils reç-*ussent*		

Should a wise man thus (give himself up) to
devoir 4 1 3 2 *ainsi* 6 *s'abandonner* 5 art.
despair? Should we conceive such abstract ideas?
désespoir m. *de* art. *si* 2 *abstrait* 3 1
You would easily perceive so gross a trick. Would not
grossier 2 *ruse* f. 1
my sisters receive their friend with tenderness?
tendresse ? f.

IMPERATIVE. Conceive the horror of his situation. Do not receive that mark of confidence with indifference. Let us
marque f. *confiance* —
entertain a horror of vice. Let us never owe (any
concevoir * *de* art. *pour* art. m.
thing). Receive his advice with respect and gratitude. Re-
rien. *avis* — —
ceive no more of his letters.
lettre f. pl.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT. That I may receive consola-
de art.
tions. That he should not conceive a thought so well explained.
pensée f. *développé.*
That we may always receive false news. That you
de *nouvelle* f. pl.
may not perceive the danger of books which are contrary
— art. * * *contre*
to good morals. That they may not collect unjust
* art. *mœurs* f. pl. *percevoir de injuste* 2
taxes.
—f. pl. 1

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

IN *-RE.*

REMARK.—This conjugation has five branches.

The FIRST ends	in *-andre*	as, répandre	*to spill*
	in *-endre*	as, vendre	*to sell*
	in *-ondre*	as, répondre	*to answer*
	in *-erdre*	as, perdre	*to lose*
	in *-ordre*	as, mordre	*to bite*
the SECOND ends	in *-aire*	as, plaire	*to please*
		as, taire	*to keep secret*
the THIRD ends	in *-aître*	as, repaître	*to feed*
	in *-aître*	as, connaître	*to know*
the FOURTH ends	in *-uire*	as, instruire	*to instruct*
the FIFTH ends	in *-aindre*	as, contraindre	*to constrain*
	in *-eindre*	as, peindre	*to paint*
	in *-oindre*	as, joindre	*to join*

PARADIGMS.

INFINITIVE

PRESENT.

BRANCH 1.	BRANCH 2.	BRANCH 3.	BRANCH 4.	BRANCH 5.
to render	*to please*	*to appear*	*to reduce*	*to join*
rend-*re*	pl-*aire*	par-*aître*	rédui-*re*	joi-*ndre*
rendered	*pleased*	*appeared*	*reduced*	*joined*
avoir rend-*u*	pl-*u*	par-*u*	rédui-*t*	joi-*nt*

IMPERFECT. That I might conceive such a project. That
projet m.
he might perceive the secret designs of the enemy's general.
caché 2 *dessein* 1 2 * 1
That we should not receive every body with civility. That you
honnêteté.
could not conceive the depth of this book. That they
profondeur f.
might not perceive the masts of the ship.
mât m. pl. *vaisseau* m.

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

BRANCH 1.	BRANCH 2.	BRANCH 3.	BRANCH 4.	BRANCH 5.
rendering	*pleasing*	*appearing*	*reducing*	*joining*
rend-*ant*	pl-*aisant*	par-*aissant*	rédui-*sant*	joi-*gnant*

PARTICIPLE PAST.

rendered	*pleased*	*appeared*	*reduced*	*joined*
rend-*u*	pl-*u*	par-*u*	rédui-*t*	joi-*nt*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I render	*please*	*appear*	*reduce*	*join*
je rend-*s*	pl-*ais*	par-*ais*	rédui-*s*	joi-*ns*
tu rend-*s*	pl-*ais*	par-*ais*	rédui-*s*	joi-*ns*
il rend	pl-*ait*	par-*aît*	rédui-*t*	joi-*nt*
nous rend-*ons*	pl-*aisons*	par-*aissons*	rédui-*sons*	joi-*gnons*
vous rend-*ez*	pl-*aisez*	par-*aissez*	rédui-*sez*	joi-*gnez*
ils rend-*ent*	pl-*aisent*	par-*aissent*	rédui-*sent*	joi-*gnent*

PRETERIT INDEFINITE. (*I have*)

rendered	*pleased*	*appeared*	*reduced*	*joined*
j'ai rend-*u*	pl-*u*	par-*u*	rédui-*t*	joi-*nt*

INDICATIVE PRESENT. I know his fiery and impetuous
connaître *bouillant* 2 = 3
temper. I wait his return with impatience. Does he
caractère m. 1 *attendre* *retour*
fear death? Does not virtue please every body? We do
craindre art. f. *à*
not force you to adopt this opinion. We suppress for
contraindre *de adopter* — f. *taire*
the present several interesting circumstances. Do you not
— m. *intéressant* 2 f. 1
confound these notions one with another? You seduce
confondre art. art. *séduire*
your hearers by your modest exterior. Do your sons
auditeur m. pl. 2 = m. 1
acknowledge their errors? Do not those workmen waste their
reconnaître = *ouvrier* *perdre*
time about trifles?
à de art. *bagatelle* pl.

IMPERFECT. I did not displease by my conduct. I was
déplaire
pitying those sad victims of the revolution. Did not
plaindre *triste* *victime* f. pl. — f.

IMPERFECT.

BRANCH 1.	BRANCH 2.	BRANCH 3.	BRANCH 4.	BRANCH 5.
I did render	*please*	*appear*	*reduce*	*join*
je rend-*ais*	pl-*aisais*	par-*aissais*	rédui-*sais*	joi-*gnais*

PLUPERFECT.

I had rendered	*pleased*	*appeared*	*reduced*	*joined*
j'avais rend-*u*	pl-*u*	par-*u*	rédui-*t*	joi-*nt*

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I *rendered*	*pleased*	*appeared*	*reduced*	*joined*
je rend-*is*	pl-*us*	par-*us*	rédui-*sis*	joi-*gnis*
tu rend-*is*	pl-*us*	par-*us*	rédui-*sis*	joi-*gnis*
il rend-*it*	pl-*ut*	par-*ut*	rédui-*sit*	joi-*gnit*
nous rend-*îmes*	pl-*ûmes*	par-*ûmes*	rédui-*sîmes*	joi-*gnîmes*
vous rend-*îtes*	pl-*ûtes*	par-*ûtes*	rédui-*sîtes*	joi-*gnîtes*
ils rend-*irent*	pl-*urent*	par-*urent*	rédui-*sirent*	joi-*gnirent*

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

I had rendered	*pleased*	*appeared*	*reduced*	*joined*
j'eus rend-*u*	pl-*u*	par-*u*	rédui-*t*	joi-*nt*

---

this dog bite? Did that man (at last) acknowledge his
chien mordre *enfin*
injustice? We did not appear convinced. We joined our
— f. *convaincu* pl.
sighs and tears. Were you painting an historical
soupir m. pl. pron. *larme* f. pl. *peindre* *d'histoire* 2
subject? Did those orators throw the graces of
tableau m. 1 = *répandre* —
expression into their speeches? They led the people
art. — *discours* *induire* m.
into an error.
en *

PRETERIT. I aimed at an honest end. Did his prudence
tendre *à* 2 *but* m. 1 — f.
extinguish the fire of a disordered imagination? Did not your
éteindre *déréglé* 2 — f. 1
conduct (do away) his prejudices? We led our
—*duite* f. *détruire* *prévention* f. pl. *reconduire*
friend back to his country-house. Did we offer our in-
* *de campagne* 2 f. 1 *vendre* *en-*
cense to the pride of a blockhead? Did you feign to think
cens *sot* *feindre de*
as a madman? Did you conduct your children from truth to
on * *fou* *conduire* *on*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

BRANCH 1.	BRANCH 2.	BRANCH 3.	BRANCH 4.	BRANCH 5.
I shall render	*please*	*appear*	*reduce*	*join*
je rend-*rai*	pl-*airai*	par-*aîtrai*	rédui-*rai*	joi-*ndrai*

FUTURE ANTERIOR. (*I shall have*)

rendered	*pleased*	*appeared*	*reduced*	*joined*
j'aurai rend-*u*	pl-*u*	par-*u*	rédui-*t*	joi-*nt*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

I should render	*please*	*appear*	*reduce*	*join*
je rend-*rais*	pl-*airais*	par-*aîtrais*	rédui-*rais*	joi-*ndrais*

---

truth? Did those frightful spectres appear again?
effrayant 2 — m. pl. 1 *apparaître de nou-*
Did not the children (come down) at the first sum-
veau *descendre à* *or-*
mons?
dre m. sing.

FUTURE. Shall I hear the music of the new opera?
entendre *musique* f.
I shall not conceal from you my mind. Will the ge-
taire * *façon de penser.*
neral constrain the officers to join their respective corps?
contraindre *officier* *rejoindre* =
Will not a thought, true, grand, and well expressed, please
f. *exprimé*
at all times? We shall (make our appearance) on this great
dans art. m. pl. *paraître* *sur*
theatre, next month. Shall we describe all the
— m. art. *prochain* 2 *mois* m. 1 *dépeindre*
horror of this terrible night? Will you not new-model a
— 2 *nuit* f. 1 *refondre*
work so full of charming ideas? Will you know your
pleine 2 1 *reconnaître*
things again? Will they always reduce our duties to
effet m. pl. * *devoir* m. pl.
beneficence? They will assiduously correspond with
art. *bienfaisance* f. *assidûment* *correspondre*
their friends.

CONDITIONAL. Should I, by these means, gain the
moyen m. s. *atteindre à*
desired end? I should (carry on) the undertaking with suc-
désiré 2 *but* m. 1. *conduire* *entreprise* f.

PAST. (*I should have*)

BRANCH 1.	BRANCH 2.	BRANCH 3.	BRANCH 4.	BRANCH 5.
rendered	*pleased*	*appeared*	*reduced*	*joined*
j'aurais rend-*u*	pl-*u*	par-*u*	rédui-*t*	joi-*nt*

IMPERATIVE.

render (*thou*)	*please*	*appear*	*reduce*	*join*
rend-*s*	pl-*ais*	par-*ais*	rédui-*s*	joi-*ns*
qu'il rend-*e*	pl-*aise*	par-*aisse*	rédui-*se*	joi-*gne*
rend-*ons*	pl-*aisons*	par-*aissons*	rédui-*sons*	joi-*gnons*
rend-*ez*	pl-*aisez*	par-*aissez*	rédui-*sez*	joi-*gnez*
qu'ils rend-*ent*	pl-*aisent*	par-*aissent*	rédui-*sent*	joi-*gnent*

cess. Would his mother wait with (so much) patience? Could
tant de
sincerity displease the man (of sense)? Should we sell
art. = f. *à* *sensé* *vendre*
our liberty? Should we build our house upon that plan?
construire — m.
Would you oblige young people to live as you
astreindre de art. *gens* pl. *vivre comme*
do? Would you reduce your child to despair? They
art. *désespoir* m.
should dread the (public) censure. Would my pro-
craindre 1 *du public* 3 f. 2.
tectors introduce an unknown person into the world?
= *introduire* *inconnu* m. *

IMPERATIVE. Depict in thy idyl all the charms of a
peindre *idylle* *douceur* f.
rural life. Expect not happiness from exter-
champêtre 2 1 *attendre* art. art. *exté-*
nal objects; it is in thyself. Know the powers of thy mind
rieur 2 m. pl. 1 *force* f.
before thou writest. Let us unite prudence with
avant de * *écrire* *joindre* art. f. *à* art.
courage. Let us not descend to useless particulars.
m. *descendre dans des* 2 — *larité* 1
Let us not (give offence) by an air of haughtiness. Seem
déplaire * *des* m. pl. *paraître* 2
neither to cheerful nor too grave. Ye sovereigns, make
ne 1 *ni* *gai* *ni* *sérieux* * *souverain* pl. *rendre*
the people happy. Do not despise his friendship. Sweet
dédaigner *doux*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. (*that I may*)

	BRANCH 1.	BRANCH 2.	BRANCH 3.	BRANCH 4.	BRANCH 5.
	render	*please*	*appear*	*reduce*	*join*
je	rend-*e*	pl-*aise*	par-*aisse*	rédui-*se*	joi-*gne*
tu	rend-*es*	pl-*aises*	par-*aisses*	rédui-*ses*	joi-*gnes*
il	rend-*e*	pl-*aise*	par-*aisse*	rédui-*se*	joi-*gne*
nous	rend-*ions*	pl-*aisions*	par-*aissions*	rédui-*sions*	joi-*gnions*
vous	rend-*iez*	pl-*aisiez*	par-*aissiez*	rédui-*siez*	joi-*gniez*
ils	rend-*ent*	pl-*aisent*	par-*aissent*	rédui-*sent*	joi-*gnent*

PRETERIT. (*that I may have*)

rendered	*pleased*	*appeared*	*reduced*	*joined*
que j'aie rend-*u*	pl-*u*	par-*u*	rédui-*t*	joi-*nt*

---

illusions, vain phantoms, vanish. (Keep to yourself) such
— f. — *fantôme* m. *disparaître* *taire* *certain*
truths as may offend.
f. pl. *qui peuvent offenser.*

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT. That I may fear that cloud of ene-
nuée f.
mies. That I should please every body, is impossible.
à *ce*
That he may not reply to such absurd criticism. That
répondre *un si* 2 3 *critique* f. pl.
he may lead his pupil step by step to a perfect knowledge
conduire *élève* *pas à* *connaissance*
of the art of speaking and writing. That we may entice by an
inf-1 pr. inf-1 *séduire*
enchanting style. That we may confound the arts with the
— *teur* 2 m. 1
sciences. That you may have the same end in view. That
but m. 2 *tendre à* 1
they may not depend on any body. That they may not in-
dépendre de personne *ac-*
crease our sufferings.
croître *peincs.*

IMPERFECT. That I might not melt into tears. That
fondre *en larme*
I would acknowledge the truth. That he might (draw a picture)
reconnaître *peindre*
of distressed virtue. That he might please by her accom-
art. *malheureux* 2 1 *grâce*

IMPERFECT. (*that I might*)

	BRANCH 1.	BRANCH 2.	BRANCH 3.	BRANCH 4.	BRANCH 5.
	render	*please*	*appear*	*reduce*	*join*
que je	rend-*isse*	pl-*usse*	par-*usse*	rédui-*sisse*	joi-*gnisse*
tu	rend-*isses*	pl-*usses*	par-*usses*	rédui-*sisses*	joi-*gnisses*
il	rend-*it*	pl-*ût*	par-*ût*	rédui-*sit*	joi-*gnît*
nous	rend-*issions*	pl-*ussions*	par-*ussions*	rédui-*sissions*	joi-*gnissions*
vous	rend-*issiez*	pl-*ussiez*	par-*ussiez*	rédui-*sissiez*	joi-*gnissiez*
ils	rend-*issent*	pl-*ussent*	par-*ussent*	rédui-*sissent*	joi-*gnissent*

PLUPERFECT. (*that I might have*)

rendered	*pleased*	*appeared*	*reduced*	*joined*
que j'eusse rend-*u*	pl-*u*	par-*u*	rédui-*t*	joi-*nt*

PARADIGM, OR MODEL FOR PRONOMINAL VERBS.

Se repentir *to repent.*

Pronominal verbs, as was said page 121, are conjugated throughout, in each person, with a *double personal pronoun*, and as all their compound tenses are formed by means of the auxiliary verb *être*, their participle past must always agree in gender and number with the *objective pronoun*, when it is *direct*, otherwise not. Their inflections all follow the conjugations to which they belong.

---

plishments more than by her beauty. That we might conduct
f. pl. *conduire*
him to court. That we should affect such low
art. *cour* f. *feindre de* art. *si bas* 2
sentiments. That you might hear their justification. That
1 *entendre*
you might know your real friends. That they might (wait for)
vrai *attendre*
the opinion of sensible persons. That they would not ap-
art. *sensé* 2 f. pl. 1. f.
pear so scornful and vain.
dédaigneux f. pl. *ni si* f. pl.

In all participles past, except *absous*, *dissous*, *résous*, which are to be seen in their places, the feminine is formed by adding *e* mute to the masculine, and the plural by adding *s* to the singular, both masculine and feminine, when it does not already end with this letter, the French language not admitting a final *double consonant.*

As there is some difficulty in conjugating pronominal verbs, some few are here selected, which it will prove advantageous to practise.

s' alarmer	*s'* abstenir	*s'* habituer	*s'* enorgueillir
s' assoupir	*se* servir	*se* nantir	*se* méconnaître
s' apercevoir	*se* souvenir	*se* contraindre	*s'* immortaliser
se défendre	*se* prévaloir	*se* rendre	*se* dorloter
se hâter	*se* repaître	*s'* évertuer	*s'* ingénier
se dépêcher	*se* conduire	*s'* impatienter	*s'* obliger
se ressentir	*s'* enrhumer	*se* fâcher	*se* recueillir
se pouvoir	*s'* ennuyer	*se* reposer	*se* blesser
se taire	*s'* orienter	*s'* enquérir	*s'* enrouer
se promener	*s'* endormir	*se* méfier	*se* réjouir
se coucher	*se* morfondre	*se* formaliser	*s'* embarrasser
se lever	*se* perdre	*se* rapétisser	*s'* habiller
s' asseoir	*s'* évanouir	*se* réconcilier	*s'* émanciper
s' arroger	*s'* applaudir	*se* savoir gré	*se* dire
se procurer	*s'* attribuer	*se* prescrire	*se* rendre compte
se visiter	*s'* entr'aider	*s'* entr'ouvrir	*s'* entrevoir

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES. COMPOUND TENSES.

PRESENT.

se repentir *to repent*

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

se repentant *repenting*

PAST.

repenti, repentie } *repented*

PAST.

s' être { repenti, or repentie } *to have repented.*

PARTICIPLE PRESENT and PAST.

{ *s'* étant { repenti, or repentie } *having repented.*

INDICATIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

I repent.

je	*me*	repens
tu	*te*	repens
il, *or* elle	*se*	repent
nous	*nous*	repentons
vous	*vous*	repentez
ils, *or* elles	*se*	repentent

IMPERFECT.

I did repent.

je	*me*	repentais
tu	*te*	repentais
il, *or* elle	*se*	repentait
nous	*nous*	repentions
vous	*vous*	repentiez
ils, *or* elles	*se*	repentaient

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have repented.

je	*me*	*suis*	repenti, *or* repentie
tu	*t'*	*es*	
il, *or* elle	*s'*	*est*	
nous	*nous*	*sommes*	repentis, *or* repenties
vous	*vous*	*êtes*	
ils, *or* elles	*se*	*sont*	

PLUPERFECT.

I have repented.

je	*m'*	*étais*	repenti, *or* repentie
tu	*t'*	*étais*	
il, *or* elle	*s'*	*était*	
nous	*nous*	*étions*	repentis, *or* repenties
vous	*vous*	*étiez*	
ils, *or* elles	*s'*	*étaient*	

INDICATIVE PRESENT.—I commonly walk by moon-
d'ordinaire se promener à art. *clair*
light. Dost thou not deceive thyself? He (is never happy)
de la lune m. *se tromper* * *ne se plaire*
but (when he is doing) wrong! Do we not (nurse our-
que à faire de art. *mal* m. *s'écouter*
selves) too much? How do you do? They mean to
se porter *se proposer de*
travel in the spring.
voyager à m.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.—I (have been) tolerably well for
se porter *assez bien depuis*
some time. Didst thou not lose thyself in the wood? (It is
s'égarer * *On*
said) that he killed himself (out of) despair. Have we flattered
dit se tuer * *de* *se flatter*
ourselves without foundation? Ladies, have you walked
* *fondement* *Mesdames,* *se promener*
this morning? Did those ladies recognise themselves in
dame se reconnaître * *à*
this portrait?
— m.

SIMPLE TENSES.	COMPOUND TENSES.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.			PRETERIT ANTERIOR.			
I repented.			*I had repented.*			
je	*me*	repentis	je	*me*	*fus*	repenti,
tu	*te*	repentis	tu	*te*	*fus*	*or*
il, *or* elle	*se*	repentit	il, *or* elle	*se*	*fut*	repentie
nous	*nous*	repentîmes	nous	*nous*	*fûmes*	repentis,
vous	*vous*	repentîtes	vous	*vous*	*fûtes*	*or*
ils, *or* elles	*se*	repentirent	ils, *or* elles	*se*	*furent*	repenties

IMPERFECT.—I tormented myself incessantly about the
se tourmenter * *sans cesse* *pour*
affairs of others. Wast thou not (laying the foundation for)
autrui *se préparer*
much sorrow by thy foolish conduct? He made himself
bien des regrets *se rendre* *
more and more unhappy (every day.) We despaired without
de jour en jour *se désespérer*
reason. Did you not laugh at us? They ruined them-
se moquer de *se verdre* *
selves wantonly.
de gaiete de cœur.

PLUPERFECT.—I had trusted myself to (very uncertain)
se livrer *à des* *peu sûr* 2
guides. Didst thou not confide too inconsiderately in this
m. pl. 1. *se confier* *légèrement* *à*
man? Had that officer rushed rashly into this
— *cier s.* *précipiter* *témérairement* *dans*
danger? We had condemned ourselves. Had you not (been
— m. *se condamner* *nous-mêmes.* *s'oc-*
engaged) in trifles? Had those travellers (gone out) of
cuper *de bagatelle* f. pl. *voyageurs* *se détourner*
the right way?
droit chemin m.

PRETERIT.—I repented but too late of having taken such a
tard inf-2 *fait* 2 1
step. Wast thou not well entertained yesterday even
démarche f. *s'amuser* *hier* *au*
ing? He suffered for his imprudence. We
ne se trouver pas bien de
met in the street, but did not speak. Did you say
se rencontrer *rue* *se parler* *dites-vous*
nothing (to each other)? Did not those rash children ap-
téméraire 2 1 *s'ap-*
plaud themselves for their folly?
plaudir * *de* *sottise.*

SIMPLE TENSES. COMPOUND TENSES.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE. *I shall repent.*			FUTURE ANTERIOR. *I shall have repented.*			
je	*me*	repentirai	je	*me*	*serai*	repenti,
tu	*te*	repentiras	tu	*te*	*seras*	*or*
il, *or* elle	*se*	repentira	il, *or* elle	*se*	*sera*	repentie
nous	*nous*	repentirons	nous	*nous*	*serons*	repentis,
vous	*vous*	repentirez	vous	*vous*	*serez*	*or*
ils, *or* elles	*se*	repentiront	ils, *or* elles	*se*	*seront*	repenties

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.—(As soon as) I discovered that they
dès-que *s'apercevoir* *on*
sought to deceive me, I was on my guard.
chercher ind-2 *tromper* *se tenir* ind-3 *garde* f. pl.
What didst thou, when thou saw'st thyself thus forsaken?
fis *quand* *se trouver* * *ainsi abandonné*
When she recollected all the circumstances, she was quite
se souvenir de f. ind-3 *toute*
ashamed. When he had rejoiced sufficiently, we parted.
honteux *se réjouir assez* *se séparer* ind-3
When you had amused yourself sufficiently at his expense,
s'amuser * *à* *dépens* m. pl.
did you not leave him quiet? When they had walked
laisser ind-3 *tranquille* *se promener*
enough, they (sat down) at the foot of a tree.
s'assirent *à*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.—I will yield, if they convince me
se rendre *on* *convainc*
Wilt thou remember the engagement that thou makest? What
se souvenir de *prends*
will not he reproach (himself for)? We shall not forget our-
se reprocher à lui-même *s'oublier*
selves (so far as) to (be wanting) in respect towards him. Will
* *jusque* *manquer* *de* * *lui*
you employ the means I (point out) to you? Will not
se servir de *que* *indiquer* *
these flowers fade?
f. *se flétrir.*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.—Shall I have betrayed myself? Wilt
se trahir *moi-même*
thou not have degraded thyself in his eyes? He will have
s'avilir * *à*
(been proud) of this trifling advantage. We shall have
s'enorgueillir *foible* *avantage* m.

CONDITIONAL.

SIMPLE TENSES.			COMPOUND TENSES.		
PRESENT.			**PAST.**		
I should repent.			*I should have repented.*		
je	*me*	repentirais	je	*me* *serais*	repenti,
tu	*te*	repentirais	tu	*te* *serais*	*or* repentie
il, *or* elle	*se*	repentirait	il, *or* elle	*se* *serait*	
nous	*nous*	repentirions	nous	*nous serions*	repentis,
vous	*vous*	repentiriez	vous	*vous seriez*	*or* repenties
ils, *or* elles	*se*	repentiraient	ils, *or* elles	*se* *seraient*	

fatigued ourselves (to no purpose). In the end, you will have
se fatiguer * *inutilement* *à*
(been undeceived). Will your children have (loved each other)
se désabuser *s'entr'aimer*
too much?
*

CONDITIONAL. PRESENT. Should I suffer myself to
se lasser * *
(be drawn) into the party of the rebels? Wouldst thou be
entraîner *parti* m. 2 *
(so easily) frightened? Would not the nation sub-
de si peu de chose 3 *s'effrayer* 1 — f. *se sou-*
mit to so just a law? We should not rejoice to see the
mettre 3 4 1 2 *se plaire* *voir*
triumph of guilt. Would you dishonour yourselves by
triomphe art. *crime* m. *se déshonorer* *
such an action? Would those lords (avail themselves) of
2 1 *seigneur* *se prévaloir* *de*
their birth and fortune, (in order to) hurt
naissance f. *de leurs richesses* *pour* *faire* *vio-*
our feelings?
lence *à* *sentiment.*

PAST. Should I not have devoted myself entirely to
se dévouer * *entièrement*
the service of my country? (Had it not been for) thy careless-
pays m. *sans* *insouci-*
ness, thou would'st certainly have (grown rich). Would this
ance f. *s'enrichir*
pleasing hope have vanished so soon? Should we have
doux *espoir* m. *s'évanouir*
degraded ourselves to such a degree? You would have
se dégrader * 2 1 *point* m.

IMPERATIVE.

AFFIRMATIVE.		NEGATIVE.		
Repent (thou).		*Do not repent.*		
repens-*toi*		*ne te*	repens	pas
qu'il, *or* qu'elle	*se* repente	qu'il, *or* qu'elle	*ne se*	repente
repentons-*nous*		*ne nous*	repentons	
repentez-*vous*		*ne vous*	repentez	
qu'ils, *or* qu'elles	*se* repentent	qu'ils, *or* qu'elles	*ne se*	repentent

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.			COMPOUND TENSES.			
PRESENT.			PRETERIT.			
That I may repent.			*That I might have repented.*			
que			que			
je	*me*	repente	je	*me sois*		repenti,
tu	*te*	repentes	tu	*te sois*		*or*
il, *or* elle	*se*	repente	il, *or* elle	*se soit*		repentie
nous	*nous*	repentions	nous	*nous soyons*		repentis,
vous	*vous*	repentiez	vous	*vous soyez*		*or*
ils, *or* elles	*se*	repentent	ils, *or* elles	*se soient*		repenties

reduced yourselves to every kind of want. They
se réduire * *sorte* f. *privation* f. pl.
would have (been drowned,) if (they had not had assistance).
se noyer *on ne les avoit secourus.*

IMPERATIVE. O man, remember that thou art mortal. Do
se souvenir
not flatter (thyself that thou wilt succeed easily). Let
te promets *un succès facile*
us take an exact account of our actions. Let us not deceive
se rendre — 2 *compte* l *se seduire*
ourselves. Rest yourself under the shade of this tree.
nous-mèmes. Se reposer * *à* *ombre*
Do not expose yourself so rashly.
s'exposer * *témérairement*

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT. I must rise to-morrow at
Il faut que se lever *de*

SIMPLE TENSES. COMPOUND TENSES.

IMPERFECT. PLUPERFECT.

That I may repent. *That I might have repented.*

que			que			
je	*me*	repentisse	je	*me fusse*	}	repenti,
tu	*te*	repentisses	tu	*te fusses*	}	*or*
il, *or* elle	*se*	repentît	il, *or* elle	*se fût*	}	repentie
nous	*nous*	repentissions	nous	*nous fussions*	}	repentis,
vous	*vous*	repentissiez	vous	*vous fussiez*	}	*or*
ils, *or* elles	*se*	repentissent	ils, *or* elles	*se fussent*	}	repenties

an earlier hour. I wish that thou may'st be
* *meilleur* *heure* f. *souhaiter* *se porter*
better. I wish him to conduct himself better. Is it not es-
mieux *veux qu'il* * *se conduire* *
sential that we should contain ourselves? They wish that
—tiel *se contenir* * *On* *désirer*
you should accustom yourselves early to labour.
s'habituer * *de bonne heure* art. *travail* m.
It is time that they should (have relaxation) from the fatigue
se délasser — f.
of business.
art. f. pl.

PRETERIT. Can I have (been deceived) so grossly?
Se peut-il que *se tromper* *grossière-*
It is astonishing that thou hast determined to stay. It is
ment? *étonnant* *se décider* *rester* *On**
not said that he interfered in this business. It will never be
dit *se mêler de* *On* *
believed that we have conducted ourselves so ill. It is not
croira *se comporter* * *mal. On* *
suspected that you have disguised yourselves so ingeniously.
soupçonner *se déguiser* * *adroitement*
It is not feared that they have behaved ill.
craindre *se conduire.*

IMPERFECT. They required that I should (go to bed) at ten
On *exigeait* *se coucher à*
o'clock. They wish that thou should'st walk oftener.
heure *On* *voudrait* *se promener*
Did they not wish that he should practise fencing?
On *voulait* *s'exercer à faire des armes*
Was it necessary that we should (make use) of this method?
= *se servir* *moyen* m.

CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VERBS.

There is but one mode of conjugating passive verbs; it is by adding to the verb *être*, through all the moods and tenses, the participle past of the verb active, which then must agree in gender and number with the subject; as,

Je suis aimé, *or* aimée	*I am loved*
tu étais éstimé, *or* estimée	*thou wast esteemed*
ce roi fut chéri de son peuple	*that king was beloved by his people*
elle fut toujours chérie	*she was always beloved*
mon père fut respecté	*my father was respected*
ma mère fut révérée	*my mother was revered*
nous serons loués, *or* louées	*we shall be praised*
vous en serez blâmés, *or* blâmées	*you will be blamed for it*
ils seroient craints et redoutés	*they would be feared and dreaded*
je voudrais que les portes fussent ouvertes	*I wish the doors were opened*
tu en avais été averti, *or* avertie	*thou hadst been apprised of it*
lorsqu'il eut été mordu	*when he had been bitten*
je soupçonne que la ruse aura été découverte	*I suspect the artifice will have been discovered*
vous auriez été aperçus, *or* aperçues	*you would have been perceived*
bien qu'elles aient été reconnues	*although they were recognised*
supposez que les lumières eussent été éteintes.	*suppose the lights had been put out.*

Did they wish that you should complain without reason?
on voulait *se plaindre*
Did they not wish them (to make more haste)?
on désirer ind-2 *que ils* *se hâter davantage?*

PLUPERFECT. Would they have wished that I had revenged
voulu *se venger*
myself? I could have wished that thou hadst shewn
* *désirer* *se montrer*
thyself more accommodating. I could have wished that this
* *moins difficile* *voulu*
painter had (been less negligent). Would you have wished that
peintre *se négliger moins* *voulu*
we should have ruined ourselves in the public opinion, (in order
se perdre * 2 f. 1 *pour*
to) satisfy your resentment? I could have wished perhaps
satisfaire *ressentiment* *désirer peut-être*
that you had applied yourselves more to your studies.
s'appliquer * *davantage*
We could have wished that they had extricated themselves
se tirer
more skilfully from the difficulties (in which) they (had
adroitement *embarras* *où*
involved themselves).
s'étaient mis.

In the following exercises upon the verbs, the tenses will now be promiscuously intermixed.

EXERCISE ON THE PASSIVE VERBS.

That young lady is so mild, so polite, and so kind, that
jeune demoiselle doux honnête bon
she is beloved by every body. He performed with (so much)
aimé de jouer ind-4 *tant de*
ability, that he was universally applauded. He is known
intelligence ind-4 *applaudi*
by nobody. How many countries, unknown to the ancients,
de que de pays inconnu
have been discovered by modern navigators?
art. 2 *navigateur* m. pl. 1.

CONJUGATION OF THE NEUTER VERBS.

There are in the French language about six hundred neuter verbs, which are conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir* in their compound tenses; the only *excepted* are the following, which take *être*; even some of them, and particularly those marked with an asterisk, take either, according to the sense.

Aller	*to go*	venir	*to come*
accourir	*to run to*	revenir	*to come back*
arriver	*to arrive*	devenir	*to become*
choir	*to fall*	redevenir	*to become again*
déchoir	*to decay*	avenir	*to happen*
échoir	*to become due*	intervenir	*to intervene*
monter*	*to go up*	parvenir	*to attain*
descendre*	*to go down*	provenir	*to come from*
remonter*	*to go up again*	survenir	*to befall*
redescendre	*to go down again*	disconvenir	*to deny*, or *disown*
entrer	*to enter*	naître	*to be born*
rentrer	*to come in again*	mourir	*to die*
retourner	*to return*	décéder	*to die*
tomber	*to fall*	éclore	*to be hatched, to blow*
retomber	*to fall again*		
partir	*to set out*	accoucher	*to be brought to bed*
repartir	*to set out again*		
rester	*to stay*	demeurer*	*to stay*, or *remain*
échapper*	*to escape*	apparaître*	*to appear*
expirer*	*to expire*	périr*	*to perish*
passer*	*to pass away*	résulter*	*to result*
sortir	*to go out*	convenir*	*to agree, to suit*
ressortir	*to go out again*	contrevenir*	*to contravene*
aborder*	*to land*, &c.		

REMARK. The participle of these neuter verbs, which take *être* for auxiliary, must accordingly agree both in gender and number with their subject; as,

Je *suis* tombé, *or* tombée	*I have fallen*
quand tu *fus* venu, *or* venue	*when thou hadst come*
il *était* arrivé avant moi	*he had arrived before me*
elle *était* déja arrivée	*she had already arrived*
ma sœur *était* partie avant lui	*my sister had set off before him*
nous *serons* revenus, *or* revenues	*we shall have returned*
quand vous serez descendus, *or* descendues	*when you shall have come down*

ils *seraient* repartis elles *seraient* reparties	*they would have set off again*
vos sœurs *étaient* sorties, *sont*-elles à présent rentrées ?	*your sisters went out, are they now come back ?*
cela lui *est* échu en partage	*that fell to his lot*
cette maison m'*a* convenu et je *suis* convenu du prix	*that house suited me and I have agreed about the price*
il n'en *est* pas disconvenu	*he did not deny it*
cette chose m'*est* échappée de la mémoire, de la main	*that thing escaped from my memory, dropped from my hand*
la trêve *est* expirée	*the truce has expired*
les délais *sont* expirés	*the delays have expired*
elle *a* expiré dans les bras de sa mère	*she expired in the arms of her mother*
qu' *a*-t-il résulté de là ? qu'en *est* il résulté ?	*what has been the result, or consequence of it ?*
tous ceux qui étaient sur ce vaisseau *ont* péri, ou *sont* péris	*all those that were on board of that ship have perished*
a-t-on descendu le vin à la cave ?	*have they carried down the wine into the cellar ?*
le baromètre *a* descendu de quatre degrés pendant la journée.	*the barometer fell four degrees during the day*
les actions *ont* monté beaucoup.	*the stocks rose very much*
je n'*ai* pas remonté ma montre	*I have not wound up my watch*
il *a* monté quatre fois à sa chambre pendant la journée.	*he went up to his room four times in the course of the day*
il *est* monté dans sa chambre, et il y *est* resté.	*he is gone up to his room, and has remained there*

And so on through all the compound tenses of the other verbs.

EXERCISE.

They came to see us with the greatest haste. When ind-4 * *voir* *empressement* *Quand*
did they arrive ? That estate fell to his
est-ce que *arriver* ind-4 *terre* f. *lui est échu en* *
lot. He fell from his horse, but happily received
partage *tomber* ind-4 * *il*—ind-4
only a slight contusion on the knee.
ne que *léger* —f. *à* *genou* m.

OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Observe that, in impersonal verbs, *il* has no relation to a substantive, as may be seen by the impossibility of substituting a noun in its place.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

il pleut	*it rains*	il bruine	*it drizzles*
il neige	*it snows*	il importe	*it matters*
il grêle	*it hails*	il semble	*it seems*
il tonne	*it thunders*	il paraît	*it appears*
il éclaire	*it lightens*	il suffit que	*it suffices*
il gèle	*it freezes*	il convient	*it becomes*
il dégèle	*it thaws*	il s'ensuit que	*it follows that*
il arrive	*it happens*	il est à propos	*it is proper*
il sied	*it is becoming*	il faut	*it is necessary*
il messied	*it is unbecoming*	il y a, &c.	*there is*, or *are*

EXERCISE.

Does it rain this morning ? Did it hail
pleuvoir *matin* m. *grêler* ind-4 art.

last night? It does not snow. I thought it had thun-
dernier 2 f. 1 *neiger* *croyais que* *ton-*
dered. Does it not lighten? Do you think it freezes?
ner ind-6 *éclairer* *croyez que geler*
It is a remarkable thing. It was a terrible hurricane.
ce *ce* ind-2 2 *ouragan* 1
It is ten o'clock. It (was not my friend's fault) that it
heure pl. *ne tenir* ind-3 *pas à mon ami la chose*
was not so. It will freeze long. I do not think so; it
subj-2 *ne ainsi* *long-temps* *crois*
seems, on the contrary, that it thaws. It (is fit) to act
sembler *à* *contraire* *dégeler* *convenir* *de*
so. It (was of great importance) to succeed. Would it be
importer beaucoup ind-2 *de réussir* *être*
proper to write to your friends? It appears that he has
à *propos de*
not attended to that business. Perhaps it (would be) better to
s'occuper de *vaudrait*
(give up) the undertaking. It (was sufficient) to know his
abandonner *entreprise* *suffisait de*
opinion.

CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERB

Falloir, il faut, it must, it is necessary.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
PRESENT	falloir	PAST	avoir fallu
PARTIC. PRES.	*wanted*	PAST	fallu, ayant fallu.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.	il faut	PRETERIT IND.	il a fallu
IMPERFECT.	il falloit	PLUPERFECT.	il avait fallu
PRETERIT DEF.	il fallut	PRETERIT ANT.	il eut fallu
FUTURE ABSOL.	il faudra	FUTURE ANTER.	il aura fallu.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT	il faudrait	PAST	il aurait fallu

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT	qu'il faille	PRETERIT	qu'il ait fallu
IMPERFECT	qu'il fallût	PLUPERFECT	qu'il eût fallu

REMARK. The English verb, *must*, not being impersonal, may take any noun, or pronoun, for its subject, whereas the French verb *falloir*, being always

impersonal, a change of construction in the translation becomes necessary, and this may be done in two different ways.

The most common method is by putting the conjunction *que* after *il faut*, *il fallait*, &c. then transporting the subject of the English verb *must* to the second verb, which is to be put in the subjunctive in French: thus, I must sell my house, *il faut que je vende ma maison.*

The other way is by allowing the second verb to remain in the infinitive, as in English, and substituting in the place of the personal pronoun, which is the subject of the verb *must*, its corresponding objective *me*, *te*, *lui*, *nous*, *vous*, *leur*, which are to be placed between *il* and *faut*, *fallait*, &c. as, I must begin that work to-day, *il* ME *faut commencer cet ouvrage aujourd-hui.*

OBSERVE. That all expressions implying necessity, obligation, or want, may be rendered by *falloir*; as, I want a new grammar, *il* ME *faut une nouvelle grammaire.*

EXERCISE.

You *must* speak to him about that affair. It *was necessary* sub-1 *de* f. ind-2 *que* for him to consent to that bargain. We *were obliged* to (set * *il* * sub-2 *marché* m. ind-3 *partir* out) immediately. Children *should* learn every day some- sub-2 *sur-le-champ* art. cond-1 sub-2 thing by heart. *Shall* I suffer patiently such *an* insult? He ind-7 sub-1 2 1 *must* have been a blockhead not to *understand* cond-2 * sub-2 *sot* 2 *pour* 1 *comprendre* inf-1 *des* such easy rules. (How much) do you *want*? He does *si* 2 3 *règle* f. 1 *combien* *fait* what is *requisite*. Do that as it (*should be*). What *must* he *faites* ind-1 *que* 2 *lui* 1 have for his trouble? You are the man I *want*. Do not * *peine* f. *que* give me any more bread, I have already more than I * *de* *en* *déjà* *ne* *want*. I *need* not ask you whether you will come. I do not *m'en* * inf-1 *si*

think that it is necessary to be a conjurer to guess his motives.
crois *il* sub-1 * *sorcier* *pour deviner motif*
I could not suspect that I *ought* to ask pardon for a fault
pouvais *soupçonner* sub-2 * inf-1 — *de* *faute* f.
I have not committe
que *commise.*

CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERB

Y avoir, there to be.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT	y avoir	*there to be*
PAST	y avoir eu	*there to have been*
PARTICIPLE PRES.	y ayant	*there being*
PARTICIPLE PAST	y ayant eu	*there having been*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT	il y a	*there is*, or *there are**
PRETERIT INDEF.	il y a eu	*there has been*, or *there have been**
IMPERFECT	il y avait	*there was*, or *there were**
PLUPERFECT	il y avait eu	*there had been*
PRETERIT DEF.	il y eut	*there was*, or *there were**
PRETERIT ANT.	il y eut eu	*there had been*
FUTURE ABSOLUTE	il y aura	*there will be*
FUTURE ANTERIOR	il y aura eu	*there will have been*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT	il y aurait	*there would be*
PAST	il y aurait eu	*there will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT	qu'il y ait	*that there may be*
PRETERIT	qu'il y ait eu	*that there may have been*
IMPERFECT	qu'il y eût	*that there might be*
PLUPERFECT.	qu'il y eût eu	*that there might have been*

N. B. This verb in English is used in the plural, when followed by a substantive plural; in French it remains always in the singular.

EXERCISE.

There must *be* a great difference of age between those two
il doit — f.
persons. *There being* (so many) vicious people in this world.
tant de = 2 *gens* m. pl. 1

is it astonishing that *there* are so many persons who become
étonnant sub-1 *devenir*
the victims of the corruption of the age? *It is* a thousand
perversité f. *siècle* m. * *mille à*
to one that he will not succeed. *There would be* more
parier contre *réussir*
happiness if (every one) knew how to moderate his desires.
de bonheur *chacun* *savait* * * *modérer* *désir*
I did not think that *there could be* (any thing) to blame in
croyais sub-2 *rien* *reprendre*
his conduct. *There would* not *be* so many duels, did people
conduite f. — *si* *l'on*
reflect that one of the first obligations of a Christian is to
réfléchir ind-2 f. — f. *Chrétien* *de*
forgive injuries. Could *there be* a king more happy
pardonner art. *Pourrait-il*
than this, who has always been the father of his subjects?
celui-ci *sujet*

OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.				COMPOUND TENSES.			
To (go away)				*To have gone (away)*			
PRESENT.	(s'	en) aller		(s'	en) être	}	allé, allés
PARTICIPLE PRES.	(s'	en) allant	}				
PARTICIPLE PAST.	(	en) allé	}	(s'	en) étant	}	allée, allées

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	je	(m'	en) vais*	je	(m'	en) suis	} allé, *or* allée
	tu	(t'	en) vas	tu	(t'	en) es	
	il, *or* elle	(s'	en) va	il, *or* elle	(s'	en) est	
	nous	(nous	en) allons	nous	(nous	en) sommes	} allés, or allées
	vous	(vous	en) allez	vous	(vous	en) êtes	
	ils, *or* elles	(s'	en) vont	ils, *or* elles	(s'	en) sont	
IMP.	je	(m'	en) allais	je	(m'	en) étais	allé, &c.
PRET.	je	(m'	en) allai	je	(m'	en) fus	allé, &c.
FUTURE,	je	(m'	en) irai	je	(m'	en) serai	allé, &c.
COND.	je	(m'	en) irais	je	(m'	en) serais	allé, &c.

* *Or* je (m' en) vas.

IMPERATIVE.

AFFIRMATIVE.					NEGATIVE.				
	va	(t'	en)			ne (t'	en) va		
qu'il		(s'	en) aille	qu'il		ne (s'	en) aille		
	allons	(nous	en)			ne (nous	en) allons		pas.
	allez	(vous	en)			ne (vous	en) allez		
qu'ils		(s'	en) aillent	qu'ils		ne (s'	en) aillent		

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.					COMPOUND TENSES.				
PRES. que	je	(m'	en) aille		je	(m'	en) sois		allé, *or* allée
	tu	(t'	en) ailles		tu	(t'	en) sois		
	il, *or* elle	(s'	en) aille		il, *or* elle	(s'	en) soit		
	nous	(nous	en) allions		nous	(nous	en) soyons		allés, or allées
	vous	(vous	en) alliez		vous	(vous	en) soyez		
	ils, *or* elles	(s'	en) aillent		ils, *or* elles	(s'	en) soient		
Imp.	je	(m'	en) allasse		je	(m'	en) fusse		allé, &c.

REMARKS.

Je fus, j'ai été, j'avais été, j'aurais été, are sometimes used for *j'allai, je suis allé, j'étais allé, je serais allé.*

The imperative *va* takes an *s* when followed by *y*, or by *en ;* as, *vas-y, vas en savoir des nouvelles,* go thither, go to hear some tidings of it ; however it takes no *s* when the *y* is followed by a verb ; as, *va y donner ordre,* go and order that affair.

EXERCISE.

Will you *go* this evening into the country ? I *am going* to
soir *à* *campagne* f. *
pay some visits, and if I be early (at liberty) I
faire ind-1 *de bonne heure* 2 *libre* 1
shall certainly *go* home. *Go* there with thy brother
s'en aller chez-moi
Go and *do* that errand. *Go* there and put every
* *faire* *commission* f. * *mettre*
thing in order. Let him *go* to church on holidays.
en art. *église* f. * art. *jour* pl. *de*
By being loaded with scents, and particularly
fête. *à force de* inf-1 *chargé de* *odeur* f. pl. *surtout*
amber, he (offends the smell.) They have *woven*
pr. *ambre* m. *sentir mauvais.* *de* art. f.

Puer, to stink, is by no means irregular, but simply defective in the preterit of the indicative, and in the imperfect of the subjunctive.

Tisser, to weave, is a verb defective, which, to form its compound tenses, borrows the participle past *tissu*, from the obsolete verb *tistre*.

Envoyer and *renvoyer*, make in their future absolute and conditional present, *j'enverrai*, *j'enverrais*, and *je renverrai*, *je renverrais*.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

BRANCH I. *Punir.*

Bénir, to bless, has no irregularity, except in one of its two participles past, *bénit*, *bénite ;* as, *pain bénit*, hallowed bread ; *eau bénite*, holy water. The other, *béni*, *bénie*, being regular ; as, *bénie entre toutes les femmes*, blessed among all women.

Fleurir, signifying to blossom, is regular ; but when it means to flourish, to be in repute, honour, esteem,

---

silk and cotton together, and made a very pretty
pr-art. m. *en ont fait*
stuff. I shall *send* spring flowers to those
étoffe f. *de* art. *printanier* 2 f. pl. 1
ladies. I would *go* to Rome, if I could. We would
dame f. pl. *pouvois*
(*send back*) our horses. Why do they *go away* so soon ?
pourquoi
My brother and sister *went* yesterday to Windsor. I
pron. ind-4
will not *go* (any more) a hunting.
plus *à* * art. *chasse* f.

EXERCISE ON BRANCH I.

May the name of that good king be *blessed* from generation
nom m.
to generation ! These trees *blossomed* twice every
en ind-2 *deux fois* *tout* art.
year. The arts and sciences *flourished* at Athens in the
an pl. — art. — ind-2 *à* *Athènes*

it makes, in the participle present, *florissant*, and in the imperfect of the indicative, *florissait*, *florissaient*.

In *haïr*, to hate, the letters *-aï* form throughout two syllables, except in the three persons singular of the present of the indicative, *je hais*, *tu hais*, *il hait*, and in the second person singular of the imperative *hais*, which are pronounced as one syllable, as if written, *je hès*, *tu hès*, *il hèt*.

Gésir, to lie, is a defective verb, and has only preserved *gisant*, *gît*, *nous gisons*, *ils gisent*, *il gisait*, used in familiar discourse, or poetry, and particularly in monumental inscriptions : *ci-gît*, here lies.

BRANCH II. ON *Sentir*.

	BOUILLIR, *to boil*.	COURIR, *to run*.
Par. pres.	Bouillant—*Past.* bouilli	Courant—couru
IND. *pres.*	bous, bous, bout bouillons, bouillez, bouillent	cours, cours, court courons, courez, courent
Imperf.	bouillais—*Pret.* bouillis	courais—courus
Future.	bouillirai—*Cond.* bouillirais	courrai—courrais
IMP.	bous, bouillons, bouillez	cours, courons, courez
SUB. *pres.*	bouille—*Imp.* bouillisse	coure—courusse

Rebouillir, to boil again, and *ébouillir*, to boil away, are conjugated like *bouillir ;* this latter is only used in

---

time of Pericles. Horace and Virgil *flourished* under the
Périclès *Virgile* ind-2 *sous*
reign of Augustus. We discovered from the top of the
règne *Auguste.* *découvrir* *haut*
mountain a vast plain full of *flowery* meadows.
plaine f. *rempli* *de fleurissant* 2 *pré* m. pl. 1
The empire of the Babylonians was long a *flou-*
— — *ien* ind-3 *long-temps* *
rishing one. We did not *hate* the man, but his vices. Does
*
she really *hate* that vain pomp and all the parade of
pompe f. *appareil* an
grandeur ?

compound tenses, and the infinitive; as, *cette sauce est trop ébouillie*, this sauce has boiled away too much.

Like *courir* are conjugated,

accourir	to run to	*parcourir*	to run over
concourir	to concur	*recourir*	to have recourse
discourir	to discourse	*secourir*	to assist
encourir	to incur		

FAILLIR, *to fail.*

Part. pres. faillant.* *Past.* failli.
IND. *pres.* faux,* faux,* faut,* faillons,* faillez,* faillent.*
Imperf. faillais.* *Pret.* faillis, &c. *Fut.* faudrai.*
COND. faudrais.* SUBJ. *imperf.* que je faillisse.

DEFAILLIR, *to faint*, has now only the plural of the
IND. *pres.* nous défaillons, ils défaillent. *Imperf.* défaillois.
Pret. défaillis. *Pret. indef.* j'ai défailli, and INF. *pres.* défaillir.

N. B. The tenses marked with an asterisk are obsolete.

EXERCISE ON BRANCH II.

Take that water off the fire, it *boils* too fast. Do not
Retirer f. *de dessus* m. f. *fort*
let the soup (*boil away*) (so much). That sauce has
laisser 1 *pot* 3 *tant* 2 f. *est*
(*boiled away*) (too much). *Boil* that meat again;
f. *trop* *Faites rebouillir* *viande* f. *
It has not *boiled* long enough. He *runs* faster than I. He
f. 2 * *assez* 1 *vîte* *moi*
ran about uselessly all the morning. We *ran* at the
ind-4 * *inutilement* *matinée* f. ind-3
voice of that honest man, and *assisted* him. (The moment) he
f. *dès-que*
saw us in danger, he *ran to* us and delivered us. By so
vit *en* * *délivrer* ind-3 2
whimsical a conduct, should we not *contribute* to our destruc-
bizarre 3 1 *concourir* *perte* f.
tion? He *discoursed* so long on the immortality of the soul,
sur =
and the certainty of another life, that he left
certitude f. *laisser* ind-3
nothing unsaid. If we (were to act thus), we should
en arrière *agir* ind-2 *ainsi*
certainly *incur* the displeasure of our parents. I would not
disgrâce f.
huve recourse to so base a method. Will men always
bas 2 *moyen* m. 1 art.
run after shadows?
de art. *chimère* f. pl.

FUIR, *to fly, to run away.*

Part. pres. fuyant. *Past.* fui.
IND. *pres.* fuis, fuis, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient.
Imperf. fuyais. *Pret.* fuis. *Fut.* fuirai. COND. fuirais.
IMP. fuis, fuie, fuyons, fuyez, fuient.
SUBJ. *pres.* fuie, fuies, fuie, fuyions, fuyiez, fuient.
Imperf. je fuisse, *or rather,* prisse la fuite.

MOURIR, *to die.*

Part. pres. mourant. *Past.* mort.
IND. *pres.* meurs, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent.
Imp. mourais. *Pret.* mourus. *Fut.* mourrai. COND. mourrais.
IMP. meurs, meure, mourons, mourez, meurent.
SUBJ. *pres.* meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent.
Imperf. mourusse. *Comp. tenses.* je suis mort, j'étais mort, &c.

Rem. *S'enfuir*, to run away, is conjugated after *fuir*. *Mourir* takes the auxiliary *être;* and when reflected, *se mourir* signifies to be dying, or at the point of death. It is seldom used except in the present and imperfect of the indicative.

EXERCISE ON FAILLIR, &c.

He (*was near*) losing his life in that rencounter. He
faillir *perdre* * art. *rencontre* f.
(*was near*) falling into the snare which was laid for him.
faillir ind-4 *donner* *piége* m. *qu'on avait tendu* * *lui*
His strength *fails* him every day. Let us
* art. f. pl. *défaillir* *lui* art. m. pl. *Donnez-nous*
have something to eat directly; we *are fainting* with
* * *manger* 2 *vite* 1 *de*
fatigue and hunger. I cannot meet him, he shuns
— pr. *faim* *ne puis rencontrer*
me. When we have no employ, we endeavour to
on sait *s'occuper* *chercher* *se*
fly from ourselves. Would he not *avoid* flatterers,
* *soi-même* *fuir* art. *flatteur* m. pl.
if he knew all their falsehood? He *died* by a (very painful)
ind-2 *fausseté* f. *de* *cruel* 2
disease. She *died* of grief (for the loss of) her son.
maladie f. 1 ind-4 *chagrin* m. *d'avoir perdu*
He is *dying.* She *was expiring* with grief, when the fear
se mourir *se mourir* *de* *crainte* f.
of death at last wrested her secret from her
art. *enfin arracher* ind-3 —m. * *lui.*

Quérir, to fetch, is used in familiar conversation after *venir*, *envoyer*, *aller*, as, *envoyez quérir*, send for; *allez quérir*, go and fetch.

ACQUERIR, *to acquire.*

Part. pres. acquérant. *Past.* acquis.
IND. *pres.* acquiers, acquiers, acquiert, acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent.
Imper. acquérais. *Pret.* acquis. *Fut.* acquerrai. COND. acquerrais.
IMP. acquiers, acquière, acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent.
SUBJ. *pres.* acquièr-e, -es, -e, acquér-ions, -iez, acquièrent.
Imperf. acquisse.

S'enquérir, to inquire, and *requérir*, to request, are conjugated as *acquérir*.

Conquérir, to conquer, is seldom used but in the IND. *pret.* je conquis, &c. and in the SUBJ. *imperf.* je conquisse. Its chief use is in the *compound tenses*.

Ouïr, to hear, is only employed in the INF. *pres.* ouïr. *Part. past.* ouï. IND. *pret.* j'ouïs, tu ouïs, &c. and SUBJ. *imperf.* j'ouïsse, tu ouïsses, &c. Its principal use is in the *compound tenses*, when it is generally accompanied by another verb; as, *je l'ai*, or *je l'avais ouï dire*, I have, *or* I had heard it said.

VETIR, *to clothe.*

Part. pres. vêtant.* *Past.* vêtu.
IND. *pres.* vêts,* vêts,* vêt,* vêtons, vêtez, vêtent.
Imperf. vêtais. *Pret.* vêtis. *Fut.* vêtirai. COND. vêtirais.
IMP. vêts,* vête,* vêtons, vêtez, vêtent.
SUBJ. *pres.* vête. *Imperf.* vêtisse.

N. B. *Vêtir*, is seldom used in the forms marked with an asterisk, and is most frequently reflected.

Revêtir, to clothe, to invest, is used through all the tenses; *dévêtir*, to divest, is principally used as a reflected verb, and in some forms only.

EXERCISE ON QUERIR, &c.

Send for the physician and follow exactly his advice. *Go*
médecin *suivez*
and *fetch* my cane. Every day he *acquired*
* *canne* f. art. *jour* m. pl. ind-3 *de* art.
celebrity by works calculated to fix the atten-
= f. *de* art. *ouvrage* m. pl. *fait pour*
tion of an enlightened public. That I would *acquire*
2 1 subj-2 *de* art.
riches at the expense of my honesty! He had *acquired*
dépens m. pl. *probité* f.

BRANCH III. *Ouvrir.*

CUEILLIR, *to gather.*

Part. pres.	cueillant.	*Past.*	cueilli.	IND. *pres.*	cueille.
Imperf.	cueillais.	*Pret.*	cueillis.	*Fut.*	cueillerai.
COND.	cueillerais.	IMPER.	cueille.	SUBJ. *pres.*	cueille.
Imperf.	cueillisse.				

Thus, *accueillir*, to welcome, and *recueillir*, to collect.

Saillir, to project, has only *saillant*, *sailli* ; and the following forms : *il saille*, *il saillait*, *il saillera*, *il sailerait*, *qu'il saille*, *qu'il saillît*. But *saillir*, to gush out, is regularly conjugated like *finir* ; *saillissant*, *je*

---

by his merit great influence over the opinions of his con-
m. *une* —f. sing. *con-*
temporaries. I have *inquired* about that man (every where)
temporain *dc* *—là partout*
and have not (been able) (to hear any thing of him). Who
je *pu* *en avoir de nouvelles* *Qui est-*
has *requested* it of you? Sesostris, king of Egypt,
ce qui 3 4 *en* 2 * 1
conquered a great part of Asia. The formidable empire
art. 2 1
which Alexander *conquered* did not last longer than
—dre ind-6 *durer plus long-temps*
his life. I have *heard* that important news. He *dressed*
f. *ouïr-dire* 2 sing. 1 *se vêtir*
himself in haste and (went out) immediately. I wish
* *à* art. *hâte* f. *sortir* *sur-le-champ.* *voudrais*
she would *dress* the children with more care. If his
que *vêtir* subj-2 *de*
fortune permitted him, he would *clothe* all the poor of his
permettait *le lui*
parish. Two servants *clothed* him with his ducal
paroisse f. *domestique* *revêtir* *de* 2
mantle. He only passed for a traveller; but
manteau m. 1 *ne* ind-2 *que* *voyageur*
lately he has *assumed* the character of an envoy. It
depuis peu *revêtir* *un* * *envoyé*
begins to be very warm; it is time to (*throw off some clothing.*)
commencer *faire* *chaud;* *de* *se dé-*
vêtir.

saillis, &c. *ils saillissent*, &c. Its principal use is in the third persons.

ASSAILLIR, *to assault.*

Part. pres.	assaillant.	*Past.*	assailli.	IND. *pres.*	assaille.
Imperf.	assaillais.	*Pret.*	assaillis.	*Fut.*	assaillirai.
COND.	assaillirais.	IMPER.	assaille.	SUB.	assaille.
Imperf.	assaillisse.				

EXERCISE ON BRANCH III.

I will *gather* with pleasure some of these flowers and
pr-pron.
fruits, since you wish to have some. Do not *gather*
puisque *être bien-aise de* *en*
these peaches, before they are ripe. That is a
f. pl. *avant que* *de* subj-1 *mûr.* *Ce*
country where they neither *reap* corn, nor (gather)
pays *où* *on* *ne* *recueillir ni blé* *ni* *
grapes. We shall *collect* in ancient history important
vin *recueillir* 2 1 *de* art. — 2
and valuable facts. He *received* us in the most polite manner.
précieux 3 *fait* 1. *accueillir* *de* 2 *manière*
Poverty, misery, sickness. persecution, in a
f. 1 art f. art. f. art. *maladie* f. art. f. *en*
word, all the misfortunes in the world have (*fallen upon*)
malheur m. pl. *de* *accueillir*
him. You will give six inches to that cornice; it will
voulez *pouce* m. pl. *corniche* f. f.
project too much. That balcony *projected* too much; it
balcon m. ind-2
darkened the dining-room. When Moses struck
obscurcir ind-2 *Quand Moïse frapper* ind-3
the rock, there *gushed out* (of it) a spring of (fresh running)
rocher m. *il* ind-3 *en* *source* f. *vif* 2
water. The blood *gushed* from his vein with impetuosity.
f. 1 ind-2 *veine* f. =
We shall *assault* the enemy to-morrow in their entrenchments.
pl. *demain* *retranchement.*
Were we not *overtaken* by a horrible storm? At every word
ind-3 *assailli* *tempête* f. *à chaque*
they said to him concerning his son, the good (old man)
que on *disait* * *de* *vieillard*
leaped for joy. Shall you not *shudder* with fear?
tressaillir ind-2 *de joie.* *tressaillir* *peur* f.

N. B. *Tressaillir*, to start, conjugated like *assaillir*, makes in the fut. je *tressaillirai*, or *tressaillerai*, &c.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Avoir, to have, is conjugated at length, p. 123.

Ravoir, to have again, and *se ravoir*, to recover, are only used in the present of the infinitive.

Choir, to fall, has only the participle past, *chu*, *chue*, formerly *chute*, preserved in *chape-chute*.

DECHOIR, *to decay.*

(*No Part. pres.*) *Part. past.* déchu.
IND. *pres.* déchois, déchois, déchoit, déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoient.
(*No Imperf.*) *Pret.* déchus. *Fut.* décherrai. COND. décherrais.
IMPER. déchois, déchoie, déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoient.
SUB. *pres.* déchoie, déchoies, déchoie, déchoyi-ons, —ez, déchoient. *Imperf.* déchusse.

Echoir, to fall to, to expire, has only now in use, the IND. *pres. il échoit*, sometimes pronounced *il échet;* the pret. *il échut;* fut. *il écherra;* cond. *il écherrait;* the imperf. SUBJ. *que j'échusse*, &c. and INF. *échoir*, *échéant*, *échu.*

N. B. *Choir*, *déchoir*, *échoir*, take the auxiliary *être.*

Falloir, to be necessary, is an impersonal verb, the conjugation of which has been given, p. 177.

EXERCISE ON AVOIR, RAVOIR, &c.

I had apartments that I liked; I will endeavour to *have* them
ind-2 *un logement* *aimer* *veux essayer* *de* s,
again. Beware of *falling.* How has he *fallen* into
prenez-garde inf-1 *comment* *en*
poverty? Since the publication of his last work, he has
pauvreté? *Depuis* *dernier*
much *fallen* in the esteem of the public. If he do not alter
déchoir *changer*
his conduct, he will *decline* every day in his reputation
de * *déchoir de jour-en-jour de* —f.
and credit. He has put in the lottery, and he hopes
pr. pron. — m. *mis à* *loterie* f.
that a capital prize will *fall* (to his share). That bill
* art. *gros* *lot* m. *échoir* *lui* *lettre* f
of exchange has *expired.* The first term *expires* at Mid
change *échoir.* *terme* m. *à la Saint*

MOUVOIR, *to move.*

Part. pres. mouvant. *Part. past.* mu.
IND. *pres.* meus, meus, meut, mouv-ons, —ez, meuvent.
Imperf. mouvais. *Pret.* mus. *Fut.* mouvrai. COND. mouvrais.
IMPER. meus, meuve, mouvons, mouvez, meuvent.
SUBJ. *pres.* meuv-e, —es, —e, mouv-ions, —iez, meuvent.
Imperf. musse.

In the same manner are conjugated, *émouvoir*, to stir up, to move ; *promouvoir*, to promote ; and *démouvoir*, to make one desist.

The first, whether in an actual or figurative sense, is much used. The second, is employed in speaking of a dignity. The third, is a law term, and is only used in the INF. *pres.*

PLEUVOIR, *to rain* (*impersonal*).

Part. pres. pleuvant. *Past.* plu. IND. *pres.* il pleut.
Imperf. il pleuvait. *Pret.* il plut. *Fut.* il pleuvra.
COND. il pleuvrait. SUB. *pres.* qu'il pleuve. *Imperf.* qu'il plût.

---

summer. You have drawn on me a bill of exchange ; when
Jean. *tirer* *sur moi*
is it *payable ?* I did not believe that I *must* so soon (have taken)
échoir ind-1 *croyais* sub-2 *faire*
that journey. He *must* have sunk under the efforts
voyage m. ind-4 *que succomber* sub-2
of (so many) enemies.
tant de

EXERCISE ON MOUVOIR, &c.

The spring which *moves* the whole machine is very inge-
ressort m. 2 *tout* 1 —f.
nious, though very simple. It was passion which *moved*
= *quoique* — *Ce* ind-1 art. f. ind-4
him to that action. Can you doubt that the soul, though it
— f. *Pouvez* f.
is spiritual, *moves* the body at pleasure ? That is a man
* — *tuel ne* sub-1 *à sa volonté ?* *Ce*
whom nothing *moves.* We had scarcely lost sight of
émouvoir ind-3 *à peine* *perdu vue* f. 3 2 art.
land when there *arose* a violent tempest. We
terre, f. 1 *que il* *s'émouvoir* ind-3 *grande tempête* f.
were *moved* with fear and pity. When the famous
ind-2 *émus de crainte* f. pr. *pitié* f. *Quand* *célèbre*
d'Aguesseau was *promoted* to the dignity of chancellor, all
= f. *chancelier* art.

POUVOIR, *to be able.*

Part. pres. pouvant. *Part. past.* pu.
IND. *pres.* puis *or* peux, peux, peut, pouv-ons, —ez, peuvent.
Imperf. pouvais. *Pret.* pus. *Fut.* pourrai. COND. pourrais.
(*No imperative*). SUBJ. *pres.* puisse. *Imperf.* pusse.

REMARK. Conversation and poetry admit *je peux;* but in interrogations, *puis-je?* and not *peux-je?* must be used.

SAVOIR, *to know.*

Part. pres. sachant. *Part. past.* su.
IND. *pres.* sais, sais, sait, savons, savez, savent. *Imperf.* savais.
Pret. sus. *Fut.* saurai. COND. saurais.
IMPER. sache, sache, sachons, sachez, sachent.
SUBJ. *pres.* sache. *Imperf.* susse.

Seoir, to become, to befit, has *only* the *part. pres seyant;* and the third person of the *simple* tenses, *il sied, ils siéent, il seyait, il siéra, il siérait, qu'il siée.* But *seoir*, to sit, is used only in the two participles, *séant* and *sis.* This verb is also used impersonally.

France shewed the greatest joy. That bishop well
f. *en témoigner* ind-3 f. *évêque*
deserved by his talents and by his virtues, that the king
mériter ind-2
should *promote* him to the dignity of primate. The people
sub-2 *primat* sing.
think that it *rains* frogs and insects
croit *de* art. *grenouille* f. pl. pr-art. *insecte* m. pl.
at certain seasons. It will not *rain* to-day, but I
en — temps pl. *d'aujourd'hui*
(am fearful) of its *raining* to-morrow.
craindre *que* * *ne* sub-1

EXERCISE ON POUVOIR, SAVOIR, &c.

When he arrived at home, he (was quite ex
ind-5 with *être chez-lui* *n'en pouvoir*
hausted). The minister had (so many) people at his
ind-2 *plus* *ministre* ind-2 *tant* *de monde à*
levee, that I *could* not speak to him. Are you afraid
audience, ind-2 * 2 *craignez* 1
that he will not accomplish that affair? I *know*
pouvoir sub-1 *venir à bout de*
that he is not your friend, but I *know* likewise that he is a
de pl. *aussi* *

ASSEOIR, *to set.*

Part. pres. asseyant. *Part. past.* assis.
IND. *pres.* assieds, assieds, assied, assey-ons, —ez, —ent.
Imperf. asseyais. *Pret.* assis. *Fut.* assiérai, *or* asseyerai.
COND. assiérais, *or* asseyerais. IMPER. assieds, asseye, asseyons, —ez, —ent. SUBJ. *pres.* asseye. *Imperf.* assisse.

N. B. This verb is more frequently reflected, as *s'asseoir*, to set down. Its compound *rasseoir*, to set again, to calm, or to sit down again, is conjugated in the same manner.

VOIR, *to see.*

Part. pres. voyant. *Part. past.* vu.
IND. *pres.* vois, vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient.
Imperf. voyais. *Pret.* vis. *Fut.* verrai. COND. verrais.
IMPER. vois, voie, voyons, voyez, voient.
SUBJ. *pres.* voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient. *Imp.* visse.

---

man of probity. Let them *know* that their pardon depends on
bien *grâce* *dépendre de*
their submission. I could wish that he *knew* his lessons
soumission. *désirer* con 1-1 sub-2
a little better. Let us see if this new-fashioned
voyons *d'un nouveau goût* 2
gown *becomes* you, or not. Be assured that too gaudy
robe f. 1 *non* art. *voyant*
colours will not *become* you. The head-dress which that
f. *coëffure* f. *que*
lady wore *became* her very ill. These colours *become*
porter ind-2 ind-2 *lui* inf-3
you so well, you (would do wrong) to wear any others.
avoir tort cond-1 *de en porter de*
Set that child in this arm-chair, and take care lest he
asseoir m. *fauteuil* m. *prenez-garde que*
fall. I will *sit down* on the top of that hill,
ne subj-1 *s'asseoir* *sommet* m. *coteau* m.
whence I shall discover a prospect (no less) magnificent
découvrir *scène* f. *aussi* — *que*
than diversified. We (were seated) on the banks of the
varié *s'asseoir* ind-6 *bord* m. pl.
Thames, whence we (were contemplating) myriads of
Tamise f. ind-2 *de* art. *millier*
vessels, which bring every year, the riches of the two
vaisseau *apporter* art. pl.
hemispheres.

Revoir, to see again, and *entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of, are conjugated in the same manner; but *prévoir*, to foresee, makes in the future and the conditional, *je prévoirai*, &c. *je prévoirais*, &c.

Pourvoir, to provide, differs in the *pret. je pourvus, tu pourvus*, &c. *fut. je pourvoirai*, &c. COND. *je pourvoirais*, &c. and *imperf.* SUBJ. *que je pourvusse*, &c.

Surseoir, to supersede, though a compound of *seoir*, is conjugated like *voir*, except that it makes *fut. je surseoirai*, &c. COND. *je surseoirais*, &c. and *part. past. sursis*.

VALOIR, *to be worth.*

Part. pres. valant. *Part. past.* valu.
IND. *pres.* vaux, vaux, vaut, valons, valez, valent.
Imperf. valais. *Pret.* valus. *Fut.* vaudrai. COND. vaudrais.
IMPER. vaux, vaille, valons, valez, vaillent.
SUBJ. *pres.* vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, vaillent.
Imperf. valusse.

Revaloir, to return like for like, and *équivaloir*, to be equivalent to, follow *valoir*; but *prévaloir*, to prevail, makes in the SUBJ. *pres. que je prévale, que tu prévales, qu'il prévale, que nous prévalions*, &c.

VOULOIR, *to be willing.*

Part. pres. voulant. *Part. past.* voulu.
IND. *pres.* veux, veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent.
Imperf. voulais. *Pret.* voulus. *Fut.* voudrai. COND. voudrais.
SUBJ. *pres.* veuill-e, —es, —e, voulions, vouliez, veuillent.
Imperf. voulusse.

N. B. The imperative *veuille, veuillons, veuillez*, is also used, particularly *veuillez*, with the sense of, *be so good as, so kind as to*, &c.

EXERCISE ON VOIR, &c.

See the admirable order of the universe: does it not announce
2 m. 1
a supreme architect? Has he *again seen* with pleasure his
— 2 *artisan* m. 1.
country and his friends? (Had he *had a glimpse of*) the dawn
pays *aurore*
of this fine day? To finish their affairs, it would be neces-
Pour *falloir*

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

BRANCH 1. on *Rendre.*

SOUDRE, *to solve*, now obsolete, and replaced by RESOUDRE, *to resolve.*

Part. pres. résolvant. *Part. past.* résolu, *or* résous.
IND. *pres.* résous, résous, résout, résolv-ons, —ez, —ent.
Imperf. résolvais. *Pret.* résolus. *Fut.* résoudrai.
COND. résoudrais. IMPER. résous, résolve, résolv-ons, -ez, -ent.
SUBJ. *pres.* résolve. *Imperf.* résolusse.

This verb has two participles past, *résolu*, when it means *determined;* and *résous*, when it means *resolved into:* in this last sense it has no feminine.

Absoudre, to absolve, is conjugated like *résoudre;* but has neither *pret.* IND. nor *imperf.* SUBJ.; its participle past is *absous*, m. *absoute*, f.

---

sary for them to (*see one another*). I clearly *foresaw*, (from
*que * ils * s'entrevoir* subj-2 *bien dès-*
that time), all the obstacles he would have to surmount. *Would*
lors — m. *surmonter.* ind-2
you have the judge (*put off*) the execution of the
* *que surseoir* subj-2
sentence that he had pronounced? I shall not *put off* the pur-
arrêt rendu pour-
suit of that affair. If men do not *provide* (for it), God
suite f. pl. art. *y*
will *provide* for it. Would this book *be good* for nothing? You
valoir *
have not paid for this ground more than it *is worth;* (are you
* *terre* f. f. *ne crain-*
afraid) that it *is* not *worth* six hundred pounds? Let us
dre que subj-1 *livre* f. pl. *sterling?*
take arbitrators. One ounce of gold *is equivalent* to
prenons de art. *arbitre once* f.
fifteen ounces of silver. Doubt not that reason and
art. art.
truth will *prevail* at last. I can and *will* tell the truth
* *ne* subj-1 *à la longue* pron. *dire*
If you *are willing*, he will *be willing* too. Let us *resolve* to
le le aussi vouloir *
resist our passions, and we shall be sure to conquer them.
combattre de vaincre
(*Be so good as*) to lend me your grammar.
vouloir * *prêter*

Dissoudre, to dissolve, has the same irregularities, and wants the same tenses, as *absoudre*.

COUDRE, *to sew.*

Part. pres. cousant. *Part. past.* cousu.
IND. *pres.* couds, couds, coud, cousons, cousez, cousent.
Imperf. cousais. *Pret.* cousis. *Fut.* coudrai. COND. coudrais.
IMPER. couds. SUBJ. *pres.* couse. *Imperf.* cousisse.

Découdre, to unsew, and *recoudre*, to sew again, are conjugated in the same manner, so likewise *sourdre*, to issue from a fountain, which is only used in the infinitive *sourdre* and present of the indicative *il sourd.*

METTRE, *to put.*

Part. pres. mettant. *Part. past.* mis.
IND. *pres.* mets, mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent.
Imperf. mettais. *Pret.* mis. *Fut.* mettrai. COND. mettrais.
IMPER. mets. SUBJ. *pres.* mette. *Imperf.* misse.

In the same manner are conjugated the derivatives,

admettre	*to admit*	permettre	*to permit*
commettre	*to commit*	promettre	*to promise*
compromettre	*to compromise*	remettre	*to replace*
se démettre	*to put out of joint* / *to resign*	soumettre	*to subject*
		transmettre	*to transmit*
omettre	*to omit*	s'entremettre	*to intermeddle*

EXERCISE UPON RESOUDRE, &c

Wood which is burned *resolves* itself into ashes
art. *bois* m. *on brûler* ind-2 *se résoudre* * *en cendre* f.
and smoke. Have they *resolved* on peace or war ?
pr. *fumée* f. *on* * art. f. art. f.
The fog has *resolved* itself into rain. Could that
brouillard m. *se résoudre* ind-4 * *pluie* f.
judge thus lightly *absolve* the guilty ? Strong
si légèrement cond-1 *coupable* m. pl. art. *fort* 2
waters *dissolve* metals. Those drugs (were *dissolved*)
f. pl. 1 art. *on* 1 *drogue* 3 ind-4 2
before they were put into that medicine. My sister
avant que de les * *mettre* *remède* m.
was sewing all day yesterday. That piece is not well *sewed*, it
ind-3 * *hier* m.
must (*be sewed over again.*) *Unpick* that lace, and *sew* it
la inf-1 *Découdre* *dentelle* f. 2 1
again very carefully. Does he *set* a great value
avec beaucoup de soin *mettre* *prix* m.

MOUDRE, *to grind* (corn, &c.)

Part. pres. moulant. *Part. past.* moulu.
IND. *pres.* mouds, mouds, moud, moul-ons, —ez, —ent.
Imperf. moulais. *Pret.* moulus. *Fut.* moudrai.
COND. moudrais.
IMPER. mouds, moule, moulons, moulez, moulent.
SUBJ. *pres.* moule. *Imperf.* moulusse.

In the same manner are conjugated the derivatives :

émoudre { *to grind* (knives, &c.) remoudre *to grind again* (corn, &c.) rémoudre *to grind again* (knives, &c.)

PRENDRE, *to take.*

Part. pres. prenant. *Part. past.* pris.
IND. *pres.* prends, prends, prend, pren-ons, —ez, prennent.
Imperf. prenais. *Pret.* pris. *Fut.* prendrai. COND. prendrais.
IMPER. prends, prenne, prenons, prenez, prennent.
SUBJ. *pres.* prenn-e, —es, —e, pren-ions, —iez, prennent.
Imperf. prisse.

---

upon riches ? I never *admitted* those principles. Has
à art.
he *committed* that fault? If he (would take my
faute f. *me*
advice,) he would *resign* his charge in favour of his
croyoit *se démettre* cond-1. *de* f. *en* =
son. He *put* his arm (out of joint) yester-
se démettre ind-3 * art. *bras* m. *
day. I will *omit* nothing that depends on me to
de ce *dépendre* ind-7 *de* *pour*
serve you. God frequently *permits* the wicked to
souvent *que* *méchant* m. pl. *
prosper. *Put* this book in its place again. Under
prospérer sub-1 *remettre* *à* — f. *
whatever form of government you (may live), remem-
quelque *gouvernement* m. *que* *viviez* *se sou-*
ber that your first duty is to be obedient to the laws. It
venir *devoir* m. *de* *soumis*
frequently happens that fathers *transmit* to their children
arriver art.
both their vices and their virtues. He has long *meddled*
long-temps s'entre-
with public affairs; but his endeavours have not been
mettre de art. 2 1 *effort*
crowned with success.
couronner de art. m.

In the same manner are conjugated,

apprendre	*to learn*	entreprendre	*to undertake*
désapprendre	*to unlearn*	se méprendre	*to mistake*
comprendre	*to understand*	reprendre	*to retake, to reply*
déprendre	*to separate*	surprendre	*to surprise*

ROMPRE, *to break.*

Part. pres. rompant. *Part. past.* rompu.
IND. *pres.* romps, romps, rompt, romp-ons, —ez, —ent.
Imperf. rompais. *Pret.* rompis. *Fut.* romprai. COND. romprais.
IMPER. romps, rompe, rompons, rompez, rompent.
SUBJ. *pres.* rompe. *Imperf.* rompisse.

In the same manner are conjugated *corrompre*, to corrupt, and *interrompre*, to interrupt.

EXERCISE ON MOUDRE, PRENDRE, &c.

I *took* great pains: but, at last, I *ground* all the
ind-3 *beaucoup de* sing. *enfin*
coffee. *Grind* those razors with care. Those knives
café m. *rasoir* m. *couteau* m.
(are just) *ground*. This grain is not sufficiently *ground*, it
venir d'être *assez*
should be *ground* again. I wish that you would *take*
falloir ind-1 *le* inf-1 *vouloir*
courage. What news have you *learnt?* Philosophy *com-*
f. pl. art.
prehends logic, ethics, physics, and
logique f. art. *morale* f. art. *physique* f. art.
metaphysics. It is (with difficulty) that he *divests himself* of
métaphysique f. *Ce difficilement que se déprendre*
his opinions. He has *forgotten* all that he knew. I fear
désapprendre *ce que* ind-2 *que*
you will *undertake* a task above your strength. Could
ne subj-1 *tâche* f. *au-dessus de* f. pl. *
he have been *mistaken* so grossly? I *reproved*
cond-2 *grossièrement* *reprendre* ind-2
him continually for his faults, but (to no purpose). We
sans cesse de défaut inutilement
surprised the enemy, and cut *them* to pieces. In the middle
ind-3 pl. *tailler en à*
of the road the axletree of our carriage *broke*. Bad
chemin essieu m. *carosse se rompre* art.
company *corrupts* the minds of young people. Why do
f. pl. sing. *gens pourquoi*
you *interrupt* your brother, when you see him busy?
quand occupé

SUIVRE, *to follow.*

Part. pres. suivant. *Part. past.* suivi.
IND. *pres.* suis, suis, suit, suivons, suivez, suivent.
Imperf. suivais. *Pret.* suivis. *Fut.* suivrai. COND. suivrais.
IMPER suis, suive, suivons, suivez, suivent.
SUBJ. *pres.* suive. *Imperf.* suivisse.

N. B. *S'ensuivre*, to ensue, only used in the third person singular and plural of every tense, and *poursuivre*, to pursue, are conjugated in the same manner.

VAINCRE, *to conquer, to vanquish.*

Part. pres. vainquant. *Part. past.* vaincu.
IND. *pres.* vaincs,* vainc,* vainc,* vainqu-ons,* —ez, —ent.
Imperf. vainquais. *Pret.* vainquis. *Fut.* vaincrai. CON. vaincrais.
IMPER. vaincs,* vainque, vainquons,* vainqu-ez, —ent.
SUBJ. *pres.* vainque. *Imperf.* vainquisse.

All the persons of this verb, marked with an asterisk, are very little used. But its derivative, *convaincre*, to convince, is used in all its tenses and persons.

EXERCISE ON SUIVRE, &c.

(For a long while) we *followed* that method, which was
long-temps 2 ind-3 1 f. ind-2
only calculated to mislead us. What (*is the consequence?*)
ne que propre égarer que s'ensuivre
See the errors that have *sprung* from this propo-
s'ensuivre ind-4 f. pl. —f.
sition, which appeared so true. We *pursued* our course
ind-2 *suivre* ind-2 *chemin*
when some cries, which came from the midst of the
lorsque de art. *cri*, m. pl. * *sortis fond* m.
forest, excited terror in our souls. The Greeks
forêt f. *porter* ind-3 art. = f. *Grec*
vanquished the Persians at Marathon, Salamis, Platea,
Perse à pr. *Salamine* pr. *Platée*
and Mycale. I have, at last, *convinced* him, by such
pr. *de* art. *si* 2
powerful reasons, of the greatness of his fault, that I (have
fort 3 f. pl. 1 *énormité faute* f. *ne*
no doubt) but he will repair it. It is during
douter nullement que ne réparer subj-1 *Ce pendant*
winter that they *thrash* the corn in cold countries.
art. *on battre froid* 2 art. *pays* m. pl. 1

BATTRE, *to beat.*

Part. pres. battant. *Part. past.* battu.
IND. *pres.* bats, bats, bat, battons, battez, battent.
Imperf. battais. *Pret.* battis. *Fut.* battrai. COND. battrais.
IMPER. bats. SUBJ. *pres.* batte. *Imperf.* battisse.

Conjugate in the same manner,

abattre	*to pull down*	combattre	*to fight*
rabattre	*to abate*	débattre	*to debate*
rebattre	*to beat again*	s'ébattre	*to be merry*

être, to be, is conjugated at full length, p. 134.

VIVRE, *to live.*

Part. pres. vivant. *Part. past.* vécu.
IND. *pres.* vis, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent. *Imperf.* vivais.
Pret. vécus. *Fut.* vivrai. COND. vivrais. IMP. vis.
SUBJ. *pres.* vive. *Imperf.* vécusse.

In the same manner are conjugated, *revivre*, to revive ; and *survivre*, to survive.

The enemy was so completely *beaten* in that engagement, that
pl. —*ment* *rencontre* f.
he was forced to abandon thirty leagues of the country. The
pl. *de* *lieue* f. * *pays*
cannon (*beat down*) the tower. They were *fighting* with
canon *abattre* ind-3 *tour* f. * ind-2 *un*
unexampled fury, when a panic terror made
sans exemple 2 *acharnement* m. 1 *panique* 2 = f. 1 ind-3
them take flight, and dispersed them in an instant. *Beat*
leur art. *fuite* f. m. *rebattre*
these mattrasses again. Happy are those who *live* in soli-
matelas m. pl. * * art. *re-*
tude! Long *live* that good king! He
traite f. *que* 1 *long-temps* 4 subj-1 3 2
did not long *survive* a person who was so dear to him
ind-3 *à* f. art.
Fathers *live again* in their children. He was in a strange de-
ac-
jection of mind; but the news which he has received has
cablement f. pl. f. pl. *ont fait*
revived him.
inf-1

BRANCH II. *Plaire.*

Braire, to bray, and *il brait*, *ils braient*, *il braira*, *ils brairont*, *il brairait*, *ils brairaient*, are only used when speaking of asses ; though it may be used with propriety in the other persons by comparison.

FAIRE, *to do.*

Part. pres. faisant. *Part. past.* fait.
IND. *pres.* fais, fais, fait, faisons, faites, font.
Imperf. faisais. *Pret.* fis. *Fut.* ferai. COND. ferais.
IMPER. fais, fasse, faisons, faites, fassent. SUBJ. *pres.* fasse.
Imperf. fisse.

In the same manner are conjugated,

contrefaire	*to counterfeit*	refaire	*to do again*
défaire	*to undo*	satisfaire	*to satisfy*
redéfaire	*to undo again*	surfaire	*to exact*
forfaire*	*to trespass*	méfaire*	*to misdo*
malfaire*	*to do ill*	parfaire*	*to perfect*

EXERCISE ON BRANCH II. FAIRE, &c.

What will you have him *do ?* Do not *make* (so
Que vouloir * *que il* subj-1
much) noise. Do they never *exact ?* That woman *mimicked*
tant de bruit ind-2
all the persons whom she had seen ; this levity rendered
f. pl. *que* f. pl. *légèreté* f. ind-3
her odious. It was with difficulty he (*divested* himself) of the
f. ind-3 *peine que se défaire*
false opinions which had been given him in his infancy.
— f. *on* * f. pl. *lui* f.
Could it be possible that we should not *again make* a jour-
subj-2 art. * *voy-*
ney to Paris, Rome, and Naples ? He says that you
age de pr. pr. *dit*
have offended him, and that, if you do not *satisfy* him quickly,
offensé *prompte-*
he will find means to *satisfy* himself. Every
ment art. *moyen* sing. *de se* *lui-même*
night, she *milked* her sheep, which gave her a (great
art. *soir* m. pl. ind-2 *brebis* pl. ind-2 *lui abon-*
quantity) of wholesome milk. Have you *milked* your
dant 2 * *et sain* 3 *lait* m. 1.

---

* These four verbs are only used in this form, and the partic. past, *forfait*, *malfait*, *méfait*, and *parfait*.

TRAIRE, *to milk* (defective).

Part. pres. trayant. *Part. past.* trait.
IND. *pres.* trais, trais, trait, trayons, trayez, traient.
Imperf. trayais. (*No prét.*) *Fut.* trairai. COND. trairais.
IMPER. trais, traye, trayons, trayez, traient.
SUBJ. *pres.* traye. (*No imperf.*)

Conjugate in the same manner

attraire	*to allure*	rentraire	*to redraw*
abstraire	*to abstract*	retraire	*to redeem*
distraire	*to divert*	soustraire	*to subtract*
extraire	*to extract*		

All these verbs are principally used in the compound tenses.

BRANCH III. *Parcître.*

NAÎTRE, *to be born.*

Part. pres. naissant. *Part. past.* né.
IND. *pres.* nais, nais, naît, naissions, naissez, naissent.
Imperf. naissais. *Pret.* naquis. *Fut.* naîtrai. COND. naîtrais.
IMPER. nais. SUBJ. *pres.* naisse. *Imperf.* naquisse.

This verb takes the auxiliary *être;* but its derivative, *renaître*, to be born again, has no participle past, and, consequently, no compound tenses.

---

goats? Are the cows *milked?* Salt is good to
chèvre f. pl. *vache* f. pl. art. *Sel* m. *pour*
entice pigeons. You will never know the nature of
attraire art. m. pl. *connaître*
bodies, if you do not *abstract* their necessary qualities from
art. * = 2 = 1. 1
those which are inherent (in them). The least thing (diverts
— *leur* *moindre* *le*
his attention.) Will you not *extract* that charming passage?
distraire — m.
Have you *darned* your gown? Should he not *redeem* that
rentraire
land? What! would you have me *screen* those
Quoi! ind-l * *que je* *soustraire* sub- l
guilty persons from the rigour of the laws?
coupable m. pl. * *à* *rigueur* f.

PAÎTRE, *to graze* (defective).

Part. pres. paissant. *Part. past.* pu.
IND. *pres.* pais, pais, paît, paissons, paissez, paissent.
Imperf. paissais. (*No pret.*) *Fut.* paîtrai. COND. paîtrais.
IMPER. pais. SUBJ. *pres.* paisse. (*No imperf.*)

Repaître, to feed, to bait, is, like *paraître*, regular in all its tenses, making in the *pret.* IND. je repus, &c. and in the *imperf.* SUBJ. je repusse, &c.

BRANCH IV. *Réduire.*

Bruire, to roar, which is defective, has, besides this form, the *part. pres.* bruyant, oftener used as an adjective, as, *des flots bruyans ;* and the two third persons of the *imperf.* IND. il bruyait, ils bruyaient.

Luire, to shine, and *réluire*, to glitter, make the *part. past. lui, relui*, neither the *pret.* IND. nor *imperf.* SUBJ. are in use.

Nuire, to hurt, making *part. pres.* nuisant, *past.* nui, has all its tenses.

EXERCISE ON BRANCH III. NAITRE, &c.

Was not Virgil *born* at Mantua? It is from that poisoned
ind-3 *Mantoue ? Ce* *empoisonné* 2
source that have *arisen* all the cruel wars that have
f. 1 *que* *naître* f. pl. 2 f. pl. 1
desolated the universe. The fable says that, as soon as
désoler f. *dit* *aussitôt que*
Hercules had (cut off) one of the heads of the hydra,
Hercule h m. *couper* *tête* f. pl. *hydre* f.
others *sprang up.* While their united
d'autres 2 *il en renaître* ind-2 1 *Tandis que* *réuni* 2
flocks *fed* on the tender and flowery
troupeau m. pl. 1 *paître* ind-2 * 2 *fleuri* 3
grass, they sung under the shade of a tree the
herbe f. 1 *chanter* ind-2 *à* *ombre*
sweets of rural life. Your horses have not
douceur f. pl. art. *champêtre* 2. f. 1
fed to-day; you must have them *fed.*
repaître *d'aujourd'hui* * * *faire* 2 1 inf-1.
He is a man who *thirsts* after nothing but blood
Ce *ne se repaître* *de* 2 * *que* 1
and slaughter.
pr. *carnage* m.

CONFIRE, *to pickle.*

Part. pres. confisant. *Part. past.* confit.
IND. *pres.* conf-is, —is, —it, —isons, —isez, —isent.
Imperf. confisais. *Pret.* confis. *Fut.* confirai.
COND. confirais. IMP. confis. SUBJ. *pres.* confise.
Imperf. confisse.

Its derivative *déconfire*, to discomfit, is rather obsolete.

Circoncire, to circumcise, and *suffre* to suffice, make in the *part. past. circoncis* and *suffi*, the rest is as *confire.*

DIRE, *to say.*

Part. pres. disant. *Part. past.* dit.
IND. *pres.* dis, dis, dit, disons, DITES,* disent.
Imperf. disais. *Pret.* dis. *Fut.* dirai. *Cond.* dirais.
IMPER. dis, dise, disons, DITES,* disent.
SUBJ. *pres.* dise. *Imperf.* disse.

EXERCISE ON BRANCH IV. BRUIRE, &c.

The thunder which *roared* from afar announced a dreadful storm. They heard *roar* the waves of an agitated sea. That street is too *noisy* for those who love retirement and study. (I have a glimpse of) something that *shines* through those trees. A ray of hope *shone* upon us in the midst of the misfortunes which overwhelmed us. Every thing is well rubbed in that house; every thing *shines*, even the floor. Would he not have *injured* you in that affair? Jesus Christ was *circumcised* eight

tonnerre m. *bruire* ind-2 *dans* art. *lointain* m. *On* ind-2 inf-1 *flot* m. pl. *agité* 2 *mer* f. 1 *rue* f. *bruyant* art. *retraite* f. art. *entrevoir quelque chose au-travers de rayan* m. *à milieu malheur* m. pl. *accabler* ind-2 *frotté* *y reluire jusque à plancher* m. cond-2

---

* *Redire*, to say again, conformably to its primitive, makes REDITES, but

contredire	*to contradict*	make	vous contredisez
dédire	*to unsay*		vous dédisez
interdire	*to forbid*		vous interdisez
médire	*to slander*		vous médisez
prédire	*to foretell*		vous prédisez
maudire	*to curse*		vous maudissez

This last makes *part. pres.* maudissant, with two *ss*, and consequently nous maudissons, &c. je maudissais, &c.

ECRIRE, *to write.*

Part. pres. écrivant. *Part. past.* écrit.
IND. *pres.* écris, écris, écrit, écriv-ons, —ez, —ent.
Imperf. écrivais. *Pret.* écrivis. *Fut.* écrirai. COND. écrirais.
IMP. écris. SUBJ. *pres.* écrive. *Imperf.* écrivisse.

Conjugate in the same manner,

circonscrire	*to circumscribe*	proscrire	*to proscribe*
décrire	*to describe*	récrire	*to write again*
inscrire	*to inscribe*	souscrire	*to subscribe*
prescrire	*to prescribe*	transcrire	*to transcribe*

LIRE, *to read.*

Part. pres. lisant. *Part. past.* lu.
IND. *pres.* lis, lis, lit, lisons, lisez, lisent. *Imperf.* lisais.
Pres. lus. *Fut.* lirai. COND. lirais. IMPER. lis.
SUBJ. *pres.* lise. *Imperf.* lusse.

In the same manner are conjugated,

élire	*to elect*	relire	*to read over again*

---

days after his birth. Will you *preserve* these peaches
naissance f. * *confire*
with sugar, with honey, or with brandy?
à art. *sucre* m. art. *miel* m. art. *eau-de-vie* f.
Did you *pickle* cucumbers, purslane,
de art. *concombre* m. pl. pr-art. *pourpier* m
and sea-fennel? If he loses his lawsuit, all his
pr. art. *perce-pierre* f. *procès* m.
property will not *suffice.*
bien

EXERCISE ON DIRE, &c.

Always *speak* truth, but with discretion. Never *contra-*
dire art. f. *dict* (any one) in public. You thought you were serving
personne en *penser* ind-4 * * inf-1
me in speaking thus: well, (let it be so); you shall not
en parler *ainsi* *eh! bien,* *soit* *en*
be contradicted. What! would you *forbid* him all commu-
dédire *Quoi!* * *interdire*
nication with his friends? That woman who *slandered*
f. ind 2 *de*
every one, soon lost all kind of respect. You had
ind-3 *espèce* f. *considération*
foretold that event. Let us *curse* no one; let us remember
ne personne *se rappeler*
that our law forbids us to curse even those who persecute us.
défendre * *de* *persécuter*

RIRE, *to laugh.*

Part. pres. riant. *Past.* ri. IND. *pres.* ris, ris, rit, rions, riez, rient.
Imperf. riais. *Pret.* ri. *Fut.* rirai COND. rirais
IMPER. ris. SUBJ. *pres.* rie. *Imperf.* risse.

Sourire, to smile, is conjugated as *rire*.

Frire, to fry, besides the present of the infinitive, has only the *part. past.* frit; INDIC. *pres.* je fris, tu fris, il frit; *fut.* je frirai, tu, &c.; COND, je frirais, tu, &c.; IMPER. sing. fris. But it has all the compound tenses. The forms that are deficient are fully supplied by *faire*, prefixed to *frire*, as *faisant frire*, *je faisais frire*, &c

---

BOIRE, *to drink.*

Part. pres. buvant. *Past.* bu.
IND. *pres.* bois, bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent.
Imperf. buvais. *Pret.* bus. *Fut.* boirai. COND. boirais
IMPER. bois, boive, buvons, buvez, boivent.
SUBJ. *pres.* boiv-e, —es, —e, buvions, buviez, boivent.
Imperf. busse.

Write every art. pl. day the reflections which you make on the books you *read*. Did he not *read* that interesting history ind-2 2 1 with (a great deal) of pleasure? God is an infinite being 2 *être* m. who is *circumscribed* neither by 1 *ne* time nor *ni* art. place. *ni* pr. art. *lieu* m. pl. Will you not *describe* in that episode the dreadful tempest —m. *horrible* 2 f. 1 which assailed your hero? Get those soles and whitings ind-3 *faire* 1 — pron. *merlan* 3 *fried*. If you wish to form your taste, *read* over and over, uninf-1 2 *vouloir* * * *relire* ceasingly, the ancients. He was *elected* by a great majority of *sans-cesse* ind-4 *à* — voices. We have *laughed* heartily, and have resolved *de bon cœur* *nous* *résolu* to (go on). He did not answer him (any thing): but *de continuer* *répondre* ind-3 *lui* *rien* he *smiled* at him, as a sign of approbation, in the kindest ind-3 * *lui* *en* * — *de* *gracieux* 2 manner.
air m. 1

In the same manner are conjugated,

reboire *to drink again* s'emboire *to inbibe, a technical term used in painting.*

Clore, to close, has only the *part. past*, clos; *ind. pres.* je clos, tu clos, il clot; *fut.* je clorai, tu cloras, &c.; *cond.* je clorais, tu clorais, &c.; and the IMP. sing. clos.

Déclore, to unclose, *enclore*, to enclose, are defective in the same tenses as *clore;* but *forclore*, to debar, a law term, is only used in the *inf.* and *part. past*, forclos.

Eclore, to be hatched, as birds, or to blow like a flower, has only these forms; *inf.* éclore; *part. past*, éclos; *ind. pres.* il éclot, ils éclosent; *fut.* il éclora, ils écloront; *cond.* il éclorait, ils écloraient; and the *subj. pres.* qu'il éclose, qu'ils éclosent. But its compound tenses, which are formed with *être*, are much used.

CONCLURE, *to conclude.*

Part. pres. concluant. *Past.* conclu.
IND. *pres.* conclus, conclus, conclut, conclu-ons, —ez, —ent.
Imperf. concluais. *Pret.* conclus. *Fut.* conclurai.
COND. conclurais. IMPER. conclus. SUBJ. *pres.* conclue.
Imperf. conclusse.

N. B. *Exclure*, to exclude, is conjugated like *conclure*, except that its participle past is either *exclu*, or *exclus*.

EXERCISE ON BOIRE, CLORE, &c.

Seated under the shade of palm-trees, they were milking
Assis *à* art. *palmier* pl. * ind-2
their goats and ewes, and merrily *drinking*
chèvre f. pl. pron. *brebis* f. pl. *avec joie* 2 ind-2 1
that nectar, which (was renewed) every day. Should
m. *se renouveler* ind-2 art. pl. *
they not have *drunk* with ice? This window does not
nd-2 *à* art. f. f. —
shut well; when you have made some alterations (in it),
ind-8 *réparation* f. pl. *y*
it will *shut* better. He had scarcely *closed* his eyes, when
f. *mieux.* *à peine* ind-6 * art. *que*
the noise which they made at his door, awoke him.
que *on* ind-3 *à* *réveillir* ind-3
Have they not *enclosed* the suburbs within the city?
on *faubourg* m. pl. *ville* f.

CROIRE, *to believe.*

Part. pres. croyant. *Past*, cru.
IND. *pres.* crois, crois, croit, croyons, croyez, croient.
Imperf. croyais. *Pret.* crus. *Fut.* croirai. COND. croirais.
IMPER. crois, croie, croyons, croyez, croient.
SUBJ. *pres.* croie, croies, croie, croyions, croyiez, croient.
Imperf. crusse.

It has no derivative but *accroire*, which is only used with *faire*, as, *faire accroire*, or *en faire accroire*, to impose upon credulity; and *s'en faire accroire*, to be self-conceited.

Poindre (upon *joindre*), v. a. to sting, and v. n. to shoot forth, to dawn, has, besides the *inf. poindre*, the *ind. pres. il point*, and the *fut. il poindra.*

Will you *enclose* your park with a wall, or a hedge?
parc de mur m. pr. *haie* f.
Put the eggs of those silk-worms in the sun,
mettez œuf. m. pl. *ver-à-soie* m. pl. *à soleil* m.
that they may *hatch*. Those flowers just *blown*,
sub-1 *nouvellement*
spread the sweetest fragrance. When did they *conclude* this
répandre doux parfum m. ind-4
treaty? His enemies managed so well, that he was unani-
traité m. *faire* ind-3 ind-3 *unani-*
mously *excluded* from the company. Did you *think* me
mement *compagnie* f. *croire* ind-1
capable of so black an act? He possesses some kind of
noir 2 *trait* m. 1. *avoir espèce*
knowledge; but (not so much as he thinks.)
savoir *il s'en faire trop accroire.*

OBSERVATIONS

UPON THE TWO FOLLOWING TABLES.

The following Tables, which exhibit at one view all the primitive tenses, both of the regular and irregular verbs, and most of the defective, with reference to the pages, where the other tenses are to be found, will, it is presumed, prove useful to those who will consult them.

TABLE OF THE PRIMITIVE TENSES OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

INFIN.	PARTICIPLES.		INDICATIVE.		
Present.	*Present.*	*Past.*	*Present.*	*Preter. Def.*	

FIRST CONJUGATION.

					Page
Parler.	Parlant.	Parlé.	Je parle.	Je parlai.	141

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Punir.	Punissant.	Puni.	Je punis.	Je punis.	151
Sentir.	Sentant.	Senti.	Je sens.	Je sentis.	151
Mentir.	Mentant.	Menti.	Je mens.	Je mentis.	
Se repentir.	Se repentant.	Repenti.	Je me repens.	Je me repentis.	167
Partir.	Partant.	Parti.	Je pars.	Je partis.	
Sortir.	Sortant.	Sorti.	Je sors.	Je sortis.	
Dormir.	Dormant.	Dormi.	Je dors.	Je dormis.	
Servir.	Servant.	Servi.	Je sers.	Je servis.	
Ouvrir.	Ouvrant.	Ouvert.	J' ouvre.	J' ouvris.	151
Couvrir.	Couvrant.	Couvert.	Je couvre.	Je couvris.	
Offrir.	Offrant.	Offert.	J' offre.	J' offris.	
Souffrir.	Souffrant.	Souffert.	Je souffre.	Je souffris.	
Tenir.	Tenant.	Tenu.	Je tiens.	Je tins.	151
Venir	Venant.	Venu.	Je viens.	Je vins.	

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Recevoir.	Recevant.	Reçu.	Je reçois.	Je reçus.	156
Devoir.	Devant.	Dû.	Je dois.	Je dus.	

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Répandre	Répandant.	Répandu.	Je répands.	Je répandis.	
Rendre.	Rendant.	Rendu.	Je rends.	Je rendis.	160
Fondre.	Fondant.	Fondu.	Je fonds.	Je fondis.	
Repondre.	Répondant.	Répondu.	Je réponds.	Je répondis.	
Tondre.	Tondant.	Tondu.	Je tonds.	Je tondis.	
Perdre.	Perdant.	Perdu.	Je perds.	Je perdis.	
Mordre.	Mordant.	Mordu.	Je mords.	Je mordis.	
Tordre.	Tordant.	Tordu.	Je tords.	Je tordis.	
Plaire.	Plaisant.	Plu.	Je plais.	Je plus.	160
Taire.	Taisant.	Tu.	Je tais.	Je tus.	
Paraître.	Paraissant.	Paru.	Je parais.	Je parus.	160
Croître.	Croissant.	Cru.	Je crois.	Je crus.	
Connaître.	Connaissant.	Connu.	Je connais.	Je connus.	
Repaître.	Repaissant.	Répu.	Je repais.	Je repus.	
Réduire.	Réduisant.	Reduit.	Je réduis.	Je réduisis	160
Instruire.	Instruisant.	Instruit.	J' instruis.	J' instruisis.	
Craindre.	Craignant.	Craint.	Je crains.	Je craignis.	
Peindre.	Peignant.	Peint.	Je peins.	Je peignis.	
Joindre.	Joignant.	Joint.	Je joins.	Je joignis.	160

PRIMITIVE TENSES OF THE IRREGULAR WITH SOME DEFECTIVE VERBS.

INFIN.	PARTICIPLES.		INDICATIVE.		
Present.	*Present.*	*Past.*	*Present.*	*Preter. Def.*	

FIRST CONJUGATION.

					Page
Aller.	Allant.	Allé.	Je vais.	J' allai.	180

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Fleurir.	Fleurissant. Florissant.	Fleuri.	Je fleuris.	Je fleuris.	132
Haïr.	Haïssant.	Haï.	Je haïs.	Je haïs.	133
Gésir.*	Gisant.		Il gît.		133
Bouillir.	Bouillant.	Bouilli.	Je bous.	Je bouillis.	133
Ebouillir.		Ebouilli.			133
Courir.	Courant.	Couru.	Je cours.	Je courus.	133
Faillir.	Faillant.*	Failli.	Je faux.*	Je faillis.	134
Défaillir.		Défailli.	Nous défaillons	Je défaillis.	134
Fuir.	Fuyant.	Fui.	Je fuis.	Je fuis.	135
Mourir.	Mourant.	Mort.	Je meurs.	Je mourus.	135
Acquérir.	Acquérant.	Acquis.	J'acquiers.	J' acquis.	136
Conquérir.	Conquérant.	Conquis.	Je conquiers.	Je conquis.	136
Ouïr.	Oyant.*	Ouï.		J' ouïs.	136
Vêtir.	Vêtant.	Vêtu.	Je vêts.	Je vêtis.	136
Revêtir.	Revêtant.	Revêtu.	Je revêts.	Je revêtis.	136
Cueillir.	Cueillant.	Cueilli.	Je cueille.	Je cueillis.	137
Saillir.	Sailiant.	Sailli.	Il saille.	Il saillit.	137
Tressaillir.	Tressaillant.	Tressailli.	Je tressaille.	Je tressaillis.	139

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Avoir.	Ayant.	Eu.	J' ai.	J' eus.	139
Ravoir.					189
Choir.		Chu.			189
Déchoir.		Déchu.	Je déchois.	Je déchus.	189
Echoir.	Echéant.	Echu.	Il échoit.	J' échus.	189
Falloir.		Fallu.	Il faut.	Il fallut.	177
Mouvoir.	Mouvant.	Mu.	Je meus.	Je mus.	190
Premouvoir.		Promu.		Je promus.*	190
Pleuvoir.	Pleuvant.	Plu.	Il pleut.	Il plut.	190
Pouvoir.	Pouvant.	Pu.	Je puis.	Je pus.	191
Savoir.	Sachant.	Su.	Je sais.	Je sus.	191
Seoir.*	Seyant.		Il sied.		191
Seoir.*	Séant.	Sis.			191
Asseoir.	Asseyant.	Assis.	J' assieds.	J' assis.	192
Surseoir.		Sursis.	Je sursois.	Je sursis.	193
Voir.	Voyant.	Vu.	Je vois.	Je vis.	192
Prévoir.	Prévoyant.	Prévu.	Je prévois.	Je prévis.	193
Pourvoir.	Pourvoyant.	Pourvu.	Je pourvois.	Je pourvus.	193
Valoir.	Valant.	Valu.	Je vaux.	Je valus.	193
Vouloir.	Voulant.	Voulu.	Je veux.	Je voulus.	193

N. B. The forms marked with an asterisk are obsolete.

INFIN.	PARTICIPLES.		INDICATIVE.		
Present.	*Present.*	*Past.*	*Present.*	*Preterit.*	
		FOURTH CONJUGATION.			
					Page
Soudre.	Solvant.*				194
Résoudre.	Résolvant.	Résous, résolu.	Je résous.	Je résolus.	194
Absoudre.	Absolvant.	Absous.	J' absous.		194
Dissoudre.	Dissolvant.	Dissous.	Je dissous.		195
Coudre.	Cousant.	Cousu.	Je couds.	Je cousis.	195
Sourdre.			Il sourd.		195
Mettre.	Mettant.	Mis.	Je mets.	Je mis.	195
Moudre.	Moulant.	Moulu.	Je mouds.	Je moulus.	196
Prendre.	Prenant.	Pris.	Je prends.	Je pris.	196
Rompre.	Rompant.	Rompu.	Je romps.	Je rompis.	197
Suivre.	Suivant.	Suivi.	Je suis.	Je suivis.	198
S'ensuivre.	S'ensuivant.	Ensuivi.	Il s'ensuit.	Il s'ensuivit.	198
Vaincre.	Vainquant.	Vaincu	Je vaincs,*	Je vainquis.	198
Battre.	Battant.	Battu.	Je bats.	Je battis.	199
Etre.	Etant.	Eté.	Je suis.	Je fus.	134
Vivre.	Vivant.	Vécu.	Je vis.	Je vécus.	199
Braire.			Il brait.		200
Faire.	Faisant.	Fait.	Je fais.	Je fis.	200
Traire.	Trayant.	Trait.	Je trais.		201
Naître.	Naissant.	Né.	Je nais.	Je naquis.	201
Renaître.	Renaissant.		Je renais.	Je renaquis.*	201
Paître.	Paissant.	Pû.	Je pais.		202
Bruire.	Bruyant.				202
Luire.	Luisant.	Lui.	Je luis.		202
Nuire.	Nuisant.	Nui.	Je nuis.	Je nuisis.	202
Confire.	Confisant.	Confit.	Je confis.	Je confis.	203
Suffire.	Suffisant.	Suffi.	Je suffis.	Je suffis.	203
Circoncire.	Circoncisant.	Circoncis.	Je circoncis.	Je circoncis.	203
Dire.	Disant.	Dit.	Je dis.	Je dis.	203
Médire.	Médisant.	Médit.	Je médis.	Je médis.	203
Maudire.	Maudissant.	Maudit.	Je maudis.	Je maudis.	203
Ecrire.	Ecrivant.	Ecrit.	J' écris.	J' écrivis.	204
Lire.	Lisant.	Lu.	Je lis.	Je lus.	204
Rire.	Riant.	Ri.	Je ris.	Je ris.	205
Frire.		Frit.	Je fris.		205
Boire.	Buvant.	Bu.	Je bois.	Je bus.	205
Clore, clorre.		Clos.	Je clos.		205
Conclure.	Concluant.	Conclu.	Je conclus.	Je conclus.	206
Exclure.	Excluant.	Exclu, *or* exclus.	J' exclus.	J' exclus.	206
Croire.	Croyant.	Cru.	Je crois.	Je crus.	207
Poindre.			Il point.		207

N. B. The derivatives, which are not in this Table, will be found with the primitives, to which we have given references.

CHAP. VI.

OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

*Pre*positions, which are so called, from being *pre*fixed to the nouns which they govern, serve to connect words with one another, and to show the relation between them. Thus, in this phrase, *le fruit de l'arbre*, the fruit of the tree, *de* expresses the relation between *fruit* and *arbre*. Likewise in this, *utile à l'homme*, useful to man ; *à* forms the relation between the noun *homme* and the adjective *utile*. *De* and *à* are *pre*positions, and the word to which they are *pre*fixed, is called their *regimen*.

There are different kinds of prepositions.

Some are used—to denote *place*, as :

CHEZ. *Il est* chez-*lui*, he is *at* home.

DANS. *Il se promène* dans *le jardin*, he is walking *in* the garden.

DEVANT. *Il est toujours* devant *mes yeux*, he is always *before* my eyes.

DERRIERE. *Il ne regarde jamais* derrière *lui*, he never looks *behind* him.

PARMI. *Que de fous* parmi *les hommes !* how many fools *among* men !

SOUS. *La taupe vit* sous *terre*, the mole lives *under* ground.

SUB. Il *a le chapeau* sur *la tête*, he has his hat *on* (his head.)

VERS. *L'aimant se tourne* vers *le nord*, the loadstone points *towards* the north.

EXERCISE ON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

We find less real happiness *in* an elevated condition than *in*
On *de* 2 *bonheur* 1 2 f. 1
a middling state. One is never truly peaceful but *at*
moyen 2 1 *véritablement tranquille que*
home. He walked *before* me to serve me as a guide.
soi *marcher* *pour* *de* *
There was a delightful grove *behind* his house. Among
ind-2 2 *bosquet* m. 1.

Some—to mark *order*, as :

AVANT. *La nouvelle est arrivée* avant *le courrier*, the news is come *before* the courier.

APRES. *Il est trop vain pour marcher* après *les autres*, he is too proud to walk *after* other people.

ENTRE. *Elle a son enfant* entre *les bras*, she holds her child *in* (for *between*) her arms.

DEPUIS. Depuis *la création jusqu'à nous*, *from* the creation to the present time.

DES. Dès *son enfance*, *from* his infancy ; dès *sa source*, *from* its source.†

Some—to denote *union*, as :

AVEC. *Il faut savoir* avec *qui on se lie*, we ought to know *with* whom we associate.

(so many) different nations, there is not one that has not a
tant de 2 1 *y en avoir* subj-1
religious worship. Nature displays her riches with mag-
2 *culte* m. 1 art. *déployer*
nificence *under* the torrid zone. Eternal snows
torride 3 f. 1 *de* art. 3 5 f. pl. 4 *on* 1
(are to be seen) *on* the summit of the Alps. *Towards* the north,
voir ind-1 2 *sommet*
nature assumes a gloomy and wild aspect.
art. *triste* 2 *sauvage* 3 *aspect* m. 1.

---

† EXERCISE.

We (were up) *before* day-light, (in order to) enjoy
se lever ind-6 art. * *pour de*
the magnificent spectacle of the rising sun. *After* such great
magnifique 2—m. 1 *levant* 2 1 *de si*
faults, it only remained for us to repair them (as
faute f. pl. *ne rester* ind-2 * *que réparer*
well as we could). *Between* those two mountains runs a deep
de notre mieux *est profond* 3
hollow road. Many very astonishing events
et creux 2 *chemin* m. 1 * *de* art. 2 4 3
(have taken place) within these ten years. *From* my earliest
il se passer ind-4 1 *depuis* * art. *tendre*
infancy I have had an abhorrence of lying.
* *horreur* art. *mensonge* m.

DURANT. Durant *la guerre, during* the war : durant *l'été, during* the summer.

PENDANT. Pendant *l'hiver, in* winter ; pendant *la paix, in* time of peace. This preposition denotes a duration more limited than *durant.*

OUTRE. Outre *des qualités aimables, il faut encore*, &c. *besides* amiable qualities, there ought still, &c.

SUIVANT. *Je me déciderai* suivant *les circonstances*, I shall determine *according* to circumstances.

SELON. *Le sage se conduit* selon *les maximes de la raison*, a wise man acts *according* to the dictates of reason.‡

Some—to express *opposition*, as :

CONTRE. *Je plaide* contre *lui*, I plead *against* him.

MALGRÉ. *Il l'a fait* malgré *moi*, he has done it *in spite of me.*

NONOBSTANT. Nonobstant *ce qu'on lui a dit, notwithstanding* what has been said to him.¶

---

‡ EXERCISE.

With wit, politeness, and some (readiness to
de art. pr. art. *peu de prévenance*
oblige), one generally succeeds in the world. We are fit
réussir *on* *propre*
for meditation *during* winter. (*In the course of*) that siege
à art. f. *pendant* *siége* m.
the commandant of the city made some very successful
ind-3 *de* art. *heureux* 2
sallies. *Besides* the exterior advantages of figure and
sortie f. pl. 1 2 1 art.
the graces of deportment, she possesses an excellent heart, a
art. *maintien* m. *avoir* 2 1
correct judgment, and a sensible soul. Always act
sain 2 *jugement* 1 2 1 *se conduire*
according to the maxims which I have given you.
* f. pl. *inculquer* f. pl.

¶ EXERCISE.

We cannot long act (*contrary to*) our own character;
savoir cond-1 *agir* *contre* *
notwithstanding all the pains we take to disguise it, it
que *pour*
shews itself, and betrays us on many occasions. In
se montrer *trahir* *en bien* *de* art. *

Some—to express *privation*, or *separation*, as :

SANS. *Des troupes* sans *chef*, troops *without* commanders.

EXCEPTÉ. Excepté *quelques malheureux*, *except* some wretches.

HORS. *Tout est perdu* hors *l'honneur*, all is lost *save* honour.

HORMIS. *Tous sont entrés* hormis *mon frère*, they are all come in *except* my brother†.

Some—to denote the *end*, as :

ENVERS. *Il est charitable* envers *les pauvres*, he is charitable *to* the poor.

TOUCHANT. *Il a écrit* touchant *cette affaire*, he has written *respecting* that business.

POUR. *Il travaille* pour *le bien public*, he labours *for* the public good.¶

---

vain we dissemble ; *in spite of* ourselves, we are known at
* *avoir beau faire* *on nous connaît à*
last.
la longue.

---

† EXERCISE.

(*Had it not been for*) your care, I should have been ig-
sans pl. *un*
norant all my life. All the philosophers of antiquity
art.
except a few, have held the world to be eternal. All
très-petit nombre *croire* * *
laid down their arms, *except* two regiments, who pre-
mettre bas * art.
ferred (making their way) through the enemy. Every
se faire jour *au-travers de* pl.
thing is absurd and ridiculous in that work, *except* a chapter or two.

¶ EXERCISE.

I have written to you *concerning* that business, in which I
à laquelle
take the most lively interest ; and as I know your benevo-
vif *connaître* *bienveil-*
lence towards the unfortunate, I (make not the least doubt)
lance f. *malheureux* *ne douter nullement*

Others—to mark the *cause* and means, as:

PAR. *Il l'a fléchi* par *ses prières*, he has softened him *by* his entreaties.

MOYENNANT. *Il réussira* moyennant *vos avis*, he will succeed *by* means of your counsels.

ATTENDU. *Il ne peut partir*, attendu *les vents contraires*, he cannot sail *on account of* contrary winds.‡

The use of the prepositions, —*à*, —*de*, —*en*, is very extensive.

A is generally used to express several relations, as *destination*, *tendency*, *place*, *time*, *situation*, &c. being often a substitute for various other prepositions; EX.:—destination *-to: aller* à *Londres*, to go *to* London.—Tendency *-to*, *toward: courir* à *sa perte*, to hasten *to* one's ruin.—Aim *-at*, *for: aspirer* à *la gloire*, to aspire *to* glory.—Residence *-at*, *in: être* à *Rome*, to be *at* Rome.—Time *-at:* à *midi*, *at* twelve o'clock.—Concern *-on:* à *ce sujet*, *on* this subject.—Manner *-with: supplier* à *mains jointes*, to entreat earnestly.—Means *-with: peindre* à *l'huile*, to paint *in*, or *with* oil; *-with: bas à-trois-fils*, three thread-stockings, that is, *with* three threads.—Situation *-at*,

---

that you (will carefully attend) (to it), (not so much) *for the*
ne donner tous vos soins subj-1 *y* *moins*
satisfaction of obliging me, as *for* the pleasure of justifying
inf-1 *justifier* inf-1
innocence and confounding calumny.
art. pr. *confondre* art. f.

---

‡ EXERCISE.

Is there any man that has never been softened *by* tears
aucun subj-1 *fléchir* art.
or disarmed *by* submission? *Through* the precautions
ni désarmer art.
which we took, we avoided the rocks of that dangerous
que ind-3 ind-3 *écueil* m. pl. 2
coast. *Owing* to the bad state of my father's health, I shall
côte f. 1 2 1
not travel this year.
voyager *année* f.

with : être à *son aise*, to be *at* ease.—Purpose *for : une table* à *manger*, a dining table.—Suitableness *-for, to : homme* à *réussir*, a man likely *to* succeed :—Desert : *crime* à *ne pas pardonner*, a crime not *to* be forgiven, &c

---

De is generally used to express *separation, extraction, possession, appartenance, cause, shift, result*, &c. and supplies the place of several prepositions, as—*from : je viens* de *France*, I come *from* France ; *d'un bout à-l'autre, from* one end to the other. —*Of : le palais* du *roi*, the palace *of* the king ; *les facultés* de *l'âme*, the faculties *of* the soul ; *un homme* d'*esprit*, a man *of* wit. In a partitive sense—*of : moitié* de, *quart* de, &c. the half of, the fourth of, &c. : it is used for PAR—*by : il est aimé* de *tout le monde*, he is beloved *by* every body ; for—*through*, or *by*, &c. ; *mourir* de *faim*, de *soif*, to die *of* hunger, *of* thirst :—*on, upon, with : vivre* de *fruits*, to live *upon* fruit.—*On account of*, or *for : sauter* de *joie*, to leap *for* joy.¶

---

† EXERCISE ON THE PREPOSITION *à*.

Fathers ! give good counsels, and still better
de *encore* 3 pr. *meilleur* 1
examples *to* your children. A good minister only aims
2 *ne aspirer*
at the glory of serving his country well. When we were
que à inf-1 2 *pays* 3 1 ind-2
in the country, we devoted the morning *to*
à *campagne* f. *consacrer* ind-2 *matinée* f. art.
study, we walked *at* noon, and *at* three or four
se promener ind-2 *midi*
o'clock we went *a* hunting, or fishing. Michael
heure pl. ind-2 art. *chasse* f. pr. art. *pêche* f. *Michel-*
Angelo has painted (a great deal) *in* fresco. It is a bed *with*
— *Ange* *beaucoup* art. *fresque* f. *ce* *lit* m.
ivory posts and mahogany feet. That man, *with* his
colonne *d'ivoire* pr. *pied d'acajou* * art.
gloomy looks and surly behaviour, seems
sombre 2 *regard* m. 1 pr. art. *brusque* 2 *maintien* m. 1 *ne semble*
fit only *to* serve as a scarecrow.
propre *que* *de* * *épouvantail.*

En serves to mark the relations of time, place, situation, &c. and is variously expressed, as, *c'était* en *hiver*, it was *during* winter; *être* en Angleterre, to be *in* England; *aller* en *Italie*, to go *into* Italy; *elle est* en *bonne santé*, she is *in* good health; *il vaut mieux être* en *paix*, *qu'*en *guerre*, it is better to be *at* peace than *at* war; *il l'a fait* en *haîne de lui*, he did it out of hatred to him, &c. ‡

¶ EXERCISE ON THE PREPOSITION *de.*

I come *from* London, where I have spent a week very
où *passé huit jours*
agreeably. *From* one end of the horizon to the other, the
bout m. m.
sky was covered *with* thick black clouds.
ciel m. *épais* 2 *et noir* 3 *nuage* m. pl. 1
The marble *of* Paros is not finer than that which we get
qui *nous vient*
from Carrara. Montaigne, Mad. de Sévigné, and la Fontaine,
Carrare.
were writers *of* truly original genius. One half
ind-2 *de* art. *écrivain un* 2 3 1 *moitié* f.
of the terrestrial globe is covered *with* water, and above a
terrestre 2 *globe* m. 1 *plus de*
(third part) *of* the rest is uninhabited, either through extreme
tiers m. *inhabité ou par un* 2
heat, or through excessive cold. In that happy
chaleur f. 1 *un* = 2 *froid* m. 1
retreat, we lived *on* the milk *of* our flocks, and the delicious
asile m. ind-2 *brebis* pr. 2
fruits *of* our orchards.
1 *verger* m. pl.

---

‡ EXERCISE ON THE PREPOSITION *en.*

He had for a (long while) lived *in* France; the
3 * *depuis* 1 * *long-temps* 2 *vivre* ind-2
troubles which agitated that fine kingdom obliged him to
ind-4 *royaume* m. ind-4 *de*
retire *to* Switzerland, whence he soon after (set off)
se retirer *Suisse* *d'où* 3 1 2 *se rendre* ind-4
for Italy. We were *at* peace, and enjoyed all
ind-2 pron. *en goûter* ind-2 art.
its blessings, when ambition rekindled the flames of
* *charme* m. art. *rallumer* ind-3 *feu* s.
war, and forced us *to* put our frontiers *in* a state
art. ind-3 *de mettre* *frontière* f. pl. *

CHAP. VII.

OF THE ADVERB.

The *adverb*, is a word which accompanies verbs, adjectives, or even other adverbs, to espress their manner, or circumstances.

Remark. There are adjectives which are sometimes used as adverbs, as, *il chante juste*, he sings well; *elle chante faux*, she sings out of tune; *ils ne voient pas clair*, they do not see clear; *cette fleur sent bon*, this flower has a good smell, &c. The adjectives, *juste*, *faux*, *clair*, and *bon*, here supply the place of abverbs.

Adverbs are of different kinds.

The most numerous are those which express manner, and are formed from adjectives by the following method:

Rule I. When the adjective ends, in the masculine, with a vowel, the adverb is formed by adding *ment;* as, *modeste-ment*, modestly; *poli-ment*, politely; *ingénû-ment*, ingenuously &c.

Exceptions. *Impuni* makes *impunément*, and *traître*, *traitreusement*.

The following six take *é* close before *-ment*, instead of the *e* mute in the adjective.

aveuglément	*blindly*	conformément	*conformably*
commodément	*commodiously*	énormément	*enormously*
incommodément	*incommodiously*	opiniâtrément	*obstinately*

Observe that the adverbs,

follement	*foolishly*	bellement	*softly*
mollement	*effeminately*	nouvellement	*newly*

are to be considered as coming from the adjectives *fol*, *mol*, *bel*, *nouvel*, and accordingly belong to the following rule.

Rule II. When the adjective ends with a consonant, in the masculine, the adverb is formed from the feminine termination, by adding *ment;* as, *grand*

---

of defence. The savage is almost continually *at* war; he can-
presque toujours
not remain *at* rest. He has acted, on this occasion, like
en repos *dans* *en*
a great man.

grandement, greatly ; *franc*, *franchement*, frankly, *naïf*, *naïvement*, artlessly, &c.

Exceptions. 1st. *Gentil*, makes *gentiment*, prettily.

2nd. The following eight adverbs,

communément	*commonly*	importunément	*importunately*
confusément	*confusedly*	obscurément	*obscurely*
diffusément	*diffusedly*	précisément	*precisely*
expressément	*expressly*	profondément	*deeply*

take before *ment* the *é* close instead of the *e* mute, in the feminine of the adjectives from which they are derived :

Rem. The six following adverbs are not derived from adjectives.

comment	*how*	profusément	*lavishly*
incessamment	*presently*	nuitamment	*by night*
notamment	*especially*	sciemment	*knowingly*

3rd. Adjectives ending in *-nt*, form their adverbs by changing *-nt* into *-mment*, as *consta-nt*, *consta-mment*, constantly ; *éloque-nt*, *éloque-mment*. Except *lent* and *présent*, the only two of this class, that follow the second general rule, making *lentement* and *présentement*.

Rem. Most adverbs denoting manner, and a few others, have the three degrees of comparison, as, *profondément*, *aussi*, *plus*, or *moins profondément*, *fort*, *bien*, or *très-profondément*, and *le plus profondément*.

The following degrees of comparison are irregular.

POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.	
bien	*well*	mieux	*better*	le mieux	*the best*
mal	*bad*	pis	*worse*	le pis	*the worst*
peu	*little*	moins¶	*less*	le moins	*the least*

EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

Bourdaloue and Masillon have both spoken very
l'un et l'autre
eloquently on evangelical truths ; but the former has *prin-*
art. *évangélique* 2 1
cipally (proposed to himself) to convince the mind ; the latter
se proposer *de convaincre*
has *generally* had in view to touch the heart. Several of
en vue *de*
la Bruyère's characters are as *finely* drawn as they are *deli-*
art.
2 1 *finement* *tracé*

There are likewise various other sorts of adverbs

OF	Affirmation,	as	*Certes*, certainly : *oui*, yes.
	Consent,	—	*Soit*, be it so ; *volontiers*, willingly.
	Doubt,	—	*Peut-être*, perhaps.
	Denial,	—	*non, ne, ne-pas, ne-point*, no, not,†
OF	Order, *or* Rank,		*Premièrement*, first ; *secondement*, 2dly, &c. *D'abord*, at first ; *ensuite, après*, afterwards ; *auparavant*, before.
OF	Place, *or* Distance,		*Où*, where ; *ici*, here ; *là*, there ; *de-ça*, on this side ; *de là*, on that side ; *par-tout*, every where ; *près, proche*, near, nigh ; *loin*, far, &c.‡

---

cately expressed. Buffon is one of the best writers of the last
2
century ; he thinks *deeply*, describes *forcibly*, and expresses
siècle m. 1 *peindre* *fortement*
himself (with dignity.) Corneille and Racine are the two best
noblement
French tragic poets ; the pieces of the former are *strongly*,
3 *tragique* 2 1 f. 2
but *incorrectly* written ; those of the latter are more *regularly*
3 1
beautiful, more *purely* expressed, and more *delicately* conceived.
beau *pensé.*

EXERCISE ON THE ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION, &c.

Certainly, either I mistake, or the business passed (in
ou *se tromper* *se passer* ind-4
that manner.) Do you think that he listens *willingly* to this
ainsi *écouter*
proposal ? Have you ever read in Racine the famous scene of
f.
Phædra's delirium ? *Yes*, I have, and I own it is one
Phèdre 2 art. *délire* m. 1 *la* *lue* *avouer que ce*
of the finest of the French theatre. *Perhaps* you will discover,
2 m. 1
on a second perusal of la Fontaine's fables, beauties
dans *lecture* f. 2 art. 1 *de* art. f. pl.
which you did not perceive at first. Will you have some ?
que *avoir* *aperçues* *à* art. f. * *en*
No. Will you *not* have some ? The man who (is willing) to
* *vouloir* *
do good is *not* stopped by any obstacle. I will pay him
* art. *arrêté* *aucun* *lui*
what I owe, but *not* all at once.
ce que *lui* *non pas* *à* art. *fois* f.

Of time.	Present.	as	*Maintenant*, now; *à présent*, at present; *actuellement*, this moment, &c.
	Past.	—	*Hier*, yesterday; *avant-hier*, the day before yesterday; *autrefois*, formerly, &c.
	Future.	—	*Demain*, to-morrow; *après-demain*, the day after to-morrow, &c.
	Indeterminate.	—	*Souvent*, often; *d'ordinaire*, generally; *quelquefois*, sometimes; *matin*, early; *tôt*, soon; *tard*, late, &c.¶

‡ EXERCISE ON THE ADVERBS OF ORDER, &c.

We ought *first* to avoid doing evil; *afterwards* we
* *falloir* ind-1 * *de* inf-1 art. *
ought to do good. Read books of instruction *first*, and
* art. 1 art. 3 4 2
then you may proceed to those of entertainment. If
* *passer* ind-7 *agrément*
you will go, settle *first* what is to be done
vouloir s'en aller régler auparavant falloir * * inf-1
The painter had (brought together) in the same picture several
rassembler un tableau
different objects: *here*, a troop of Bacchants; *there*, a troop of
2 1 *Bacchante*
young people; *here*, a sacrifice; *there*, a disputation of philoso-
gens dispute
phers. Sesostris carried his conquests *farther* than Alexander
pousser conquête ne
did *afterwards*. Call upon your cousin; he lives *near here*.
ind-4 *depuis Passer chez loger* 2 *ici* 1
I cannot see that, if I be not *near* it. When he knew
ind-1 *auprès* * *Quand savoir* ind-3
where he was, he began to fear the consequence of his
ind-2 *commencer* ind-3 *suite*
imprudence. Contemplate *(at a distance)* lofty mountains, if
de loin art. *haut* f.
you wish to behold prospects ever varied and ever new.
vouloir * *découvrir de* art. *site* m.

¶ EXERCISE ON THE ADVERBS OF TIME.

I have finished the work you prescribed me; what do
achever que ordonner ind-6 *que*

OF { Quantity. | as { *Peu*, little ; *assez*, enough ; *trop*, too much ; *beaucoup*, much, very much ; *tant*, so much, &c.
Comparison, | as { *Plus*, more ; *moins*, less ; *aussi*, so ; *autant*, as much, &c.‡

---

you wish me to do *now?* *Formerly*, education
vouloir 1 *que je* * subj-1 3 2
was neglected; it is *now* (very much) attended to; it is (to
on 3 *beaucoup* 2 *s'occuper en* 1 *falloir*
be hoped) that new views will *soon* (be adopted.) They
espérer *on* * 4 2 *adopter* ind-7 1 *de* 3. *On*
grieved (at it) *yesterday*; *now*, they laugh (at it);
s'affliger ind-2 *en* *aujourd'hui* *rire* *en*
to-morrow, it will no longer (be thought) of. It is one of
on *plus* *penser* ind-7 *y*
those accidents which it is *sometimes* impossible to avoid. The
de
dew incommoded me (very much); I shall not *(in future)*
serein m. ind-4 *désormais*
walk so *late*. Rude and coarse criticism
se promener *Malhonnête* 2 *grossier* 3 *un* f. 1
generally (does greater injury) to the person who indulges
nuire plus *se permettre*
himself in it, than to him who is the object (of it.)
* *celle* *en*

EXERCISE ON THE ADVERBS OF QUANTITY, &c.

There are many people who have pretensions; but very
beaucoup de * * *à*
few who have such as are well founded. To embellish a
en sub-1 * * * * *de fondé* f. pl. * 2
subject *too much*, frequently betrays a want of judgment and
3 1 *souvent* *être* *faute*
taste. One *very often* experiences disgust in the midst of
trouver art. *ennui* *à*
the most riotous pleasures. She is a giddy and thoughtless
bruyant 2 1 *Ce* *léger* 2 *inconséquent* 2
woman, who speaks *much* and reflects *little*. She has so *much*
1 *réfléchir*
kindness, that it is impossible not to love her. These stuffs
de *de* *étoffe* f.
are beautiful; *consequently* they are dear. This book has
aussi *coûter cher.*

CHAP. VIII.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

The conjunction is a word which serves to connect words, or sentences, as, *Il pleure et rit en même temps*, he cries and laughs at the same time; the word *et* unites the first sentence, *il pleure*, with the second, *il rit*. Likewise in *Pierre et Paul rient*, Peter and Paul laugh; the word *et* unites these two sentences into one, *Pierre rit* and *Paul rit*.

There are different kinds of conjunctions.

To unite two words under the same affirmation, or under the same negation, *et* is used for the affirmation, and *ni*, neither, nor, for the negation.

To denote an alternative, or distinction, *ou*, either, or; *soit, que*, whether, or; *tantôt*, sometimes, &c.

To restrict an idea; *sinon*, but, except; *quoique, encore que*, though, although; *à moins que*, unless, till.†

---

merit; but there are others *as* good. If he has done that,
du *en* * *de*
I can do *(as much.)* What I say to you (about it) is meant
en *autant* *en* *
less to give you pain, than to apprize you of the lan-
pour faire de art. *avertir pro-*
guage that is used. She is six years *younger* than her bro-
pos pl. *on tenir* *avoir* *de moins*
ther. Nobody is *more* interested than you are (in the
ne * *à ce que réussir*
success) of the affair. You do not offer *enough* for this garden:
subj-1 2 * 1 *offrir* *de*
give something *more.* *The more* ignorant we are, *the less* we
de * 1 4 *on* 2 3 *
(believe ourselves so.)
croire l'être.

---

† EXERCISE ON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

Gold *and* silver are metals less useful than iron.
art. art. *de* art. art.

To express opposition, *mais*, but; *cependant*, yet, nevertheless; *néanmoins*, for all that, however; *pourtant*, however, though; *toutefois*, *bien que*, although.

To express a condition; *si*, if; *sinon que*, except that; *pourvu que*, provided that; *à condition que*, on condition that.

To express consent; *à la vérité*, indeed; *à la bonne heure*, very well.

For explanation; *savoir*, *c'est-à-dire*, viz. that is to say; *comme*, as. †

To listen with joy to a slanderer, *and* to applaud him, is to
* *médisant* * *lui ce* *
cherish the serpent who stings, that he may sting more
réchauffer *piquer afin que* *plus*
effectually. I like *neither* flatterers *nor* the wicked. Those
sûrement *flatteur* pl.
who have never suffered, know nothing; they know *neither*
savoir *connaître*
good *nor* evil. You may choose *either* a happy
art. *bien* pl. art. *mal* pl. *avoir à choisir de*
mediocrity, *or* a sphere more elevated, but exposed to many
f. *de* f. *bien de*
dangers. He is an inconsistent man; he is *sometimes* of
art. *Ce* *inconséquent* 2 1 *tantôt*
one opinion, and *sometimes* of another. I have (nothing more)
avis *ne* *autre chose*
to say to you, *only that* I will have it so. I shall not yet
sinon que *vouloir* * * *encore*
proceed to the perusal of the authors of the second class, *unless*
lecture f. *ordre* m.
you advise me to do so.
ne *conseiller* subj-1 * * le

---

† EXERCISE.

The serpent bites; it is only a bite; *but* from this bite
ce *ne que* *morsure*
the venom communicates itself to the whole body; the slanderer
venin
speaks; it is but a word; *but* this word resounds every
ne que *parole* f. *retentir*
where. (That is) certainly a superb picture; *nevertheless*, there
Voilà *tableau*

To express relation, or parity; *comme*, as, *ainsi*, thus, so; *de même*, as, just as; *ainsi que*, as; *autant que*, as much as; *si que*, as, &c.

To express augmentation, *d'ailleurs*, besides, moreover; *outre que*, besides that; *de plus*, *au surplus*, besides, furthermore.

For diminution, *au moins*, *du moins*, *pour le moins*, at least.

To express the ca se, or the reason of a thing; *car*, for; *comme*, as; *parce que*, because; *puisque*, since; *pour que*, that, in order that, &c. ‡

---

is some incorrectness in the design. Although Homer, accord- *incorrection* pl. *dessin*
ing to Horace, slumbers (at times), he is *never- sommeiller* sub-1 *quelquefois* *en* 2 3 *ne* 1 *pas*
theless the first of all poets. You will succeed, *provided* *moins* art. *réussir* *pourvu*
you act with vigour. We have within us two faculties *que agir* sub-1 *en*
that are seldom united, *viz.* imagination and judgment.
* * art.

---

‡ EXERCISE.

The most beautiful flowers last but a moment: *thus* hu- *durer* *ne que* art. 2
man life passes away. The (greatest part) of mankind
4 3 1 * *plupart* f. art. *homme* pl
have, *like* plants, hidden qualities that chance
pl. art. *de* art. *caché* 2 *propriété* f. 1 art. *hasard*
discovers. Mad. de Sévigné's letters are mo- *faire découvrir*
2 art. f. 1 *de* art.
dels of elegance, simplicity, and taste; *besides*, they are
pr. pr.
replete with interesting anecdotes. Nothing is more enter- *plein de* 2 f. 1 * *de* *amu*
taining than history; *besides*, nothing is more instructive. *sant* art. * *de*
Circumstances show us to others, and still
art. *occasion* pl. *faire connaître* *encore*
more to ourselves. I shall always advise you to take the *conseiller* *de*

To draw a conclusion ; *or*, now ; *donc*, then ; *par conséquent*, consequently ; *c'est pourquoi*, therefore.

To express a circumstance ; *quand*, *lorsque*, when ; *pendant que*, *tandis que*, &c. whilst, while ; *tant que*, as long as ; *depuis que*, ever since ; *avant que*, before ; *dès-que*, *aussi-tôtque*, *d'abordque*, as soon as ; *à-peine*, hardly, scarcely ; *après que*, after that ; *enfin*, in fine, finally, to conclude, &c.

To express a transition ; *car*, for ; *en effet*, indeed, in effect ; *au reste*, besides, otherwise ; *à propos*, now I think of it ; *après tout*, after all. †

---

ancients as your guides ; *at least*, quit but seldom
pour * pr. *s'écarter de ne que*
the way which they have traced for you. We must, *at*
route f. *que* *tracée* * * *falloir*
least, know the general principles of a language, before (we
2 1 *langue* f. *de*
take upon ourselves) to teach it. Certain people hate
se mêler de * *enseigner* f. *gens* art.
grandeur, *because* it lowers and humiliates them, and
—f. pron. *rabaisser* pron.
makes them feel the privation of the advantages which
que elle *leur* *bien* pl.
they covet.
aimer.

---

† EXERCISE.

We ought to love what is amiable : *now*, virtue is
* *falloir* ind-1 * art.
amiable ; *therefore* we ought to love virtue. We ought to
* * * *falloir* *
practise what the Gospel commands us ; *now* it commands
évangile m.
us, not only to forgive our enemies, but also to love
non *de pardonner à* *encore de*
them. Despréaux was extremely particular in not
de la plus grand exactitude à
coming late, *when* he was invited to dinner ; he said that
inf-1 *trop* ind-2 ind-2
all the faults of those who (are waited for) present themselves
défaut *se faire attendre*
to those who wait for them. The pride which possesses us,
attendre * *posséder*

The conjunction *que* is always placed between two ideas, both necessary to complete the sense, as, *Il est très-important que tout le monde soit instruit*, it is of great importance that every body should be well instructed. It differs from the relative pronoun *que*, as it can never be converted into *lequel*, *laquelle*. The conjunction *que* is generally repeated before every member of a period.¶

---

visible as it is, escapes our eyes, *while* it manifests itself
tout *que* *à*
to the eyes of the public, and displeases every one.
choquer art. *esprit* pl.
After we had examined that singular effect, we (inquired into)
ind-5 2 1 *rechercher* ind-3
its causes. We had *hardly* done, when he came in. Pride
en ind-2 *finir* *que* *entrer*
counterbalances all our imperfections; *for*, whether it hides
contre-peser *misère* pl. *ou* *cacher*
them, or whether it discovers them, it glories in knowing them.
si *se glorifier de* inf-1.
None but an Englishman can (be a judge) of Shak-
Il n'y a que *qui* subj-1 *juger*
speare; *for*, what foreigner is sufficiently versed in the English
language to discover the sublime beauties of that author?
langue f. *pour* 2 1

¶ EXERCISE.

(As long as I live), this image will be before my eyes
tout ma vie —f. *peint*
and, if ever the gods permit me to reign, I shall not forget,
faire *
after so terrible an example, *that* a king is not
(*pas* not expressed)
worthy to govern nor happy in his power, (*but* in
de commander et n'est *puissance* f. *qu'*-
proportion as) he subjects it to reason. I am very glad to
autant que *soumettre* art. *de*
see that you do not love flattery, and *that* one (runs no risk)
ne hasarder rien
in speaking to you with sincerity.
à inf-1

CHAP. IX.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections are words, which serve to express the sudden emotions of the soul. The only point to be attended to, is not to place them between words which custom has made inseparable. There are interjections for every feeling, viz.

Of	pain	ahi, aïe ! ouf ! ah !
	grief	hélas ! mon Dieu, &c.
	fear	ha ! hé !
	joy	ah ! bon, bon ! o !
	aversion	fi ! fi donc ! oh, oh !
	disgust	pouah, pouah !
	indignation	foin de.
	imprecation	peste de, la peste de.
	disbelief	chansons, tarare.
	surprise	ouais ;
	astonishment	oh ! bon Dieu ! miséricorde ! peste
	warning	gare ! hem ! holà, ho !
	checking	tout beau ! holà.
	encouraging	alerte ! allons ! ca, courage !
	applauding	bravo, vivat !
	encoring	bis, bis.
	calling	hola ! ho ! hem, hem !
	derision	oh ! eh ! zest ! oh ! oh ! oh !
	silence	chut ! paix ! st

PART II.

THE SYNTAX,

OR

WORDS CONSIDERED IN THEIR CONSTRUCTION.

CHAP. I.

§ I.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

THERE are some substantives which are never used in the plural; such are—1. The names of metals, considered in their original state; as, *l'or*, gold, *le platine*, platina. 2. The names of virtues and vice; as, *la chasteté*, chastity, *l'ivrognerie*, drunkenness. 3. Some words of a physical or moral nature; as, *l'ouïe*, hearing; *l'odorat*, smelling; *le sang*, blood, *le sommeil*, sleep, *la pauvreté*, poverty. 4. The infinitive of verbs and adjectives used substantively, together with some other words, which cannot be reduced to any particular class.

Others, on the contrary, which likewise cannot be reduced to any particular class, are never used in the singular; as, *annales*, annals; *ancêtres*, ancestors; *mouchettes*, snuffers, &c.

§ II.

OF COMPOUND NOUNS

Of the formation of their plural.

1. When a noun is compounded of a substantive and an adjective, they both take the sign of the plural; as, *un gentilhomme*, a nobleman; *des gentilshommes*, noblemen.

2. When a noun is compounded of two substantives, united by a preposition, the first only takes the sign of the plural; as, *arc-en-ciel*, a rainbow; *des arcs-en-ciel*, rainbows.

3. When a noun is compounded of a preposition, or verb, and a substantive, the substantive alone is put in the plural; as, *un entre-sol* (a low room between two floors,) *des entre-sols; un garde-fou* (rails on bridges), *des garde-fous.*

REMARK. There is a small number of substantives composed of a verb and an adverb; as, *un passe-partout*, a master or general key; or of a verb repeated; as, *passe-passe*, sleight of hand: they never take the sign of the plural.

EXERCISE ON SUBSTANTIVE AND COMPOUND NOUNS.

Gold is the most pure, the most precious, the most ductile, art. *parfait*
and, after platina, the heaviest of all metals. *Chastity* is an *pesant* art.
obligation of all times, all ages, and all conditions. * art. pr. art. pr. art. *état* m. pl. art
Intoxication, which proceeds from beer, is of longer duration *ivresse* *venir* art. * *
than that which proceeds from wine. It is the sense of art. *Ce* art.
feeling, which teaches to guard against the errors of *sight*. *toucher* *apprendre* *se garantir* *de* art.
Sleep is the image of death. Early learn
art. art. *de bonne-heure* 2 *apprendre* 1
to distinguish *truth* from *falsehood*. That is more bitter
— *guer* art. *vrai* art. *faux* *amer*
than *wormwood*. Dignity of mind was
de art. *absinthe* art. *Elévation* art. *sentiment* m. pl. ind-2
formerly the (distinguishing mark of) *noblemen*. One of
ce qui * *distinguer* ind-2 art.
the *buttresses* of the vault has fallen. He is always
arc-boutant m. pl. *tomber* *
making *(cock and bull stories.)* The Tartars always form
fait *de* art. *coq.à-l'âne* m. pl. *Tartare* *être*
the *scouts* of an army. The *fish-carriers* did
avant-courier m. pl. *chasse-marée* m. pl.
not arrive in time. This door is only fastened with a
ind-3 *à* *ne que fermer* *à* * art.
latch; and all (the persons) in the house have each their
loquet m. * *ceux* *de*
key.
passe-partout m.

CHAP II.

OF THE ARTICLE.

§ 1.

1. The difficulty attendant on rendering into French the *a*, or *an* which precedes a substantive, when it follows the verb *to be*, will easily be removed by examining whether that substantive be restricted by a particular idea; if it be not restricted, the *a*, or *an* is not expressed in French; thus, *I am a Frenchman*, *I am a prince*, must be translated by *je suis Français*, *je suis prince*. But if it be restricted, then the *a* or *an* must be expressed by the word *un* placed before the substantive, as, *I am a Frenchman of an illustrious family*, *I am a very unfortunate prince*, must be translated by *je suis un Français d'une illustre maison*, *je suis un prince très-malheureux*.

2. When the verb *être* is preceded by the demonstrative *ce*, in phrases of this kind, *un* is always required before the substantive, as, *c'est un trésor*, &c.

3. The French do not use the article before substantives, expressing the quality of a preceding noun: though, in cases of this kind, the English usually employ the article *the*, and still more frequently *a*, or *an*; as, *Télémaque, fils d'Ulysse, roi d'Itaque*, Telemachus, *the* son of Ulysses, king of Ithaca; *le Duc d'York, prince du sang*, the Duke of York, *a* prince of the blood.

---

† EXERCISE ON THE ARTICLE.

I am *a* Frenchman and *a* merchant; after having (been at)
négociant inf-1 *parcouru*
the most famous (trading towns) in the Levant, my commercial
= *échelle* f. pl. *de* —m. *les affaires*
concerns have brought me here. I am *an* unhappy
de mon commerce *conduire*
Frenchman who, a striking example of the vicissitudes of
* *mémorable* 2 1 —
fortune, seek an asylum where I may end my days
art. *chercher* *asile* m. *puisse finir*

§ 2.

Without entering more minutely into this subject, the following comparative table, in which the same words are exhibited, according to circumstances, both with and without the article, in conjunction with the phrases which have been inserted at the end of this grammar, will, it is presumed, be considered as a sufficient illustration of custom. ¶

---

in peace. He was *a* man of uncommon probity and of
Ce *un* *rare* 2. f. 1 *un*
tried virtue: (as a) reward for the services he had
éprouvé 2 1 *pour le récompenser de* *que*
rendered to the church and state, the king has made him *a*
m. pl. *église* pr. art.
bishop. Neoptolemus had hardly told me that he was *a* Greek,
évêque. *Néoptolème* *eut à peine* *dit*
when I (cried out): O enchanting words, after so many
que *s'écrier* ind-3 *doux* *parole* f. pl. *de*
years of silence and unceasing pain! o my son, what
sans consolation 2 pr. 1
misfortune, what storm, or rather what propitious wind has
malheur m. *tempête* f. *plutôt* *favorable* 2 1
brought you hither to end my woes? He replied,
conduire *pour* *mal?* m. pl. *répondre* ind-3
I am of the island of Scyros, I am returning thither; (I am
île *retourner* *y* *on*
said) (to be) *the* son of Achilles.
dit *que* ind-1.

¶ COMPARATIVE TABLE.

WITH THE ARTICLE.	WITHOUT THE ARTICLE.
The writings of Cicero are full *of the soundest* 2 *ideas* 1.	The writings of Cicero are full *of sound* 2 *ideas* 1.
Divest yourself *of the préjuse défaire préjugé dices* of childhood.	Have no *prejudice* (with regard to) this question. *sur*
The different kinds *of animals* that are upon the earth.	There are different kinds *of animals* upon the earth.
He enters into a detail *of the rules* of a good grammar.	He enters into a long detail of *frivolous* 2 *rules* 1.
He affects *circumlocutions. chercher de détour.*	He affects long 1 *circumlocutions* 2 in order to explain the simplest 2 things 1.

WITH THE ARTICLE.	WITHOUT THE ARTICLE.
He loads his memory with *the verses of* Virgil and the *phrases* of Cicero.	He loads his memory *with insipid* 3 *verses* 1 *and phrases* 2.
Essays supported by *strong* 2 *discours soutenu.* *expressions* 1	Essays supported *by lively* 1 *vive* *expressions* 2.
He has collected *precepts* of *recueillir* *sur* morality. *mœurs* pl.	A * collection *of precepts* in *recueil* *sur* morals.
Make use *of the tokens* we *se servir* *signe (dont)* agreed upon.* *être convenu.*	We are obliged to use *some exterior* 2 *signs* 1, in order to make ourselves understood. *nous* *entendre*
The choice *of studies*, proper, &c.	He has made a choice of *books* which are, &c.
Knowledge has always been *Connaissance* pl. the object of *the esteem, the praise,* and *the admiration of éloge* pl. *men.*	It is an object of esteem, of *Ce* praise, and admiration.
The riches of the mind can only (be acquired) by study. *ne que s'acquérir.*	There is in Peru a prodigious *le Pérou* abundance *of useless* 2 *riches* 1.
The gifts *of fortune* are uncertain. *fragiles.*	Gifts *of fortune.* *Bien.*
The connexion *of proofs* *enchaînement* *preuve* makes them please and *qu'elles* persuade.	There is in this book an admirable connexion of solid 2 proofs 1.
It is by meditation upon what we read, that we acquire *fresh* 2 *knowledge* 1. *connaissance* pl.	It is by meditation that we acquire fresh 1 knowledge 2. *nouveau.*
The advantages *of memory.*	There are different *kinds of memory.*
The memory *of facts* is the most showy. *brillant.*	He has only a memory of *facts.*
The aim *of good masters* should be to cultivate *the devoir* ind-1 *de*	He has an air of pedantry *ton* m. *maître*

WITH THE ARTICLE.	WITHOUT THE ARTICLE.
mind and reason of their pupils.	that shocks you at first sight. *abord*
The taste of mankind is liable *homme* pl. to great changes.	Society of *chosen* 2 *men* 1.
He has no need *of the lessons* you wish to give him.	He has no need *of lessons*. *avoir besoin*
France, Spain, England, &c.	Kingdom *of France, of Spain, of England,* &c.
The isle of *Japan*.	Island *of Candia*.
He comes from *China*.	He comes *from Poland*
He arrives *from America*.	He arrives *from Italy*.
The extent *of Persia*.	He is gone *to Persia*. *en*
He is returned *from the East Indies, from Asia,* &c.	He is returned *from Spain, from Persia,* &c.
He lives *in Peru, in Japan, in* *à* *the Indies, in Jamaica,* &c.	He lives *in Italy, in France, in London, in Avignon,* &c. *à* *à*
The politeness *of France,* &c.	The fashions *of France*.
The circumference *of England*.	The horses *of England*.
The interest *of Spain*.	The wines *of Spain*.
The invention of printing is attributed *to Germany*.	The empire *of Germany* is divided into a great number of states.
He comes *from French Flanders*.	He comes from *Flanders*.

§ III.

ON MEASURE, WEIGHT, &c.

1. The English make use of *a*, or *an*, before nouns of measure, weight, and purchase; as, *wheat is sold for a crown* a *bushel; butter sells for sixpence* a *pound; wine sold yesterday for forty crowns* a *hogshead, 'tis more than a groat* a *bottle*. But the French make use of the article *le, la,* as, *le blé se vend un écu* le *boisseau*; *le beurre se vend six sous* la *livre; le vin se vendit hier quarante écus* le *muid, c'est plus de quatre sous* la *bouteille*.

2. When speaking of *time*, *a* or *an* is expressed in French by the preposition *par*, as, *so much a week, tant* par *semaine*.

3. In English, *a* is sometimes put between the pronoun which expresses admiration, and the substantive that accompanies it, as, *what a beauty!* but, in French, the *un* is never expressed in similar cases, as, *quelle beauté!*

4. In English, when the adverbs *more* and *less* are repeated to express a comparison, they must be preceded by the article, as, the more *difficult a thing is*, the more *honourable it is*. But, in French, the article is omitted, as plus *une chose est difficile, plus elle est honorable.*†

CHAP. III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

It has been said (p. 95), that an adjective *agrees* in gender and number with the substantive which it qualifies; from this rule, however, must be excepted *nu*, bare, and *demi*, half, when placed *before* a substantive, and *feu*, late, when *before* the article or a pronominal

† EXERCISE ON MEASURE, &c.

Corn sells for eight shillings *a* bushel. Veal and
art. *blé* m. *se vendre* * *schelling* *boisseau* art. *veau*
mutton cost ten pence *a* pound. This lace is sold at
art. *coûter* *sou* *livre* f. f. *se vendre* *
half a guinea *an* ell. The best French wines are sold at
demi 2 1 f. *aune* *de France* 2 1 ind-1
from twelve to fifteen shillings *a* bottle. My father goes to
bouteille f. *va en*
Ireland four or five times *a* year. He gives his son seven
Irlande *fois* *an*
shillings *a* day. It (Is necessary), if you desire to
falloir *
(improve fast) that you should take *a* lesson three times *a*
faire des progrès rapides *preniez* *
week. *The* more I contemplate those precious remains of anti-
= *reste* m. pl. art.
quity, *the* more I am struck with wonder. What *a* beautiful
= *frappé* *de* *étonnement*
morning! come, let us go and walk in the fields.
matinée f. *se promener* *champ* m. pl.

adjective, as, *il va nu-pieds*, he goes barefoot; *je suis à vous dans une demi-heure*, I will be with you in half an hour; *feu la reine*, the late queen; *feu ma mère*, my late mother. But the agreement takes place, if *nu* and *demi* be placed *after* the substantive, and *feu* between the article or pronominal adjective and the substantive, as, *il a les pieds nus*, his feet are bare; *je suis à vous dans une heure et demie*, I will be with you in an hour and a half; *la feue reine, ma feue mère.*

2. An adjective frequently serves to qualify two, or more substantives expressing either persons, or things of different genders.

If it be used to qualify more than two substantives, it must agree with them; for, either these substantives perform the office of subject, as, *la grammaire, la logique, et la rhétorique, méthodiquement enseignées, ne s'oublient guère*, grammar, logic, and rhetoric, when taught with method, are seldom forgotten; or they constitute the regimen, as, *c'est un homme d'une valeur, d'une vertu et d'une fidélité, éprouvées*, he is a man of tried courage, virtue, and fidelity.

If it be used to qualify only two substantives, the substantive of persons must be distinguished from the substantive of things; with the first, the rules of agreement are to be observed in all cases: with the second, custom allows, when the substantives form the regimen, to make the adjective agree with the last only; as, *elle avoit les yeux et la bouche ouverte.* Nevertheless, modern grammarians prefer the agreement, even in this case.

3. With respect to phrases like the following, *les langues Anglaise et Française sont fort cultivées*, though they are in opposition to the rules of grammar, yet, it is allowable to use them. However, in strict propriety, it seems better to say, *la langue Française et l'Anglaise sont très-cultivées.*†

† EXERCISE ON THE ADJECTIVE.

He ran through the streets like a madman, *bare*-foot and ind-2 * *rue* f. pl.

II.

DIFFERENCE OF CONSTRUCTION BETWEEN THE ENGLISH AND FRENCH LANGUAGES.

1. In English, the substantive of *measure* is placed before the substantive, or adjective expressing the dimensions, as, *a tower two hundred feet high*, or *in height*. In French, the word which expresses dimension, is placed first, if it be an adjective, and the preposition *de* be added to it as a regimen, as, *une tour haute de deux cents pieds*. But, if it be a substantive, or an adjective used substantively, it is placed after, with the preposition *de*, either before the noun of measure, or of dimension, as : *une tour de deux cents pieds de haut*, or *de hauteur*. This last mode is the most elegant.

---

bare-headed. His legs were *bare*. Give me
tête *il* * art. *jambe*, f. 2 *avoir* 1
half a guinea, and then you (will only owe) me a guinea
ne devoir plus que
and a *half*. I shall be at home in *half* an hour. Come
chez-moi *dans*
before *half* past one. The *late* queen was idolized. The
2 *une heure et* 1 2 1 ind-2 *adoré*
late queen was universally regretted. His impetuosity and
ind-3
courage, long *restrained*, soon surmounted all obsta-
pron. *enchaîné* ind-3 art.
cles. The imagination and genius of Ariosto, although *ir-*
art. *l'Arioste* *quoique*
regular in their course, yet interest, (hurry along,) and
marche *néanmoins* *attacher* *entraîner*
captivate the reader, who can never be tired of admiring them.
lecteur *se lasser* inf-1
There are in Gessner's idylls sentiments and a
2 art. *idylle* 1 *de* art.
grace altogether *affecting*. The good taste of the Egyptians,
tout-à-fait *touchant*
(from that time) made them love solidity and unadorned
dès-lors ind-3 *leur* art. = *tout nu* 2
regularity. In those climates, the *dry* and the *rainy* mon-
= 1 *sec* *pluvieux* *mous-*
soons divide the year.
son f. pl. *se diviser* *année*.

2. The English manner of expressing *dimensions*, is to use the verb *to be*, as, *the walls of Algiers are twelve feet thick, and thirty feet high;* the French in general, make use of the verb *avoir*, when there are two constructions: as, *les murs d'Alger ont douze pieds d'épaisseur, et trente de hauteur;* or, *les murs d'Alger ont douze pieds d'épaisseur sur trente de hauteur.* This second mode of expression is most generally adopted.

3. In comparative sentences, to express difference, the English sentence often runs thus: *she is taller than her sister by the whole head.* The French, in this manner; *elle est plus grande que sa sœur de toute la tête.*†

---

† EXERCISE ON THE DIFFERENCE OF CONSTRUCTION.

This trunk, which is six feet *long*, is very convenient. You
coffre m. *commode*
will be stopped in your march by a river three hundred feet *broad*.
arrêté f.
This observatory, which is twelve hundred feet *high*, is very pro-
=
per for knowing the true position of the stars. It is a terrace
inf-1 *astre* m. pl. *ce terrace* f.
a hundred and eighty feet *broad*, and twelve hundred
large
feet *long*. The walls of our garden are twenty feet *high*
mur m. pl.
and three *broad*. It is one of the finest stones that was
on ait
ever seen: it is twenty feet *long* and six *thick*. This
jamais vues *longueur* *épaisseur*.
ditch is nine feet six inches *deep* and six feet
fossé m. *pouce* m. pl. *profondeur* f.
broad. My son is taller than yours *by two inches*.

REGIMEN OF THE ADJECTIVES.

Several adjectives have a regimen; some require the preposition *de*, and others the preposition *à* before a noun, or a verb, which is then called the regimen or government of the adjective.

EXAMPLES.

Digne de *récompense,*	Worthy *of* reward.
Utile à *l'homme,*	Useful *to* man.
Digne de *régner,*	Worthy *of* reigning.
Content de *son sort,* de *vivre,* &c.	Satisfied *with* his lot, *with* living.
Beau à *voir, bon* à *manger,*	Fine *to* the sight, good *for* eating.
Apre au *gain, avide* d'*honneur,*	Eager *after* gain, greedy *of* honour.
Propre à *la guerre,*	Fit *for* war.

Récompense is the government of the adjective *digne*, as it is joined to that adjective by the word *de* : *l'homme* is the government of the adjective *utile*, because it is joined to that adjective by the word *à*, and so of the rest.

EXERCISE ON THE REGIMEN OF THE ADJECTIVES.

Virtuous men are always worthy *of esteem.* A weak
art. *Vertueux* 2 1 *toujours* *estime* f. *faible* 2
mind is liable *to many* contradictions. A heart free from
1 m. *sujet* *bien des* — f. pl. *cœur* m. *libre de*
cares enjoys the greatest possible felicity. Voltaire was
soin m. pl. *jouit de* 1 — 3 = f. 2 — *fut*
always greedy *of praise,* and insatiable *of glory.* Rousseau,
avide *louange* f. pl. — = —
endowed *with* a strong and fiery imagination, was all his
doué *de* *fort* 2 *bouillant* 3 — f. 1
(life-time) subject *to* *frequent* fits of misanthrophy, and
vie f. *enclin à de* — *accès* m. pl. =
liable *to all the variations* attendant upon it.
sujet — f. pl. *qui en sont la suite.*

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE ARTICLE AND THE ADJECTIVES.

THE FAULTS OF INFANCY.

défaut m. pl. art. *enfance.*

The amiable Louisa and her young brother Charles were
Louise — ind 2
gentle, humane, and sensible. To the most interesting
doux *sensible* *spirituel* *intéressant* 2 art.
person, Louisa joined all the modesty, the pleasing ingenu-
figure f. 1 ind-2 = f. *heureux* *ingé-*
ousness and artless graces of her sex; and Charles, the
nuité f. *naïf* 9 art. — f. *sexe* m.

vivacity, the fire, and the manly gracefulness of his.
= f. *feu* m. *mâle* *agrément* m. pl.
But these advantages, the precious gifts of nature,
avantage m. pl. * = 3 *don* m. pl. art. — f.
were obscured by great defects. They were both
ind-2 *un peu obscurci* *de* *défaut* m. pl. ind-2 *l'un et*
inclined to idleness, and liable to fits of sullenness
l'autre enclin art. *paresse* f. *sujets* *des accès* *bouderie* f.
and ill humour when they were contradicted. Faults are
de * *h* m. *lorsque* *contredit* art. *Défaut*
diseases of the soul, the cure (of which) is the work
des maladies *guérison* f. 2 *dont* 1 *ouvrage*
of time.
art. m.

A good dispositions, it is generally the fruit of the deve-
Les âmes bien nées elle d'ordinaire — m. *déve-*
lopement of reason, and the desire of pleasing. Though
loppement m. art. *de* m. inf-1 *Quoique*
their parents were persuaded (of this), they employed,
— sub-2 2 — *dé* 3 *en* 1 *employer* ind-3
to hasten it, an expedient, which succeeded. If they
pour hâter 2 *la* 1 *moyen* m. *leur réussir* ind-3 * 2
were satisfied with them, contentment and joy were
ind-2 1 *content* *de* art. *satisfaction* f. art. f.
painted in their countenances; if dissatisfied, they
peint *sur* *figure* f. pl. * *en étaient-ils mécontent*
did not scold, but they received them with a sorrow-
* *les gronder* ind-2 ind-3 *triste* 2
ful air, a dejected countenance, and every sign of
regard 1 *abattu* 2 *maintien* 1 *tous* art. *signe* m. pl.
chagrin and trouble. Louisa and Charles were natu-
art. — m. *de* art. *douleur* *natu-*
rally kind and feeling; they could not long support
rellement *bon* *sensible* *ne pouvaient long-temps* *résister à*
the idea of having afflicted such tender parents. They felt
idée inf-1 *affligé* *des si* *tendre* 2 — 1 ind-2
their error, burst into tears and asked pardon. All was
faute f. *fondre* *en* *larme* 1. pl. — m. 2 3
immediately forgotten, and satisfaction again smiled
aussi-tôt 1 *oublié* art. *contentement* m. *renaître* ind-2
around. It was by this means that these amiable
autour d'eux. *Ce fut* *moyen* sing. *que*
children soon became models of docility, com-
bientôt 2 *devenir* 1 *des modèle* m. pl. *de*
plaisance and application.
— *de* —

CHAP IV.

OF THE PRONOUNS.

§ I.

OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Of the Place of Personal Pronouns.—See p. 100.

There is no difficulty in placing personal pronouns, when they act as subjects : the person who speaks always names himself last, and the person addressed is generally named first.

EXAMPLES.

Vous et moi, nous irons à la campagne,	You and I will go into the country.
Nous irons ce soir à la promenade, vous, votre frère, et moi, ¶	Will you take a walk this evening, you, your brother, and I.

Rule. The pronouns *il* and *ils* always represent a substantive masculine, *il*, if it be singular ; and *ils*, if it be plural ; and *elle* and *elles*, on the contrary, repre-

---

¶ EXERCISE.

My sister and I were walking by the last rays of
– *nous* * ind-2 *à* *rayons* m. pl.
the setting sun, and we were saying, what a mild splendour
couchant 3 1 * *disions* *éclat* m.
does it still spread over all nature ! In the long
* 2 pas 3 5 *ne répand* 1 art.
winter evenings, my father, my brothers, and I used
de 2 *soirée* f. pl. 1 *nous pas-*
(to spend) two hours in the library, and to read there,
ser ind-2 *bibliothèque* f. *nous lisions y*
(in order to) (unbend our minds) from the serious studies of the
pour *se délasser* = 2 1
day, those amiable poets who interest most the heart, by the
2 1 *le plus*
charms of a lively imagination, and make us love truth, by
riant 2 1 art. *en*
disguising it under the mask of an ingenious fiction
déguiser inf-3 *trait* m. pl. = 2 f. 1
You and your friend shall accompany me to the museum,
— *pagner* *musée* m.
where we shall study nature in her three kingdoms.
où *règne* m. pl.

sent a substantive feminine, *elle*, if it be singular: *elles*, if plural.

Thus in speaking of the *rose;* we should say, *elle a un parfum exquis, aussi est-elle la fleur la plus recherchée*, it has an exquisite fragrance, and is indeed the choicest of flowers; because *rose* is feminine and singular; and in speaking of several ladies: *elles ont autant de modestie que de beauté, d'esprit et de grâce*, they have as much modesty as they have beauty, wit, and accomplishments; because *dames* is feminine and plural. †

With respect to pronouns, when used as a regimen, custom has established the following rules:

RULE I. The pronouns *me, te, se, leur, le, la, les, y,* and *en*, are generally placed before verbs, as are *nous, vous*, and *lui*, when without a preposition.

EXAMPLES.

Il me dit	he tells me	*Je lui parle*	I speak to him
Je le vois	I see him	*J'y songerai*	I will think of it
Je les écoute	I listen to them ‡	*J'en suis ravi*	I am delighted at it

---

† EXERCISE.

(Look at) that magnificent building; *it* unites grace to
Regarder —*fique bâtiment* m. *réunir* art. *grâce* f.
beauty, and elegance to simplicity. Ignorance is
art. = f. art. — f. art. = f. — f.
jealous, presumptuous, and vain: *it* sees difficulties in
présomptueux — *ne de* = f. pl. *à*
nothing, (is surprised) at nothing, and stops at nothing.
rien ne s'étonner de ne s'arrêter à
Let us gather these roses; Heavens! what a sweet fragrance
cueillir Ciel! quel * *parfum*
they exhale! Never judge from appearances; *they* are often
—*ler sur* art. f.
deceitful: the wise man examines them, and does not decide
* * *se décider*
upon *them* till he has had time to fix his judgment
d'après f. *que lorsque* art. m. *de fixer*

---

‡ EXERCISE.

(As soon as) he had explained to *us* the maxims of So-
Dès que expliquer ind-5 * *So-*
crates, he said: you see that it is not without reason he
crate ind-3 *ce* *que on le*

RULE II. The pronouns *moi, toi, soi, nous, vous, lui, eux, elle,* and *elles,* are placed after verbs, when they are preceded by a preposition.

EXAMPLES.

Cela dépend de moi,	That depends on me.
Je pense à toi,	I think of thee.
On s'occupe trop de soi,	We are too attentive to ourselves.
Que dites-vous d'eux ?	What do you say of them ?

RULE III. In imperative phrases, when affirmative, *moi, toi, nous, vous, lui, leur, eux, elle, elles, le, la, les, y,* and *en,* are placed after verbs; but, with a negation,

---

(is looked upon) as truly wise. He was continually saying to
regarde un vrai ind-2 *
me : yet a little patience, and you will disarm even envy
de désarmer * art.
itself. You have, no doubt, (some foundation) for reproaching
être sans doute fondé à inf-1
him with his faults : but is there (any man) on earth that
lui de * art. m. pl. *quelqu'un* art. *qui*
is exempt *(from them) ?* To please *her,* you must never
subj-1 *en Pour lui* *
flatter *her.* To abandon *one's self* to metaphysical abstrac-
des métaphysique 2 —
tions, is to plunge into an unfathomable abyss.
1 *ce* * *se jeter sans fond* 2 *abîme* m. 1.

¶ EXERCISE.

My father loved me so tenderly, that he thought of none
ind-2 *penser* ind-2 *à ne*
but *me,* (was wholly taken up) with *me,* and saw none but *me*
que ne s'occuper ind-2 *que de* ind-2
in the universe. If you wish to obtain that favour, you must
de *
speak to *him himself.* It depended on *you* to excel
ind-2 *de de l'emporter sur*
your rivals, but you would not. Philip, father of
le vouloir ind-4 *Philippe* 2
Alexander, being advised to expel from his dominions
comme on conseillait à 1 *de chasser état* m. pl.
a man, who (had been speaking) ill of *him ;* I shall take care not
parler ind-6 *se garder bien* *
to do that, said he, he would go and slander *me* every where.
* * *en* ind-3 * *médire de*

me, te, se, nous, vous, lui, leur, le, la, les, y, and *en,* are placed before verbs.

EXAMPLES.

AFFIRMATIVELY.		NEGATIVELY.	
Dites-moi	Tell me	*Ne* me *dites pas*	Do not tell me
Donnez-m'en *la moitié*	Give me half of it	*Ne* m'en *donnez point*	Do not give me any
Songez-y *sérieusement*	Think of it seriously	*N'y songez pas*	Do not think of it

Rem. If the pronouns *me, te, moi, toi,* intervene betwixt an imperative and an infinitive, *me, te,* are used when the imperative is without a regimen direct.

EXAMPLES.

Venez me parler,	Come and speak to me.
Va te faire coëffer,	Go and get thy hair dressed.

But *moi, toi,* are used if the imperative have a regimen direct.

EXAMPLES.

Laissez-moi faire,	Let me do it.
Fais-toi coëffer,	Get thy hair dressed.

2. If *moi, toi,* when placed after the imperative, be followed by the pronoun *en,* they are changed into *me, te.*

EXAMPLES.

Donnez-m'en, Give me some. *Retourne-t'en,* Go back.

3. When there are two imperatives joined together by the conjunctions *et, ou,* it is most elegant to place the second pronoun before the verb.

EXAMPLES.

Polissez-le *sans cesse et* le *repolissez,*	Polish and repolish it continually.
Gardez-les, *ou* les *renvoyez,* †	Keep them or send them back.

† EXERCISE.

Listen to *me,* do not condemn *me,* without a hearing.
écouter * * *m'écouter.*
Complain, thou hast just cause of complaint; however, do
se plaindre *un sujet* *plainte*
not *complain* too bitterly of the injustice of mankind. Give
amèrement art. *homme* pl.
some. Do not give *any.* Think *(of it.)* Do not think *of it.*

RULE IV. When several pronouns accompany a verb, *me, te, se, nous, vous*, must be placed first; *le, la, les*, before *lui, leur;* and *y* before *en*, which is always the last.

EXAMPLES.

Prêtez-moi ce livre; je vous le rendrai demain; si vous me le refusez, je saurai m'en passer,	Lend me that book; I will return it to you to-morrow; if you refuse me, I can make shift without it.
Aurez-vous la force de leur dire?	Will you have resolution enough to mention it to them?
Il n'a pas voulu vous y mener,	He would not take you there.
Je vous y en porterai,	I will bring you some there.

EXCEPTION. In an imperative sentence, when affirmative, *le, la, les*, are always placed first, as, *donnez-le-moi*, give it me, *offrez-la-lui*, offer it to him; *conduisez-les-y*, conduct them thither; and *moi* is placed after *y*, as *menez-y-moi*, carry me thither; but *nous* will precede *y*, as, *menez-nous-y*, take us thither. ‡

Repeat *to them* continually, that, without honesty, one can never succeed in the world. Do not repeat *to them* continually the same things. Acknowledge *him* as your master, and obey
reconnaître pour
him. Tread upon that spider and kill it.
lui marcher arraigné f. *écraser*

---

‡ EXERCISE.

You wish to make a present to your sister. (There is) a
vouloir * *Voilà*
beautiful fan; you should present *her* with it.
éventail m. *devoir* cond-2 *offrir lui* *
(How many) people are there (destitute of) merit and without occupation, (who would be mere nothings) in society, did not
que de gens * * *sans* *ne tenir à rien* cond-1 art. *si* art.
gaming introduce *them (into it.)* I shall speak *to them*
jeu m. *introduire* ind-2 *y*
(about it), and give *you* a faithful account *of it* It
en *je rendre* ind-7 *exact* 2 *compte* m. 1
is certain that old Géronte has refused his daughter to Valart.
lere; but because he does not give *her to him*, it does not follow that he will give *her to you.*
s'ensuivre

REMARK. The word *même* is sometimes added to the pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *soi*, *nous*, *vous*, *eux*, *lui*, *elle*, *elles*, to specify the person, or thing spoken of.

EXAMPLES.

Ils se sont perdus eux-mêmes,	They have ruined themselves.
Le monde estime bien des choses qui, en elles-mêmes, sont fort méprisables,	The world prizes many things which, in themselves, are worthless.

§ II.

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.—P. 111.

The relative pronouns are *qui*, *que*, *dont*, *lequel*, &c. see p. 111.

RULE I. *Qui*, when a relative, is always of the number, gender, and person of its antecedent.

EXAMPLES.

Moi qui suis son fils,	I who am his son.
Toi qui es si jeune,	Thou who art so young
L'enfant qui joue,	The child who plays.
Nous qui étudions,	We who study.
Vous qui riez,	You who laugh.
Les livres qui instruisent,	The books which instruct.

In the first example, *qui* is singular, and of the first person, because the pronoun *moi* is in the singular, and of the first person. In the second, it is singular, and of the second person, for a similar reason, &c. ¶

¶ EXERCISE.

I *who* did not suspect (so much) falsehood, cun-
* *soupçonner* ind-2 *tant de* *fausseté* f. pr. *ruse*
ning, and perfidy, in a man whom I loved, blindly follow-
f. pr. = f. ind-2 *aveuglément* *je sui-*
ed his counsels. Thou *who* art candour and innocence
vre ind-3 *conseil* m. art. = f. art. — f.
itself, trust not too lightly. The great empire of the Egyp-
même *te confie* *légèrement* — m. —
tians *which* was, (as it were) detached from all others, was
tien ind-3 *comme* *détaché* art.
not of long duration. We *who* know the value of time
durée f. *connaître* *prix* m. art.

RULE II. *Que*, when a relative, is of the number and gender of its antecedent.

EXAMPLES.

C'est moi que l'on demande,	It is I whom they ask for.
C'est toi qu'on appelle,	It is thou whom they call.
La femme que je vois si bien parée,	The woman whom I see so well dressed.
C'est nous que vous offensez,	It is we whom you offend.
C'est vous que je cherche,	It is you I am seeking.
Les dames que vous voyez,	The ladies whom you see.†

Dont sometimes represents *dequi*, *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, *desquelles*, and even *de quoi*.

EXAMPLES.

L'homme dont vous parlez est parti,	The man of whom you are speaking is gone.

---

ought to make a good use (of it), instead of wasting
nous devoir ind-1 * *emploi* m. *au lieu* *perdre*
it in idleness and frivolity. What! is it you, my
dans art. *oisiveté* f. art. *inutilité* f. *Quoi* *ce*
daughter, *who* (would wish) that I (should love) you less? The
vouloir con-1 *que* sub-2
greatest men, *who* were the ornament and glory of Greece,
ind-4 *ornement* art. = f. art. *Grèce* f.
Homer, Pythagoras, Plato, even Lycurgus and Solon, went
Homère *—gore* *Platon, même* *—gue* — ind-3
to learn wisdom in Egypt.
* *apprendre* art. *sagesse* f. *en Egypte.*

---

† EXERCISE.

I whom temptation surrounded on every side
art. *séduction* f. *environner* ind-2 *de tout* *part* f. pl.
fell into the snare. It is thou *whom* the public voice
je tombai *dans* *piége* m. *Ce* 2 f. 1
calls to that employ. A power *which* terror and
appeler *place* f. *puissance* f. art. = f. art.
force have founded, cannot be of long duration. It is we *whom*
— f. *fondé* f. *ne peut* *durée* f.
they persecute with unexampled rage. You *whom*
l'on *poursuivre* *avec une* *sans exemple* 2 *fureur* f. 1
every body respects, hasten to (come forward.) (Every
tout le monde *respecter* *se hâter* *de* *paraître* *Tout*
thing) in the universe alters and perishes; but the writings
dans *univers* m. *s'altérer* *périr* *écrit* m. pl.
which genius has dictated, shall be immortal.
art. *génie* m. *dicté* m. pl. *—tel.*

La tour dont nous apercevons les créneaux doit être très-élevée,	The tower whose battlements we perceive must be very high.
Ce dont je vous ai parlé l'autre jour n'a pas réussi,	What I was speaking to you of the other day did not succeed.

OBSERVE 1.—That *qui*, *que*, and *dont*, may equally apply to persons and things; but *qui*, preceded by a preposition, can never apply to things; in this case, *lequel*, *duquel*, *auquel*, &c. must be used.

2.—*Lequel*, *laquelle*, &c. apply both to persons and things; but—*quoi* applies only to things.

The adverb *où* is likewise employed as a relative pronoun, for *dans lequel*, *auquel*, *dans laquelle*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

Voilà le but où il tend,	That is the object he has in view.
Ce sont des affaires, où je suis embarrassé,	Those are affairs with which I am perplexed.

REMARK. *Où* admits the prepositions *de* and *par*.

EXAMPLES.

Voilà une chose d'où dépend le bonheur public,	That is an affair on which the public happiness depends.
Tels sont les lieux par où il a passé, †	These are the places through which he passed.

---

† EXERCISE.

Persons of ordinary condition have not the same art. *personne* f. pl. *commun* 2 — f. 1 *même* need of being cautioned against the dangers *to which* *besoin* m. inf-1 *précautionné* f. pl. *contre* *écueil* m. pl. elevation and authority expose those who are des- art. — f. art. *autorité* f. *exposer* *ceux* *des-* tined to govern mankind. The protection on *which* *tiné* m. pl. *gouverner* art. *homme* pl. — f. *sur* — he relied has been too weak. That after *which* a true *compter* ind-2 *faible.* *Ce* *après* *vrai* philosopher sighs most ardently, is to spread that — *phe* m. *soupirer* art. *ardemment* *de répandre* sentiment of universal benevolence which should unite and — m. — *sel* 2 *bienveillance* f. 1 *devrait unir* (bring together) all men. These are conditions without *rapprocher* art. *Ce* *sont des* *sans* *which* the thing would not have been concluded. Nature, *fait* f. art. — f. of *whose* secrets we (are ignorant) will be always a 1 art. — m. pl. 4 2 *ignorer* 3

§ III.

OF PRONOUNS ABSOLUTE.—P. 112.

See p. 112, the pronouns absolute, *qui*, *que*, *quoi*, *quel*, *lequel*.

Qui signifies *quel homme*, what man; *quelle personne*, what person.

EXAMPLES.

Qui vous a dit celà ?	Who told you that ?
J'ignore qui a fait celà,	I don't know who did that.

Que signifies *quelle chose*, what thing.

EXAMPLES.

Que dit-on ?	What do they say ?
Je ne sais qu'en penser,	I don't know what to think of it.

Quoi has the signification of *que*.

EXAMPLES.

A quoi s'occupe-t-on ?	What are they engaged in ?
Dites-moi en quoi je puis vous servir,	Tell me how I can serve you.

REM. If *que*, or *quoi* be followed by an adjective, it requires the preposition *de* before that adjective.

EXAMPLES.

Que dit-on de nouveau ?	What news is there ?
Quoi de plus instructif et de plus amusant ? ¶	What is more instructive and amusing ?

---

source of conjecture to mankind. That *of which* we
—f. 3 —f. pl. 4 *pour* 1 art. *homme* 2 *Ce*
complain most bitterly is not always what affects us
se plaindre *amèrement* *ce qui affecter*
the most. The only moments *in which* his soul still
seul —m. pl. *encore* 2
expands to pleasure, are those which he devotes to
s'ouvrir 1 art. *ceux* *consacrer* art.
study. The mountains *from whence* gold (is extracted)
étude f. f. pl. *ou* 1 art. *or* 3 *tire* 2
are not in general fruitful. The different countries through
* *en* — *infertile* pl. — *pays* m. pl. *par*
which he has passed have furnished his pencil with ro-
passé *fourni à pinceau* m. *de* art.
mantic and picturesque scenes.
—*tique* 2 *pittoresque* 3 — 1.

¶ EXERCISE.

Who will not agree that life has few real pleasures
convenir art. f. *peu de vrai*

In interrogations, or after a verb, *quel* is used to ask the name, or qualities of a person, or thing.

EXAMPLES.

Quel homme est-ce ?	What man is it ?
Quel temps fait-il ?	What weather is it ?
Je ne sais quel homme c'est,	I don't know what man it is.
Il sait quel parti prendre,	He knows what steps to pursue.

The adverb *où*, it has been already seen, is employed as a relative pronoun ; it is likewise used as a kind of absolute pronoun.

Où represents *en quel endroit*, in what place, or *à quoi*, to what.

EXAMPLES.

Où allez-vous ?	Where are you going ?
Où cela nous mènera-t-il ?	Where will that take us ?
J'ignore où l'on me conduit,	I don't know where they are taking me.
Il n'a pas prévu où cette conduite le mènerait,	He did not foresee where such conduct would lead him.

REMARK I. When *où* is preceded by the preposition *de*, it marks the place, or cause, spoken of.

EXAMPLES.

D'où vient-il ?	Where does he come from ?
D'où sa haine procéde-t-elle ?	Whence proceeds his hatred ?

---

and many dreadful pains ? (Some one) entered se-
beaucoup d'affreux 2 *peine* f. pl. 1 *On entra se-*
cretly ; guess *who* it was. *What* have you read in that
crètement deviner * * *
book that can have excited in your soul emotion and
m. *qui puisse porté* art. — f.
enthusiasm ? I know not *what* to think (of it.) At *what*
art. *enthousiasme* m. *savoir* * *
did you find them occupied ? There is in that dis-
avez trouvés occupé m. pl. *dis-*
course I know not *what* which appears to me designing. *What*
cours m. *savoir sembler* * *insidieux.*
have you remarked good, beautiful, and sublime in Homer ?
remarqué pr. pr. pr.
What more brilliant, and, at the same time, more false, than
pr. *brillant en* * *même* pr.
the expressions of a man, who has (a great deal) of wit, but
— *beaucoup esprit qui*
wants judgment ?
manque de jugement ?

Voilà d'où il vient,	It was there he came from.
Le mal me vient d'où j'attendais mon remède,	The evil proceeds from that quarter whence I had expected a remedy.

REMARK II. *Où* preceded by the preposition *par*, signifies through what place, or by what means.

EXAMPLES.

Par où avez-vous passé ?	Which way did you come ?
Par où me tirerai-je d'affaire ?	Which way shall I extricate myself ?
Voilà par où j'ai passé,	This is the way I came.
Je ne sais par où je me tirerai d'affaire,	I don't know which way I shall extricate myself.

By the manner in which these pronouns are employed, it will be seen they are only *interrogative*, when at the beginning of a sentence, and, consequently, the most proper name for them is that of *pronouns absolute.* †

---

† EXERCISE.

What grace, *what* delicacy, *what* harmony, *what* colouring, *what* beautiful lines in Racine ! *What* then
grâce f. *délicatesse* f. = f. *loris* m. *vers* m. — 1 *donc* 3
must have been that extraordinary man, to whom seven cities
doit 2 = 2 —
contested the glory of having given birth ? He does
se sont disputé — f. *avoir donné* art. *jour* m. *
not know what model to follow. I have told you *what*
savoir modèle m. * *suivre*
man it is. *Which* of those ladies do you think the
ce f. *dames* f. * 2 *trouver* 1
most amiable ? Choose *which* of those two pictures
f. *Choisir* m. 4 5 6 *tableau* m. 7
you like best. *Where* am I ? He knows not
1 *aimer* 2 art. *mieux* 3 *en savoir*
whence he is. He is gone I don't know *where*. *Where*
en allé ne savoir De
does he get that pride ? (It is) from *there* he derives his
lui vient orgueil m. *Voilà de tirer*
origin. (*Which way*) did you come ? (That is) (*the origine. Par êtes-vous arrivé Voilà par road*) I came.
où venir ind-4.

§ IV.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.—P. 113.

Ce, cette, ces, are often joined to the adverbs of place, *ci*, here, and *là*, there, in order to point out in a more precise manner the thing spoken of, the demonstrative pronoun is then placed before the substantive, and *ci* and *là* after it.

EXAMPLES.

Ce livre-ci	this book	*Cet homme-là*	that man
Cette fleur-ci	this flower	*Ces femmes-là*	those women

Celui, celle, ceux, celles, are followed by the preposition *de*, when placed before a substantive, and by a pronoun relative, when placed before a verb.

EXAMPLES.

Les maladies de l'âme sont plus dangereuses que elles du corps,	The disorders of the mind are more dangerous than those of the body.
L'homme dont je vous ai parlé, est celui que vous voyez,	The man of whom I spoke to you is he whom you see
De toutes les choses du monde, c'est celle que j'aime le moins,	Of all the things in the world, it is that which I like least.

REMARK. The pronouns *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, when followed by a pronoun relative, are expressed in English, by the personal pronouns, *he, she, they*, or by *that which, those which, such as*, &c. ¶

¶ EXERCISE.

The pleasures of the wise resemble in nothing *those* of
ressembler 2 3 1 4 *à*
a dissipated man. *He that* suffers himself to (be ruled) by
dissipé 2 1 *se laisse* * *dominer*
his passions, must renounce happiness. *This* stuff
doit renoncer à art. *bonheur* m. *étoffe-ci* f.
will become you wonderfully. *That* action is worthy of
* *siéra* *à merveille* —f. *-là*
blame. *This* scene is calculated to interest all men,
blâme —f. *-ci* *faite pour intéresser* art.
but *that* cannot *succeed.*
-là ne saurait réussir.

Celui-ci and *celui-là* adopt the gender and number of the substantives whose place they supply. When opposed to each other, *celui-ci* marks the nearest object; and *celui-là* the remotest.

EXAMPLE.

Celui-ci plaît, mais celui-là captive,	This pleases, but that captivates.

Ci and *là* coalesce with *ce*, and form two other demonstrative pronouns, *ceci* and *cela*, the first of which signifies *cette chose-ci*, this object; the second, *cette chose-là*, that object.

They may be used singly; but when they are opposed to each other, *ceci* expresses the nearest object, and *cela* the remotest.

EXAMPLE.

Je n'aime point ceci, donnez-moi cela,	I don't like this, give me that.

REMARK. When *cela* is alone and not opposed to the pronoun *ceci*, it refers, like this last, to an object pointed to.

EXAMPLES.

Que dites-vous de cela?	What do you say of that?
Cela est fort beau, †	That is very handsome.

---

† EXERCISE.

(Here are) certainly two charming prospects; *this*
Voilà certainement beau perspective f. pl.
has something more cheerful, but many people
quelque chose de riant bien de art. *personne*
think *that* more striking and more majestic. The body
t. pl. *trouver imposant majestueux* m.
perishes, the soul is immortal; yet all our cares are for
périr f. *—tel cependant soin*
that, while we neglect *this*. What means *this? That*
tandis que négliger veut dire
is true. It is not *that*. *This* is low and mean, but *that is*
Ce bas rampant
grand and sublime.

— —

§ V.

OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

FIRST CLASS.

Of those that are never joined to a Substantive.—P. 114.

Quelqu'un means *un*, *une*, one.

EXAMPLES.

Nous attendons des hommes, il en viendra quelqu'un,	We expect men, some one will come.
Plusieurs femmes m'ont promis de venir, il en viendra quelqu'une,	Several ladies have promised me to come, some one of them will come.

Quelqu'un taken absolutely and substantively, is of both genders, and means *une personne*, a person.

EXAMPLE

J'attends ici quelqu'un,	I wait here for somebody.

Quelques-uns signifies *plusieurs dans un plus grand nombre* several out of a great number.

EXAMPLES.

Quelques-uns assurent,	Some people affirm
Entre les nouvelles qu'il a débitées, il y en a quelques-unes de vraies,	Among the reports he has circulated, several are true.

Quiconque, whoever, signifies *quelque personne que ce soit, qui que ce soit*, any person whatever. It takes no plural, and is never used but of persons.

EXAMPLE.

Ce discours s'adresse à quiconque est coupable,	This speech is addressed to whoever is guilty.

Chacun, each, every one, is used either distributively, or collectively. It has no plural.

Distributively, it means *chaque personne, chaque chose*, each person, or thing. It is then used likewise in the feminine, and requires the preposition *de* after it.

EXAMPLES

Chacun de nous vit à sa mode,	Each of us lives as he pleases.
Voyez séparément chacune de ces médailles.	Look at each of these medals separately.

Collectively, it signifies *toute personne*, every person.

EXAMPLE.

Chacun a ses défauts, † Every body has his faults.

Autrui, means *les autres personnes*, other people: it only applies to persons, is never accompanied by an adjective, has no plural, and is never used in a sentence without being preceded by a preposition.

EXAMPLE.

La charité se réjouit du bonheur d'autrui, Charity rejoices in the happiness of others.

Personne, which is always masculine and singular means *nul, qui que ce soit*, nobody, whosoever. In this sense, it is preceded or followed by the negative *ne* which is placed after *personne*, when this word stands before the verb; and before the verb, when *personne* stands after. The same observation applies to *rien*.

---

† EXERCISE ON THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Can *any one* (be still ignorant) that it is from the *Pourrait-il* 2 1 *ignorer encore ce dès*
earliest infancy we ought to form the mind, the heart, and the *tendre enfance* f. *on doit* * *former*
taste? Will not *some one* of these ladies be of the party? *Some* * f. *partie* f.
people like to read (every thing new.) (These are) beautiful *aimer toutes les nouveautés Voilà de superbe*
pictures; I could wish to buy *some*. *Whoever* has stu- *tableau* m. *vouloir en* * *acheter*
died the principles of an art, knows that it (is only) (by length *—pes* — m. *savoir ce n'est que à la*
of time) and by deep reflections, that he can succeed in *longue de profond réflexion* f. *réussir à*
making it his own. All the ladies at the ball were *se* 2 *rendre* 4 *le* 3 * *propre* 5. *bal* m. ind-2
very finely dressed, and *each* differently.
* *superbement paré avait une parure différente.*
Every one should, for (the sake of) his own happiness, listen *devrait pour* * *propre* m. *n'écou-*
only to the voice of reason and of truth. What is the *ter que* * *voix* f. art. *raison* f. art. *vérité* f.
price of *each* of these medals?
prix m. f. *médaille* f.

EXAMPLES.

Il ne faut nuire à personne,	We must injure nobody.
Personne n'est assuré de vivre jusqu'au lendemain,	Nobody is certain of living till to-morrow.

REM. I. The negative is sometimes understood, as, *y a-t-il quelqu'un ici ?* is there are any body here ? *personne,* nobody. *Personne* stands for *il n'y a personne,* there is nobody here.

REM. II. In interrogative phrases without negation, or in those expressing doubt, *personne* signifies *quelqu'un,* any body.

EXAMPLES.

Personne oserait-il nier ?	Would any body dare deny ?
Je doute que personne soit assez hardi,	I doubt whether any body be bold enough.

REM. III. When *personne* is placed in the second member of a comparison, it means *any body.*

EXAMPLE.

Cette place lui convient mieux qu'à personne,	That place suits him better than any body.

Rien, nothing, which is masculine and singular, is used with, or without a negation. When with a negation, it means *nulle chose,* nothing.

EXAMPLE.

Il ne s'attache à rien de solide,	He applies himself to nothing fixed.

When used without a negation it means *quelque chose* something.

EXAMPLE.

Je doute que rien soit plus propre à faire impression que, &c.	I doubt whether any thing be more suited to make an impression than, &c.

The negation is sometimes understood, *que vous a coûté cela ? rien,* how much did you pay for it ? nothing.

It always requires the preposition *de* before the adjective, or participle that follows it, and then the verb is understood, as is likewise the negation, as, *rien de beau que le vrai,* nothing is noble but truth. ¶

SECOND CLASS.

Of those which are always joined to a Substantive.–P. 116.

Quelque, some, signifies *un, une, entre plusieurs*, one out of several; it is of both genders, and takes the number of the substantive.

EXAMPLE.

Adressez-vous à quelque autre personne,	Apply to somebody else.

Chaque, each, every, which is of both genders, has no plural.

EXAMPLE.

Chaque pays a ses coutumes,	Each country has its customs.

Quelconque, aucun, any, *quel que ce soit*, whatever it be; *quel qu'il soit*, whoever he be, is of both genders,

---

¶ EXERCISE.

To most men the misfortunes of *others* are but
Pour la plupart de art. *mal* m. *ne que*
a dream. Do not to *others* what you would not wish (to be
* *songe* m. *vouloir qu'on*
done to you.) *No one* knows whether he deserves love or
vous fît *savoir si est digne de de*
hatred. An egotist loves *nobody*, not even his own children;
égoiste *pas même propre*
in the whole universe he sees no one but himself. He is more
*dans ** *univers* *ne voit ** *que lui seul.*
than *(any body)* worthy of the confidence (with which) the king
digne *confiance* f. *dont*
honours him. I doubt whether *any one* ever painted
honorer *que* *ait jamais peint* art.
nature in its amiable simplicity, better than the sentimental
— f. = f. *sensible*
Gessner. Has *any body* called on me this morning?
— * 2 *est-il venu* 1 *chez* *matin* m.
Nobody. There was *nothing* but what was great in the de-
ind-2 *que * de * grand dans des-*
signs and works of the Egyptians. I doubt
sein m. pl. art. *ouvrage* m. pl. *—tiens*
whether there is *any thing* better calculated to exalt the
que subj-1 2 1 *plus propre*
soul than the contemplation of the wonders of nature.
— f *- merveille* f. art. — f.

and always is placed after a substantive; when used with a negative it is always singular.

EXAMPLE.

Il ne veut se soumettre à aucune autorité quelconque,	He will submit to no authority whatever.

Certain, signifies *quelque*, certain, some. In this sense it is used alike of persons and things; but it is always placed before the substantive.

EXAMPLE.

J'ai ouï dire à certain homme, à un certain homme,	I have heard some man say.

Un, une, a, *or* an, when used indeterminately for *quelque, certain*, some person, or some thing, takes the gender of the substantive to which it is joined.

EXAMPLES.

J'ai vu un homme qui courait,	I saw a man who was running.
Je me suis promené dans une grande et belle prairie, ‡	I walked in a large fine meadow.

---

‡ EXERCISE ON THE SECOND CLASS.

Some enlightened people among the Egyptians pre- *éclairé* 2 *esprit* m. pl. 1 *parmi* —*tiens* con- served the idea of *a* first being, whose attributes *server* ind-2 *idée* *être* art. —but m. pl. 3 they represented under various symbols; this (is 1 *représenter* ind-2 2 *différent* *symbole* m. *c'est ce que* proved) by the following inscription upon *a* temple, "I am *prouve* * * *cette* * — f. *de* — m. all that has been, is, and shall be: no mortal ever removed *ce qui* 3 *mortel* 2 1 *lever* ind-4 the veil that covers me." *Every* nation has (in its turn) *voile* m. f. *à son tour* 2 shone on the theatre of the world. There is no reason *whatever* *brillé* 1 m. *raison* f. that can bring him to it. *Some* figures appear monstrous *puisse déterminer* — f. —*trueux* and deformed, considered separately, or too near; but, if they *difforme* f. pl. *séparément* *de près* *on* are put in their proper light and place, the true point of *les met* * *jour* *à leur* — — m. view restores their *beauty* and grace. Yesterday I *vue* f. *leur rendre* * art. = f. art. — f. 2 saw a lady remarkably beautiful. 1 *d'une rare* 2 *beauté* 1.

THIRD CLASS.

Of those which are sometimes joined to a Substantive, and sometimes not.—Page 117.

Nul, and *pas un*, not any, not one, are employed either alone, or in conjunction with a substantive. They are accompanied by the negation, assume the feminine, but have no plural, and may be followed by the preposition *de*.

EXAMPLES.

Nul de tous ceux qui y ont été n'en est revenu,	Not one of those who went there has returned.
Pas un ne croit cette nouvelle,	Not one believes that intelligence.
Je n'en ai nulle connaissance,	I have no knowledge of it.
Il n'y a pas une seule personne qui le croie,	There is not a single person that believes it.

Aucun signifies *nul*, no, not any, when accompanied by a negation, and may be followed by the preposition *de*.

EXAMPLE.

Vous n'avez aucun moyen de réussir dans cette affaire,	You have no means of succeeding in that affair.

This pronoun is seldom employed in the plural, except before substantives, which, in some particular sense, are better employed in the plural.

EXAMPLE.

Il n'a fait aucunes dispositions,	He has made no dispositions.

Rem. *Aucun* may be employed without a negation in interrogative sentences, or those which express doubt, or exclusion.

EXAMPLES.

Aucun homme fut-il jamais plus heureux ?	Was ever any man more successful ?
On doute qu'aucune de ces affaires réussisse.	They doubt whether any of those affairs will succeed.
Le plus beau morceau d'éloquence qu'il y ait dans aucune langue, &c. ¶	The finest piece of eloquence that exists in any language, &c.

Autre, other, expresses a difference between two

objects, or between one and several; as, *quelle autre chose souhaitez-vous de moi?* what else do you wish of me?

Rem. *Autre* is sometimes used to express a person but indeterminate; as, *j'aime mieux que vous l'appreniez de tout autre que de moi*, I had rather you learn it of any other person than me.

Un is sometimes opposed to *autre;* in which case, these two words are preceded by the article, supply the place of the substantives to which they relate, adopt their gender and number, and form the pronouns *l'un l'autre, l'un et l'autre,* and *ni l'un ni l'autre.*

L'un l'autre, each other, one another, applies both to persons and things: it takes both gender and number, and requires the article before the two words of which it is composed. If there be any preposition, it must be placed before the last. When these two words are used in conjunction, they express a reciprocal relation between several persons or things.

EXAMPLE.

Il faut se secourir l'un l'autre, We ought to assist each other.

¶ EXERCISE ON THE THIRD CLASS.

No one likes (to see himself) as he is. *No* expression, *no*
se voir *tel que* — f.
truth of design and colouring, *no* strokes of genius in that
f. *dessein* *de coloris* *trait*
great work. He is as learned as *any one*. *Not one* of these
ouvrage m. *savant*
engravings announces any great skill. *None* of his works
gravure f. pl. *annoncer* *un* *talent* m.
will descend to posterity. He is so ignorant, and at the same
passer art. = f. — *en* * *même*
time so obstinate, that he will not (be convinced) by *any* reason-
temps *obstiné* * *se rendre* *à* *raison-*
ing. Did *any* man ever attain to such a pitch of
nement m. *jamais* 2 *parvenir* 1 *ce* * *comble* m.
glory! I doubt whether there be in *any* science a more evi-
= *que* subj-1 — f. *plus lu-*
dent principle.
mineux 2 — *pe* m. 1.

When used separately, they denote a difference.

EXAMPLE

Les passions s'entendent les unes avec les autres ; si l'on se laisse aller aux unes, on attire bientôt les autres,	Our passions have a relation with each other: if we indulge some, the others will soon follow.

REM. In the latter case *l'un* is used for the person, or thing first mentioned, and *l'autre*, for the person or thing last spoken of.

L'un et l'autre, both; these two words mark union. They require the verb to be in the plural.

EXAMPLE.

L'une et l'autre sont bonnes,	Both are good.

Ni l'un ni l'autre, neither; these two words on the contrary mark separation. The verb must be in the plural.

EXAMPLE.

Ni l'un ni l'autre n'on fait leur devoir, †	Neither has done his duty.

---

† EXERCISE.

Ask *another*. Would *any other* have been so
Demander à * *aurait-il eu* * *assez*
self-conceited as to think that his private opinion could
d'amour-propre * *pour penser* *particulier* 2 — f. 1 *pût*
counterbalance the public sentiment? Reason and faith
balancer 2 *opinion?* f. 1 art. *Raison* f. art. *foi* f.
equally demonstrate that we were created for *another* life.
2 *démontrer* 1 *créer* ind-4 f.
They speak ill of *one another*. The happiness of the people
mal m.
constitutes that of the prince; their true interests are connected
faire — m. *intérêt* m. *lié*
with *each other*. Presumption and pride easily insinuate
à pl. pl. art. *Présomption* f. art. *orgueil* 2 *se glisser*
themselves into the heart; if we allow *one* the entrance,
1 m. *l'on y donne à* 2 f. 3 * *entrée* 1
it is much to (be feared) that we shall soon (abandon our-
bien craindre *on* * *bientôt* 2 *ne se livre* 1
selves) to the *other*. *Both* relate the same story, though
rapporter *fait* m.
neither believes it to be true.
ne penser que * *soit*

Même signifies *qui n'est pas autre*, which is not different. It is of both genders, and takes the plural.

EXAMPLES.

C'est le même homme,	It is the same man.
La même personne,	The same person.
Ce sont les mêmes raisons,	They are the same reasons.
Ce poème est le même que celui dont je vous ai parlé,	This poem is the same that I was mentioning to you.

Tel means *pareil, semblable, de même*, such, like, similar. It takes both genders and both numbers.

EXAMPLES.

Un tel projet ne saurait réussir,	Such a scheme cannot succeed.
Il n'y a pas de tels animaux, de telles coutumes,	There are no such animals, no such customs.

When used alone, it either preserves its proper signification, or it expresses a person indeterminately.

EXAMPLES.

Vous ne sauriez me persuader rien de tel,	You cannot persuade me of any such thing.
Tel fait des libéralités, qui ne paye pas ses dettes,	The same man is liberal in giving, who does not pay his debts.

Plusieurs, several, which is plural and of both genders, is used alike of persons and of things. When united to a substantive, or relating to it, it signifies an indeterminate number, without relation to another.

EXAMPLES.

Plusieurs motifs l'ont déterminé,	Several reasons determined him.
Je crois cela pour plusieurs raisons,	I believe that for several reasons.

But it is likewise used as a part of a greater number.

EXAMPLE.

Parmi un si grand nombre de gens, il y en eut plusieurs qui s'y opposèrent,	Out of so great a number of persons, several objected to it.

When *plusieurs* is employed absolutely as a substantive, it always means *plusieurs personnes*, several persons.

EXAMPLE.

Plusieurs aiment mieux mourir que de perdre leur réputation,	Many would rather die than forfeit their character.

Tout is used either alone, or with a substantive.

When employed alone, it signifies *tout choses*, all things; *toute sorte de choses*, every kind of things;

EXAMPLE.

Tout nous abandonne au moment de la mort; il ne nous reste que nos bonnes œuvres,	Every thing forsakes us at the moment of death; we retain nothing but our good works.

When united to a substantive, it is used either collectively, or distributively.

Considered collectively, *tout* signifies the totality of a thing, and is then followed by the article.

EXAMPLES.

Tout l'univers,	The whole universe.
Tous les corps célestes,	All the celestial bodies.

Considered distributively, *tout* signifies *chaque*, each; in this case, it is not accompanied by the article.

EXAMPLE.

Tout bien est désirable, †	Every good is desirable.

† EXERCISE.

Does he always maintain the *same* principles? Yes, they are
* *soutenir* —*pe* *Oui* *ce*
absolutely the *same*. That general is the *same* that commanded
—*ment* pl. — —*der*
last year. *Such* a conduct is inexplicable. There
art. *dernier* 2 *année* f. 1 2 1 *conduite* f. —
are no *such* customs in this country. I never heard
de *coutumes* f. *pays* m. *ai entendu dire*
(any thing) *similar*. *The same man* sows who often reaps
rien *de* * * *semer* *recueillir*
nothing. I this morning received *several* letters. Among those
1 3 *matin* 4 ind-4 2 *lettre* f, pl.
manuscripts, there are *several* much esteemed. *Many*
—*crits* *qu'on beaucoup* 2 *estime* 1
by endeavouring to injure others, injure themselves more
en s'efforcer *de nuire à* art. *se nuire à*
than they think. *All* is in God and God is in *all*. The whole
ne penser *en*
course of his life has been distinguished by generous actions.
cours m. f. *marqué* *des* = 2 . f 1.
Every vice is odious.
— m. =

FOURTH CLASS.

Of those which are followed by QUE.—P. 118.

Qui, que, whoever, is only said of persons, and signifies *quelque personne que*, whatever person ; it requires the verb following to be in the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

Qui que ce soit qui ait fait cela, c'est un habile homme,	Whoever has done that, is a man of talent.
Qui que je sois,	Whoever I may be.
Qui que ç'ait été,	Whoever it may have been.
Qui que c'eût été,	Whoever it might have been.
Qui que ce puisse être,	Whoever it may be.

When *qui que*, followed by *ce soit*, is used with a negative, it signifies *aucune personne*, nobody ; as, *je n'y trouve qui que ce soit*, I find nobody there.

Quoi que, whatever it be, is only used of things, and signifies *quelque chose que*, whatever thing ; it requires also the verb following to be in the subjunctive

EXAMPLES.

Quoi que ce soit qu'il fasse, ou qu'il dise, on se défie de lui,	Whatever he does or says, he is distrusted.
Quoi que vous disiez, je le ferai,	Whatever you may say, I will do it.

REM. When *quoi que*, followed by *ce soit*, is used with a negation, it signifies *aucune chose*, not any thing.

EXAMPLE.

Sans application, on ne peut réussir en quoi que ce soit, †	Without application it is impossible to succeed in any thing whatever.

† EXERCISE ON THE FOURTH CLASS.

Whoever *ce soit qui* has told you so, he is mistaken. Passenger, *whoever* thou be, contemplate with religious veneration this monument erected by gratitude ; it is the tomb of a just and benevolent man. How can he hope to be

le *se tromper* ind-4 *Passant* *contempler* *un* = 2 *respect* m. 1 —m. *ébevé* art. *reconnaissance* f. *ce* *tombeau* m. 2 *bienfaisant* 3 1 *Comment* *ésperer de*

Quel que signifies *de quelque sorte, de quelque espèce que ce soit*, of whatever sort, or kind it may be, when relating to things; or, *qui que ce soit*, whoever it may be, when relating to persons. It takes both gender and number according to the person, or thing it relates to, and requires the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

Quelles que soient vos affaires, venez,	Whatever business you may have, come.
Je n'en excepte personne, quel qu'il soit,	I except nobody, whoever he may be.

Rem. *Lequel que*, whosoever, whichever, is also used; as, *lequel des trois que vous choisissiez, peu m'importe*, whichever of the three you choose, I care little.

Quelque—que, of both genders, when united to a substantive, signifies *quel que soit le, quelle que soit la*, &c. whatever be the, &c. It has both numbers, and requires the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

Quelque raison qu'on lui apporte, il n'en croit rien,	Whatever reason is adduced, he believes nothing about it.
Quelques efforts que vous fassiez, vous ne réussirez point,	Whatever attempts you may make, you will never succeed.

When united to an adjective, it operates as an adverb, and signifies *à quelque point que*, however great a degree; it then neither takes gender, nor number.

EXAMPLES.

Quelque belle qu'elle puisse être, elle ne doit pas être vaine,	However beautiful she may be, she ought not to be vain

---

beloved who has regard for *no one?* *Whatever* he may do
lui *ne* *d'égards*
or say, he (will find it) very difficult to destroy pre-
qu'il *aura* *bien de la peine* *détruire des pré-*
judices so deeply rooted. A mind vain, presumptuous,
jugé m. *si profondément enraciné* — *présomptueux,*
and inconsistent, will never succeed in *any thing whatever.*
sans consistance * *réussir*
Whatever a frivolous world may think of you, never swerve
frivole 2 *monde* 1 *puisse* *se détourner*
from the path of virtue.
chemin m art. f.

Quelque puissans qu'ils soient, je ne les crains point,	However powerful they may be, I am not afraid of them.

Tel que, such as, serves to mark a parity between objects by comparison.

EXAMPLE.

C'est un homme tel qu'il vous le faut.	He is just such a man as you want.

Tout—que signifies *quoique*, *encore que*, though, *quelque*, however. On this occasion, *tout* is considered as an adverb, and is employed with adjectives of every kind, and even with some substantives.

EXAMPLES.

Tout artificieux qu'ils sont, je doute que le public soit long-temps leur dupe,	Artful as they are, I doubt whether the public will be long their dupe.
Toute femme qu'elle est,†	Woman as she is.

† EXERCISE.

Let the laws be *(what they may)*, we must always
Que 2 *loi* f. 4 subj-1 3 *quel* 1 *il*
respect them. *Whatever* efforts you make, I doubt whether
respecter — m. subj-1 *que*
you will succeed. All men, *however* opposite they may
* *réussir* subj-1 art. *opposé* *
be, agree on that point. The man who descends into
subj-1 *s'accorder* — m. *ne rentrer en*
himself only to discover his defects, and correct them, likes
que pour y démêler — m. *se corriger en*
to see himself *as* he is. *However* surprising that phenomenon
surprenant 2 *phénomène* m. 3
may be, it is not against the order of nature. *Children as*
1 *contre ordre* m. art.
they are, they behaved remarkably well.
se sont conduits fort bien.

A GENERAL EXERCISE ON THE PRONOUNS.

The Evening Walk.

du 2 soir 3 promenade *f.* 1.

On a fine summer evening, my brother, my sister, and
Dans de 2 *soirée* f. 1
myself. (were walking) (by the side) of a wood
moi nous nous promenions le long bois m. *qui n'est*

not far distant from the castle which we inhabit. We
pas bien éloigné *château* m. *habiter*
(were contemplating) with rapture the majestic scenery
contempler ind-2 *transport* — *tueux* 2 *scène* f. 1.
which nature exhibits at the approach of night, when we
art. *déployer* *approche* f. art. *nuit* f. *quand*
perceived at the foot of an ancient oak, a boy of a most
apercevoir ind-2 *à* *pied* m. *vieux* *chêne* m. *enfant* art. 2.
interesting countenance. His beauty, his air of ingenu-
intéressant 3 art. *figure* f. 1 = f. — m. *ingénu-*
ousness and candour, his gracefulness struck us, and we
ité *de* = *grâce* pl. *frapper* ind-3 *nous*
approached him. What! alone here, my boy? said we;
approcher ind-3 *en* *seul* *ici* *enfant* *lui* *dîmes*
whence art thou? Whence comest thou? What art thou
D'où * 2
doing here alone? I am not alone, answered he smiling,
fais 1 4 3 *répondre* ind-3 *d'un air riant*
I am not alone; but I was fatigued, and I (have seated myself)
ind-2 *fatigué* *s'asseoir* ind-4
under the shade of this tree, while my mother is busy
à *ombre* f. *arbre* m. *tandis que* *occupé*
in gathering simples to give some relief to the
à cueillir *des* — *pour apporter* *soulagement* m.
pains which her aged father suffers. Ah! (how many)
douleur f. pl. 2 *vieux* 3 4 *souffrir* 1 *que*
troubles my good mamma has! How many troubles!
de peine f. pl. 2 3 *maman* 4 1 *si*
Did you know them, there is not one of you that would not
* *connaître* ind-2 *qui* *
be touched with pity, and who could refuse the tribute
subj-2 *de* *pitié* * *lui* subj-2 *un tribut*
of your tears. We said to him, lovely child, thy ingenu-
* *larme* f. pl. ind-3 * *aimable*
ousness, candour, innocence, (every thing), interests us
pro. = f. pro. — f. *intéresser*
in thy misfortunes and those of thy mother. Relate them to
à *malheur* m. pl. *à* *Raconter* 2 *
us; whatever they be, fear not to afflict us. (Woe be) to
1 subj-1 *de affliger* *malheur*
whoever cannot feel for the misfortunes of others!
ne sait pas *s'attendrir* *sur* *mal* m. pl.
He immediately related the history of his mother, with an ex-
2 *aussitôt* 1 ind-3 =
pression, an artlessness, a grace, altogether affecting. Our
— f. *naïveté* f = f. *tout-à-fait* *touchant* f. s.

CHAP. V.

OF THE VERB.

Agreement of the Verb with the Subject.

The subject is that of which something is affirmed, and may always be known by the answer to this question, *qui est-ce qui ?* who, or what is it ? as, *Pierre vit*, Peter lives ; *l'oiseau vole*, the bird flies ; if it be asked, *qui est-ce qui vit ?* who is it that lives ? *qui est-ce qui vole ?* what is it that flies ? The answers *Pierre* and *l'oiseau*, shew that *Pierre* and *l'oiseau* are the subjects of the verbs *vit* and *vole*.

RULE. The verb must be of the same number and person as its subject.

---

hearts felt the liveliest emotions ; tears (trickled down
éprouver ind-3 *vif* — f. *nos couler*
our cheeks) and we gave him what little money we
ind-3 *lui* * art. *peu de argent que*
had about us. (In the mean time) the mother returned.
ind-2 *sur* *cependant* *revenir* ind-3
(As soon as) he saw her, he exclaimed, (make haste,)
Dès-que *apercevoir* *s'écrier* *accourir*. s.
mamma, make haste ; see what these good little folks have
s. *ce que* *gens* f. pl.
given me ; I have related to them thy misfortunes ; they have
m.
been affected (by them), and their sensibility (has not been
touché m. pl. *en* = f. *ne s'est pas*
satisfied) with shedding tears. See mamma, see what they
borné *à* * *des* *s.*
have given me. The mother was moved ; she thanked us,
ind-3 *attendri* f. *remercier*
and said : generous feeling souls, the good action
nous = 2 *et sensible* 3 *âme* f. pl. 1 — f.
which you (have just been doing) will not be lost. He who
venez de faire *perdu* f.
sees (every thing) and judges (every thing) will not let it go
juger *laisser* *
unrewarded.
sans récompense.

EXAMPLES.

Je ris,	*I laugh.*	Nous parlons,	*We speak.*
Tu joues,	*Thou playest.*	Vous plaisantez,	*You jest.*
Il aime,	*He loves.*	Ils sont fous,	*They are mad.*

La vertu est aimable, *virtue is amiable.*

Ris is in the singular number, and the first person, because *je*, its subject, is in the singular, and the first person. *Joues* is in the singular, and the second person, as *tu* is in the singular, and the second person, &c.¶

Rem. I. When a verb has two subjects both singular, it is put in the plural.

EXAMPLE.

Mon père et ma mère m'aiment tendrement,†	My father and mother love me tenderly.

Rem. II. When a verb relates to subjects of different persons, it agrees with the first, in preference to the other two, and with the second in preference to the

---

¶ EXERCISE ON THE VERB.

The most free of all men is he who can be free even in
libre art. *celui* *même*
slavery. Are we not often blind to our defects ?
art. *esclavage* m. * *s'aveugler* ind-1 *sur* *défaut*
All men (are inclined) to idleness, but the savages of
art. *tendre* ind-1 art. *sauvage* art
hot countries are the laziest of all men. Do you think of
chaud 2 *pays* 1 *
imposing long on the credulity of the public ? Thou
en imposer long-temps *à* = f. m.
canst not deny that he is a great man.
pouvoir *nier* *ne* sub-1.

---

† EXERCISE.

His uprightness and honesty, make him courted by
droiture f. pron. *honnêteté faire* *rechercher de*
every body. Strength of body and of mind
art. f. art. *celle* art. *se*
meet not always together. A good heart and a noble soul
rencontrer *ensemble.* m. *beau* *
are precious gifts of nature.
de art. = 2 *don* m. pl. 1 art. — f.

third. The person addressed is named *first*, and the person addressing *last*. On this occasion, the pronoun plural *nous*, is generally placed before the verb, if the first person has been mentioned before, or the pronoun plural *vous*, if no first person has been mentioned.

EXAMPLES.

Vous, votre frère, et moi, nous lisons ensemble la brochure nouvelle,	You, your brother, and I, read together the new pamphlet.
Vous et votre ami, vous viendrez avec moi,‡	You and your friend will come with me.

REM. III. When a verb has the relative pronoun *qui* for its subject, it is put in the same number and person as the noun, or pronoun, to which *qui* relates.

EXAMPLES.

Est-ce moi qui ai dit cette nouvelle ?	Is it I who told this news ?
Est-ce nous qui l'avons voulu ?	Is it we who desired it ?
Ceux qui aiment sincèrement la vertu sont heureux,¶	Those who sincerely love virtue are happy.

‡ EXERCISE.

You, your friend, and I, have each a different opinion. In
chacun 2 f. 1
our childhood, you and I (were pleased) with playing together
enfance f. *se plaire* ind-2 *à* inf-1
Neither I, nor (any one else) has been able to understand
ni ni d'autres ne pouvoir ind-4 * *comprendre* 2
(any thing) in that sentence. (Take good care) you and your bro-
rien 1 *à phrase* f. *se garder bien*
ther, not to (give way) to the impetuosity of your character.
* *de s'abandonner* = *caractère* m.

¶ EXERCISE.

He that complains most of mankind, is not always he
Celui se plaindre le plus art. *homme* pl.
that (has most reason) to complain (of them.) You that wish
être le plus fondé en vouloir
to enrich your mind with thoughts vigorously conceived and
* *enrichir esprit de* f. pl. *fortement concu* f. pl.
nobly expressed, read the works of Homer and Plato.
noblement exprimé ouvrage.

N. B. See the exercises. (Page 246.)

OF THE REGIMEN OF VERBS.

A verb is active, when it will admit after it *quelqu'un*, or *quelque chose ;* and, the word, which is put after the verb, is called the regimen of that verb. Observe that this regimen may be known by asking the question, *qu'est-ce que ?* It is called *direct*, and may be either a noun, or a pronoun.

Rule. When the regimen of the active verb is a noun, it is always placed after the verb ; when it is a pronoun, it is generally placed before it.

EXAMPLE.

Ma mère aime tous ses enfans, My mother loves all her children.

Je vous aime, and not as in English, *J'aime vous*, I love you,
Il m'aime, and not *Il aime moi*, he loves me.†

Besides this regimen *direct*, some active verbs may have a second, which is called *indirect*, and is marked by the words *à* or *de*.

EXAMPLES.

Il a fait un présent à sa sœur, He has made a present to his sister.

---

† EXERCISE ON THE REGIMEN OF VERBS.

He has discovered to all other nations his ambitious
montrer art. * *peuple* m. pl. = 2
design of enslaving them, and has left us
dessein m. 1 *mettre dans l'esclavage* inf-1 *ne laisser*
no means of defending our liberty, but by endeavouring to
aucun moyen inf-1 *que en tâcher* inf-3 *de*
overturn his new kingdom. Homer represents Nestor as him
renverser *royaume* m. *celui*
that restrained the ungovernable wrath of Achilles, the
modérer ind-2 *bouillant* *courroux* m.
pride of Agamemnon, the haughtiness of Ajax, and the impetuous
fierté f. = 2
courage of Diomed. He dared not (lift up) his eyes, lest
— m. 1 *Diomède.* *oser* ind-2 *lever* * art. *de*
they should meet those of his friend, whose
peur de * * *rencontrer* inf-1
very silence condemned him. He caresses them, because
art. *même* 2 m. 1 ind-2
he *loves* them.

Il accuse son ami d'imprudence,‡ He accuses his friend of imprudence.

The second regimen is known by the answer to these questions; *à qui?* to whom? *à quoi?* to what? *de qui?* of whom? *de quoi?* of what?

EXAMPLES.

A qui a-t-il fait un présent?	To whom did he make a present?
A sa sœur,	To his sister.
De quoi accuse-t-il son ami?	Of what does he accuse his friend?
D'imprudence.	Of imprudence

Passive verbs require *de*, or *par*, before the noun, or pronoun that follows them.

EXAMPLES.

La souris est mangée par le chat,	The mouse is eaten by the cat.
Un enfant sage est aimé de tout le monde,	A good child is loved by every body.

Rem. The French never use the word *par*, before *Dieu*, God; they say, *les méchans seront punis de Dieu,*

---

‡ EXERCISE.

In submitting to the yoke of Asia, Greece would have
En subir inf-3 * *joug* m. art. art.
thought virtue subjected to voluptuousness, the mind
croire art. 2 *assujettir* inf-11 art. *volupté* f.
to the body, and courage to a senseless force, which consisted
art. *insensé* 2 — f. 1 ind-2
only in numbers. Three hundred Lacedemonians, hast-
ne que art. *multitude* f. s. —*niens, courir*
ened to Thermopylæ to certain death, content in dying, to
ind-3 art. —*piles* pl. *un assuré* 2 f. 1 *en de*
have sacrificed to their country, an infinite number of barbarians,
immoler *pays* m. 2 1 *barbare*
and to have left to their countrymen the example of an unheard
de laisser *compatriote* *inouï* 2
of bravery. You knew the importance which your parents
* *hardiesse* f. 1 *savoir* ind-2 — f. *que* —
attached to the success of that affair: why have you not
ind-2 *réussite* f. f. *pourquoi*
hastened to announce it (to them?)
s'empresser ind-4 *de* f.

which, in order to avoid making use of *by*, may be thus Englished; God will punish the wicked.¶

Some few neuter verbs have no regimen; as, *dormir*, to sleep; but many of them have a government.

RULE. Some neuter verbs require *à*, others *de*, before their *regimen*.

EXAMPLES.

Tout genre d'excès nuit à la santé,	Every kind of excess is hurtful to health.
Il médit de tout le monde,†	He slanders every body

¶ EXERCISE.

The city of Troy was taken, plundered, and destroyed by the
Troie *pris* f. *saccagé* *détruit*
confederate Greeks, 1148 years before the Christian æra: this
confédéré 2 1 *avant* 2 *ère* f. 1
event has been celebrated by the two greatest poets of Greece
art.
and Italy. You will only be beloved, esteemed, and
pr. art.
courted by men, (in proportion as) you join the
rechercher de *que* *autant que* *joindre* ind-7
qualities of the heart to those of the mind. God pu-
= f. pl. pr. 3 *pu-*
nished the Jews every time when,
nir (passive voice ind-3 2) *peuple Juif* 1 *toutes les fois que*
deaf to the voice of the prophets, they fell into
sourd f. *prophète* sing. *tomber* ind-3 *dans*
idolatry and impiety.
art. = art. =

---

† EXERCISE.

This sentiment has pleased the king and all the nation
à *à*
In his retirement, he (has the full enjoyment) of the
dans *retraite* f. *jouir* *tout*
faculties of his soul. To slander (any one) is to assassinate
= f. pl. * *médire de quelqu'un c'est* *
him in cold blood. The honest man seldom (permits himself)
de 2 *sang* 1 *rarement* 2 *se permettre* 1
to jest, because he knows the most
de * art. *plaisanterie* f. pl. *parce que* *savoir que*
innocent jests may sometimes hurt the reputation. It is
f. pl. * *pouvoir quelquefois nuire à* f. *ce*
only in retirement that one truly enjoys one's self.
ne que art. *on véritablement* 2 *jouir* 1 *de soi.*

Reflected verbs have for their regimen the personal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, and *vous*, and this regimen is sometimes direct, and sometimes indirect.

OF THE NATURE AND USE OF MOODS AND TENSES.

Of the Indicative.

The indicative is that mood which simply declares and affirms a thing. It contains eight tenses, viz. the *present*, the *imperfect*, the *preterit definite*, the *preterit indefinite*, the *preterit anterior*, the *pluperfect*, the *future simple*, and the *future anterior*.

The *present* marks that a thing is *now* passing, that is, either existing, or doing.

EXAMPLES.

J'aime	I love	*Ils jouent*	They play

The *imperfect* expresses a present with respect to something past.

EXAMPLE.

J'entrais au moment où vous sortiez,	I came in at the moment you were going out.

Or it expresses something past, but habitual, without fixing the time of its duration.

EXAMPLE.

César était un habile général,	Cæsar was an able general.

The *preterit definite* marks that a thing took place at a time completely past.

EXAMPLE.

J'écrivis hier à Rome,	I wrote yesterday to Rome.

The *preterit definite* expresses a thing as having taken place at a time which is neither precise, nor determinate.

His work has pleased every one, because it unites
ouvrage m. *à* art. *monde* *joindre*
to real utility the charms of style, and the beau-
un 2 = f. 1 *agrément* m. pl. art. m. sing.
ties of sentiment.
art. pl.

EXAMPLE.

Il m'a fait un vrai plaisir en venant me voir, — He has given me real pleasure by coming to see me

Or at a time which is not absolutely past.

EXAMPLE.

J'ai vu cette semaine beaucoup de monde,‡ — I have seen many people this week.

---

‡ EXERCISE ON THE INDICATIVE.

My sister is in her chamber, where she (is occupied) in reading *où* *s'occuper* *à* inf-1 ancient history, the study (of which) pleases her extremely. art. 2 1 2 *dont* 1 *lui infiniment* Benefits bestowed are (so many) trophies art. *Bienfait que on répandre* ind-1 *de* art. *trophée que on* erected in the heart of those whose felicity (has been *s'ériger* ind-1 1 art. = f. 4 *on* 2 *faire* promoted) (by them.) The great Corneille was busy in his ind-1 3 * — *occupé* study tracing the plan of one of his tragedies, when a ser- *cabinet à* inf-1 — m. = *do* vant, terrified, came to tell him that his house was *mestique* m. *tout effrayé* ind-3 * *lui* * art. 3 *prendre* on fire: go and find my wife, replied he: I do *à* ind-6 2 * art. 1 * *trouver* *répondre* ind-3 not understand household concerns. Some Hunga- *entendre rien à* art. *affaire* pl. *du ménage* m. *de* art. *Hon-* rian noblemen revolted from the Emperor Sigismund; *grois* 2 *seigneur* 1 *se révolter* ind-3 *contre* = —*mond* this prince heard it, and marched boldly against *apprendre* ind-3 *fièrement au-devant de* them: which, among you, said he (to them), will lay hands *d'entre* ind-3 *mettre* 1 art. f. upon his king first? If there be one bold enough sing. 3 4 art. 2 *en un hardi* 2 1 let him advance. This noble firmness struck the rebels *en imposer à* *séditieux* (with awe), who returned immediately to their duty. I have * *rentrer* *aussi-tôt* *dans le* *devoir* travelled through almost all Europe, and I have visited the *voyager* *dans* art. — f. most celebrated places in Asia and Africa; if, on the one —*bre* 2 *lieu* 1 *de* art. *Asie* pr. art. *Afrique* *de* * hand, I admired the master-pieces of art, of every kind, which *côté* m. ind-4 *chefs-d'œuvre* art. *en tout* *genre*

The *preterit anterior* expresses that a thing had taken place immediately before a time which is passed, and this tense is either definite, or indefinite. There is the same difference between its two forms, as between the two preterits, definite and indefinite.

EXAMPLES.

J'eus diné hier à midi,	I had dined yesterday at twelve.
Quand j'eus diné hier, midi sonna,	When I had dined yesterday, it struck twelve.
J'ai eu déjeûné ce matin à dix heures,	I had done breakfast this morning at ten o'clock.

The *pluperfect* is that past tense which expresses a thing as having taken place at any period antecedent to the time when another thing happened; or it expresses a thing habitually done before another.

EXAMPLES.

J'avais soupé quand il entra,	I had supped when he came in.
Lorsque j'étais à la campagne, dès que j'avais déjeûné, j'allais à la chasse,	When I was in the country, as soon as I had breakfasted, I used to go a hunting.

The *future absolute*, is that tense which expresses that an action or event will take place at a time which does not yet exist.

EXAMPLE.

J'irai demain à la campagne,	I shall go to-morrow into the country.

The *future anterior* is the tense which expresses that at a time when a thing will take place, another thing will have already taken place.

EXAMPLE.

Quand j'aurai fini, je sortirai, ¶	When I have done, I shall go out.

---

the protection of enlightened governments has produced, on
art. 2 1 *faire naître*
the other, I shed tears, (on seeing) the ravages of ig-
ind-4 *de* art. *sur* — art.
norance and barbarism.
pr. art. *barbarie* f.

OF THE CONDITIONAL.

The *conditional* is the mood which affirms on conditions ; it has two tenses, the *present* and the *past.*

The *present of the conditional* is that tense which expresses that a thing would take place on certain conditions.

EXAMPLE.

Je ferais votre affaire avant peu, si elle dépendait uniquement de moi,	I would settle your business before long, if it only depended upon me.

The *past of the conditional* is that tense which expresses that a thing would have taken place at a time which no longer exists, dependant on certain conditions.

EXAMPLE.

J'aurais, ou *j'eusse fait votre affaire, si vous m'en aviez, ou m'en eussiez parlé,*†	I would have settled your business, if you had mentioned it to me.

¶ EXERCISE ON THE PRETERIT ANTERIOR, &c.

I had done yesterday, at noon. I (went out) (as soon as) I
finir *midi* *sortir* ind-4 *dès-que*
had dined. As soon as Cæsar had crossed the Rubicon, he had
passer —
no longer to deliberate ; he (was obliged) to conquer or to die.
plus *devoir* ind-2 * *vaincre* *
I had finished the task that you had imposed upon me, when
tâche f. *imposer* f. *
you came in. Those who had contributed most to his elevation
—*buer le plus*
to the throne of his ancestors, were those who laboured with
sur *travailler*
the most eagerness to precipitate him (from it.) I shall
de acharnement *en* *ne point*
shortly go into the country, where I intend to (collect
tarder à *à* *campagne* *se proposer de* *herbo-*
plants), (in order to) (make myself perfect) in the knowledge
riser inf-1 *pour* *se perfectionner*
of botany. When I have done reading the di-
art. *botanique* f. *achever* ind-8 *de* inf-1
vine writings of Homer and Virgil, and my mind has imbib-
2 *écrit* m. 1 pr. *que* *se pé-*
ed their beauties, I shall read the other epic poets.
nétrer ind-8 *de* ind-7 2 1

OF THE IMPERATIVE.

The *imperative* is that mood which commands, exhorts, entreats, or reproves. It is a present with respect to the injunction, and a future with respect to the thing enjoined.

In many verbs a compound of the imperative may be used to express an injunction to have a thing done previously to another, as, *ayez dîné avant que je revienne*, have dined before I return.‡

---

† EXERCISE ON THE CONDITIONAL.

What would not be the felicity of man, if he always sought
Quel * — f. *chercher* ind-2
his happiness in himself? I shall be glad to see you harmo-
uni pl.
nious, happy, and comfortable. A dupe to my imagination, I
tranquille * *de*
should have (been bewildered) (but for) you in my search
s'égarer *sans* * art. *recherche* f.
after truth. Enquire whether he would have consented to
de art. *s'informer si* *consentir*
those conditions, in case he had thought himself able
dans art. *que* *se croire* subj-4 *capable*
to fulfil them.
de remplir.

---

‡ EXERCISES ON THE IMPERATIVE.

Be not fond of praise; but seek virtue, which
sing. *passionné pour* art. *louange* f. art.
procures it. Let us remember that unless virtue guide
attirer *se souvenir* *à moins que* art. *ne*
us, our choice must be wrong. Let us not be deceived by
— *devoir* ind-1 *mauvais* *se laisser prendre* *à*
the first appearances of things; but let us take time to
art. *se donner* art. *de*
fix our judgment. Arbiters of the destinies of men, do
Arbitre —*née* art. art.
good if you wish to be happy; do good, if you wish that your
bien *vouloir* *
memory should be honoured; do good, if you wish that
subj-1 art.

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

The *subjunctive* is that mood which expresses a subordination to what precedes. With this dependance it forms a sense, and none without. *Je voudrais qu'il lût*, forms sense, but *qu'il lût*, alone and unconnected, does not.

This mood contains four tenses, the *present*, or *future*, the *imperfect*, the *preterit*, and the *pluperfect*.

The *present* and the *future* of the subjunctive can only be distinguished by the sense ; in this phrase, *il faut que je vous sois bien attaché pour venir vous voir par le temps qu'il fait*, I must have a great esteem for you to come and see you in such weather as this ; *je sois*, expresses a present time ; but in this, *je ne crois pas que vous obteniez cela de lui*, I do not think you will obtain that of him, *vous obteniez* expresses a future, and stands for *vous obtiendrez*.

The *imperfect*, the *preterit*, and the *pluperfect* of the subjunctive express also a past, or future, according to circumstances : in this phrase, *soupçonniez-vous qu'il ne le fît pas*, did you suspect he would not do it, *fît* expresses a past ; but in this, *je désirerais qu'il vît du monde*, I wish him to see company, *vît* marks a future. ¶

---

heaven should open to you its eternal gates. Never forget that
sub-1 2 *porte* f. 1
the truly free man is he, who, superior to all fears, and
véritablement 2 3 1 *dégagé de* f-s.
all desires, is subject only to the gods and to reason.
pr. m-s. *soumis ne que* art. f.

¶ EXERCISE ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Men must be (very much) blinded by their pas-
art. 3 *il* 1 *que* 2 subj-1 *bien aveuglé*
sions, not to acknowledge that they ought to (love
2 *pour* 1 *devoir* ind-1
one another) as parts of a whole ; and as (the members
s'entr'aimer art *tout* 2

OF THE INFINITIVE.

The *infinitive* is that mood which affirms indeterminately without either number, or person.

It denotes of itself, neither *present*, *past*, nor *future*, except when it follows other verbs. The *present* always expresses a present, relative to the preceding verb; as, *je le vois*, *je le vis*, *je le verrai venir*, I see, I saw, I shall see him come. The *past* always expresses a past, relative to the verb that precedes it, *je crois*, *je croyais l'avoir vu venir*, I think, I thought that I had seen him coming. To express a *future*, the

---

of our body) (would do) if (every one) had a particular vitality.
1 *chacun* ind-2 *sa* 2 *vie* 1
You asked him to come with us; but I doubt whether he
prier ind-4 *de* *que*
will have that complaisance. I could not persuade myself that
subj-1 ind-2
he was so vain as to aspire to that place. Though every
subj-2 *assez* * *pour* —f.
body says so, I do not believe that he is gone to Rome.
subj-1 *le* subj-1
(Is it possible) that he should let slip so good an oppor-
se pouvoir *laisser* subj-3 *échapper* *beau* *occasi-*
tunity of acquiring immortal glory? I could have wished
on f. *un* 2 1
that he had availed himself of his abode in the country, to
profiter subj-4 *séjour à* *campagne pour*
perfect himself in the study of philosophy.
se perfectionner art. = f.

---

† EXERCISE ON THE INFINITIVE.

We only shut our eyes to truth, because we fear to
ne * art. art. *que parce que* *de*
see ourselves as we are. We were yet far from the castle,
2 *nous* 1 *tel que* ind-2 *encore*
when one of our friends came to join us. I did not think I
ind-3 * ind-2 *
was to set out so soon. He promises every day that he
devoir * art. pl. *de* *
will amend, but I do not rely upon his promises.
* *se corriger* *compter* *promesse* f. pl.

infinitive must be preceded by the infinitive of the verb *devoir ;* as, *je croyais devoir y aller*, I thought I was to go there.

Remark. The infinitive also expresses a future after the verbs *permettre*, *espérer*, *compter*, *s'attendre* and *menacer ;* as, *il promet de venir* (*qu'il viendra*), he promises to come (that he will come) ; *il menace de s'y rendre* (*qu'il s'y rendra*), he threatens to go (that he will go) there.†

OF THE PARTICIPLE.

The *participle* is a part of the verb which partakes of the properties both of a verb and an adjective ; of a verb, as it has its signification and regimen, of an adjective, as it expresses the quality of a person, or thing.

There are two participles, the *participle present*, and the *participle past*.

OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

The *participle present* always terminates in *ant ;* as, *aimant, finissant, recevant, rendant.*

They talk of a secret expedition ; he hopes to be (in it.) He
on 2 — f. 1 * *en*
relies upon seeing you very soon, to terminate
compter * inf-1 *au premier jour pour*
amicably his affair with you. You expected to take a
d l'amiable *s'attendre* ind-2 *faire*
journey this year ; but your father has changed his mind.
voyage m. *de* * *avis*
He threatens to punish us severely, if we (fall again) into the
do *sévèrement* *retomber*
same error.
faute.

EXERCISE ON THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

That mountain being very high, and thus commanding a
élevé *ainsi dominer sur*
vast extent of country, was very well calculated for our
grande étendue *pays* ind-2 * *propre* *à*

Rule. The participle present remains unchanged, and takes neither gender nor number when it expresses an action, as, *une montagne*, or *des montagnes dominant sur des plaines immenses*, a mountain, or mountains commanding immense plains : *un homme, des hommes, une femme, des femmes lisant, parlant, marchant*, a man, men, a woman, women reading, speaking, walking. But when, like an adjective, it expresses simply a quality, it takes both the gender and number of its substantive ; as, *un homme obligeant*, an obliging man ; *une femme obligeante*, an obliging woman ; *des tableaux parlans*, speaking portraits ; *la religion dominante*, the established religion ; *à la nuit tombante*, at night fall.

What grammarians call *gerund*, is nothing but the participle present, to which the word *en* is prefixed ; *on se forme l'esprit en lisant de bons livres*, we form our minds by reading good books.

---

observations. This woman is of good disposition, obliging
caractère m.
every one, whenever she (has it in her power). They go
tout le monde quand le pouvoir
cringing before the great, that they may be insolent to their
ramper devant pl. *afin de* * * inf-1 pl. *avec*
equals. The state of pure nature is that of the savage living in the
égal
desert, but living in his family, knowing his children, loving them,
famille f. *connaître*
(making use) of speech, and (making himself understood.)
user art. *parole se faire entendre*
An agreeable languor imperceptibly (laying hold) of my
2 *langueur* f. 1 *insensiblement s'emparer*
senses, suspended the activity of my soul, and I fell (asleep.)
sens suspendre ind-3 *s'endormir*
Time is a real blunderer, placing, replacing, ordering,
ind-3 art. *vrai brouillon mettre remettre ranger*
disordering, impressing, erasing, approaching, removing. and
déranger imprimer effacer approcher éloigner
making all things, good and bad; and almost always (impossi-
rendre f. pl. *presque*
ble to be known again.)
méconnaissable.

OF THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

The participle past has various terminations; as, *aimé, fini, reçu, ouvert, dissous*, &c.

This participle may either agree with its subject, or its regimen.

AGREEMENT OF THE PARTICIPLE PAST WITH ITS SUBJECT.

RULE. I. The participle past, when accompanied by the auxiliary verb *être*, agrees with its subject in gender and number.

EXAMPLES.

Mon frère est tombé,	My brother is fallen.
Mes frères sont tombés,	My brothers are fallen.
Ma sœur est tombée,	My sister is fallen.
Mes sœurs sont tombées,	My sisters are fallen.
La nuit sera bientôt passée,	The night will soon be over.
Les spectacles sonc fréquentés,	The theatres are frequented.
Cette fleur est fort recherchée,	This flower is much sought after.
Ils sont fort estimés,	They are very much esteemed.

EXERCISE ON THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

Fire-arms were not known to the ancients. Ishmael,
art. *arme-à-feu* f. pl. ind-4 *connu de* *Ismaël*
the son of Abraham, is known among the Arabs, as (the man)
* — *parmi* *Arabe* *celui*
from whence they sprung, and circumcision has remained
être sorti art. f. *être demeuré*
(among them) as the mark of their origin. Heaven is that
leur f. art.
permanent city, (into which) the just are to be received after
—2 *cité* f. 1 *où* pl. *devoir* * *après*
this life. In Abraham's time, the threatenings of the true
de 2 art. 1 *menace* f. pl.
God was dreaded by Pharaoh, king of Egypt; but, in the time
ind-2 *redouté de Pharaon*
of Moses, all nations were corrupted, and the world, which
Moïse art. f. *perverti*
God has made to manifest his power, was become a temple
pour *pouvoir* m. *devenu*
of idols. That dreadful crisis which threatened the state with
terrible 2 *crise* f. 1 ind-4 *de*

RULE. II. The participle past, when it follows the verb *avoir*, never agrees with *its subject*.

Mon frère a écrit,	My brother has written.
Mes frères ont écrit,	My brothers have written.
Ma sœur a écrit,	My sister has written.
Mes sœurs ont écrit,	My sisters have written.
Les Amazones ont acquis de la célébrité,	The Amazons have acquired celebrity.
J'ai contraint les soldats à marcher,	I have forced the soldiers to march.

REMARK. The participle of the verb *être*, and of all the neuter verbs which are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, never vary, as, *il* or *elle a été*, he, or she has been ; *ils* or *elles ont été*, they have been ; *il* or *elle a dormi*, he or she has slept ; *ils* or *elles ont nui*, they have annoyed.¶

---

instant destruction, was happily soon over. She is
prochain 2 f. 1 ind-3 *heureusement* *passé*
come to bring us all kinds of refreshments. The sciences
* *sorte* f. sing. *rafraîchissement* f.
have always been protected by enlightened governments.
protégé art. *éclairé* 2 1

¶ EXERCISE.

The Romans successively triumphed over the most
Romain successivement 2 ind-4 1 *de*
warlike nations. Lampridius relates that Adrian erected
belliqueux 2 1 *raconter* *Adrien élever*
to Jesus Christ some temples, which (were still
ind-6 *de* art. *on* *encore* 2
to be seen) in his time. Happy those princes who have
voir ind-2 1 *de* art.
never (made use) of their power but to do good! We
user *pouvoir* *que pour* art. *bien*
have spent the whole day in tormenting ourselves. One
journée f. *à* inf-1 2 *nous* 1
has seldom seen a great stock of good sense in a man of
rarement *fonds* m. *sens* *à*
imagination. The errors of Descartes proved very useful
— = — *beaucoup* *servir*
to Newton.
ind-4 —

AGREEMENT OF THE PARTICIPLE PAST WITH ITS REGIMEN.

RULE I. The participle past always agrees with *its regimen direct*, when that regimen is placed before the participle, whether the auxiliary verb that accompanies it be *avoir*, or *être*.

EXAMPLES.

Les écoliers que j'ai eus, ont fait de grands progrès,	The pupils, whom I have had, have made rapid progress.
Lucrèce s'est tuée.	Lucretia has killed herself.
J'ai renvoyé les livres que vous m'aviez prêtés,	I have sent back the books which you had lent me.
Que de soins je me suis donnés !	What pains I have taken !
Quelle affaire avez-vous entreprise ?	What business have you undertaken ?
Quand la race de Caïn se fut multipliée,	When the race of Cain had multiplied.
Ce yeux que n'ont émus ni soupirs ni terreur,	Those eyes which neither sighs nor terror have moved.
Le Dieu Mercure est un de ceux que les anciens ont le plus multipliés,	The God Mercury is one of those whom the ancients have multiplied the most.

EXERCISE ON THE AGREEMENT OF THE PARTICIPLE PAST WITH ITS REGIMEN.

All the letters which I have *received*, confirm that import-
r. pl. *confirmer*
ant news. The agitated life which I have *led* till
2 s. 1 *agité* 3 f. 1 *mener jusqu'à*
now, makes me sigh for retirement. The difficulties
présent *soupirer après* art. *retraite* f. f. pl.
which the academies (have *proposed* to one another) do not
se faire ind-4
seem easy to (be resolved.) The sciences which you have
paraître *aisé* *résoudre* f. pl.
studied, will prove infinitely useful (to you.) The death which
être f.
Lucretia (*gave* herself) has (*made* her immortal.) The
se donner ind-4 *immortaliser* ind-4
cities which those nations have (*built* for themselves) are
ville f. pl. *peuple* *se bâtir* ind-4
but a collection of huts. The persons whom you have *in*
ne que *amas* m. *chaumière* f. pl.

REM. The regimen which precedes the participle is, either one of these pronouns, *que*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *le*, *la*, *les*, *nous*, and *vous*, or a noun sometimes joined to the pronoun *quel*, sometimes preceded by the word of quantity, *combien*, or *que*, signifying *combien*, how much, as may be seen in the examples already given.†

RULE II. The participle past *never* agrees with its regimen, either when that participle is without regimen *direct*, or when, having a regimen direct, that regimen is placed *after* it.

---

structed appear to me possessed of reason and taste. Nothing
plein pr.
can equal the ardour of the troops which I have *seen* (setting off.)
égaler f. pl. inf-1
The chimeras which she has *got* in her head, (are beyond)
chimère f. pl. *se mettre* * art. *passer*
all belief. What measures have I not *taken!* What fortunes
croyance f. *démarches* f. pl. *faire* f. pl.
has not this revolution *ruined!* What tears has she not *shed;*
renverser *Que* *de* f. pl. *verser*
what sighs has she not *heaved!* The Amazons *(made* themselves)
m. pl. *pousser* f. pl. *se rendre* ind-4
famous by their courage. The city of London has *(made* itself,)
célèbre f.
by its commerce, the metropolis of the universe. I have *thought*
— m. —*le* f. *croire*
her agitated by the furies. This day is one of those which they
= m. pl.
have *consecrated* to tears. The language in which Cicero and
consacrer art. *langue* f. * *Cicéron*
Virgil have *written*, will live in their works. I could have wished
par *ouvrage* * *vouloir*
to avoid entering into those details, but I *thought* them neces-
* *éviter d'entrer* — m. *croire* ind-4
sary. The tribunes demanded of Clodius the execution of
tribun m. pl. ind-3 *à*
the promises which the consul Valerius had *given* them.
f. *faire leur.*

¶ EXERCISE.

The persons whose visit you had *announced* to me, are not
f. pl. 1 art. f. 5 2 4 * 3

EXAMPLES.

La lettre dont je vous ai parlé,	The letter which I have mentioned to you.
La perte et les profits auxquels il a participé,	The loss and profits which he has shared.
Les académies se sont fait des objections,	The academies have proposed objections to one another.
Vous avez instruit ces personnes à dessiner,	You have taught these persons to draw.
Lucrèce s'est donné la mort,¶	Lucretia has put a period to her existence.

RULE. III. The participle past takes neither gender nor number when the participle and the auxiliary verb to which it is joined are used impersonally, nor when that participle is followed by a verb, which governs the pronouns, or pronouns preceding it.

EXAMPLES.

Les chaleurs excessives qu'il a fait cet été, ont beaucoup nui à la récolte,	The excessive heats, which we have had this summer, have done great injury to the corn.
Quelle fâcheuse aventure vous est-il arrivé ?	What unpleasant adventure have you met with ?
La maison que j'ai fait bâtir,	The house which I have ordered to be built.
Imitez les vertus que vous avez entendu louer,	Imitate the virtues which you have heard praised.
Les mathématiques que vous n'avez pas voulu que j'étudiasse,	The mathematics which you would not permit me to study.

---

come. Men built themselves cities. The Amazons
art. *se bâtir* ind-4 *de* art.
acquired great celebrity. I have *forced* the soldiers
ind-4 *beaucoup de* = *contraindre*
to march. That woman has *bestowed* on herself fine gowns.
se donner * * *de*
Letters and writing were *invented* to represent
art. 4 art. *écriture* 5 *on* 1 *a* 2 3 *pour peindre*
speech. She has *cut* two (of her) fingers. Titus has *made*
art. *se couper* * *doigt* m. pl. *rendre*
his wife mistress of his riches. I have *given* myself (a great deal)
bien *bien*
of trouble. Commerce has *made* this city flourishing
art. *peine* f. art. m. *rendre* f. *florissant*
They have *made* an appointment.
se donner * *rendez-vous.*

Elle s'est laissé séduire, She has suffered herself to be seduced.

Remark. To make a right application of the second part of this rule, we ought to examine whether we can put the regimen immediately after the participle. As we cannot say ; *J'ai fait la maison, vous avez entendu les vertus, vous n'avez pas voulu les mathématiques*, it follows that the regimen belongs to the second verb. Sometimes, however, the regimen may relate either to the participle, or to the following verb, according to the meaning of the speaker. Thus, *Je l'ai* vu *peindre*, means, I saw her picture drawn ; but *Je l'ai* vue *peindre*, signifies, I saw her painting.

Sometimes it happens likewise, that, in sentences which seem to resemble each other, the regimen in one belongs to the participle, and in the other to the verb which follows it. For instance, this question, *Avez-vous entendu chanter la nouvelle actrice ?* Have you heard the new actress sing ? should be thus answered, *Oui, je l'ai* entendue *chanter*, yes, I have : but this question, *Avez-vous entendu chanter la nouvelle ariette ?* Have you heard the new song ? must be answered, *Oui, je l'ai* entendu *chanter*, yes, I have.†

† EXERCISE.

The great changes which (have *taken* place) in admi-
changement *y avoir* ind-4 art.
nistration, have astonished many people. The heavy rains
bien des personnes *grand pluie*
which we have *had* in the spring, have been the cause
f. pl. * *il* *faire* ind-4
of many diseases. The scarcity which there *was* last
maladie f. pl. *disette* f. ind-4 art. *dernier* 2
winter, has afforded the opportunity of doing much good. What
1 *donner* *occasion* inf-1 *bien*
news has *reached* you ? How many imprudent steps
est-il *venu* *Que de* *faux* *démarche* f. pl.
were *taken* on that occasion ! How many large ships have
il s'est faire *en* *gros* *il se*
been *built* in England within these fifty years ! The figures
construire ind-4 *depuis* * —
which you have *learned* to draw are of great beauty. We
apprendre *dessiner* *un* *

CHAP. VI.

OF THE ADVERBS.

Situation of the Adverbs.

RULE I. In the simple tenses, the adverb is generally placed after the verb ; and, in the compound tenses, between the auxiliary and the participle.

EXAMPLES.

L'homme le plus éclairé est ordinairement *celui qui pense* le plus modestement *de lui-même,*	The man who is most learned is generally he who thinks most modestly of himself.
Avez-vous jamais *vu un pédant plus absurde et plus vain ?*	Have you ever seen a pedant more absurd and more vain ?

Compound adverbs, and those which have preserved the regimen of the adjectives from which they are derived, are placed always after the verb, as,

EXAMPLES.

C'est à la mode,	That is fashionable.
Il a agi conséquemment,	He has acted consistently.

Adverbs which denote time in an indeterminate manner are likewise placed after the verb.

EXAMPLES.

Il eût fallu se lever plus matin,	It would have been necessary to rise earlier.
On a vu cela autrefois,	That has been seen formerly.

EXCEPTIONS. 1. Adverbs of order, rank, and those which express a determinate time, are placed either before, or after the verb.

---

ought never to swerve from the good path which we
falloir ind-1 * *s'éloigner* *route* f. *on*
have *begun* to follow. The measures, which you *advised*
mesure f. pl. *conseiller* ind-4
me to adopt, have not succeeded. The rule, which I have *be-*
de prendre *réussir* *règle* f.
gun to explain, seems to me very easy to (be understood.) You
expliquer *sembler* *saisir*
see that I have not (been mistaken) respecting the affairs which
se tromper ind-4
I had *foreseen* you would have in hand.
prévoir que * *

EXAMPLES.

Nous devons premièrement *faire notre devoir ;* secondement *chercher les plaisirs permis,*	We ought, first, to do our duty ; secondly, enjoy lawful pleasures.
Aujourd'hui *il fait beau ; il pleuvra peut-être* demain.	To-day, it is fine ; it will rain perhaps to-morrow.

2. These adverbs, *comment, où, d'où, par où, combien, pourquoi, quand,* used with, or without interrogation, are always placed before the verb which they modify.

EXAMPLES.

Comme vous portez-vous ?	How do you do ?
Où allez-vous ?	Where are you going ?
Il ne sait comment s'y prendre,	He does not know how to set about [it.

Rule II. The adverb is always placed before the adjective which it modifies.

EXAMPLE.

C'est une femme fort *belle,* très-*sensible, et* infiniment *sage,*	She is a woman very beautiful, of great sensibility, and infinitely prudent.

Rule III. Adverbs of quantity and comparison, and the three adverbs of time, *souvent, toujours, jamais,* are placed before the other adverbs.

EXAMPLES.

Si poliment, fort poliment,	So politely, very politely.
Très-heureusement,	Very happily.
Le plus adroitement,	The most skilfully.
Ils ne seront jamais étroitement unis,	They never will be intimately united.
Ils sont toujours ensemble,	They are always together.
C'est souvent à l'improviste qu'il arrive,	He often comes unexpectedly.

Souvent may, however, be preceded by an adverb of quantity, or comparison, as, *si souvent, assez souvent, fort souvent, plus souvent, moins souvent, trop souvent.*

Rem. When adverbs of quantity and comparison meet together in a sentence, the following is the order which custom has established.

Si peu	Bien peu	Beaucoup * trop	Tant mieux
Trop peu	Bien plus	Beaucoup plus	Tant pis,
Très-peu	Bien davantage	Beaucoup moins	&c.

* *Beaucoup* is not as the English *much*, susceptible of being modified by any adverb preceding. thus, *très-beaucoup, trop beaucoup,* &c. would be barbarism.

When *bien* stands before another adverb, it means *very, much,* &c. as in the preceding and following examples.

Bien assez	Quite enough.	*Frapper bien fort*	To strike very hard.
Bien moins	Much less	*Bien tard*	Very late.

But when it is placed after the adverb, it signifies *well;* as,

Assez bien	Pretty well.	*Fort bien*	Very well.
Moins bien	Not so well.	*Aussi bien*	As well.

These rules have been sufficiently exemplified. P. 141.

CHAP. VII.

OF THE CONJUNCTIONS.

The conjunction *que* serves to complete a comparison; it is elliptically used to express a restriction, when placed after *ne,* and it generally gives grace, energy, and precision to sentences.

EXAMPLES.

QUE	expressing *comparison*	*L'Asie est plus grande* que *l'Europe.*	Asia is larger *than* Europe.
	for *rien* que	*On* ne *parle* que *de la nouvelle victoire.*	They talk of *nothing but* the new victory.
	— *je souhaite* que	Qu'*il vive,* pour *je souhaite* qu'*il vive.*	May he live, for *I wish that* he may live.
	— *à moins* que	*Cela* ne *finira pas* qu'*il* ne *vienne.*	There will be no end to it, *unless* he come.
	— *avant* que		
	— *sans* que		
	— *dès* que	Qu'*il fasse le moindre excès, il est malade.*	*If* he commits the least excess, he is ill.
	— *aussitôt* que		
	— *si,* or *quand*		
	— *soit* que	Qu'*il perde, ou* qu'*il gagne son procès, c'est un homme ruiné.*	*Whether* he gains, or loses his lawsuit, he is a ruined man.
	— *jusqu'à ce* que	*Attendez* qu'*il vienne*	Wait *till* he comes

QUE	for *pourquoi ?*	Que *ne se corrige-t-il ?*	*Why* does he not reform ?
	— *comme*	*Méchant* qu'*il est.*	Wicked *as* he is.
	— combien !	Que *Dieu est grand !*	*How* great is the Almighty !
		Que *je hais les méchans !*	*How much* I hate the wicked !

Another frequent use of this conjunction is to save the repetition of *comme*, *parceque*, *puisque*, *quand*, *quoique*, *si*, &c. when to phrases beginning with these words, others are added under the same regimen, by means of the conjunction *et ;* as,

Si l'on aimait son pays, et qu'on en désirât sincèrement la gloire, on se conduirait de manière, &c.†	If we loved our country, and sincerely wished its glory, we should act so as, &c.

EXERCISE ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

We have every thing to fear from his wisdom, even more
encore
than from his power. What men style greatness, glory,
Ce que art. *appeler*
power, profound policy, is in the eyes of God *only* misery,
profond politique f. *à*
weakness, and vanity. *May* they understand, at last, that without
comprendre
internal peace there is no happiness. *May* she
avec soi-même 2 art. 1 *point de*
be as happy as she deserves to be ! Never write *before* you
de le
have thoroughly examined the subject which you pro-
sous toutes ses faces 2 1 *se*
pose to treat. *Let* him but hear the least noise, his terrified
proposer de traiter * *bruit effrayé* 2
imagination presents to him nothing but monsters Do
f. 1 . * * *ne que de* art.
not sift this question, *till* I can (be your guide.)
approfondir *ne* subj-1 *vous mettre sur la voie*
Do not go out *till* your brother comes in. *Why* does he not
ne rentrer *
(take advantage) of his youth, (in order to) acquire the know-
profiter *pour* *con-*
ledge he wants ?
naissance pl. *dont avoir besoin ?*

GOVERNMENT OF CONJUNCTIONS.

The conjunctions which unite sentences to one another are followed either by the *infinitive*, the *indicative*, or the *subjunctive*.

Those that are followed by an infinitive, are,

1. Such as are distinguished from prepositions, only by being followed by a verb ; as,

Il faut se reposer après avoir travaillé,	One ought to rest after having laboured.

2. Those which have the preposition *de* after them ; as,

Il travaille afin de vous surpasser,¶	He works that he may surpass you.

† EXERCISE.

Full *as* he was of his prejudices, he would not acknowledge
Rempli ind-2 *préjugé* ind-3 *convenir de*
(any thing.) Full of self-love (*as* he is), expect nothing
rien *pétri* 1 3 2 *de*
good (from him.) *How* beautiful is that cultivated nature!
en 1 6 5 2 4 3
How, by the care of man, is it brilliantly and richly adorned!
par f. *pompeusement orné*
Had profound philosophers presided at the formation of
si * *de* ind-6 *à* art
languages, and *had* they carefully examined the elements of
langue *avec soin* subj-4 — m. art.
speech, not only in their relations (to one another), but also
discours non *entr'eux* *encore*
in themselves, it is not (to be doubted), that languages
en m. *douteux* art. *ne*
would present principles more simple, and at the
offrir subj-2 *de* art.
same time, more luminous.

¶ EXERCISE ON THE GOVERNMENT OF CONJUNCTIONS.

They were going to spend a few days in town
ne * ind-2 * *passer* * *quelques* *à* art.
only *that* they might return with more pleasure to
que pour * * *se retrouver* inf-1 *dans*
their charming solitude. Many persons work only (*in order to*)
ne que *afin de*
acquire consideration and riches, but the honest
de art pr. art. 2 *de*

Conjunctions that govern the indicative,

bien attendu que,	autant que,	puisque,	peut-être que,
à condition que,	non plus que,	lorsque,	comme,
à la charge que,	outre que,	pendant que,	comme si,
de même que,	parce que,	tandis que,	quand,
ainsi que,	attendu que,	durant que,	pourquoi,
aussi bien que,	vu que,	tant que,	comment, &c.

They are followed by the indicative, because the principal sentence, which they unite with that which is incidental, expresses the affirmation in a direct, positive, and independent manner.

The use of the six following conjunctions,

si non que,	de sorte que,	tellement que,
si ce n'est que,	en sorte que,	de manière que,

varies according to the meaning expressed by the principal sentence.

EXAMPLE OF THE INDICATIVE.	EXAMPLE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.
Je ne lui ai répondu autre chose, si non que *j'avais exécuté ses ordres.*	*Je ne veux autre chose,* si non que *vous travailliez avec plus d'ardeur.*
I made him no other answer, *but that* I had executed his orders.	I desire nothing else, *but that* you would study with greater ardour.

The indicative is required in the first sentence, by the verb *j'ai répondu* expressing a positive affirmation, and the subjunctive in the second, because *je veux* expresses a compound, or desire.†

---

numane man spends (so much) time in study, only
sensible 3 1 *ne employer tant de à* art. *que*
to be useful to his fellow-creatures. I reveal to you the
pour semblables. dévoiler
plot which your enemies have concerted in secret
trame f. *ourdir* art. *ténèbres* f. pl.
in order to warn you against their artifices.
prémunir

---

† EXERCISE.

When you have a more extensive knowledge of geometry
ind-7 2 1 art. f.
and algebra, I shall give you a few lessons in astro-
pr. art. *algèbre* f. * *quelque de*
nomy, and optics. Form your mind, heart, and taste
pr. *optique* pron. pron.

The conjunctions which govern the subjunctive are,

soit que,	jusqu'à ce que,	supposé que,	afin que,
sans que,	encore que,	au cas que,	de peur que,
pour que,	à moins que,	avant que,	de crainte que
quoique,	pourvu que,	non pas que,	&c. &c.

They require the subjunctive, as they always imply doubt, desire, ignorance. ‡

---

while you are still young. Do not keep truth a prisoner,
encore *retenir* art. * *captive*
though you should (draw upon you) a cloud of enemies.
quand *devoir* cond-1 *s'attirer* *nuée* f.
I will give you this fine picture *upon condition* that you
tableau m. *à*
keep it as a testimony of my friendship.
conserver ind-7. *témoignage* m.

---

‡ EXERCISE.

You know too well the value of time, *to* make
connaître *prix* m. art. *pour que être* 2
it necessary to tell you to (make a good use of) it. Study only
il 1 *de* *de* *bien employer*
great models, *lest* those which are but middling
art. *de peur que* * *médiocre* *ne*
should spoil your taste, *before* it be entirely formed. I
gâter subj-1
(make not the least doubt) that your method will succeed,
ne douter nullement f. *ne* * subj-1
provided it be well known. Several phenomena of nature are
f. art.
easy (to be explained), *supposing* the principle of universal
(by the active) art. 2
gravitation to be true.
f. 1 *

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE NINE PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Good Mother.

What a fine morning! said the amiable Charlotte to her
matinée f. ind-3
brother George. Come, let us go into the garden and enjoy
sing. * inf-1
the magnificent sight of rich and abundant nature.
de 2 *spectacle* m. 1 *une* 2 *fertile* 3 1
We will gather there the freshest and sweetest flowers
cueillir *y* *frais* 2 art. adv. *odorant* 3 f. pl. 1

We will make a nosegay, which we will offer to mamma. You
bouquet m. *maman* sing.
know she loves flowers. This attention will give her plea-
savoir que art. *faire lui*
sure. Ah! brother, it will obtain us a smile, a caress, perhaps
mon f. *valoir* *sourire* m. f.
even a kiss. Ah! sister, replied George, your pro-
baiser m. *ma* *répondre* ind-3 sing. *pro-*
posal delights me; let us run, let us fly, that we may offer
jet *enchanter* *courir* *voler afin de* * *
her (when she rises) this tribute of our gratitude and our love.
lui *à son lever* *hommage* — pr.
Full of this idea, Charlotte and George hastened
plein *se hâter* ind-3 *de se rendre*
into the garden. Charlotte gathered violets, jessamine,
ind-3 *de* art. pr. art.
and young rose-buds which (had but just begun)
pr. *de* 2 *bouton* m. 1 *ne commencer que* ind-2
to open their purple cups, while George prepared
entr'ouvrir *de pourpre* 2 *calice* 1 ind-2
green sprigs of myrtle and thyme, intended
de art. *verdoyant* 2 *jet* m. 1 *myrte* pr. *thym* *destiné*
to support the flowers. Never had these amiable children
soutenir 1 ind-2 3 2
worked with (so much) zeal and ardour. Satisfaction and
travailler *tant de zèle* pr. art. f. art.
pleasure beamed in all their features, sparkled in their
m. *être* ind-2 *peint* *trait* m. *pétiller*
eyes, and added still to their beauty.

While they (were employing themselves) (in this manner),
s'occuper ind-2 *ainsi*
their mother, who had seen them in the garden, came to join
ind-3 * *joindre*
them. (As soon as) they perceived her, they flew to her, and
dès que ind-3 ind-3 *elle*
said: Ah! mamma, how glad we are to see you! how
lui *que* *aise* 3 1 2 *de*
(impatient we were) for this pleasure! In the
qu'il tardait à notre impatience *d'avoir* *ce*
pleasing expectation (of it) we (were preparing) this nosegay for
doux *attente* f. * ind-2
you. What satisfaction should we have had in presenting
f. *ne* *pas* *à offrir*
it to you! Look at these rose-buds, these violets, this jessamine,
voir *
this myrtle, and this thyme. Well, we designed them for you.
Eh! bien, *destiner* ind-2 *

These flowers, coming from us, would have been dear to you.
cher
When you wore them, you would have said: My children
En * *porter* inf-2
(were thinking) of me while I slept. I am always as
s'occuper ind-2 *dormir* ind-2
present to their minds as to their hearts. They love me, and it
sing. sing. *ce*
is by giving me every day new proofs of their affection,
en art. pl. *de* *preuve* f.
that they acknowledge the care I have taken of them
reconnaître *soin* m. pl. *que*
in their childhood, and all the marks of tenderness I am un-
que *ne*
ceasingly giving them.
cesser *de* inf-1 *leur.*

My dear children, replied the mother, embracing
répondre ind-3 *en embrasser*
them, how charming you render all my days! your grati-
quel charme *repandre sur*
tude, your tenderness, your attention to me, make me forget
pl. *pour* *oublier*
my former misfortunes, and yield my heart again to the soft
ancien malheur m. *rouvrir*
impressions of pleasure. May Heaven continue
f. art. *Pouvoir* subj-1 art. *continuer*
to bless my labour! May it be your guide and your support
de *soin* *Pouvoir* — *soutien*
in the career which (will soon be opened) to you! may it
carrière f. *aller* ind-1 *s'ouvrir* *devant*
complete its kindness by preserving you from the
mettre le comble à *bienfait* pl. *en garantir* inf-2 *de*
dangers to which you cannot fail to be soon exposed!
* *ne pas tarder* ind-7 *
Alas! I shudder (at them) beforehand, my dear children; the
frémir *en d'avance*
moment is come when you must enter the world. Your
où *devoir* *dans*
persons, your birth, and your fortune call you there, and
figure sing. *naissance* *appeler* *y*
ensure you a distinguished rank (in it), I cannot always be your
assurer 2 m. 1 *y* ind-7
guide. Young and inexperienced, you will find yourselves
sans expérience *aller* ind-1 inf-1
surrounded by every kind of temptation. (Every thing),
entouré *sorte* f. *séduction.* *Tout*
even vice presents itself there under an agreeable
jusque à art. m. *offrir* *y* *sous* * *de* art. 2

form, and almost always in the shape of pleasure, which has
pl. 1 *sous image* art.
(so many) attractions for youth. They will try to
tant de attrait f. art. *jeunesse* f. *On chercher*
mislead you, to corrupt you; they (will make use of) artifice
égarer employer art.
raillery, and even ridicule, and, if necessary, they
art. = *même* art. — *il est*
will assume even the mask of virtue. If you abandon
prendre jusque à masque m. art. *se laisser*
yourselves to first impressions, you are lost. The poison of
aller art.
example will insinuate itself into your hearts, will corrupt the
se glisser altérer
innocence and purity (of them) and will substitute violent
en de art. *déchirant* 2
passions for the mild affections which have hitherto formed your
f. pl. 1 *à doux faire*
happiness.

Do not imagine, my dear children, that in placing before your
croire en mettre sous
eyes a picture of the dangers of the world, my intention
art. *tableau* m.
is to prohibit you every kind of pleasure. God forbid.
subj-1 *de interdire espèce* f. *à ne plaire*
Pleasure is necessary to man; without it, our ex-
subj-1 art. art. *lui*
istence would be dreadful; (and therefore) Providence, ever
affreux aussi art. f.
attentive to our wants, has multiplied the sources of it, both
besoin -t-elle
in and out of ourselves. But, in tasting the pleasures of
en nous nous en goûter
the world, never (abandon yourselves) (to them.) Take care
se livrer y Avoir
that they do not govern you; know how to quit them the mo-
*dominer savoir * * de*
ment they have acquired (too much) sway over you. It is
que prendre ind-7 *trop de empire Ce*
the only way to enjoy with delight that exquisite pleasure
moyen de volupté de délicieux 2 1
which we can only find in ourselves, and which has its source
en
in an upright and pure conscience. Ah! why cannot I give
dans droit 2 3 f. 1 *que*
you all my experience? Why cannot you, like me, read the
dans

depths of the heart? With what astonishment would you often
abîme sing. pl.
see chagrin, agitation, and trouble, disguised under the
art. —m. art. art. — m. *déguisé sous*
appearance of joy and tranquillity; hatred and
apparence pl. art. pr. art. *calme* art. f. art.
envy concealed under the air of confidence and friend-
f. *caché* art. *confiance* f. pr. art.
ship: indifference and selfishness, affecting the most lively
art. *égoïsme* *vif*
interest; the most dreadful and perfidious plots
2 art. adv. 3 *trame* f. pl. 1
contrived deliberately in the dark; in a word, the most
ourdi *de sang froid et* *ténèbres* f. pl. *en*
odious vices endeavouring to show themselves under the
2 art. 1 *s'efforcer* *de*
features of (their opposite) virtues! In the world there
traits *qui leur être opposé* 2 art. 1
is but one (moving principle;) that is self-interest. To
ne que *seul mobile* m. *ce* art. *personnel* 2 1 *C'est à*
that every action refers, every thing tends to that as
lui que art. pl. *se rapporter* *lui*
to its end. I know very well, my dear children, that your
fin f. *savoir*
hearts will not be infected by this vice. The sentiments of
de
universal benevolence with which I (have always)
2 *bienveillance* 1 * *ne point cesser* ind-4 *de*
inspired you, and of which I have seen you give (so many)
inf-1 *tant de*
proofs, (remove already every fear) (I might have) upon that
preuve *rassurer d'avance* *me* *sur*
subject: but will you not yield to other vices not less danger-
point m. *de* *non*
ous? Cruel idea! terrible uncertainty! If this misfortune
f. *affreux* f.
were to happen, ah! my dear children, instead of being
* * *arriver* ind-2
the joy and consolation of my life, you would be the torment,
art. f.
the shame and the disgrace (of it.) You would poison my
honte f. *opprobre* *en* *empoisonner*
days, and you would plunge a dagger into the very bosom
porter art. *mort* f. *même* 2 *sein* m. 1
which gave you life. But whither is my tenderness for you
ind-3 art. *où* *
hurrying me? No, my children, no, I have nothing to fear;
emporter *Non*

PART III.

IDIOMS,

OR

WORDS CONSIDERED IN THEIR PARTICULAR RULES.

CHAP. I.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

The substantive performs *three* functions in language, that of the subject, the regimen, or the apostrophe.

The substantive is the *subject*, whenever it is that of which something is affirmed. When we say, *l'oiseau vole*, the bird flies; *le lion ne vole pas*, the lion does not fly; the substantives *oiseau* and *lion* are subjects; because it is affirmed of the first that it flies, and of the second that it does not fly.

It is to the substantive as the subject that every thing relates in a sentence. In the following, *un homme juste*

you love me (too much) to wish to afflict me so cruelly; and
trop *pour vouloir* *
I shall have the pleasure, (as long as) I live, of seeing you walk
tant que ind-7
in the ways of honour and virtue.
sentier art. pr. art.

EXERCISE ON THE SUBSTANTIVE.

1. A *king*, who is inaccessible to men, is inaccessible to truth also, and passes his life in a ferocious 2 inhuman 3 grandeur 1: as he is continually afraid of being deceived, he always 2 unavoidably 3 is 1 and deserves to be so; besides, he is at the mercy of slanderers and tale-bearers, a base 2 malicious 3 tribe 1, who feed on venom, and invent mischief rather than cease to injure.

2. The *good* which a man does, is never lost; if men forget it, *God* remembers and rewards it.

(1.) *Is inaccessible also*, l'est aussi; *ferocious*, sauvage; *inhuman*, et farouche; *as he is afraid*, craignant; *is*, l'est; *to be so*, de l'être; *besides*, de plus; *tale-bearers*, rapporteur; *tribe*, nation; *feed upon*, se nourrir de; *mischief*, mal; *to injure*, de nuire.

(2.) *Good*, bien; *a man*, on; *remember*, s'en souvenir.

et ferme n'est ébranlé, ni par les clameurs d'une populace injuste, ni par les menaces d'un fier tyran ; quand même le monde brisé s'écroulerait, il en serait frappé, mais non pas ému, the adjectives *juste* and *ferme* modify the subject *homme,* and all the rest modify *un homme juste et ferme.*

The substantive is the *regimen,* when governed, either by another substantive, by an adjective, by a verb, or by a preposition, as,

la loi de *Dieu,*	the law *of* God.	*aimer son pro chain,*	to *love* one's neighbour.
utile à *l'homme,*	useful *to* man.	*chez son père,*	*at* his father's.

In French, a substantive cannot be governed by another substantive, but by the help of a preposition ; such as *de,* as, *la difficulté de l'entreprise,* the difficulty of the undertaking ; or *à,* or *pour,* as, *l'abandon à ses passions,* the giving way to one's passions ; *le goût pour le plaisir,* the love of pleasure.

General Rule. When two substantives are found together, the one *governing,* the other *governed,* the former is generally placed first.

EXAMPLE.

La beauté *des sentimens,* la violence *des passions,* la grandeur *des événemens* et les succès miraculeux *des grandes épées des héros, tout cela m'entraîne comme une petite fille.*—Sévigné.	The beauty of sentiments, the violence of passions, the grandeur of events, and the prodigious successes of the huge swords of heroes, all these transport me like a little girl.

Remark. This order is not followed—1. When, in English, two substantives are joined by an *s* and an apostrophe, placed after the first, thus, *'s,* as, the *king's palace.* 2. When the two English substantives form a compound word, as, *silk-stockings.*¶

¶ EXERCISE.

1. *The silence* of the night, *the calmness* of the sea, *the trembling* 2 *light* 1 of the moon diffused over the surface of the

(1.) *Trembling,* tremblant ; *diffused,* répandu ; *dim,* sombre ; *bespangled,* parsemé ; *with,* de ; *heighten,* rehausser ; *scene,* spectacle.

The substantive is an *apostrophe*, whenever it is the object addressed ; as, *rois, peuples, terre, mer, et vous, cieux, écoutez-moi !* In this sentence, the substantives *rois, peuples, terre, mer,* and *cieux,* form an apostrophe.

N. B. It is only in highly oratorical language that the address is thus directed to inanimate, or absent objects.†

---

water, and *the dim azure* of the sky bespangled with glittering 2 stars 1, served to heighten the beauty of the scene.

2. Nothing was heard but *the warbling* of birds, or *the soft breath* of the zephyrs sporting in *the branches* of the trees, or *the murmurs* of a lucid rill falling from the rocks, or *the songs* of the young swains who attended Apollo.

3. A smiling boy was, at the same time, caressing a lap-dog, which is his *mother's favourite,* because it pleases the child.

4. There are several *gold and silver mines* in this beautiful country ; but the inhabitants, simple, and happy in their simplicity, do not even deign to * reckon gold and silver among their riches.

(2.) *Nothing but,* on ne plus que ; *breath,* haleine ; *sporting,* que se jouer ind-3 ; *branches,* rameaux ; *lucid rill,* eau claire ; *falling,* (which fell :) *swains,* berger ; *attended,* suivre, ind-2.

(3.) *Smiling boy,* enfant d'un air riant ; *was caressing,* caresser, ind-2 ; *lap-dog,* bichon ; *pleases,* amuser. (4.) *Reckon,* compter.

---

†EXAMPLE OF A BEAUTIFUL APOSTROPHE.

O Hippias ! Hippias ! I shall never see thee again * ! O my dear Hippias ! it is I, cruel and * void of compassion, who taught thee to despise death. Cruel Gods ! ye prolonged my life, only that I might see the death of Hippias ! O my dear child, whom I had brought up with so much care, I shall see thee no more. O dear shade, summon me to the banks of the Styx, the light grows hateful to me ; it is thou only, my dear Hippias, whom I wish to see again. Hippias ! Hippias ! O my dear Hippias ! I live but to pay the last duty to thy ashes.

Never, ne plus ; *void of compassion,* moi impitoyable ; *taught,* apprendre, ind-1 ; *prolonged,* prolonger, ind-1 ; *only that I might,* pour me faire ; *brought up,* nourrir, ind-4 ; *with so much care,* et qui me coûter, ind-4, tant de soins ; *shade,* ombre ; *summon,* appeler ; *to,* sur ; *banks,* rive ; *grows hateful,* être odieux ; *I live but to,* ne vivre encore que pour ; *pay,* rendre ; *ashes,* cendre.

CHAP. II.

OF THE ARTICLE.

GENERAL PRINCIPLE. The article is to be used before all substantives common, taken in a determinate sense, *unless there be another word performing the same office*; but it is not to be used before those that are taken in an indeterminate sense.

CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS TO BE USED.

RULE I. The article necessarily accompanies all substantives common, which denote a whole species of things, or determinate things.

EXAMPLES.

L'homme *se repaît trop souvent de chimères,*	Man too often feeds on chimeras.
Les hommes à imagination *sont toujours malheureux,*	Men of fanciful dispositions are always unhappy.
L'homme *dont vous parlez est très-instruit,*	The man you speak of is very learned.

In the first example, the word *homme* is taken in its fullest sense; it denotes a collective universality. In the second, *les hommes à imagination*, denotes a particular class only. In the third, *l'homme* denotes but one individual, being restricted by the incidental proposition, *dont vous parlez.*

REMARK. In English, the article is not used before substantives taken in a general sense, as, *Men of genius, women of sound understanding.* ‡

---

‡ EXERCISE ON THE ARTICLE.

1. The moment *elegance*, the most visible image of fine *taste*, appears, it is universally admired: *men* differ respecting the other constituent parts of * *beauty*, but they all unite without hesitation in acknowledging the power of *elegance.*

2. *Men of superior genius* 2, while 1 they * see 3 the rest of

---

(1.) *The moment*, du moment que; *fine*, délicat; *appears*, se montrer; *is*, elle est; *respecting*, sur; *constituent*, (which constitute); *hésitation*, hésiter; *in*, pour.

(2.) *While*, tandis que; *struggling*, se tourmenter; *obvious*, qui s'offrent d'elles-mêmes; *glance*, ils pénètrent en un instant; *lightning*, foudre, f.; *through*, traverse; *track*, espace; *that*, qu'on; *be measured*, mesurer.

RULE II. The article is put before substantives employed in the sense of an extract, or denoting only a part of a species ; but it is omitted, if they be preceded by an adjective, or a word of quantity.

EXAMPLES.

Du pain *et* de l'eau *me feraient plaisir,*	Some bread and water would please me.
Je vis hier des savans *qui ne pensent pas comme vous,*	I yesterday saw some learned men, who do not think as you do.
Voilà de beaux tableaux,	There are beautiful pictures.
J'achetai hier beaucoup de livres,	I bought yesterday many books.
Que de livres *j'achetai hier !*	How many books I bought yesterday !

REMARK. Among the words of quantity must be reckoned *plus*, *moins*, *pas*, *point*, and *jamais*.

EXAMPLES.

Il n'y eut jamais plus de lumières,	There never was more learning.
Il y a moins d'habitans à Paris qu'à Londres,	There are fewer inhabitants in Paris than in London.
Je ne manque pas d'amis,	I do not want for friends.

EXCEPTIONS. *Bien* is the only word of quantity which is followed by the article.

EXAMPLES.

Il a bien de l'esprit,	He has a great deal of wit.
Elle a bien de la grâce,	She is very graceful.

REMARK. The sense of extract is marked in English by the word *some*, or *any*, either expressed or understood, which answers to *quelques*, a particular adjective, and consequently to *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, which are elegantly used instead of *quelque*, *quelques*,

---

mankind painfully * struggling to comprehend obvious 2 truths 1, glance themselves * through * the most remote 2 consequences 1, like lightning through a track that cannot be measured.

3. *The man who lives* under an habitual 2 sense 1 of the divine 2 presence 1, preserves a perpetual cheerfulness of temper, and enjoys, every moment, the satisfaction of thinking himself * in company with the dearest and best of friends.

(3.) *Under*, dans ; *sense*, conviction ; *preserves*, conserver ; *perpetual*, constant ; *cheerfulness*, gaieté ; *temper*, caractère ; *enjoys*, jouir de ; *of thinking*, se croire ; *in*, dans, art. ; *with*, de.

These expressions : *des petits-maîtres, des sages-femmes, des petits-pâtés,* &c. are not exceptions to this rule, because, in cases of this kind, the substantives are so united with the adjectives, as to form but one and the same word. We should likewise say : *le propre* des *belles actions, les sentimens* des *anciens philosophes,* &c. ; because, in expressions of this kind, the substantives are taken in a general sense.¶

¶ EXERCISE.

1. We could not cast our eyes on either shore, without seeing *opulent* cities, *country houses* agreeably situated, *lands* yearly 2 covered 1 with a golden 2 harvest 1, *meadows* abounding in flocks and herds, *husbandmen* bending under the weight of the fruits, and *shepherds* who made 1 the echoes 5 around them 6 repeat 2 the sweet sounds 3 of their pipes and flutes 4.

2. Provence and Languedoc produce *oranges, lemons, figs, olives, almonds, chesnuts, peaches, apricots,* and *grapes* of an uncommon sweetness.

3. The man who has never seen this pure light, is as * blind as one who is born blind : he dies without having seen any thing ; at most, he perceives nothing but *glimmering and false lights, vain shadows* and *phantoms* that have no reality.

4. Among the Romans, those who were convicted of having used *illicit* or *unworthy means* to obtain an employ, were excluded from it for ever.

5. Those who govern are like the celestial 2 bodies 1, which have *great splendour* and *no rest.*

6. *What beauty, sweetness, modesty,* and at the same time *what nobleness* and *greatness* of soul!

7. Themistocles, in order to ruin Aristides, made use of *many* artifices, which would have covered him with infamy in the eyes of posterity, had 1 not 4 the eminent services 2 which he rendered his country 3 blotted out 5 that stain.

(1.) *Could,* pouvoir, ind-2 ; *our,* art ; *either,* les deux ; *seeing,* apercevoir ; *yearly,* tous les ans ; *covered with,* qui se couvrir de, ind-2 ; *abounding in,* remplis de ; *flocks and herds,* troupeau ; *bending,* qui étaient accablés ; *weight,* poids ; *shepherds,* bergers ; *pipes,* chalumeau ; *the echoes,* aux échos ; *around them,* d'alentour.

(3.) *Who is born blind,* aveugle-né ; *without having,* n'avoir jamais, inf-3 ; *any thing,* rien ; *at most,* tout au plus ; *perceives nothing from,* apercevoir ne que ; *glimmering,* sombre ; *lights,* lueur ; *no reality,* rien de réel.

(4.) *Used,* employer ; *illicit or unworthy means,* moyen illicite, on voie indigne, pl. ; *were,* ind-2 ; *from it,* en.

(5.) *Great,* beaucoup de ; *splendour,* éclat ; *no rest,* (that have no rest) repos.

(6.) *What,* que de.————(7.) *Ruin,* perdre ; *made use of many,* employer bien ; *artifices,* manœuvres ; *covered,* cond-3 ; *with,* de ; *infamy,* opprobre ; *in,* à ; *had,* si ; *rendered,* ind-3, à ; *blotted out,* effacer, cond-3 : *stain,* tache.

RULE III. The article is put before proper names of countries, regions, rivers, winds, and mountains.

EXAMPLES.

La France a *les Pyrénées* et *la Méditerranée au sud, la Suisse* et *la Savoie à l'est, les Pays-Bas au nord,* et *l'océan à l'ouest,*	France is bounded on the south by the Pyrenees and the Mediterranean, on the east by Switzerland and Savoy, on the north by the Netherlands, and on the west by the ocean.
La Tamise, le Rhône, l'aquilon, les Alpes, le Cantal,	The Thames, the Rhone, the north wind, the Alps, the Cantal.

REM. By apposition we find the words : *le mont Parnasse, le mont Valérien,* &c. *le fleuve Don,* &c. But, we should say, *la montagne de Tarare,* &c. *la rivière de Seine,* &c. though never, *le fleuve du Rhône,* but simply, *le Rhône.*†

---

8. The consequences *of great passions* are blindness of mind and depravity of heart.

9. *Noblemen* should never forget that their high birth imposes great duties on * them.

(8.) *Of mind, of heart*, de, art.
(9.) *Noblemen*, gentilhomme ; *should*, devoir, ind-i.

---

† EXERCISE.

1. *Europe* is bounded on the north by the Frozen Ocean ; on the south by the Mediterranean Sea, which separates it from *Africa ;* on the east by the continent of *Asia ;* on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. It contains the following 2 states 1 : on the north, *Norway, Sweden, Denmark,* and *Russia ;* in the middle, *Poland, Prussia, Germany, the United Provinces, the Netherlands, France, Switzerland, Bohemia, Hungary, the British Isles ;* on the south, *Spain, Portugal, Italy, Turkey in Europe.*

2. The principal rivers in Europe, are, the *Wolga,* the *Don* or *Tanaïs,* and the *Boristhenes,* or *Nieper,* in Muscovy ; the *Danube,*

(1.) *Bounded*, borné ; *on*, à ; *frozen ocean*, mer glaciale, f. ; *south*, sud or midi ; *Mediterranean sea*, Méditerranée, f. ; *east*, est or orient ; *west*, ouest or occident ; *Norway*, &c. SEE P. 70. ; *British Isles*, Iles Britanniques ; *Turkey in*, Turquie de.
(2.) *Muscovy*, Moscovie ; *Vistula*, Vistule, f. ; *Loire*, f. ; *Seine*, f. ; *Rhône*, m. ; *Garonne*, f. ; *Ebro*, Ebre ; *Tagus*, Tage, m. ; *Thames*, Tamise, f. ; *Severn*, Saverne, f.

EXCEPTIONS. The article is not used before the names of countries :

1. When those countries have the names of their capitals, as, *Naples est un pays délicieux*, Naples is a delightful country.

2. When these are governed by the preposition *en*, as, *il est en France*, he is in France ; *il est en Espagne*, he is in Spain.

3. When those names are governed by some preceding noun, and have the sense of an adjective, as, *vins de France*, French wines ; *noblesse d'Angleterre*, the English nobility.

4. When speaking of those countries as of places we come from, as, *je viens de France*, I come from France ; *j'arrive d'Italie*, I am just arrived from Italy. However, when speaking of the four parts of the world, the present practice favours the use of the article, as, *je viens de l'Amérique, j'arrive de l'Asie.*‡

---

the *Rhine*, and the *Elbe*, in Germany ; the *Vistula*, or *Wezel* in Poland ; the *Loire*, the *Seine*, the *Rhone*, and the *Garonne*, in France ; the *Ebro*, the *Tagus*, and the *Douro*, in Spain ; the *Po*, in Italy ; the *Thames* and the *Severn*, in England ; and the *Shannon*, in Ireland.

3. The principal mountains in Europe are the *Daarne Fields*, between Norway and Sweden ; *Mount Crapel*, between Poland and Hungary ; the *Pyrenean Mountains*, between France and Spain ; the *Alps*, which divide France and Germany from Italy.

4. The bleak *north wind* never blows here, and the heat of summer is tempered by the cooling 2 *zephyrs* 1, which arrive to refresh the air towards the middle of the day.

(3.) *Pyrenean Mountains*, Pyrénées.
(4.) *Bleak*, rigoureux ; *north wind*, aquilon ; *heat*, ardeur ; *cooling*, rafraîchissant ; *arrive*, venir ; *to refresh*, adoucir.

---

‡ EXERCISE.

1. *Naples* may be called a paradise, from its beauty and fertility. From this country 2 some suppose 1 Virgil took the model of the Elysian 2 Fields 1.

2. I have been a * prisoner *in Egypt*, as a * Phœnician

(1.) *From*, à cause de ; *from this country*, que c'est là, où ; *some suppose*, quelques personnes penser.
(2.) *Prisoner*, captif ; *under that name*, c'est sous ce nom que (both alike

The article is also used before the names of countries, either distant, or little known, *la Chine*, China ; *le Japon*, Japan ; *le Mexique*, Mexico ; and before those which have been formed from common nouns : *le Hâvre*, *le Perche*, *la Flèche*, &c.

Remark. In English the article is generally omitted before the names of countries.

CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS NOT USED.

Rule I. The article is omitted before nouns common, when in using them nothing is said as to the extent of their signification.

EXAMPLES.

Le sage n'a ni amour *ni* haîne,	The wise man has neither love nor hatred.
Ils ont renversé religion, morale, gouvernement, sciences, beaux-arts, *en un mot, tout ce qui fait la gloire et la force d'un Etat,*	They have overturned religion, morality, government, sciences, fine arts, in a word, every thing which constitutes the glory and strength of a state.

Hence the article is not employed before nouns,

1. When they are in the form of a title, or an address.

EXAMPLES.

Préface,	Preface.	*Il demeure*	He lives in
Livre premier,	Book the 1st.	*Rue Piccadilly,*	Piccadilly.
Chapitre dix,	Chap. the 10th.	*Quartier St. James,*	St. James's.

2. When they are governed by the preposition *en.*

EXAMPLES.

Regarder en pitié, to look with pity. *Vivre en Roi,* to live as a king.

---

under that name I have long suffered, and under that name I have been set at liberty.

3. *He* has received French and Spanish wines, Italian silks, Provence oil, and English wool.

4. We set sail *from Holland* for the Cape of Good Hope.

5. I was but just arrived *from Russia,* when I had the misfortune to lose my father.

6. I had set off *from America,* when my brother arrived there.

(4.) *Set sail*, partir ; *for*, pour se rendre.
(5.) *I was but just*, ne faire que de. (6.) *Set off*, partir ; *there*, y

3. When they are joined to the verbs *avoir*, or *faire*, with which they form only one idea.

EXAMPLES.

Avoir peur,	To be afraid.
Faire pitié,	To excite pity.

4. When they are used as an apostrophe, or interjection.

EXAMPLE.

Courage, soldats, tenez ferme,	Courage, soldiers, stand firm.

5. When they serve to qualify a noun, or pronoun.

EXAMPLES.

Il est quelquefois plus qu'homme,	He is sometimes more than man.
Son Altesse Royale le Duc d'York, Prince du sang, &c.	His Royal highness the Duke of York, Prince of the blood.

6. The article is not put before the substantive beginning an incidental sentence, which is opposed to what has been said.

EXAMPLES.

Tous les peuples de la terre ont une idée plus ou moins développée d'un Etre-Suprême ; preuve évidente que le péché originel n'a pas tout-à-fait obscurci l'entendement,	All the nations of the earth have an idea more or less clear of a Supreme Being ; an evident proof that original sin has not totally obscured the understanding.

7. When they are governed by the words *genre, espèce, sorte,* or terms of this kind.

¶ EXERCISE.

1. The highways are bordered with *laurels, pomegranates, jessamines,* and *other trees* which * are * always green, and always in bloom. The mountains are covered with *flocks,* which yield a fine wool, in great request among all the known 2 nations 1 (of the world.*)

2. The fleets of Solomon, under the conduct of the Phœnicians, made frequent voyages to the land of Ophir and Tharsis, (of the kingdom of Sophala, in Ethiopia) whence they returned at the end of three years, laden with *gold, silver, ivory, precious 2 stones* 1, and other kinds of *merchandise.*

3. *Costly furniture* 2 is not allowed there 1, nor *magnificent attire,* nor *sumptuous feasts,* nor *gilded palaces.*

(1.) *Highways,* chemin ; *with,* de ; *pomegranates,* grenadier ; *in bloom,* fleuri *yield,* fournir ; *wool,* laine, pl. ; *in great request,* recherché ; *among,* de.
(2.) *Made,* ind-2 ; *end,* bout ; *laden,* chargé.
(3.) *Is not allowed there,* on n'y souffre ni ; *furniture,* meuble ; *costly,* précieux ; *attire,* ornement ; *feasts,* repas.

EXAMPLES.

Sorte de fruit,	A sort of fruit.	*Bande de voleurs,*	A troop of robbers.
Genre d'ouvrage,	A kind of work.	*Pile de livres,*	A pile of books.
Monceau d'argent, ¶	A heap of money.	*Meute de chiens,* &c.	A pack of dogs.

RULE II. The article is not used, either before nouns preceded by the pronominal adjectives *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur, ce, nul, aucun, chaque, tout* (used for *chaque*), *certain, plusieurs, tel,* or before those which are preceded by a cardinal number without any relation whatever.

EXAMPLES.

Nos mœurs *mettent le prix à nos richesses,*	Our manners fix the value of our riches.
Toute nation *a ses lois,*	Each nation has its laws.
Cent ignorans, *doivent-ils l'emporter sur un homme instruit?* ¶	Are a hundred blockheads to be preferred to one learned man?

4. We contemplated with pleasure the extensive fields covered with yellow ears of corn, the * *rich gifts* of bounteous Ceres

5. He was *in a kind of ecstacy,* when he perceived us.

6. In the most corrupt age, he lived and died *a wise man.*

7. Are you surprised that the worthiest 2 men 1 are *but men,* and betray remains of the weakness of humanity, amid the innumerable 2 snares 1 and difficulties which * are * inseparable from royalty?

8. *He excited our pity,* when we saw him after his disgrace.

9. Hear then, *O nations* full of valour! and you, *O chiefs,* so wise and so united! hear what I have * to * offer to you.

10. Out of this cavern issued, from time to time, a black 2 thick 3 smoke 1, which made *a sort of night* at mid-day.

† EXERCISE.

1. *That good father* was happy in his children, and his children were happy in him.

(4.) *Extensive,* vaste ; *fields,* campagne ; *ears,* épi ; *bounteous,* fécond.
(5.) *In a kind of,* comme en.——(6.) *Age,* siècle.
(7.) *That,* de ce que ; *worthy,* estimable ; *but,* encore ; *betray,* montrer ; *remains,* reste ; *snares,* piège ; *difficulties,* embarras.
(8.) *He excited our pity,* il nous fit pitié.——(9.) *Hear,* écouter.
(10.) *Out of,* de ; *issued,* sortir ; *thick,* et épais ; *smoke,* fumée ; *mid-day,* milieu du jour.

Rule III. Proper names of deities, men, animals, towns, and particular places, do not take the article,

EXAMPLES.

Dieu *a créé le ciel et la terre,*	God has made heaven and earth.
Jupiter *était le premier des dieux,*	Jupiter was the first of the gods.
Bucéphale *était le cheval d'Alexandre,*	Bucephalus was Alexander's horse.
Rome *est une ville d'une grande beauté,*	Rome is a city of great beauty.

Exceptions. Proper names, however, take the article, when used in a limited sense.

EXAMPLES.

Le *Dieu des Chrétiens,*	The God of Christians.	Le *Bucéphale, d'Alexandre,*	Alexander's Bucephalus.
Le *Dieu de paix,*	The God of peace.	L'*Ancienne, Rome,*	Ancient Rome.
Le *Jupiter d'Homère,*	Homer's Jupiter.	La *Rome Moderne,*	Modern Rome.

N. B. In imitation of the Italians, the French use the article before the names of several painters and poets of that nation, by an elliptical mode of expression, the words *peintre*, *poète*, or *seigneur*, being understood.†

---

2. *Those imitative* 2 *sounds* 1 are common to all languages, and form, as it were, their * real basis.

3. *Every man* has his foibles, his moments of ill * humour, even his irregularities.

4. *Each plant* has virtues peculiar to it, the knowledge 2 of which 1 could not but be infinitely useful.

5. *In all his instructions,* he is careful to remember that grammar, logic, and rhetoric, are three sisters, that ought never to be disjoined.

(2.) *Common*, fondu ; *to*, dans ; *and form as it were*, et ils en sont comme, *real*, fondamentale.
(4.) *Peculiar*, qui sont propres ; *to it*, lui ; *could*, cond-1 ; *not but*, ne que.
(5.) *He is careful to remember*, ne point perdre de vue ; *ought*, on devoir, ind-1 ; *to be disjoined*, séparer.

---

† EXERCISE.

1. *Jupiter*, son of *Saturn* and *Cybele* or *Ops*, after having e▸

(1.) *Expelled*, chasser ; *divided*, en partager ; *inheritance*, héritage.

CHAP. III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

I.

OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE ARTICLE.

RULE I. Adjectives used substantively, are like substantives common, accompanied by the article, if the occasion require it.

EXAMPLE.

Les fous *inventent les modes, et* les sages *s'y conforment,*¶ — Fools invent fashions, and wise men conform to them.

---

pelled his father from the throne, divided the paternal * inheritance with his two brothers, *Neptune* and *Pluto.*

2. On a dispute at a feast of the gods, between *Juno, Pallas,* and *Venus,* for the pre-eminence of beauty, *Jupiter,* not being able to bring them to an agreement, referred the decision to *Paris,* a shepherd of Mount Ida, with directions that a golden apple should be given to the fairest. *Paris* assigned to *Venus* 2 the golden * prize 1.

3. *God* said : let there * be 2 light 1, and there * was 2 light 1.

4. *The Apollo di Belvidere,* and *the Venus di Medicis,* are valuable 2 remains 1 of antiquity.

5. *May* and *September* are the two finest months of the year in the south of France.

6. *The God of Abraham, Isaac,* and *Jacob,* was the only true God.

(2.) *On*, dans ; *at a feast*, qu'il y eut à un festin ; *being able*, pouvoir ; *to bring to an agreement*, accorder ; *referred*, renvoyer ; *directions*, ordre ; *that a golden*, &c. *to give a golden apple to ; assigned*, adjuger.
(4.) *Di Belvidere*, Belvéder ; *di*, de ; *valuable*, précieux.
(6.) *Only*, seul.

¶ EXERCISE.

1. Were the *learned* of antiquity to come to life again, they would be much astonished at the extent of our knowledge.

2. *The ignorant* have, in a * large stock of presumption, what they want in real knowledge, and that is the reason they are admired by *fools.*

(1.) *Were the*, si les ; *to come again*, revenir, ind-2 ; *life*, monde ; *at*, de ; *knowledge*, connaissance, pl.
(2.) *Large stock*, forte dose ; *they want*, il leur manquer ; *knowledge*, science ; *the reason*, ce qui fait que ; *they are*, &c. the fools admire them.

RULE II. When a noun is accompanied by two adjectives, expressing *opposite* qualities, the article must be repeated before each adjective.

EXAMPLES.

Les vieux *et les* nouveaux *soldats sont remplis d'ardeur,*	The old and the newly raised soldiers are full of ardour.
Il faut fréquenter la bonne *compagnie et fuir* la mauvaise,	We ought to frequent good and shun bad company.

REM. But if those qualities be nearly similar, the article is not repeated, as, *Le sage et pieux Fénélon ;*—if merely different, it is perhaps better to repeat it, as, *Le sensible et l'ingénieux Fénélon.*

N. B. In French the substantive must be joined to the first adjective, when governed by different words.†

RULE III. The article is used before the adjective which is joined to a proper name, either to express its quality, or to distinguish the person spoken of from those who might bear the same name.

EXAMPLES.

Le sublime Bossuet,	*Le vertueux Fénélon,*	*Le tendre Racine.*
The sublime Bossuet.	The virtuous Fénélon.	The tender Racine.
Louis le Gros,	*Louis le Juste,*	*Louis le Grand,*
Louis the Fat.	Louis the Just.	Louis the Great.

REM. If the adjective, which is joined to a proper name, precede that name, it expresses a quality, which may be common to many ; if it follow, it expresses a distinguishing quality. Thus—*Le savant Varron ;* and *Varron le savant ;* do not convey the same meaning : in the first example, *Varron* merely obtains the quality of

† EXERCISE.

1. The *ancient* 1 and *modern* 3 writers 2 are not agreed upon that point.

2. The wise man preserves the same tranquillity of mind in *good* or *bad* fortune.

3. The man who is jealous of his reputation frequents *good* and shuns *bad* company.

4. *Grand* and *vigorous* thoughts were always the offspring of genius.

(1.) *Writers*, auteur ; *are agreed*, s'accorder. (2.) *The wise man*, le sage.
(4.) *Vigorous*, fort ; *offspring*, fruit.

savant ; in the second, *Varron* is distinguished for his learning from all of the same name.‡

RULE IV. When a superlative relative precedes a substantive, the article serves for both ; if it follow, the article must be repeated before each.

EXAMPLES.

Les plus habiles *gens font quelquefois* les plus grandes *fautes*, or Les *gens* les plus habiles *font quelquefois* les *fautes* les plus grandes, The ablest men sometimes commit the grossest blunders.¶

II.

THE PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE I. Pronominal and numerical adjectives precede their substantive, as do generally the following sixteen, *beau, bon, brave, cher, chétif, grand, gros, jeune,*

‡ EXERCISE.

1. The *great Corneille* astonishes by beauties of the first order, and by faults of the worst taste. If the *tender Racine* does not often rise so high, at least, he is always equal, and possesses the art of always interesting the heart.

2. The more we read the fables of the *good* and *artless La Fontaine*, the more we are convinced they are a book for all ages, and the manual of the man of taste.

3. It was only under the reign of *Louis the Just*, (XIII.) that good taste began to show itself in France : but it was under that of *Louis the Great* that it was carried to perfection.

(1.) *By*, par des ; *order*, ordre ; *is always equal*, se soutenir ; *possesses*, avoir.
(2.) *The more we*, plus on ; *artless*, simple ; *are convinced*, on se convaincre ; *they are*, que c'est ; *a*, le ; *for*, de ; *manual*, manuel.
(3.) *Only*, ne que ; *carried*, porter à.

¶ EXERCISE.

1. It has been said of the Telemachus of the virtuous Fénélon, that it is *the most useful* 2 present 1 the muses have made to mankind ; for, could the happiness of man be produced by a poem, it would be by that.

2. *The smoothest* 2 *waters* 1 often conceal *the most dangerous* 2 gulfs 1.

(1.) *It has been said*, on a dit, *présent*, don que ; *have made*, subj-3 ; *could*, (if the, &c. could, ind-2 ;) *be produced by*, naître de ; *would be*, naître, cond-1.
(2.) *Smoothest*, tranquille.

mauvais, méchant, meilleur, moindre, petit, saint, vieux, and *vrai,* when taken in their literal sense.

EXAMPLES.

Mon père,	My father.	*Plusieurs officiers,*	Several officers.
Quel homme,	What man.	*Grand homme,*	Great man.
Vieille femme,	Old woman.	*Six arbres,*	Six trees.
Dix guinées,	10 guineas.	*Chétive mine,*	Mean look.

EXCEPTION 1. The pronoun *quelconque.*

EXAMPLE.

D'une manière quelconque,	In whatever manner.

2. Adjectives of number, joined to proper names, pronouns, and substantives, as quotations.

EXAMPLES.

George Trois,	George IIId.	*Chapitre dix,*	Chapter 10th.
Lui dixième,	He the tenth.	*Page trente,*	Page the 30th.

3. The above sixteen adjectives, when connected by a conjunction with another adjective, which is to be placed after the substantive.

EXERCISE ON THE PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

1. There have been ages, when a *great man* was a sort of prodigy produced by a mistake of nature.

2. In almost all nations, the *great geniuses* that have adorned them were contemporaries.

3. *Young people,* says Horace, are supple to the enticements of vice, lavish, presumptuous, and equally impetuous and light in their passions; *old people,* on the contrary, are covetous, dilatory, timid, ever alarmed about the future, always complaining, hard to please, panegyrists of times past, censors of the present, and great givers of advice.

4. *What man* was ever satisfied with his condition, and dissatisfied with his abilities?

5. *Thirty chambers,* which have a communication one with another, and each of them an iron door, with six huge bolts, are the places where he shuts himself up.

(1.) *Ages,* des siècles; *when,* où; *produced,* enfanter.

(2.) *In,* chez; *nations,* peuple; *adorned,* illustrer, ind-4.

(3.) *People,* gens; *supple,* souple; *lavish,* prodigue; *impetuous,* vif; *old,* f. pl. (the following adjectives in. pl.;) *covetous,* avare; *dilatory,* temporiseur; *about,* sur; *complaining,* plaintif; *hard,* difficile; *please,* contenter; *times,* sing.

(4.) *Dissatisfied,* mécontent; *abilities,* esprit.

(5.) *Have a communication,* communiquer; *each of them,* dont chacun avoir; *huge,* gros; *bolts,* vérrou; *places,* lieu, sing.; *shuts himself,* se renfermer.

EXAMPLE.

C'est une femme grande et bien faite, She is a tall well-made woman.

REM. In English, two, or even several adjectives may qualify a substantive, without a conjunction : but in French, this is generally required, as, *c'est un homme aimable et poli*, he is an amiable well-behaved man ; EXCEPT when custom allows the substantives to be placed *between* two adjectives ; as, *c'est un grand homme sec*, he is a tall thin man.

RULE II. Adjectives formed from the participle present of verbs, are, generally, placed after the substantive ; *ouvrage divertissant*, entertaining work ; and from the participle past, always ; *figure arrondie*, round figure ; those expressing—form, *table ovale*, oval table ;—colour, *maison blanche*, white house ;—taste, *herbe amère*, bitter herb ;—sound, *orgue harmonieux*, harmonious organ ;—action, *procureur actif*, active attorney ;—effect, *coutume abusive*, custom founded in abuse ;—arrangement, *ordre grammatical*, grammatical order ;—species, *qualité occulte*, occult quality ;—nation, *générosité Anglaise*, English generosity ;—those ending in *-esque*, *-il*, *-ule*, *-ic*, *-ique*, *-in* :

Style burlesque,	Buslesque style.	*Bien public,*	Public welfare.
Jargon puéril,	Childish jargon.	*Ris sardonique,*	Sardonic grin.
Femme crédule,	Credulous woman.	*Voix enfantine.*	Childish voice.

but in this, custom is the best guide.†

---

† EXERCISE.

1. An *affected* simplicity is a *refined* imposture.

2. The *smiling* images of Theocritus, Virgil, and Gessner, excite in the soul a soft sensibility.

3. In that *antique* palace are to be seen neither *wreathed* columns, nor *gilded* wainscots, nor *valuable* basso-relievoes, nor

(1.) *Refined*, délicat. (2.) *Smiling*, riant ; *excite*, porter ; *soft*, doux.
(3.) *Are to be seen*, on ne voit ; *wreathed*, torse ; *wainscots*, lambris ; *basso-relievoes*, bas relief ; *cielings*, plafond ; *curiously*, artistement ; *had existence*, exister.

RULE III. Although it may seem that adjectives expressing moral qualities are placed indifferently before, or after the substantive; yet taste and a correct ear will assign them their proper situation.

In conversation, or in a broken, loose style, it may be indifferent to say *femme aimable*, or *aimable femme*; *talens sublimes*, or *sublimes talens*, &c.; but in the dignified style, the place of the adjective may, in a variety of instances, affect the beauty of a sentence.‡

III.

REGIMEN OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE. A noun may be governed by two adjectives, provided these do not require different regimens, as:

ceilings curiously *painted*, nor *grotesque* figures of animals, which never had existence but in the imagination of a child or a madman.

4. If *human* life is exposed to many troubles, it is also susceptible of many pleasures.

5. A *ridiculous* man is seldom so by halves.

6. *Spanish* manners have, at first sight, something harsh and uncivilized.

7. *French* urbanity has become a proverb among *foreign* nations.

(4.) *Many*, bien de; *troubles*, peine. (5.) *So*, le; *by halves*, à demi.
(6.) *Spanish*, Espagnol; *manners*, mœurs; *at first sight*, au premier abord; *uncivilized*, sauvage.
(7.) *Become*, passer en; *among*, chez.

‡ EXERCISE.

1. An *amiable* woman gives to every thing she says an *inexpressible* grace; the more we hear, the more we wish to hear her.

2. The *majestic* eloquence of Bossuet is like a river, which carries away every thing in its rapid course.

3. The *sublime* compositions of Rubens have made 1 an English traveller 3 say 2, that this *famous* painter was born in Flanders, through a mistake of nature.

(1.) *Give to*, repandre sur; *we*, on.
(2.) *River*, fleuve; *carries away*, entraîner; *its rapid course*, la rapidité de son cours.
(3.) *Say*, dire à; *famous*, célèbre; *through*, par; *mistake*, méprise.

Cet homme est utile *et* cher à sa famille, that man is useful and dear to his family. But it would be incorrect to say : *Cet homme est* utile *et* chéri de sa famille, that man is useful and beloved by his family ; because the adjective *utile* does not govern the preposition *de*.¶

IV.

ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

Unième is used only after *vingt*, *trente*, *quarante*, *cinquante*, *soixante*, *quatre-vingt*, *cent*, and *mille*. *C'est la vingt-et unième fois*, it is the twenty-first time ; see page 99.

Cent, in the plural takes *s*, except when followed by another noun of number, as,

Ils étaient deux cents,	They were two hundred.
Trois cents *hommes*,	Three hundred men.
Ils étaient deux cent dix.	They were two hundred and ten.

Vingt, in *quatre-vingt*, and *six-vingt*, also takes *s*, when followed by a substantive, as,

Quatre-vingts hommes,	Eighty men.
Cent-vingt abricots,	Six score apricots.

But it takes no *s*, when followed by another term expressing number, *quatre-vingt-un arbres*, *quatre-vingt-dix hommes*.

The ordinal numbers, collective and distributive, always take the sign of the plural : *les premières dou-*

¶ EXERCISE ON THE REGIMEN OF ADJECTIVES.

1. A young man, whose actions are all regulated by honour, and whose only aim is perfection in every thing, is *beloved* and *courted* by every body.

2. Cardinal Richelieu was all his life-time *feared* and *hated* by the great whom he had humbled.

3. A young lady, mild, polite, and delicate, who sees in the advantages of birth, riches, wit, and beauty, nothing but incitements to virtue, is very certain of being *beloved* and *esteemed* by every body.

(1.) *Actions are regulated by honour*, l'honneur dirige les actions ; *whose only aim is*, qui ne se propose que ; *courted*, recherché.

(2.) *Young lady*, demoiselle ; *delicate*, décent ; *nothing but*, ne que ; *incitements*, encouragement ; *certain*, assuré.

zaines, the first dozens ; *les quatre cinquièmes*, the four fifths.

For dates the French write *mil*, as *mil sept cent-quatre-vingt-dix-neuf*, one thousand seven hundred and ninety-nine, &c. see p. 100.

REM. *Cent* and *mille* are used indefinitely, as,

Il lui fit cent *caresses*,	He showed him *a hundred* marks of kindness.
Faites-lui mille *amitiés de ma part*,†	Present him for me *a thousand* compliments.

The French say, *le onze*, *du onze*, *au onze*, *sur les onze heures*, *sur les une heure*, pronouncing the words *onze* and *une*, as if they were written with an *h* aspirated.

The cardinal numbers are used for the ordinal.

1. In reckoning time, that is, the *hour* of the day, the *day* of the month, the *year* of an era, as, *il est trois heures*, it is three o'clock ; *le vingt de Mars*, the

† EXERCISE ON THE ADJECTIVE OF NUMBERS.

1. It was the *thirty-first* year after so glorious a peace, when the war broke out again with a fury of which history offers few examples.

2. There were only *three hundred*, and in spite of their inferiority in numbers*, they attacked the enemy, beat and dispersed them.

3. He has sold his country house for* *two thousand five hundred and fifty* pounds.

4. Choose out of your nursery *eighty* fruit trees, and *ninety* dwarf-trees, divide them into dozens, and put in the two first dozens of each sort, those whose fruits are most esteemed.

5. When Louis the Fourteenth made his entry into Strasbourg, the Swiss deputies having come to pay their respects to him, Le Tellier, archbishop of Rheims, who saw among them the bishop of Basle, said to one near him : That bishop is apparently some miserable character.—How, replied the other, he has a *hundred thousand* livres a year.—Oh ! oh ! said the archbishop, he is then a respectable man ; and showed him a thousand civilities.

(1.) *Year*, année ; *when*, que ; *broke out again*, se rallumer.
(2.) *Only*, ne que ; *in spite of*, malgré. (3.) *Pounds*, livre sterling.
(4.) *Out of*, dans ; *nursery*, pépinière ; *fruit trees*, pied d'arbre fruitier ; *dwarf-trees*, arbre nain.
(5.) *Swiss*, (of the Swiss ;) *pay*, presenter ; *respect*, hommage, pl. ; *one near him*, son voisin ; *that bishop*, &c. c'est un misérable apparement que cet évêque ; *a year*, de rente ; *shewed*, faire ; *civilities*, caresse.

twentieth of March ; *l'an mil sept cent dix*, &c. See pages 99, 100.

3. In speaking of the order of sovereigns, as, *Louis seize, George trois ;* except the first two of the series, as, *Henri premier, George second. Quint* for *cinq* is only said of the *Empereur Charles-quint*, and the *Pape Sixte-quint.*‡

CHAP. IV.

OF THE PRONOUNS.

I.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

I.

Office of Personal Pronouns.

The personal pronouns have the three characteristics of the substantive, that is, subject, regimen, and apostrophe ; but with this difference, that some always form the subject ; two only are used as an apostrophe : some always form the regimen, and lastly, others are sometimes the subject and sometimes the regimen.

‡ EXERCISE.

1. They made in the parish and in the neighbouring places a collection which produced a *hundred and twenty-one* guineas.

2. William, surnamed the Conqueror, king of England and duke of Normandy, was one of the greatest generals of the *eleventh* century ; he was born at Falaise, and was the natural son of Robert duke of Normandy, and of Arlotte, a furrier's daughter.

3. Make haste ; it will soon be *ten* o'clock. We shall have a good deal of difficulty to arrive in time.

4. The winter was so severe in *one thousand seven hundred and nine*, that there was but one olive tree that resisted it*, in a plain where there had been more than ten thousand.

5. It was the *twenty-first* of January, one thousand seven hundred and ninety-three, that the unhappy Louis *the sixteenth* was led to the scaffold.

(1.) *They*, on ; *neighbouring places*, voisinage, sing. ; *collection*, quête.
(2.) *William*, Guillaume ; *furrier*, fourreur.
(3.) *Make haste*, se dépêcher ; *will be*, ind-1 ; *a good deal of difficulty*, bien de la peine ; *in*, à.
(4.) *Severe*, rude ; *but*, ne que ; *had been*, ind-2.

Je, tu, il, and *ils,* are always the subject ; these four pronouns cannot be separated from the verb which they govern, but by personal pronouns acting as a regimen, or by the negative *ne.*

EXAMPLES.

Je ne lui en veux rien dire,	I will say nothing to him about it.
Tu en apprendras des nouvelles,	Thou wilt hear news of it.
Il nous raconta son histoire,	He told us his history.
Ils sont survenus à l'improviste,	They are come unexpectedly.

The *two* acting as an apostrophe are *toi* and *vous,* whether they stand alone, or are preceded by the interjection *ô ;* as, *toi, ô toi : vous, ô vous.*¶

Me, te, se, leur, le, la, les, y, and *en,* are always used as a regimen :—*direct,* when acted upon by the verb : —*indirect,* when referable to the prepositions *à* or *de,* (see p. 271, 272.) They always *precede* the *verb,* except in the imperative when affirmative ; and can never

---

¶ EXERCISE ON PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. The better to bear the irksomeness of captivity and solitude, *I* sought for books ; for *I* was overwhelmed with melancholy, for want of some knowledge to cherish and support my mind.

2. Since *thou* art more obdurate and unjust than thy father, mayest *thou* suffer evils more lasting and more cruel than his !

3. What ! say *they,* do not men die fast enough without destroying each other ? Life is so short, and yet it seems that it appears too long *to them.* Are *they* sent into the world to tear each other in pieces, and to make themselves wretched ?

4. O *thou,* my son, my dear son, ease my heart : restore me what is dearer to me than my life. Restore to me my lost son, and restore thyself to thyself.

5. O *ye,* who hear me with so much attention, believe not that I despise men : no, no, I am sensible how glorious it is to toil to make them virtuous and happy ; but this toil is full of anxieties and dangers.

(1.) *To bear,* supporter ; *irksomeness,* ennui ; *overwhelmed with,* accablé de ; *for want,* faute ; *to cherish,* qui pût nourrir ; *support,* soutenir.

(2.) *Obdurate,* dur ; *mayest,* pouvoir, subj-1 ; *lasting,* long.

(3.) *Die fast enough,* être assez mortel ; *destroying each other,* se donner encore une mort précipitée ; *sent into,* sur ; *world,* terre ; *tear in pieces,* se déchirer ; *make themselves,* se rendre.

(4.) *Ease,* soulager ; *restore,* rendre ; *lost* (whom I have lost), perdre.

(5.) *I am sensible,* savoir ; *glorious,* grand ; *to toil,* travailler à ; *toils,* travail ; *anxiety,* inquiétude.

be separated from *it* by any other word, except *tout, rien,* and *jamais,* which may intervene before an infinitive.

EXAMPLES.

C'est leur tout *refuser,*	It is refusing them every thing.
C'est ne me rien *permettre,*	It is allowing me nothing.
Il a juré de ne lui jamais *pardonner,*	He has sworn he would never pardon him.

Me, te, se, form a regimen sometimes *direct,* and sometimes *indirect;—direct,* when they represent *moi, toi, soi ;—indirect,* when they supply the place of *à moi, à toi, à soi.*

EXAMPLES.

Vous me soupçonnez mal à propos,	You suspect me unjustly
Je t'en remercie,	I thank thee for it.
Il se perd de gaieté de cœur.	He ruins himself out of wantonness.
Vous me donnez un sage conseil,	You give me prudent advice.
Je te donne cela,	I give thee that.
Il se donne bien du mouvement,	He is an active stirring man.

Leur is always indirect, as it stands for *à eux,* or *à elles.*

EXAMPLES.

Je leur représentai le tort, qu'ils, ou *qu'elles se faisaient,*†	I represented to them the injury they did themselves.

EXERCISE.

1. He has been speaking *to them* with such energy, as has astonished *them.*

2. Women ought to be very circumspect; for a mere appearance is sometimes more prejudicial *to them* than a real fault.

3. He comes up to me with a smiling countenance, and pressing my hand, says: My friend, I expect you to-morrow at my house.

4. He said *to me:* Wilt thou torment thyself incessantly for advantages, the enjoyment 2 of which 1 could not render *thee* more happy? Cast thy eyes round thee: see how every thing

(1.) *Such energy as,* une force qui.
(2.) *Mere,* simple ; *more prejudicial,* faire plus de tort.
(3.) *Comes up—with,* aborder—de ; *pressing,* serrer ; *my hand,* la main ; *says,* il me dit ; *at my house,* chez moi.
(4.) *Incessantly,* sans cesse ; *advantages,* des biens ; *could,* savoir, cond-1 ; *cast,* porter ; *thy,* art. ; *smiles,* sourire.

Le, la, les, are always direct ; as,

je le *vois, je* la *vois,*	for	*je vois* lui, *je vois* elle.
je les *vois,*	—	*je vois* eux, *je vois* elles.

But *y* and *en* are always indirect ; as,

Je n'y entends rien,	for	*je n'entends rien* à cela.
ces fruits sont bons, en *voulez-vous ?*	—	*voulez-vous* d'iceux ?
*avez-vous reçu de l'argent ? —oui, j'*en *ai reçu.*	—	*un peu une certaine somme,* or *quantité* d'argent.

Though seeming to perform the function of regimen *direct*, in this last and other phrases of the same kind, it is obvious that there is in the word *en* an ellipsis, which may be readily supplied. See p. 106.‡

---

smiles *at thee*, and seems to invite *thee* to prefer a retired and tranquil life to the tumultuous pleasures of a vain 2 world 1.

5. The ambitious man * agitates, torments, and destroys *himself* to obtain the places or the honours to which he aspires ; and when he has obtained *them*, he is still not satisfied.

(5.) *Destroys*, consumer ; *to*, pour.

---

‡ EXERCISE.

1. I have known *him* since his childhood, and I always loved *him* on account of the goodness of his character.

2. This woman is always occupied in doing good works : you see *her* constantly consoling the unhappy, relieving the poor, reconciling enemies, and promoting the happiness of every one around *her*.

3. The more you live with men, the more you will be convinced that it is necessary to know *them* well before you * form a connexion with them.

4. Enjoy the pleasures of the world, I consent *to it* ; but never give yourself up *to them*.

5. I shall never consent to that foolish scheme ; do not mention it any * more.

6. Have you received some copies of the new work ? Yes, I have, (received *some.*)

(1.) *Have known*, connaître, ind-1 ; *loved*, ind-1 ; *on account*, à cause ; *the goodness of his*, (his good.)

(2.) *In*, à ; *works*, œuvres, f. pl. ; *constantly*, sans cesse ; *consoling*, &c. inf-1 ; *relieving*, assister ; *promoting*, faire ; *every one around her*, tout ce qui l'environne.

(3.) *Live*, ind-7 ; *be convinced*, se convaincre ; *before*, avant de ; *form a connexion*, vous lier.

(4.) *Enjoy*, jouir de ; *give yourself up*, se livrer.

(5.) *Scheme*, entreprise ; *mention*, parler de. (6.) *Copies*, exemplaire.

The pronouns, which are sometimes the subject and sometimes the regimen, are *nous, vous, moi, toi, lui, elle, eux, elles.*

Nous and *vous* are the subject in, *nous aimons, vous aimez ;* the regimen direct in, *ils nous aiment, ils vous aiment;* and indirect in, *ils nous parlent, ils vous parlent.*

In general, *moi, toi,* are only the subject by apposition, or reduplication, whether they precede, or follow the verb, as,

Moi, dont il déchire la réputation, je ne lui ai jamais rendu que de bons offices,	I, whose reputation he is aspersing, always did him acts of kindness.
Toi, qui fais tant le brave, tu oserais, &c.	Wouldst thou, who pretendest to be so brave, dare, &c. !
Je prétends, moi,	I do maintain, I.
Tu dis donc, toi,	Thou sayest then, thou.

Rem. Sometimes the personal pronouns *je* and *tu* are not expressed, but understood, as,

Moi, trahir le meilleur de mes amis !	I, betray my best friend !
Faire une lâcheté, toi !	Thou, be guilty of such baseness !

that is, *je voudrais,* &c. ! *tu pourrais,* &c. !

They are likewise the subject, when they are placed in a kind of apposition expressed by *ce* and *il* in impersonal verbs, as, *qui fut bien aise ? ce fut moi ; ce ne peut être que toi ; que vous reste-t-il ?—moi.*

After a conjunction, they are either the subject, or regimen, according to the nature of the phrase, as, *nous y étions, mon père et moi ; il ne craint ni toi ni moi.*

In phrases which are not imperative, *toi* and *moi* can only be the object by apposition before or after the verb, as, *voudriez-vous me perdre, moi, votre allié,* &c. *toi, je te soupçonnerais de perfidie !*

After a preposition, they alone can be employed, as, *vous servirez-vous de moi ? selon moi, vous avez raison ; il est fâché contre toi.*

What has just been remarked of *toi* and *moi,* is applicable to *lui,* but with this difference, that *lui* can

only be the object after *ne—que*, signifying *only*, or in distributive phrases, as,

N'aimez que lui, je ne le trouve pas mauvais; mais ne me haïssez pas.	That you should like only him, I do not disapprove, but do not hate me.

So, *protégez-nous, lui, à cause de*, &c. *et moi, parce que*, &c. we may likewise say by apposition, *aimez-le, lui qui*, &c.

Eux is employed in the same manner as *lui*, but differs from it in this, that it cannot be the regimen indirect, except after a preposition, as, *parliez-vous d'eux ? est-ce à eux que vous parlez ?*

REM. *Lui* and *eux* may be the subject in distributive phrases without being in apposition, as,

Mes frères et mon cousin m'ont secouru ; eux m'ont relevé, et lui m'a pansé,	My brothers and cousin assisted me ; they took me up, and he dressed my wounds.

The natural office of *elle* and *elles* is to form the subject ; however they are susceptible of all the other uses just mentioned, except that they cannot be the regimen indirect, unless preceded by a preposition, as, *c'est à elles que je parle.*†

---

† EXERCISE.

1. In the education of youth, we should propose to ourselves to cultivate, to polish their understanding, and thus to enable them to fill with dignity the different stations assigned them ; but, above all, we ought to instruct them in that religious worship which God requires *of them*.

2. What ! *you* would suffer *yourself* to be overwhelmed by adversity !

3. *I !* stoop to the man who has imbrued his hands in the blood of his king !

4. *Thou !* take that undertaking upon thyself ? Canst * thou think of it.

(1.) *Youth*, jeunes gens ; *should*, devoir, ind-1 ; *to cultivate*, (to them) ; *to polish*, (to them,) orner ; *understanding*, l'esprit ; *enable*, disposer ; *stations*, place (which are) *assigned*, (to) *them* ; *worship*, culte ; *requires*, demander.

(2.) *Suffer yourself*, se laisser, cond-1 ; *to be overwhelmed*, abattre.

(3.) *Stoop to*, s'abaisser devant, subj-1 ; *imbrued*, souiller ; *in*, de.

(4.) *Take upon thyself*, se charger, cond-1 ; *of it*, y.

II.

ON THE PRONOUN *soi*.

Soi is generally accompanied by a preposition, and is used in phrases, where there is an indeterminate pronoun, either expressed or understood : *on doit rarement parler de soi ; il est essentiel de prendre garde à soi.*

---

5. Your two brothers and mine take charge of the enterprise ; *they* find the money, and *he* will manage the work.

6. It is *I* who have engaged him to undertake this journey.

7. It is *thou* who hast brought this misfortune on thyself.

8. When you are at Rome, write *to me* as often as you can, and give *me* an account of every thing that can interest me

9. He told it *to thee thyself.*

10. Fortune, like a traveller, shifts from inn to inn : if she lodges to-day *with me,* to-morrow, perhaps, she will lodge *with thee.*

11. Whom dost thou think we were talking of?—it was *of thee.*

12. Descartes deserves immortal praise, because it is *he* who has made reason 2 triumph 1 over authority in philosophy.

13. He is dissatisfied *with himself.*

14. She is never satisfied *with herself.*

15. The indiscreet often betray *themselves.*

16. Saumaise, speaking of the English authors, said, that he had learned more from *them* than from any other.

17. To love a person, is to render him, on every occasion, all the services in our power, and to afford him, in society, every comfort that depends *upon us.*

(5.) *Take charge*, se charger ; *find*, fournir ; *money*, fonds, pl. ; *manage*, conduire, ind-1.

(6.) *Undertake*, faire ; *journey*, voyage.

(7.) *Hast brought on thyself*, s'attirer, ind-4.

(8.) *Are*, ind-7 ; *can*, ind-7 ; *give*, faire ; *an account*, le détail.

(9.) *Told*, dire, ind-4.

(10.) *Shifts from inn to inn*, changer d'auberge ; *with*, chez ; *she will lodge*, se être.

(11.) *Were talking*, parler, subj-2.

(12.) *Triumph over*, triompher de.

(13.) *Is dissatisfied with*, se déplaire.

(14.) *Satisfied with*, content de.

(15.) *Betray*, se trahir.

(17.) *In our power*, dont on être capable ; *afford*, procurer à ; *comfort*, agrément ; *depends upon*, dépendre de.

In this case, it is the regimen indirect ; but it may be employed without a preposition.

1. With the verb *être*, as, *En cherchant à tromper les autres, c'est souvent* soi *qu'on trompe*, or *on est souvent trompé soi-même*, in attempting to deceive others, we frequently deceive ourselves. In this situation it is the subject.

2. After *ne que*, or by opposition, as,

N'aimer que soi, c'est n'être bon à rien,	To love only ourselves, is being good for very little.
Penser ainsi, c'est s'aveugler soi-même,	To think in this manner, is to blind one's-self.

It is in these examples the regimen ; but when *de soi* and *en soi* are used in a definitive sense in speaking of things, they mean *de sa nature*, and *dans sa nature*.‡

III.

CASES WHERE THE PRONOUNS *elle, elles, eux, lui, leur,* MAY APPLY TO THINGS.

The personal pronouns *elle* and *elles*, when the regimen, generally apply to persons only. Thus, in speak-

‡ EXERCISE ON THE PRONOUN *soi*.

1. To excuse in *one's-self* the follies which one cannot excuse in others, is to prefer being a fool *one's-self* to seeing others so.

2. To be too much dissatisfied with *ourselves*, is a weakness ; but to be too much satisfied *(with ourselves)* is *(a)* folly.

3. We ought to despise no one : how often have we needed the assistance of one more insignificant than *ourselves* ?

4. If we did not attend so much to *ourselves*, there would be less egotism in the world.

5. Vice is odious in *itself*.

6. The loadstone attracts iron *(to itself.)*

(1.) *Follies*, sottises ; *others*, autrui ; *prefer*, aimer mieux ; *fool*, sot ; *to seeing*, que de voir ; *so*, tel.

(3.) *We ought*, falloir, ind-1 ; *how often*, combien de fois ; *we*, on ; *needed the assistance*, n'avoir pas besoin ; *insignificant*, petit.

(4.) *We*, on ; *attend to*, s'occuper de ; *egotism*, égoïsme.

(6.) *Loadstone* aimant.

ing of a woman, we must say, *Je m'approchai d'elle, je m'assis près d'elle;* but, in speaking of a table, *Je m'en approchai, je m'assis auprès.*

However, with the prepositions *avec*, *après*, *à*, *de*, *pour*, *en*, &c. they may be applied to things. Thus it is correct to say of a river,

Cette rivière est si rapide, quand elle déborde, qu'elle entraîne avec elle tout ce qu'elle rencontre; elle ne laisse après elle que du sable et des cailloux,

That river is so rapid when it overflows, that it carries away every thing it meets with in its course; it leaves nothing behind but sand and pebbles.

—of an enemy's army,

Nous marchâmes à elle,

We marched up to it.

—of things, reasons, truth, &c. as,

Ces choses sont bonnes d'elles-mêmes,

These things are good in themselves.

J'aime la vérité au point que je sacrificerais tout pour elle,

I love truth to that degree, that I would sacrifice every thing for it.

Ces raisons sont solides en elles-mêmes,

Those reasons are solid in themselves.

After the verb *être*, they are applied only to persons, and likewise when they are followed by the relatives *qui* and *que*, as, *C'est à elle, c'est d'elles que je parle, c'est elle-même qui vient.*

The same may be said of the pronoun *eux*, which is also generally applied to persons only, yet custom allows us to say,

Ce chien et ces oiseaux font tout mon plaisir; je n'aime qu'eux; eux seuls sont mon amusement; je ne songe qu'à eux.

This dog and these birds are my only pleasure, I love nothing but them; they alone are my diversion: I think of nothing else.

Lui and *leur* are generally applied to persons, but are sometimes used in speaking of animals, plants, and even inanimate objects, as,

Ces chevaux sont rendus, faites-leur donner un peu de vin,

Those horses are exhausted, give them a little wine.

Ces orangers vont périr, si on ne leur donne de l'eau,

Those orange-trees will die unless they have a little water.

Ces murs sont mal faits, on ne leur a pas donné assez de talus,	Those walls are not skilfully built, they are not sufficiently sloped upward.

Upon these previous observations then may be founded the following

RULE. The pronouns *elle, elles, eux, lui,* and *leur,* ought never to be applied to things, except when custom does not allow them to be replaced by the pronouns *y* and *en.*†

† EXERCISE.

1. Virtue is the first of blessings; it is *from it* alone we are to expect happiness.

2. The labyrinth had been built upon the lake Mæris, and they had given *it* a prospect proportioned to its grandeur.

3. Mountains are frequented on account of the air one breathes on them: how many people are indebted *to them* for the recovery of their health?

4. War brings in its train numberless evils.

5. It is a delicate 2 affair 1 which must not be too deeply investigated, it must be lightly passed over.

6. I have had my house repaired, and have given *it* quite * a new appearance.

7. Those trees are too much loaded; strip *them* of part of their fruit.

8. This book cost me a great deal, but I am indebted *to it* for my knowledge.

9. Self-love is captious; we, however, take *it* for our * guide; *to it* are all our actions directed, and *from it* we take counsel.

10. These arguments, although very solid *in themselves,* yet made no impression upon him, so powerful a chain is habit.

11. These reasons convinced me, and *by them* I formed my decision.

12. I leave you the care of that bird; do not forget to give *it* water.

(1.) *Blessings*, bien; *are*, devoir.
(2.) *Had been built*, on bâtir, ind-6; *prospect.* vue.
(3.) *On account*, à cause; *breathes*, respirer; *on them*, y; *are indebted for*, devoir; *recovery*, rétablissement.
(4.) *Brings*, entrainer; *in its train*, avec elle; *numberless*, bien de.
(5.) *Affair*, matière; *must*, ind-1; *be deeply investigated*, approfondir, inf-1; *be passed*, glisser; *over*, dessus.
(6.) *Have had*, faire, ind-4; *appearance*, air.
(7.) *Strip*, ôter; *of part*, une partie.
(8.) *A great deal*, cher; *knowledge*, instruction.
(9.) *We*, (it is *it* that we:) *to it*, (it is *to it* that we direct all, &c.;) *direct*, rapporter; *from it*, (and it is *from it* that, &c.)
(10.) *No*, ne aucun; *so strong*, &c. (so much habit is a, &c.) *habit*, habitude.
(11.) *And from*, (and it is from them that;) *by*, d'après; *formed my decision*, se decider.

IV.

DIFFICULTY RESPECTING THE PRONOUN *le* EXPLAINED

Le, la, les, are sometimes pronouns, and sometimes articles. The article is always followed by a noun, *le roi, la reine, les hommes ;* whereas the pronoun is always joined to a verb, *je le connais, je la respecte, je les estime.*

The pronoun *le* may supply the place of a substantive, or an adjective, or even of a member of a sentence.

There is no difficulty, when it relates to a whole member of a sentence ; it is then always put in the masculine singular, as,

On doit s'accommoder à l'humeur des autres autant qu'on le peut,§	We ought to accommodate ourselves to the temper of others as much as we can.

Nor is there any difficulty when *le* supplies the place of a substantive ; it then always takes the gender and number of that substantive, as, *Madame, êtes-vous la mère de cet enfant ?—Oui, je la suis.* Madame, are you the mother of that child ?—Yes, I am. *Mesdames, êtez-vous les parentes dont Monsieur m'a parlé ?—Oui, nous les sommes.*

Rem. Though the word relating to the following questions, is not expressed in English, yet it must

---

§ EXERCISE.

1. The laws of nature and decency oblige us equally to defend the honour and interest of our parents, when we can do *it* without injustice.

2. We ought not to condemn, after their death, those that have not been *condemned* during their life.

(1.) *Decency*, bienséance.
(2.) *We ought*, falloir ; *condemned*, le.

always be so in French : this word is *le*, which takes either gender, or number, according to its relation.¶

It only remains, therefore, to lay down the following

RULE. The pronoun *le* takes neither gender nor number, when occupying the place of an adjective.

EXAMPLES.

Madame, êtes-vous enrhumée ?—Oui, je le suis.
Mesdames, êtes-vous contentes de ce discours ?—Oui, nous le sommes.
Y eut-il jamais une femme plus malheureuse que je le suis ?

REM. This rule is observed, when the substantives are used adjectively, as,

Madame, êtes-vous mère ?—Oui, je le suis.
Mesdames, êtes-vous parentes ?—Oui, nous le sommes.
Elle est fille, et le sera toute sa vie.

But not if the adjectives be used substantively, as,

Madame, êtes-vous la malade ?—Oui, je la suis.

Therefore this question ; *Etes-vous fille de M. le duc ?* is to be answered, *Oui, je le suis ;* but this, *Etes-vous la fille de M. le duc ?—Oui, je la suis.*†

¶ EXERCISE.

1. Is that your idea ?—Can you doubt that it is ?
2. Are you Mrs. Such-a-one ?—Yes, I am.
3. Are those your servants ?—Yes, they are.

(1.) *Idea*, pensée ; *that it is*, ce être, subj-t.
(2.) *Mrs.* Madame ; *such-a-one*, un tel. (3.) *Those*, ce là ; *they*, ce.

† EXERCISE.

1. Ladies, are you glad to have seen the new piece ?—Yes, we are.
2. I, a * slave ! I, born to command ! alas ! it is but too true that I am *so*.
3. She was jealous of her authority, and she ought to be *so*.
4. Was there ever a girl more unhappy, and treated with more ridicule than I am ?
5. You have found me amiable : why have I ceased to appear *so* to you ?
6. Have we ever been so quiet as we are ?
7. Madam, are you married ?—Yes, I am.
8. Madam, are you the bride ?—Yes, I am.

(1.) *Ladies*, Mesdames.
(2.) *Slave*, esclave ; *but*, ne que
(3.) *Ought*, devoir, ind-2.
(4.) *With more ridicule*, plus ridiculement.

The same rule is likewise observed with the article placed before *plus*, or *moins*, and an adjective. It takes neither gender nor number, when there is no comparison, as,

Le lune ne nous éclaire pas autant que le soleil, même quand elle est le plus brillante,	The moon does not give us so much light as the sun, even when it shines brightest.

But it takes them when there is comparison, as,

De toutes les planètes, la lune est la plus brillante pour nous,‡	Of all the planets, the moon is the most brilliant to us.

V.

REPETITION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

RULE I. Pronouns expressing the first and second persons, when the subject must be repeated before all the verbs, if those verbs are in different tenses; it is always even better to repeat them, when the verbs are in the same tense.

EXAMPLE.

Je soutiens et je soutiendrai toujours,	I maintain, and (I) will always maintain.
Vous dites, et vous avez toujours dit,	You say, and (you) have always said.
Accablé de douleur, je m'écriai et je dis,	Overwhelmed with sorrow, I exclaimed and (I) said.
Nous nous promenions sur le haut du rocher, et nous voyions sous nos pieds, &c.	We were walking upon the summit of the rock, and we saw under our feet, &c.

¶ EXERCISE.

1. This father could not bring himself to condemn his children, even when they were most guilty.
2. This woman has the art of shedding tears, even when she is least afflicted.
3. Out * of so many criminals, only the most guilty should be punished.
4. Although that woman displays more fortitude than the others, she is not, on that account, the least distressed.

(1.) *Could*, ind-2; *bring himself*, se résoudre.
(2.) *Shedding*, répandre de; *even when*, dans le temps même que.
(3.) *Only the most*, &c. (one must punish only the most guilty;) *only*, ne que.'
(4.) *Displays*, montrer; *fortitude*, fermeté; *on that account*, pour cela; *distressed*, affligé.

In all cases these pronouns must be repeated, though the tenses of the verbs do not change, if the first of these is followed by a regimen, as,

Vous aimerez le Seigneur votre Dieu, et vous observerez sa loi,¶	You shall love the Lord your God, and (you shall) observe his law.

RULE II. The pronouns of the third person, when they form the subject, are hardly ever repeated before verbs, except when those verbs are in different tenses.

EXAMPLES.

La bonne grâce ne gâte rien; elle ajoute à la beauté, relève la modestie, et y donne du lustre,	A graceful manner spoils nothing: it adds to beauty, heightens modesty, and gives it lustre.
Il n'a jamais rien valu, et ne vaudra jamais rien,	He never was good for any thing, and never will be.
Il est arrivé ce matin, et il repartira ce soir,	He arrived this morning, and (he) will set off again this evening.

However, perspicuity requires the repetition of the pronoun, when the second verb is preceded by a long incidental phrase, as—*Il fond sur son ennemi, et après*

¶ EXERCISE ON THE REPETITION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUN.

1. My dear child, *I* love you, and *I* shall never cease to love you: but it is that very love that I have for you which obliges me to correct you for your faults, and to punish you when you deserve it.

2. *I* heard and admired these words, which comforted me a little, but my mind was not sufficiently at liberty to make him a reply.

3. *Thou* art young, and doubtless *thou* aimest at the glory of surpassing thy comrades.

4. God has said: *you* shall love your enemies, bless those that curse you, do good to those that persecute you, and pray for those who slander you. What a difference between this morality and that of philosophers!

(1.) *Correct for*, reprendre de.
(2.) *Heard*, écouter, ind-2; *words*, discours, sing.; *my mind*, &c. (I had not the mind, &c.) *sufficiently at liberty*, assez libre; *to make a reply*, répondre à.
(3.) *Aimest at*, aspirer à; *surpassing*, l'emporter, &c.
(4.) *Slander*, calomnier; *between*, de; *and that*, à celle.

l'avoir saisi d'une main victorieuse, il le renverse, comme le cruel aquilon abat les tendres moissons qui dorent la campagne.†

RULE III. Any personal pronoun, when the *subject* must be repeated before verbs, when passing from an affirmation to a negation, and *vice versâ*, or when the verbs are joined by any conjunction, except *et* and *ni*.

EXAMPLE.

Il veut et il ne veut pas,	He will and he will not.
Il donne d'excellens principes, parce qu'il sait que les progrès ultérieurs en dépendent,	He lays down excellent principles, because he knows that upon them depends all further progress.
Il donne et reçoit,	He gives and receives.
Il ne donne ni ne reçoit,‡	He neither gives nor receives.

† EXERCISE.

1. *He* took the strongest cities, conquered the most considerable provinces, and overturned the most powerful empires.

2. *He* takes a hatchet, completely cuts down the mast which was already broken, throws it into the sea, jumps upon it amidst the furious billows, calls me by my name, and encourages me to follow him.

3. *He* marshals the soldiers, marches at their head, advances in good order towards the enemy, attacks and breaks them, and, after having entirely routed them, (he) cuts them to pieces.

(1.) *Overturned*, renverser.
(2.) *Completely cuts down*, achever de couper ; *jumps upon it*, s'élancer dessus ; *billows*, onde.
(3.) *Marshals*, ranger en bataille ; *breaks*, renverser ; *entirely routed*, achever de mettre en désordre ; *cuts*, tailler.

‡ EXERCISE.

1. It is inconceivable how whimsical she is ; from one moment to another *she* will and *she* will not.

1. The Jews are forbidden to work on the sabbath ; *they* are as it * were * locked in slumber ; *they* light no fire, and carry no water.

3. For nearly a week *she* has neither eaten nor drunk.

4. The soldier was not repressed by authority, but stopped from satiety and shame.

(1.) (She is of a whimsical cast inconceivable) *whimsical east*, bizarrerie, f.
(2.) (It is forbidden to), *forbidden*, défendre ; *sabbath*, jour du sabbat ; *locked*, enchaîné ; *slumber*, repos ; *light*, allumer.
(3.) *For*, depuis ; *nearly*, près de ; *a week*, huit jours ; *has eaten....drunk*, ind-1. (4.) *Repressed*, réprimer ; *stopped*, s'arrêter, ind-3 ; *from*, par.

RULE IV. Pronouns, when they form the regimen, repeated before any verb.

EXAMPLE.

L'idée de ses malheurs le poursuit, le tourmente et l'accable,	The idea of his misfortunes pursues (him), torments (him), and overwhelms him.
Il nous ennuie et nous obsède sans cesse,	He wearies (us) and besets us unceasingly.

EXCEPTION. It is not repeated before such compound verbs as express the repetition of the same action, when the verbs are in the same tense, as,

Je vous le dis et redis, il le fait et refait sans cesse. ¶

VI.

RELATION OF THE PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON TO A NOUN AS EXPRESSED BEFORE.

RULE. The pronouns of the third person, *il*, *ils*, *elle*, *elles*, *le*, *la*, *les*, must always relate to a noun, whether subject or regimen, taken only in a definite sense, before expressed in the same tense, but they must not be applied to a subject and regimen at the same time.

EXAMPLE.

La rose *est la reine des fleurs, aussi est*-elle *l'emblême de la beauté,*	The rose is the queen of flowers; therefore it is the emblem of beauty.

¶ EXERCISE.

1. It is taste that selects the expressions, that combines, arranges, and varies *them*, so as to produce the greatest effect.

2. Horace answered his stupid critics not so much to instruct *them*, as to expose their ignorance, and let *them* see that they did not even know what poetry was.

3. Man embellishes nature itself; he cultivates, extends, and polishes it.

(1.) *So as to*, de manière à ce qu'elles, subj-1.

(2.) *Stupid*, sot ; *not so much*, moins ; *as to*, pour ; *show*, (to them,) *their*, &c. *let see*, faire entendre ; *was*, c'était que.

J'aime l'ananas ; il *est exquis*,	I like the pine-apple ; it is delicious.

But the two following sentences would be equivocal :

Racine *a imité* Euripide, *en tout ce qu'*il *a de plus beau dans sa Phèdre*,	Racine has imitated Euripides in all that he has most beautiful in his Phedra.
Le légat publia une sentence d'interdit ; il *dura trois mois*,	The legate published a sentence of interdiction ; it lasted three months.

As in the first of these two sentences *il* may relate, either to *Racine* or to *Euripides*, and from the construction of the second sentence, *il* cannot, as it should, relate to *interdit*. Again, it is not altogether correct, to say,

Nulle paix *pour l'impie ; il* la *cherche*, elle *fuit*,	*No peace* for the wicked : he seeks it, it flies.

Because, from the construction, the pronouns *la* and *elle* seem to be used for *nulle paix*, whereas the meaning requires that they should supply the place of the substantive *paix*, in the affirmative.¶

¶ EXERCISE.

1. Poetry embraces all sorts of subjects ; *it* takes in every thing that is most brilliant in history ; *it* enters the fields of philosophy ; *it* soars to the skies ; *it* plunges into the abyss : *it* penetrates to the dead ; *it* makes the universe its domain ; and if this world be not sufficient, *it* creates new ones, which *it* embellishes with enchanting abodes, which *it* peoples with a thousand various inhabitants.

2. Egypt aimed at greatness ; and wished to * strike the eye at a distance, always pleasing *it* by the justness of proportion.

3. Egypt, satisfied with its own territory, where every thing was in abundance, thought not of conquests ; *it* extended itself in another manner, by sending colonies to every part of the globe, and with *them* civilization and laws.

(1.) *Subjects*, matière ; *takes in*, se charger de ; *that is*, y avoir de ; (in) *the fields*, *soars to*, s'élancer dans ; *plunges*, s'enfoncer ; *to*, chez ; (its domain of the universe ;) *be sufficient*, suffire ; *ones*, monde, *enchanting*, enchanté ; *abodes*, demeure ; *various*, divers.

(2.) *Greatness*, grand ; *wished*, vouloir ; *eye*, pl ; *at a distance*, dans l'éloignement ; (in) *pleasing*, contenter.

(3.) *Was in abundance*, abonder ; *thought of*, songer à ; *in*, de ; *by*, en ; *to*, par ; *part of the globe*, terre.

II.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

EXPLANATION OF SOME DIFFICULTIES ATTENDANT ON THE USE OF THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The possessive pronouns *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs,* relate either to pronouns, to things personified, or simply to things. If they relate to persons, or things personified, their place can never be supplied by others : but if they relate to things, the following rules must be observed.

The possessive pronouns are always employed,

1. When the object to which they relate is either named, or designated by a personal pronoun in the same member of a phrase.

EXAMPLES.

L'Angleterre *étend* son *commerce par toute la terre,*	England extends her commerce over the whole globe.
Elle *envoie* ses *flottes dans toutes les mers,*	She sends her fleets into every part of the ocean.

2. Before a noun, when qualified even by a single adjective, unless the noun form the regimen.

EXAMPLES.

Ses *ressources* immenses *sont inépuisables,*	Her immense resources are inexhaustible.

3. After every preposition.

EXAMPLE.

C'est par sa *position, jointe à la sagesse* de son *gouvernement, qu'elle réunit* dans son *sein de si grands avantages,*	It is by her situation, joined to the wisdom of her government, that she unites such vast advantages within herself.

---

4. The Messiah is expected by the Hebrews ; *he* comes and calls the Gentiles, as it had been announced by the prophecies ; the people that acknowledge *him* as come, is incorporated with the people that expected *him,* without a single moment of interruption.

(4.) *Gentiles,* Gentil ; (the prophecies had announced it ;) *acknowledges,* reconnaître ; *with,* à ; *without,* sans qu'il y ait ; *single,* seul.

4. Before all words which can govern the preposition *de*.

EXAMPLES.

Son *parlement est le* sanctuaire de *la plus sage politique*,	Her parliament is the seat of the wisest policy.
Son *roi n'*a de *pouvoir que pour faire le bien*,	Her king possesses power only to do good.

On all other occasions, the article, with the pronoun *en*, placed immediately before the verb, must be substituted.

EXAMPLE.

*Tout enfin contribue à m'*en *faire aimer* le *séjour ; j'*en admire *surtout* l'*exacte police, en même temps que* les *lois m'*en *paraissent extrêmement sages*,†	In short every thing conspires to make me love that residence : I particularly admire the strictness of her police, at the same time when her laws appear to me extremely wise.

---

† EXERCISE ON THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

1. A new custom was a phenomenon in Egypt : for which reason, there never was a people that preserved so long *its* customs, *its* laws, and even *its* ceremonies.

2. Solomon abandons himself to the love of women : *his* understanding declines, *his* heart weakens, and *his* piety degenerates into idolatry.

3. That superb temple was upon the summit of a hill : *its* columns were of Parian marble, and *its* gates of gold.

4. Laocoon is one of the finest statues in France : not only the whole, but all *its* features, even the least, are admirable.

5. The Thames is a magnificent river : *its* channel is so wide and so deep below London-bridge, that several thousands of vessels lie at their ease in it.

6. This fine country is justly admired by foreigners : *its* climate is delightful, *its* soil fruitful, *its* laws wise, and *its* government just and moderate.

7. The trees of that orchard have sun enough, yet *its* fruits are but indifferent.

(1.) *Phenomenon*, prodige ; *for which reason*, aussi ; *a*, de ; *preserved*, subj-3.
(2.) *Understanding*, esprit ; *declines*, baisser ; *weakens*, s'affaiblir.
(3.) *Summit*, haut ; *hill*, colline ; *Parian*, de Paros.
(4.) *In*, qu'il y ait en ; *the whole*, l'ensemble ; *even*, jusqu'à.
(5.) *Magnificent*, superbe ; *channel*, lit ; *below*, au dessous de ; *lie at*, être à ; *their*, art. ; *in it*, y.
(6.) *Justly*, avec raison ; *soil*, sol.
(7.) *Have sun enough*, être bien exposé ; *but indifferent*, assez mauvais.

Again, when there exists any doubt whether the possessive pronoun ought to be used, or not before a noun that is the regimen, the following is the

RULE. The article, not the possessive pronoun, must be put before a noun forming the regimen, when a pronoun which is either subject, or regimen, sufficiently supplies the place of that possessive, or when there is no sort of ambiguity.

EXAMPLES.

J'ai mal à la *tête*,	I have the head-ache.
Il faudrait lui *couper* la *jambe*,	It would be necessary to take off his leg.
Ce cheval a pris le *mors aux dents*,‡	That horse has run away.

8. The Seine has *its* source in Burgundy, *its* mouth is at Havre-de-Grace.

9. The pyramids of Egypt astonish, both by the enormity of *their* bulk, and the justness of *their* proportions.

10. Egypt alone could erect monuments for posterity; *its* obelisks are to this day, as well for *their* beauty as for *their* height, the principal ornaments of Rome.

11. History and geography throw mutual light on each other; a * perfect knowledge *of them* ought to enter into the plan of good education.

(8.) *Mouth*, embouchure ; *Havre*, le Havre.
(9.) *Both*, également et ; *bulk*, masse ; *and*, et par.
(10.) *Egypt alone could*, il n'appartenait qu'a l'Egypte de ; *erect*, élever ; *to this day*, encore aujourd'hui ; *as well for*, autant par ; *height*, hauteur.
(11.) *Throw mutual light*, &c. s'eclairer l'une par l'autre ; *of them*, (their.)

‡ EXERCISE.

1. During the whole winter he has had bad eyes.
2. I had a fall yesterday, and hurt *my* back and head.
3. It would be better for a man to lose *his* life than forfeit * his honour by a criminal 2 action 1.
4. In this bloody battle, he received a wound by a shot in *his* right arm, and another in *his* left leg: by dint of care *his* arm was saved, but it was necessary to amputate *his* leg.

(1.) *Has had bad*, avoir mal à.
(2.) *Had a fall*, se laisser tomber ; *hurt*, se faire mal à ; *back*, reins, pl.
(3.) *Would be better*, valoir mieux, cond-1.
(4.) *A wound by a shot*, un coup de feu ; *in*, à : *by dint*, à force ; *his arm*, &c. (they saved the arm to him ;) *was necessary*, falloir, ind-3 ; *to * amputate*,* to him.

But should either the personal pronoun, or circumstances, not remove all ambiguity, then the possessive pronoun must be joined to the noun, as,

Je *vois que* ma *jambe s'enfle*,	I see that my leg is swelling.
Il *lui donna* sa *main à baiser*,	He gave him his hand to kiss.
Elle *a donné hardiment* son *bras au chirurgien*,¶	She courageously presented her arm to the surgeon.

Ma, not *la*, because I may also see the leg of another person swelling.

Rem. 1. Although verbs which are conjugated with two pronouns of the same person generally remove every kind of amphibology, yet custom authorizes some familiar expressions, in which the possessive pronoun seems to be redundant, as,

Il se *tient ferme sur* ses *pieds*,	He stands firm upon his feet.
Je *l'ai vu*, de mes propres yeux.	I have seen it with my own eyes.

2. When speaking of an habitual complaint, the possessive pronoun is properly used, as,

Sa *migraine l'a repris*,	His head-ache is returned.

The possessive pronouns are subject to the same rules as the article ; they must therefore be repeated before all substantives which are either subject or regimen, and before adjectives which express different qualities, as,

Son *père*, sa *mère*, *et* ses *frères sont de retour*,	His father, mother, and brothers are come back.
Je lui ai montré mes *plus beaux et* mes *plus vilains habits*,	I have shewn him my finest and my ugliest dresses.

¶ EXERCISE.

1. In this interview, they made each other presents; she gave him *her* portrait, and he gave her *his* finest diamond.

2. A young surgeon preparing to bleed the great Condé, this prince said to him smiling, do not you tremble to bleed me? I, my lord, no, certainly ; it is not I, it is you who ought to tremble. The prince, charmed with the reply, immediately gave him *his* arm.

(1.) *Interview*, entrevue ; *made each other*, se faire mutuellement.
(2.) *Preparing*, se disposer ; *bleed*, saigner ; *smiling*, d'un air riant ; *it is, not I*, (it is not to me ;) *it is you*, (it is to you ;) *who ought to*, de ; *reply*, repartie.

This rule, which is seldom observed in English, is common in French to all pronominal adjectives.†

III.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Qui, when it is the subject, may very properly relate both to persons and things.

EXAMPLES.

L'homme qui *joue perd son temps,*	The man who games loses his time.
Le livre, qui *plaît le plus, n'est pas toujours le plus utile,*	The book which pleases most is not always the most useful.

But when it is the regimen, it can only be used of persons, or of things personified, whether the regimen be direct, or indirect.

EXAMPLES.

Quand on est délicat et sage dans ses goûts, on ne s'attache pas, sans savoir qui *l'on aime,*	He who is wise and discriminate in his choice, does not form an attachment, without knowing the person he loves.

† EXERCISE.

1. Whatever he may do, he always finds himself safe.
2. Can you still doubt the truth of what I tell you? Would you ask a stronger proof than that I give you, it is that I heard it, yes, heard it with *my* own ears.
3. *My* gout does not allow me a moment's repose.
4. It is in vain that I exhort you to work and study: *your* idleness, that cruel disease under * which you labour, renders useless all the exhortations of friendship.
5. If you wish to be beloved, fail not to perform the promises you have just made.
6. In the retreat that I have chosen for myself, *my* study and my garden are my greatest delight.
7. He brought me into his laboratory, and shewed me *his* large and small vessels.

(1.) *Finds himself*, se retrouver ; *safe*, sur ses jambes.
(2.) *Can*, cond-l ; *doubt*, douter de ; *ask*, exiger.
(3.) *Allow*, laisser.
(4.) *It is in vain that I*, je avoir beau ; *you labour*, vous travailler.
(5.) *Fail not*, ne pas manquer ; *perform*, remplir ; *have just made*, venir de faire.
(6.) *For myself*, (to me ;) *study*, cabinet ; *are*, faire ; *greatest*, plus cher.
(7.) *Brought*, mener ; *laboratory*, laboratoire ; *vessels*, vaisseau.

L'homme a qui *appartient ce beau jardin est très-riche,*	The man to whom this fine garden belongs is very rich.
La femme de qui *vous parlez,*	The woman of whom you are speaking.

Rem. When the regimen indirect is expressed by the preposition *de*, then *dont* should be preferred to *de qui*. It is better to say : *la femme* dont *vous parlez ;* however, when the verb expresses a kind of transfer or conveyance, *de qui* must be used, as,

Celui de qui je tiens cette nouvelle,	The person from whom I had that intelligence.

Rule I. *Qui* must not be separated from its antecedent, when that antecedent is a noun.

EXAMPLE.

Un jeune homme qui *est docile aux conseils qu'on lui donne, et* qui *aime à en recevoir, aura infailliblement du mérite,*	A young man who is obedient to the advice that is given him, and who loves to receive this, will infallibly have merit.

Rem. In some phrases *qui* may be separated from the substantive, by several words : that is, when the sense obliges us to refer it to that substantive, as,

Il a fallu, avant toute chose, vous faire lire dans l'écriture sainte, *l'histoire* du peuple de Dieu, *qui* fait le fondement de la religion.

This sentence is very correct, because, as *du peuple* determines the kind of history, and *de Dieu* the kind of people, the mind necessarily goes back to the substantive *histoire*, to which it refers the incidental phrase.

Qui may likewise be separated from its antecedent, when this antecedent is a pronoun used as the regimen direct, as,

Il la *trouva* qui *pleurait à chaudes larmes,*	He found her crying bitterly.
Je le *vois* qui *joue,*	I see him playing.

Because, in this case, the true place of the pronoun is before the verb, and it is the same as saying, *il trouva* elle qui *pleurait*, &c. *je vois* lui qui *joue*. Also in these kinds of sentences, which are real gallicisms,

Ceux-là *ne sont pas les plus malheureux,* qui *se plaignent le plus,*‡	Those are not the most unhappy who complain the most.

RULE II. The relative *qui* must always have a reference to a noun taken in a determinate sense.

EXAMPLES.

L'homme est un animal raisonnable, qui, &c. *Il me reçut avec* une politesse, qui, &c.

But we cannot say, *l'homme est* animal raisonnable, qui, &c. *Il me reçut avec* politesse, qui, &c.

REM. Though in many phrases, the determinate nature of the nouns is not expressed, yet it is clearly understood. Thus, all these phrases are correct :

Il n'a point de livre, qui *ne soit de son choix,*	He has not *a book* that is not of his own selecting.
Y a-t-il ville dans le royaume qui *soit plus favorisée ?*	Is there *a city* in the kingdom that is more favoured ?
Il se conduit en homme qui *connaît le monde,*	He behaves himself like a man who knows the world.

‡ EXERCISE.

1. A young man *who* loves vanity of dress, like a woman, is unworthy of wisdom and glory ; glory is only due to a heart *that* knows how * to * suffer pain and trample upon pleasure.

2. Thyself, O my son, my dear son, thou* thyself *that* now enjoyest a youth so cheerful and so full of pleasure, remember that this delightful age is but a flower *which* will be 1 withered 3 almost as soon 2 as blown.

3. Men pass away like flowers, *which* open in the morning, and at night are withered and trampled under foot.

4. You must have a man *that* loves nothing but truth and you, *that* will speak the truth in spite of you, *that* will force all your entrenchments ; and this necessary character is the very man whom you have sent into exile.

5. We perceived him waiting for us, quietly seated under the shade of a tree.

(1.) *Vanity of dress*, à se parer vainement ; *trample upon*, fouler aux pieds.
(2.) *Cheerful*, vif ; *full of*, féconde en ; *remember*, se souvenir ; *delightful*, bel ; *withered*, sécher ; *blown*, éclore.
(3.) *Open*, s'épanouir ; *and*, (which ;) *at night*, le soir ; *withered*, flétrir ; *under* à ; *foot*, art. pl.
(4.) *You must have*, il vous falloir ; *nothing but*, ne que ; *will speak, will force*, subj-1 ; *entrenchments*, retranchement ; *character*, homme ; *man*, même ; *sent into exile*, exiler.
(5.) *Waiting for*, (who waited,) attendre ; *under*, à.

Il est accablé de maux, qui *ne lui laissent pas un instant de repos,*	He is overwhelmed with *mis fortunes* that do not allow him a moment's rest.
C'est une sorte de fruit, qui *ne mûrit pas en Europe,*	It is a sort of *fruit* that does not ripen in Europe.

From the translation of all the above examples, it is evident that *livre, ville, maux,* are really determinate, the meaning being : *il n'a pas* un livre qui, &c. *y a-t-il* une ville qui, &c.¶

Que relates both to persons and things. It is always the regimen direct, and cannot subsist without an antecedent expressed, which it generally follows. L'homme que *je vois*, la pêche que *je mange*. We say, *generally*, because, in some instances, it may be separated from the antecedent by several words : that is, when the mind necessarily goes back to that antecedent, as in this sentence of Fléchier's,

Qu'est-ce qu'une armée ?—c'est un corps *animé d'une infinité de passions différentes,* qu'*un homme habile fait mouvoir pour la défense de la patrie.*

Rem. There are instances where *que* is apparently

¶ EXERCISE.

1. He received us with such *goodness, civility,* and *grace,* as charmed us, and made us forget all we had suffered.
2. There is no *city* in the world *where* there are more riches and a greater population.
3. Is there a *man* can say ; I shall live till to-morrow ?
4. He has no *friend* but would make for him every kind of sacrifice.
5. He is surrounded by *enemies, who* are continually observing him, and would be very glad to detect him in a fault.
6. In his retreat, he lives like a *philosopher, who* knows mankind and mistrusts them.
7. The pine-apple is *a sort of fruit that* in Europe ripens only in hot-houses.
8. That man is *a sort of pedant, who* takes words for ideas, and facts confusedly heaped together for knowledge.

(1.) *Such—as*, un—qui ; *civility*, politesse. (2.) *There are*, subj.
(3.) *Man*, (who ;) *can*, subj. (4.) *But*, qui ne ; *would make*, subj.-2.
(6.) *Like a*, en ; *philosopher*, sage ; *mistrusts*, se défier de.
(7.) *Pine-apple*, ananas ; *hot-houses*, serre chaude.
(8.) *Heaped together*, entasser ; *knowledge*, savoir.

used as regimen indirect for *à qui*, or *dont*, as : *C'est à vous* que *je parle ; c'est de lui* que *je parle ; de la façon* que *j'ai dit la chose.* But in this case, *que* is a conjunction.†

Lequel and *dont* relate both to persons and things. But *lequel* ought never to be used either as a subject, or object, except to avoid ambiguity ; for, whenever the sense is evident, *qui* or *que* must be used.

Lequel, with the preposition *de*, is either followed, or preceded by a noun, which it unites to the principal sentence. If it be followed, *dont* is preferable to *duquel*, both for persons and things. Thus :

La Tamise dont *le lit*, and not, *de laquelle.*
Le prince dont *la protection*, and not, *duquel.*

If *lequel* be preceded by the noun, we can only make use of *duquel* when speaking of things, as, *la Tamise, dans le lit* de laquelle ; and it is always better to use it when speaking of persons, as, *le prince à la protection* duquel ; *de qui* would not be so well.

With the preposition *à auquel*, when speaking of

---

† EXERCISE.

1. The *God whom* the Hebrews and Christians have always served, has nothing in common with the deities full of imperfection and even of vice worshipped by the rest of the world.

2. The Epic poem is not the panegyric of a *hero who* is proposed as a* pattern, but the recital of great and illustrious *actions, which* are exhibited for imitation.

3. The *good which* we hope for* presents itself to us, and disappears like an empty *dream, which* vanishes when we awake : to teach us, that the very *things which* we think we hold fast in our hands, may slip away in an instant.

4. Plato says, that, in writing, we ought to hide ourselves, to disappear, to make the world forget us, that we may present nothing but the *truths* we wish to impress.

(1.) (That the rest of the world worshipped.)
(2.) *Is proposed*, on propose ; *as*, pour ; *pattern*, modèle ; *is exhibited*, on donner ; *imitation*, exemple.
(3.) *Good*, bien ; *disappears*, s'envoler ; *empty*, vain ; *vanishes*, &c. le réveil fait évanouir ; *we * hold fast*, tenir le mieux ; *in our hands * ; slip away*, nous échapper.
(4.) *We*, on ; *to make the world forget*, se faire oublier ; *that we may present but*, pour ne produire que ; *wish*, vouloir ; *impress*, persuader.

things, as, *les places* aux-quelles *il aspire*, but we ought to prefer *à qui*, when speaking of persons, as,

Les rois à qui *on doit obéir.*

Auxquels would not do so well.

So the relative *qui*, preceded by a preposition, never relates to things, but to persons only.‡

Quoi only relates to things. It is placed after the word to which it relates, but is always preceded by a preposition, and is generally followed by the subject of the phrase with which it is connected, as,

La chose à quoi *on pense ; voilà les conditions* sans quoi *la chose ne peut se faire.*

To this mode of expression are to be preferred, *lequel*, *duquel*, *auquel*, as being much better ; for *quoi* is never used with any degree of propriety, but

---

‡ EXERCISE.

1. The grand principle *on which* the whole turns is, that all * the world is but one republic, *of which* God is the common father, and in *which* every nation forms, as it were, one great family.

2. Homer, *whose* genius is grand and sublime like nature, is the greatest poet, and perhaps the most profound moralist of antiquity.

3. The celebrated Zenobia, *whose* noble firmness 2 you have admired 1, preferred dying with the title of queen, rather * than accept the advantageous 2 offers 1 which Aurelian made her.

4. The Alps, on the summit *of which* the astonished eye discovers perpetual snow and ice, present, at sun-set, the most striking and most magnificent spectacle.

5. A king, *to whose* care we owe a good law, has done more for his own glory, than if he had conquered the universe.

6. The ambitious man * sees nothing but pleasure in the possession of the offices *to which he* aspires with so much eagerness, instead of seeing the trouble that is inseparable from them.

7. Kings, *whom* religion makes it our duty to obey, are, upon earth, the true representation of the providence of God.

(1.) *Turns*, rouler ; *every*, chaque ; *as it were*, comme.
(3.) *Preferred*. aimer mieux ; *than*, que de.
(4.) *Perpetual*, éternel ; *snow*, *ice*, pl. ; *sun-set*, soleil, couchant ; *striking* imposant. (5.) *Care*, solicitude.
(7.) (To) *whom* ; *makes it our duty to*, faire un devoir de ; *representation* image.

when it relates to a vague and indefinite subject, such as *ce*, or *rien*, as,

C'est de quoi *je m'occupe sans cesse.*
Il n'y a rien à quoi *je sois plus disposé.*

Où, d'où, par où, relate only to things. They are never used, but when the nouns, to which they refer, express some kind of motion, or rest, at least metaphorically, as,

Voilà le but où *il tend,*	That is the end he aims at.
C'est une chose d'où *dépend le bonheu public,*	It is a thing upon which the public happiness depends.
Les lieux par où *il a passé,*	The places through which he has passed.

¶

IV.

ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.

Qui relates only to persons presenting but a vague indeterminate idea, as,

---

¶ EXERCISE.

1. *What* a young man, who begins the world, ought principally to attend *to*, is not to give it a high opinion of his understanding, but to gain numerous friends by the qualities of his heart.

2. A youth passed in idleness, effeminacy, and pleasure, lays up for " us nothing but sorrow and disgust in old age; this, however, is *what* we little think of when we are young.

3. There is nothing *by which* we are more affected than the loss of fortune, although, being frail and perishable by its nature, it cannot contribute to our happiness.

4. A grove, *in which* I defy the burning heats of the dog-star, a retired valley, *where* I can meditate in peace, a high hill, *whence* my eye extends over immense plains, are the places *where* I spend the happiest moments of my life.

(1.) *To what*, ce à quoi; *begins*, entrer dans; *to attend*, s'attacher; *it*, y; *opinion*, idée; *understanding*, esprit; *to gain*, se faire; *numerous*, beaucoup de.
(2.) *Idleness*, inutilité; *effeminacy*, mollesse; *pleasure*, volupté; *lays up*, préparer; *of*, a; *we*, on.
(3.) *By*, à; *we*, on; *affected*, sensible; *frail*, frêle; *by*, de; *cannot*, subj-t; *our* (the).
(4.) *Grove*, bosquet; *defy*, braver; *burning heats*. ardeur: *dog-star*, canicule; *spend*, passer.

Qui *sera assez hardi pour l'attaquer ?*	Who will be bold enough to attack him ?

It is likewise used in the feminine, and in the plural, as,

Qui *est cette* personne-*là ?*	Who is that person ?
Qui *sont ces femmes-là ?*	Who are those women ?

Que and *quoi* relate to things only, as,

Que *pouvait la valeur en ce combat funeste ?*	What could valour do in that fatal combat ?
A quoi *pensez-vous ?*	What are you thinking of ?

Que is sometimes used for *à quoi, de quoi*, as,

Que *sert la science sans la vertu ?*	What avails learning without virtue ?
Que *sert à l'avare d'avoir des trésors ?*	What use is it to the miser to possess treasures ?

that is, *à quoi sert*, &c. *de quoi sert*, &c.

Quoi, when relating to a whole sentence, is the only authorized expression that can be used, as,

La vie passe comme un songe ; c'est cependant à quoi *on ne pense guères.*

Rem. *Que* and *quoi* require the preposition *de* before the adjective or substantive that follows them, as,

Que dit-on de nouveau ? quoi de plus agréable !
Que d'inconséquences dans sa conduite !

Quel relates both to persons and things, as,

Quel homme peut se promettre un bonheur constant ?
Quelle grâce ! quelle beauté ! mais quelle modestie !

Où, d'où, par où, relate but to things.†

---

†EXERCISE ON ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.

1. *Who* could ever persuade himself, did not daily experience convince us of it, that, out of a hundred persons, there are ninety who sacrifice, to the enjoyment of the present, all the best founded hopes of the future.

2. *Who* would not love virtue for its own sake, could he see it in all its beauty ?

(1.) *Did*, si ; *out of*, sur ; *future*, avenir.
(2.) *Its own sake*, elle même ; *could he*, si on pouvoir, ind-2.

V.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Ce, joined to the verb *être*, always governs this verb in the singular, except when it is followed by the third person plural.

C'est moi, c'est toi, c'est lui, c'est nous, c'est vous.

But in different cases we must say,

Ce sont *eux*, *ce* sont *elles*, Sont-*ce les Anglais*, qui *ont fait cela ?*
Ce furent *vos ancêtres* qui, Est-*ce les Anglais* que *vous aimez ?*
Fût-*ce nos propres fils* qui, Fût-*ce nos propres fils* que.

Ce, when relating to a person, or thing mentioned before, supplies the place of *il*, or *elle*. *Ce* must always be used, when the verb *être* is followed by a substantive, accompanied by the article, or the adjective *un*.

---

3. He who does not know how * to apply himself in his youth, does not know *what* to do when arrived at maturity.

4. He was a wise legislator, who, having given to his countrymen laws calculated to make them good and happy, made them swear not to violate any of those laws during his absence: after *which*, he went away, exiled himself from his country, and died poor in a foreign land.

5. *What* people of antiquity ever had better laws than the Egyptians? *What* other nation ever undertook to erect monuments calculated to triumph over both time and barbarism?

6. *What more instructive and entertaining* than to read celebrated authors in their own language? *What beauty, what delicacy*, and *grace*, which cannot be transcribed into a translation, are discovered in them!

7. When Ménage had published his book on the Origin of the French language, Christina, queen of Sweden, said: "Ménage is the most troublesome 3 man 1 in the world 2: he cannot let one word 2 go 1 without its passport: he must know *whence* it comes, *where* it has passed *through*, and *whither* it is going."

(3.) (To) *what ; to do*, s'occuper ; *when arrived*, &c., dans l'âge mûr.
(4.) *He*, ce ; *calculated*, propre ; *not to*, (that they would not ;) *went away*, partir. (5.) *Calculated to*, fait pour ; *both*, également ; *over*, de.
(6.) *Language*, langue ; *delicacy*, finesse ; *which cannot*, qu'on ne peut ; *be transcribed*, faire passer ; *translation*, traduction ; *are*, &c. n'y découvre-t-on pas.
(7.) *When*, après que ; *Christina*, Christine ; *troublesome*, incommode ; *the*, de, art. : *cannot*, ne saurait ; *go*, passer ; *must*, vouloir.

EXAMPLES.

Lisez Homère et Virgile: ce sont les *plus grands* poètes *de l'antiquité,*	Read Homer and Virgil: they are the best poets of antiquity.
La douceur, l'affabilité et une certaine urbanité, distinguent l'homme qui vit dans le grand monde; ce sont là les marques *auxquelles on le reconnaît,*	Gentleness, affability, and a certain urbanity, distinguish the man that frequents polite company; these are marks by which he may be known.
Avez-vous lu Platon? c'est un *des plus beaux génies de l'antiquité,*	Have you read Plato? he is one of the greatest geniuses of antiquity.

But, when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective, or by a substantive taken adjectively, *il*, or *elle*, must be used.

EXAMPLES.

Lisez Démosthène et Cicéron; ils sont très-éloquens,	Read Demosthenes and Cicero; they are very eloquent.
J'ai vu l'hôpital de Greenwich; il est magnifique et digne *d'une grande nation,*	I have seen Greenwich Hospital; it is superb and worthy of a great nation.
*Compteriez-vous sur Valère? ignorez-vous qu'*il est homme *à ne jamais revenir de ses premières idées?*‡	Would you rely upon Valère? do you not know that he is a man who will never abandon his first opinions?

Ce, followed by a relative pronoun, relates to things only. It is always masculine singular, as it only denotes

---

‡ EXERCISE ON DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. It is *we* who have drawn that misfortune upon * ourselves through our thoughtlessness and imprudence.

2. *It was* the Egyptians that first observed the course of the stars, regulated the year, and invented arithmetic.

3. Peruse attentively Plato and Cicero: *they are* the two *philosophers* of antiquity who have given us the most sound and luminous ideas upon morality.

4. If you are intended for the pulpit, read over and over again Bourdaloue and Massillon: *they are* both very *eloquent;* but the aim of the former is to convince, and that of the latter to persuade.

(1.) *Have drawn*, s'attirer; *thoughtlessness*, légèreté.
(2.) *First*, les premiers; *stars*, astre.
(3.) *Peruse*, lire; *sound*, sain; *morality*, morale.
(4.) *Are intended for*, se destiner à; *pulpit*, chaire; *read over and over again*, lire et relire sans cesse; *aim*, but.

a vague object, which is not sufficiently specified to know its gender and number.

EXAMPLE.

Ce qui flatte *est plus dangereux que* ce qui offense,	What flatters is more dangerous than what offends

Ce, joined to the relative pronouns, *qui*, *que*, *dont*, and *quoi*, has, in some instances, a construction peculiar to itself. Both *ce* and the relative pronoun that follows it, form, with the verb which they precede, the subject of another phrase, of which the verb is always *être*. Now, *être* may be followed by another verb, an adjective, or a noun.

When *être* then is followed by another verb, the demonstrative *ce* must be repeated, as,

Ce que *j'aime le plus*, c'est *d'être seul*,	What I like most, is to be alone.

When followed by an adjective the demonstrative is not repeated, as,

Ce dont *vous venez de me parler* est *horrible*,	What you have been mentioning to me is horrid.

When it is followed by a substantive, the demonstrative may either be repeated, or not, at pleasure, except in the case of a plural, or a personal pronoun. Thus, we may say,

Ce *que je dis*, est *la vérité*, or, c'est *la vérité*,	What I say is the truth.

Though the former is best. But we must say,

Ce qui *m'indigne*, ce sont *les injustices, qu'on ne cesse de faire*,	What provokes me, are the injuries which are continually committed.
Ce qui *m'arrache au sentiment qui m'accable*, c'est vous,	What alleviates the grief that oppresses me, is you.

Most of these rules contribute to the elegance of the language.¶

¶ EXERCISE.

1. *What* is astonishing *is* not always *what* is pleasing.

(1.) *Is astonishing*, étonner ; *is pleasing*, plaire.

There are two ways of employing *celui*. In the first it is followed by a noun, or pronoun preceded by the preposition *de*.

EXAMPLES.

Celui de vous qui, &c.	Whichever of you that, &c.
Cette montre ressemble à celle de votre frère,	That watch is like that of your brother.

In the second, it is followed by *qui*, *que*, or *dont*, as,

Celui qui *ne pense qu'à lui seul dispense les autres d'y penser*,	He who thinks of nobody but himself, excuses others from thinking of him.
Votre nouvelle est plus sûre que celle qu'on débitait hier,	Your intelligence is more authentic than that which was circulated yesterday.

In these two cases it is applied both to persons and things.

In the latter of these instances, *celui* is sometimes omitted, and this turn gives strength and elegance to the expression, as,

Qui veut trop se faire craindre, se fait rarement aimer ;	He who wishes to make himself too much feared, seldom makes himself beloved.

---

2. *What* the miser thinks least of, is to enjoy his riches.

3. *What* pleases us in the writings of the ancients, *is* to see that they have taken nature as a model, and that they have painted her with a noble simplicity.

4. *What* that good king has done for the happiness of his people, deserves to be handed down to the latest posterity.

5. *What* constitutes poetry *is not* the exact number and regular cadence of syllables: but *it is* the sentiment which animates every thing, the lively fictions, bold figures, and * beauty and variety of the imagery: *it is* the enthusiasm, fire, impetuosity, force, a something in the words and thoughts which nature alone can impart.

6. *What* we justly admire in Shakspeare *are* those characters always natural and always well * sustained.

7. *What* keeps me attached to life, *is you*, my son, whose tender age has still need of my care and advice.

(2.) *What*, (that to which ;) *miser*, avare. (3.) *As a*, pour.
(4.) *Deserves*, être digne ; *to be handed down*, être transmis ; *latest*, la plus reculée.
(5.) *Constitutes*, faire ; *exact*, fixe ; *lively*, vif ; *imagery*, image, pl. ; *a something*, un je ne sais quoi ; *words*, parole ; *impart*, donner.
(6.) *We*, on ; *justly*, avec justice ; *natural*, dans la nature ; *sustained*, soutenu.
(7.) *Keeps attached*, attacher ; *care*, *advice*, pl.

Ceci and *cela* apply only to things ; however, in the familiar style, custom authorises us to say, in speaking of one person individually, or of many collectively ; *cela est heureux ! cela croupit dans la fange ; cela est gueux et fier*, &c.†

CHAP. VI.

PRONOUNS INDEFINITE.

Though *on* may generally be considered as a masculine pronoun, as in the phrase, *on n'est pas toujours maître de ses passions*, there are however occasions in which it is evidently feminine, as, *on n'est pas toujours jeune et jolie :* it may likewise be followed by a plural, as, *on se battit en désespérés ; est-on des traîtres ?*

This pronoun must be repeated before all the verbs

† EXERCISE.

1. *Whichever of you* shall be found to excel the others both in mind and body, shall be acknowledged king of the island.

2. There are admirable pictures ; *these* are after the manner of Rubens, and *those* after the manner of Van-Huysum.

3. Why are the statues of the most celebrated modern sculptors, notwithstanding the perfection to which the arts have been carried, so much inferior *to those* of the ancients ?

4. *He* whose soul, glowing, as it were, with divine fire, shall represent to himself the whole of nature, and shall breathe into objects that spirit of life which animates them, those affecting traits which delight and ravish us, will be a man of real genius.

5. *He that* judges of others by himself, is liable to many mistakes.

6. *He that* is easily offended, discovers his weak side, and affords his enemies an opportunity of taking advantage of it.

7. *He who* loves none but himself, deserves not to be loved by others.

(1.) *Be found to excel the others*, on juger vainqueur ; *both in*, et pour (repeated.

(2.) *There are*, voilà de ; *picture*, tableau ; *are after*, être dans ; *manner*, genre.

(3.) *Are*, (to be placed before *so much inferior ;*) *have been carried*, (active voice,) with, *on ; inferior*, au-dessous.

(4.) *Glowing with*, enflammé de ; *as it were*, pour ainsi dire ; *the whole of*, tout ; *shall breathe into*, répandre sur ; *affecting*, touchant ; *delight*, séduire ; *real*, vrai.

(5.) *By*, d'après ; *liable*, exposé ; *mistake*, méprise.

(6.) *Is offended*, s'offenser ; *weak side*, faible ; *affords*, fournir à ; *of taking advantage*, profiter

of a sentence, and refer to one and the same subject. Thus, the sentence,

On croit être aimé et l'on ne nous aime pas.

is incorrect ; it should be,

On croit être aimé et l'on ne l'est pas.

Quiconque is generally masculine, however it is feminine, when speaking of, or to females, as, *quiconque de vous, Mesdames,* &c. Though, perhaps, *celle de vous,* &c. is preferable.‡

Chacun, though always singular, may be followed, sometimes by *son, sa, ses,* and sometimes by *leur, leurs,* which, in many instances, is embarrassing.

There is no difficulty in those phrases where *chacun* is not contrasted with a plural number ; for then *son, sa, ses,* must be used, as,

Donnez à chacun sa part,	Give to each his share.
Que chacun songe à ses affaires,	Let every one mind his own business.

RULE. In phrases where *chacun* is contrasted with a plural to which it refers, *son, sa, ses,* must be employed, when *chacun* is placed after the regimen ; but

---

‡ EXERCISE ON PRONOUNS INDEFINITE.

1. Do you sincerely think, said Emily to Lucilla, that when women are sensible and pretty, *they* are ignorant of * it : no, *they* know it very well : but if *they* are watchful over their character, *they* are not proud of these advantages.

2. *We* are not slaves, to receive such treatment.

3. Do you know what *they* do here ? *They* eat, *they* drink, *they* dance, *they* play, *they* walk, in a word, *they* kill time in the gayest manner possible.

4. *Whoever* of you is bold enough to slander me, I will make him repeat it.

5. *Whoever* of you is attentive and discreet, shall receive a reward that will flatter her.

(1.) *Sincerely*, de bonne foi ; *Emily*, Emilie ; *women*, on ; *they*, on ; *know*, savoir ; *watchful over*, jaloux de ; *character*, réputation ; *are proud*, s'enorgueillir. (2) *We*, on ; *slaves*, (des) esclaves ; *to receive*, pour essuyer de.
(3.) *They*, on ; *in the gayest manner*, le plus gaiment ; *possible*, (that they can).
(4.) *Is*, ind-7 ; *to slander*, pour médire de ; *it* (of it.)
(5.) *Is*, ind-7 ; *that will*, fait pour.

leur, leurs, must be used, when *chacun* is placed before the regimen.

EXAMPLES OF *son, sa, ses.*

Remettez ces médailles chacune en sa place, Return those medals each into its proper place.

Les hommes devraient s'aimer, chacun pour son propre intérêt, Men ought to love one another, each for his own interest.

EXAMPLE OF *leur, leurs.*

Les hommes devraient avoir, chacun pour leur propre intérêt, de l'amour les uns pour les autres, Men ought for their own interest, to have an affection for each other.

REM. In phrases where *chacun* is contrasted with a plural, there are two senses, the *collective* and the *distributive*. When *chacun* is placed after the regimen, the collective sense expressed by the plural is finished; and the distributive *chacun* acts separately the part of each individual: but when *chacun* precedes the regimen, the collective sense remaining incomplete, must be carried on to the end; and then the pronoun which follows *chacun* is put in the plural, as,

La reine dit elle-même aux députés, qu'il était temps qu'ils s'en retournassent chacun chez eux.¶

Personne, used as a pronoun, is always masculine;

¶ EXERCISE.

1. Go into my library, and put the books which have been sent back to me, *each* into *its* place.

2. They have all brought offerings to the temple, *every one* according to *his* means and devotion.

3. Thierry charged Uncelanus to carry his orders to the mutineers, and to make them retire *each* under *his* colours.

4. *Each* of them has brought *his* offering, and fulfilled *his* religious duty.

5. Had Ronsard and Balzac *each*, in his manner of writing, a sufficient degree of merit to form *after them* any very great man in verse and in prose?

6. After a day so usefully spent, we went back, *each* to *our* own home.

(2.) *Offerings*, offrande.
(3.) *To carry*, aller porter; *mutineers*, mutin; *colours*, drapeau.
(4.) (They have brought each their, &c.) *fulfilled*, remplir.
(5.) *Manner of writing*, genre; *a sufficient degree*, assez; *merit*, bon; *any*, un.
(6.) *Day*, journée; *went back*, retourner; *to*, chez; *our own home*, (pron. personal.)

of course the adjective relating to it must be of that gender, as,

Personne n'est aussi heureux qu'elle, Nobody is so happy as she.

L'un et l'autre require the verb they govern to be in the plural. See p. 261.

Ni l'un ni l'autre likewise *generally* govern the verb in the plural, when both may at the same time receive the action expressed by the verb: however, the two following modes

*Ni l'un ni l'autre n'*ont *fair* leur *devoir,* or
*Ni l'un ni l'autre n'*a *fait* son *devoir,*

are authorized; but whenever this action applies only to a single object, the verb must be in the singular, as,

Ni l'un ni l'autre n'est mon père; ni l'un ni l'autre de sera nommé à cette ambassade.

But when *ni l'un ni l'autre* elegantly stand after the verb, the verb is always in the plural, as,

Ils ne sont morts ni l'un ni l'autre.†

Tout, and *rien,* when the regimen direct, are placed after the verb, in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle, in compound tenses, as, *il*

7. Minds that possess any correctness, examine things with attion, in order to give a fair judgment of them; and they place *each* 2 of * them 1 in the rank *it* ought to occupy.

(7.) *Possess any,* avoir de; *correctness,* justesse; *give a fair judgment,* juger avec connaissance; *place,* mettre; *to occupy,* avoir.

† EXERCISE.

1. Nobody is so severe, so virtuous in public, as some women who practise the least restraint in private.

2. Nobody could be happier than she; but as a consequence of that levity which you know she has, she has lost all the advantages that she had received from nature and education.

3. Racine and Fénélon will be always the delight of feeling minds: both 2 possessed 1 in the highest degree the art of exciting in us at pleasure the most tender and the most lively emotions.

(1.) *Some,* aussi; *some,* certain; *practise the least restraint,* être le moins retenu.
(2.) *Could,* ind-2; *the,* un; *levity,* légèreté, *know she has,* lui connaître.
(3.) *Always* dans tous les temps; *both,* l'un et l'autre; *in the,* au; *pleasure,* gré

avoue tout; il n'avoue rien; il a tout avoué; il n'a rien avoué. But when they form the regimen indirect, they are always placed after the verb, both in simple and in compound tenses, as, *il rit de tout; il ne se mèle de rien; il a pensé à tout; il n'a pensé à rien.*

Tout is sometimes used as an adverb, as,

Il lui dit tout froidement,	He told him quite coolly.

Sometimes also, it represents *quoique, encore que, entièrement, quelque,* in which case the following rule must be observed.

Rule. *Tout* before an adjective, or a substantive which is used adjectively, never takes either gender, or number, except when immediately followed by an adjective feminine beginning with a consonant, or *h* aspirated, as,

Les enfans, tout *aimables qu'ils sont,*	Children, amiable as they are.
Ils sont tout *interdits,*	They are quite disconcerted.
La vertu tout *austère qu'elle paraît,*	Virtue, austere as it may appear.
Ces images tout *amusantes qu'elles sont,*	These images, entertaining as they may be.
C'est une tête toute *vide,*	It is quite a vacant head.
Ces dames, toutes *spirituelles qu'elles sont,*	These ladies, witty as they may be.
Ces fleurs sont tout aussi *fraîches que celles que vous avez,*	These flowers are quite as fresh as those which you have.
Ces dames sont, tout ainsi que *vous,* tout comme *vous, belles jeunes et spirituelles,*	These ladies, as well as you, are handsome, young, and ingenious.

In this latter sense, *tout* is little more than a mere expletive.§

---

5. Balzac and Voiture enjoyed in their time great celebrity; but neither 2 has been read 1 since by good taste 1; the native and simple graces 3 are preferred 2 to the bombast of the former, and the affectation of the latter.

(4.) *Enjoyed,* ind-4; *neither,* ni l'un ni l'autre; *has been read,* (they read them no more); *native,* du naturel; *simple,* de la simplicité; *are preferred,* (active voice) depuis que le bon goût a fait préférer les, &c.; *bombast,* bouffissure.

Quelque—que, joined to a substantive, either alone, or accompanied by an adjective, takes the sign of the plural.

EXAMPLES.

Quelques *richesses que vous ayez*,	Whatever riches you may possess.
Quelques *bonnes œuvres que vous fassiez*,	Whatever good actions you may do.
Quelques *peines affreuses que vous éprouviez*,	However dreadful pains you may suffer.

But, when joined to an adjective separated from its substantive, it does not take the sign of the plural.

---

§ EXERCISE.

1. Children, *amiable* as they are, have, nevertheless, many faults which it is of importance to correct.

2. The philosophers of antiquity, *although* very * *enlightened*, have given us but very confused ideas of the Deity, and very vague notions about the principal duties of the law of nature.

3. Those flowers, *inodorous* as they are, are not the less esteemed.

4. Virtue, *austere* as it is, makes us enjoy real pleasures.

5. Fables, *although* very * entertaining, yet 4 truly 5 interest 3 us 2 only, when they convey instruction to us, under the disguise of an ingenious allegory.

6. Although that absurd pedant is an incessant 2 scribbler 1, yet his head is *altogether empty*.

7. Far be from us those maxims of flattery, that kings are born with talents, and that their favoured souls come out of God's hands, *completely wise* and *learned*.

8. Those fountains glide *quite* gently through a mead enamelled with flowers.

9. These peaches are *quite* as good as those of the south of France.

(1.) *Have nevertheless*, ne laisser pas d'avoir ; *faults*, défaut ; *of importance*, essentiel. (2.) *Enlightened*, éclairés qu'ils étaient ; *of nature*, naturel.
(3.) *Inodorous*, inodore ; *not*, n'en. (4.) *Enjoy*, goûter de.
(5.) *Entertaining*, amusantes qu'elles sont ; *truly*, véritablement ; *only*, ne 1 que 6 ; *convey*, offrir ; *disguise*, voile.
(6.) *Incessant*, infatigable ; *scribbler*, écrivailleur ; *his head is*, (he has not less the head :) *not*, n'en ; *altogether*, tout.
(7.) *Far be*, loin ; *of*, de, art. ; *are born*, naître ; *with talents*, habile ; *favoured*, privilégié ; *come out*, sortir ; *learned*, savant.
(8.) *Glide*, couler ; *gently*, doucement ; *through a mead*, sur un gazon.
(9.) *South*, midi.

EXAMPLES.

Tous les hommes, quelque *opposés qu'ils soient,*	All men, however opposite they may be.
Ces actions, quelque *belles qu'on les trouve,*	Those actions, however brilliant they may be found.

Quelque--que and *quel que*, joined to a substantive, (p. 118), have the same meaning, although they are not used indifferently for each other. If the pronoun stands before the substantive, we make use of *quelque --que ;* as,

Quelques richesses que vous ayez ;

But, if the verb intervene, then we make use of *quel que* in two separate words, as,

Quelles que soient les richesses que vous ayez.¶

¶ EXERCISE.

1. *Whatever talents* you may possess, *whatever advantages* you may have received from nature and education, with * *whatever perfections* you may be endowed, expect only the suffrage of a small number of men.

2. *However great services* you may have rendered mankind, rather look for their ingratitude than their acknowledgments.

3. *However useful, however well written* the works which you have published, yet think not that you will immediately reap the fruits of your labours; it is but by slow degrees that light introduces itself among men. The course of time is swift: but it seems to lag, when it brings reason and truth along with it.

4. *Whatever may be the obstacles* which ignorance, prejudice, and envy oppose to the true principles of an art, yet we ought never to be deterred from propagating them: the sun does not cease to shine, because its light hurts the eyes of night-birds.

5. *Whatever be your birth, whatever your riches* and dignities, remember that you are frustrating the views of providence, if you do not make use of them for the good of mankind.

(1.) *Possess*, avoir ; *have received*, tenir ; *be endowed*, posséder ; *expect*, ne s'attendre à ; *but*, que.

(2.) *Mankind*, homme, pl. ; *rather look for*, compter plutôt ; *acknowledgments*, reconnaissance, sing.

(3.) *Immediately*, de suite ; *reap*, recueillir ; *by slow degrees*, avec lenteur ; *among*, chez ; *swift*, rapide ; *to lag*, se traîner ; *along with it*, à sa suite.

(4.) *We*, on ; *to be deterred*, se rebuter ; *propagating*, répandre ; *shine*, éclairer ; *its*, the article ; *hurts*, blesser ; *night birds*, oiseau de nuit.

(5.) *Are frustrating*, frustrer.

CHAP V.

OF THE VERB.

AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS SUBJECT.

It has been observed that the verb which has two subjects, both singular, is put in the plural ; but to this rule there are the following

EXCEPTIONS.

1. A verb with two subjects in the singu ar, is not put in the plural, when the two subjects are only joined together by the conjunctions, *ou, comme, aussi-bien que, autant que*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

La séduction, ou *la terreur, l'a entraîné dans le parti des rebelles,*	Either persuasion, or terror *has* drawn him into the party of the rebels.
Le roi, aussi-bien que *son ministère,* veut *le bien public,*	The king, *as well* as his ministry, *wishes* for the public good.
Son honnêteté, autant que *son esprit, le* fait *rechercher,*	His honesty, *as much as* his wit, *makes* him courted.
L'envie, comme *l'ambition,* est une *passion aveugle,*	Envy, *like* ambition, *is* a blind passion.

2. The verb is likewise put in the singular, though preceded by plurals, either when there is an expression which collects all the substantives into one, such as, *tout, ce, rien*, &c. or when the conjunction *mais* is placed before the last substantive, and this is in the singular.

EXAMPLES.

Biens, dignités, honneurs, tout disparaît *à la mort,*	Riches, dignities, honours, *every thing vanishes* at death.
Jeux, conversations, spectacles, rien *ne la* distrait,	Games, conversations, shows, *nothing diverts* her.
Perfidies, noirceurs, incendies, massacres, ce *n'est là qu'une faible image*, &c.	Perfidies, enormities, conflagrations, massacres, *all this is* but a feeble representation, &c.
Non-seulement toutes ses richesses et tous ses honneurs, mais toute sa vertu s'évanouit,†	Not only all his riches and honours, *but all his virtue vanishes.*

OF THE COLLECTIVE PARTITIVE.

The collectives general have nothing to distinguish them from substantives common, with regard to the laws of agreement ; but the collectives partitive apparently deviate from those laws, in some instances.

RULE. The verb, which relates to a collective partitive, is put in the plural, when that partitive is followed by the preposition *de* and a plural ; but it is put in the singular, either when the partitive is followed by a regimen singular, or when it expresses a determinate quantity, or lastly, when it presents an idea independent of the plural which follows it.

---

† EXERCISE ON THE VERB.

1. Either fear *or* inability prevented them from moving.
2. The fear of death, *or* rather the love of life began to revive in his bosom.
3. Alcibiades, *as well as* Plato, was among the disciples of Socrates.
4. Lycurgus, *like* Solon, was a wise legislator.
5. Euripides, *as much as* Sophocles, contributed to the glory of the Athenians.
6. Riches, dignities, honours, glory, pleasure, every thing loses its charms from the moment we possess it, because none of those things can fill the heart of man.
7. The gentle zephyrs which preserved, in that place, notwithstanding the scorching heat of the sun, a delightful coolness : streams gliding with a sweet murmur, through meadows interspersed with amaranths and violets ; a thousand springing flowers which enamelled carpets ever green ; a wood of those tufted trees that bear golden apples, and the blossom of which, renewed every season, yields the sweetest of all perfumes ; the warbling of birds ; the continual prospect of a fruitful country ; in a word, nothing of what till then had made him happy, could assuage the feelings of his grief.

(1.) *Inability*, impuissance ; *moving*, remuer.
(2.) *Began to revive*, se réveiller ; *in*, au fond de ; *bosom*, cœur.
(3.) *Among*, au nombre de.
(6.) *We*, on ; *none*, rien, *those things*, tout cela.
(7.) *Preserved*, entretenir ; *scorching heat*, ardeur ; *interspersed with*, parsemer de ; *springing*, naissant ; *carpets*, tapis ; *tufted*, touffu ; *golden*, (of gold) ; *renewed*, (which renews) se renouveler ; (in) *every season* ; *yields*, répandre ; *prospect*, spectacle ; *made*, rendre ; *assuage*, l'arracher à ; *feeling*, sentiment.

EXAMPLES OF THE PLURAL.

La plupart des hommes sont *bien prompts dans leurs jugemens,*	The greatest part of men are very hasty in their judgments.
Bien des philosophes *se* sont *trompés,*	Many philosophers have been mistaken.

EXAMPLES OF THE SINGULAR.

Une infinité de peuple est *accourue,* (regimen singular),	An immense number of people flocked together.
La moitié des soldats a *péri,* (determinate quantity),	One half of the soldiers has perished.
Le plus grand nombre des troupes a *péri,* (idea independent of the plural.)	The greater number of the troops has perished.

Thus the substantives partitive, *la plupart, une infinité, une foule, un nombre, la plus grande partie, une sorte,* &c. and words signifying quantity, such as *peu, beaucoup, assez, moins, plus, trop, tant, combien,* and *que* used for *combien,* followed by a noun joined to them by the preposition *de,* have not the least influence on the verb, and consequently, it is not with them that the verb agrees, but with the noun which follows them.

Remark. The words *infinité* and *la plupart,* used by themselves, require the verb in the plural, as: *une infinité pensent, la plupart sont d'avis.*‡

---

‡ EXERCISE ON THE COLLECTIVE PARTITIVE.

1. *Many persons* experience that human life is, every where, a state in which much is to be endured, and little to be enjoyed.

2. *Many poets* think that poetry is the art of uniting pleasure with truth, by calling imagination to the help of reason.

3. *Few persons* reflect that time, like money, may be lost by unseasonable avarice.

4. *So many years* of familiarity were chains of iron which linked me to those men who beset me every hour.

5. *How many wise* men * have thought that, to seclude one's self from the world, was to pull out the teeth of devouring ani-

(1.) *Much is,* &c. (one has a great deal of pains, and little of real enjoyments.)
(3.) *Unseasonable,* hors de propos.
(4.) *Familiarity,* habitude; *linked,* lier; *beset,* obséder.
(5.) *How many,* que de; *to seclude one's self,* se retirer; *pull out of,* arracher à; *to take away from,* ôter à.

PLACE OF THE SUBJECT WITH REGARD TO THE VERB.

It has been seen that the subject of a verb is either a noun, or a pronoun, and that this subject must always be expressed in French. It remains to speak of the place of this subject with respect to the verb.

RULE. The subject, whether a noun, or pronoun, is generally placed before the verb.

L'ambition effrénée *de quelques hommes*, a, *dans tous les temps*, été *la vraie cause des révolutions des états*,	The boundless ambition of a few men has, in all ages, been the real cause of the revolutions of empires.
Quand nous nageons *dans l'abondance, il est bien rare que* nous *nous* occupions *des maux d'autrui*,¶	When we roll in plenty, we seldom think of the miseries of others.

---

mals, to take away from the wicked, the use of his poniard, from calumny its poisons, and from envy its serpents !

6. *A company of young Phœnicians* of uncommon beauty, clad in fine linen, whiter than snow, danced a * long while the dances of their own * country, then those of Egypt, and lastly, those of Greece.

7. *A troop of nymphs*, crowned with flowers, whose lovely tresses flowed over their shoulders, and waved with the wind, swam in shoals behind her car.

8. At the time of the invasion of Spain by the Moors, an *innumerable multitude of people* retired into the Asturias, and there proclaimed Pelagius king.

9. *A third part of the enemy* were left dead on the field of battle ; the rest surrendered at discretion.

10. *The innumerable crowd of carriages* which are to be seen in London during the winter, astonishes foreigners.

(6.) *Company*, troupe ; *clad in*, et vêtu de ; *linen*, lin.
(7.) *Lovely*, beau ; *tresses*, cheveu ; *flowed*, pendre ; *waved*, flotter ; *with*, au gré de ; *swam*, nager ; *shoals*, foule ; *car*, char.
(8.) *Moors*, Maure ; *retired*, se retirer ; *Asturias*, Asturies ; *Pelagius*, Pélage.
(9.) *A third part*, un tiers ; *enemy*, pl. ; *surrendered*, se rendre.
(10.) *Crowd*, quantité ; *which are*, (active voice, on.)

¶ EXERCISE.

1. *Youth* is full of presumption, *it* expects every thing from

---

(1.) *Full of presumption*, présomptueux ; *expects*, se promettre ; *itself all sufficient*, pouvoir tout ; *that it has*, avoir.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. In these interrogative phrases the question is made either with a pronoun, or a noun: if with a pronoun, this is always placed after the verb, as,

Que dit-on ? irai-je à la campagne ? de qui parle-t-on ?

If with a noun, the noun is sometimes placed before, and sometimes after the verb; it stands before, when the pronoun personal which answers to it, asks the question, as,

Cette nouvelle est-elle sûre ? les hommes se rendent-ils toujours à la raison ?

It stands after, when a pronoun absolute, or an interrogative adverb, placed at the beginning of the phrase, allow the suppression of the personal pronoun, as,

Que dit votre ami ? à quoi s'occupe votre frère ? où demeure votre cousin ?

REMARK. In interrogative sentences, when the verb which precedes *il, elle, on*, ends with a vowel, the

---

itself: although frail, *it* thinks itself all-sufficient, and that *it* has nothing to fear.

2. *Commerce* is like certain springs; if *you* attempt to * divert their course, *you* dry them up.

3. *It* is enough that falsehood is falsehood, to be unworthy of a man who speaks in the * presence of God, and who is to sacrifice every thing to truth.

4. The *ambition* and *avarice* of man are the sources of his unhappiness.

5. *They* punished, in Crete, three vices which have remained unpunished in all other nations: ingratitude, dissimulation, and avarice.

6. Like the Numidian lion, goaded by cruel hunger, and rushing upon a flock of feeble sheep, *he* tears, *he* slays, *he* wallows in blood.

(2.) *Springs*, source; *attempt*, vouloir; *dry up*, faire tarir.

(3.) *It is enough*, suffire; *falsehood*, mensonge; *is*, subj.; *in*, en; *is to sacrifice*, doit.

(5.) *Punished*, ind-? ; *have remained*, être; *in*, chez.

(6.) *Like the*, semblable à un; *Numidian*, de Numidie; *goaded by*, &c. (that cruel hunger goads) dévorer; *rushing*, (which rushes upon,) entrer dans; *tears*, déchirer; *slays*, égorger; *wallows*, nager.

letter *-t-* is put between that verb and the pronoun, as,

Arrive-t-il ? viendra-t-elle ? aime-t-on les vauriens ?

When *je* stands after a verb, which ends with *e* mute, that *e* mute is changed into *é* acute, as, *aimé-je ? puissé-je ?* But when the transposition of *je* after the verb becomes harsh, euphony then requires another turn, so instead of *cours-je ? dors-je ?* which would be intolerable, we must say, *est-ce que je cours ? est-ce que je dors ?*†

---

2. Incidental sentences which express that we are quoting somebody's words, as,

Je meurs innocent, a dit Louis XVI.	I die innocent, said Louis XVI.
Je le veux bien, dit-il,	I am very willing, said he.

3. Impersonal verbs, and these words, *tel, ainsi,* &c.

Il est arrivé un grand malheur,	A great misfortune has happened.

---

† EXERCISE.

1. *Have you* forgotten all that Providence has done for you ? how *have you* escaped the shafts of your enemies ? how *have you* been preserved from the dangers which surrounded you on all sides ? *could you be* so blind as not to acknowledge and adore the all-powerful hand that has miraculously saved you ?

2. What *will posterity say* of you, if, instead of devoting to the happiness of mankind the great talents which you have received from nature, you make use of them only to deceive and corrupt them.

3. Do not *the misfortunes* which we experience often contribute to our * prosperity ?

4. Why are *the works of nature* so perfect ? Because each work is a whole, and because she labours upon an eternal plan, from which she never deviates. Why, on the contrary, are *the productions* of man so imperfect ? It is because the human mind being unable to create any thing, and incapable of embracing the universe at a single glance, can * produce only after having been enriched by experience and meditation.

(1.) *Escaped*, échapper à ; *shafts*, trait ; *preserved*, garantir ; *on all sides*, de toutes parts ; *so as*, assez pour ; *saved*, conserver.

(2.) *Devoting*, consacrer ; *mankind*, homme, pl. ; *deceive*, égarer.

(3.) *Experience*, éprouver ; *contribute to*, tourner en.

(4.) *Because*, c'est que ; *and because*, et que ; *being unable*, ne pouvoir ; *incapable*, (not being able ;) *at*, de ; *glance*, vue ; *enriched*, fécondé.

Tel était l'acharnement du soldat, que, &c.	Such was the fury of the soldier, that, &c.
Ainsi finit cette sanglante tragédie,‡	Thus ended that bloody tragedy.

4. When the subjunctive is used to express a wish, or for *quand même* and a conditional, as,

Puissent tous les peuples se convaincre de cette vérité,	May all nations be convinced of this truth.
Dussé-je y périr, j'irai,	Should I perish there, I will go.

5. When the subject is followed by several words which are dependent upon it, and form an incidental sentence which, by its length, might obscure the relation of the verb to the subject; perspicuity then requires that the subject should be displaced.

Sometimes, however, this transposition of the subject is only the effect of taste, to avoid an inharmonious ca-

‡ EXERCISE.

1. True glory, *said he*, is founded in humanity; whoever prefers his own glory to the feelings of humanity, is a monster of pride, and not a man.

2. There have happened, for these * ten years, *so many events* exceeding all probability, that posterity will find it very difficult to credit them.

3. *Such was that incorruptible Phocion*, who answered the deputies of Alexander, who were telling him that this powerful monarch loved him as the only honest man: well, then 2, let him allow me 1 to be and to appear so.

4. *Thus* ended, by the humiliation of Athens, *that dreadful war* of twenty-seven years, to * which ambition gave rise, which hatred made atrocious, and which was as fatal to the Greeks, as their ancient confederation had proved advantageous to them.

(1.) *Is founded*, ne se trouver pas hors de ; *feelings*, sentiment.
(2.) *There have happened for*, il se passer depuis ; *exceeding*, hors de ; *probability*, vraisemblance ; *will find very difficult*, avoir bien de la peine ; *to credit*, ajouter foi à.
(3.) *Loved*, chérir ; *honest man*, homme de bien ; *well*, ho ! ; *to be so*, d'être tel ; *appear so*, le paraître.
(4.) *Ended*, se terminer ; *gave rise*, faire naître ; *made*, rendre ; *had proved*, être.

¶ EXERCISE.

1. The gods grant that you may never experience such misfortunes !

(1.) *Grant*, faire ; *experience*, éprouver de.

dence : or it is used by an orator, who wishes to rouse the attention of his hearers by a bold and unexpected turn.¶

GOVERNMENT OF THE VERBS.

When the regimen of a verb is a noun, it is generally placed *after* the verb : but to this rule there is one exception, besides those which will hereafter be mentioned.

EXCEPTION. In an interrogative sentence, the regimen is placed before the verb, when this regimen is joined to an absolute pronoun.

EXAMPLES.

Quel objet voyez-vous ?	What object do you see ?
A quelle science vous appliquez-vous ?	To what science do you apply yourself ?
De quelle affaire vous occupez-vous ?	About what business are you employed ?

REMARK. In French, a verb can never have two regimens direct ; therefore, when a verb has *two* regimens, *both nouns*, one of them must necessarily be preceded by a preposition.

---

2. May you, O wise old man ! in a repose diversified by pleasing occupations, enjoy the past, lay hold of the present, and charm your latter days with the hope of eternal felicity.

3. What is not in the power of the gods ! were you at the lowest depths, the power of Jupiter could draw you from thence : were you in Olympus, beholding the stars under your feet, Jupiter could plunge you to the bottom of the abyss, or precipitate you into the flames of gloomy Tartarus.

4. There, through meadows enamelled with flowers, glide a thousand various rivulets, distributing every where their pure (and) limpid waters.

5. Already, for the honour of France, there * had come into administration a man more distinguished for his understanding and virtues than for his dignities.

(2.) *Old man*, vieillard ; *lay hold of*, saisir ; *with*, de.

(3.) *Is not in the power of*, ne peuvent ; *were*, subj-2 ; *lowest depths*, fond de l'abîme ; *power*, puissance ; *could*, pouvoir, cond-1 ; *Olympus*, Olympe ; *stars*, astre ; *gloomy*, noir ; *Tartarus*, Tartare.

(4.) *Through*, au milieu de ; *with*, de ; *glide*, serpenter ; *rivulets*, ruisseau ; *distributing*, (which distribute) ; *their*, une.

(5.) *Had come*, être entré ; *administration*, (of affairs) ; *for*, par ; *understanding*, esprit.

EXAMPLES.

Donnez ce livre à votre frère,	Give that book to your brother
On a accusé Cicéron d' imprudence et de faiblesse,	Cicero has been accused of imprudence and weakness.

Though the natural order of the ideas seems to require that the regimen direct be placed before the indirect, the perspicuity of the sentence does not allow it in all cases.

RULE. When a verb has two regimens, the shorter is generally placed first; but if they be of equal length, the regimen direct will precede the indirect.

EXAMPLES.

Les hypocrites s'étudient à parer le vice *des dehors de la vertu,*	Hypocrites make it their study to deck vice with the exterior of virtue.
Les hypocrites s'étudient à parer des dehors de la vertu *les vices les plus honteux et les plus décriés,*	Hypocrites make it their study to deck with the exterior of virtue the most shameful and most odious vices.
L'ambition sacrifie le présent *à l'avenir, mais la volupté sacrifie* l'avenir *au présent,*†	Ambition sacrifices the present to the future, but pleasure sacrifices the future to the present.

RULE. A noun may be governed at once by two verbs, provided those verbs do not require different regimens.

EXAMPLES.

On doit aimer et respecter les rois,	We ought to love and respect kings.
Ce général attaqua et prit la ville,	That general attacked and took the city.

† EXERCISE ON THE GOVERNMENT OF THE VERBS.

1. Illustrious examples teach us, that God has hurled *from their thrones princes who contemned his laws:* he reduced *to the condition of a beast the haughty Nebuchadnezzar, who wanted to usurp divine honours.*

2. Wretched is * the man who feeds *his mind with chimeras.*

3. Our interest should prompt us to prefer *virtue to vice, wisdom to pleasure, and modesty to vanity*

(1.) *Illustrious*, fameux ; *teach*, apprendre ; *hurled*, renverser ; *haughty*, superbe ; Nabuchodonosor ; *wanted*, vouloir.
(2.) *Feeds*, repaître.
(3.) *Should*, devoir, ind-1 ; *prompt*, porter ; *pleasure*, volupté.

But we must not say,

Cet officier attaqua et se rendit maître de la ville,	That officer attacked and made himself master of the city.

A different turn should be given to the sentence, by placing the noun after the first verb, and adding *en* before the second, as,

Cet officier attaqua la ville *et s'en rendit maître,*‡	That officer attacked the city and made himself master of it.

OF THE USE PROPER, OR ACCIDENTAL, OF MOODS AND TENSES.

Indicative.

The *present* is used to express an existing state, as,

Je suis ici,	I am here.

An invariable state, as,

Dieu est de toute éternité,	God is from all eternity.

A future near at hand, as,

Il est demain fête,	To-morrow is a holiday.

Or even a preterit, when, to give a sort of animated picture, we relate a thing past as passing. Thus, we find in Racine,

J'ai vu votre malheureux fils traîné par ses chevaux,	I have seen your unhappy son dragged along by his horses.

‡ EXERCISE.

1 Luxury is like a torrent, which *carries away*, and *overthrows* every thing it meets.

2. Nothing can * resist the operation of time : it, at length, *undermines*, *alters*, or *destroys* every thing.

3. Among the Spartans, public education had two objects : the first, to harden their bodies by fatigue ; the second, to *excite* and *nourish* in their minds the love of their country, and an enthusiasm for what is great.

(1.) *Carries away*, entraîner ; *overthrows*, renverser ; *every thing*, tout ce que.

(2.) *Operation*, action ; *at length*, à la longue ; *undermines*, miner.

(3.) *Among the Spartans*, à Sparte ; *to*, de ; *harden*, endurcir ; *by*, à ; *their* must be rendered by the article : *for what is great*, des grandes choses.

But, suddenly passing from the preterit to the present, the speaker adds,

Il veut les rappeler, et sa voix les effraie, — He calls out to stop them, but his voice frightens them.

In English, the verb *to be*, is frequently used with the participle present, as,

I am reading, I am translating, I shall be writing.

This construction is not adopted in French; and whenever found, it is to be translated in French simply by the verb, put in the tense expressed by the verb *to be*. Thus, *I am reading*, must be expressed by *je lis: I shall be writing*, must be rendered *j'écrirai*, &c.¶

The *imperfect* is used—1. To denote the recurrency of an action at a time which is past, as,

Quand j'étais à Paris, j'allais souvent aux Champs Elysées, — When I was at Paris, I often went to the *Champs Elysées.*

¶ EXERCISE ON THE PROPER USE OF MOODS, &c.

1. *He is* in his chamber, where he *is relaxing* his mind from the fatigue of business, by some instructive and agreeable reading.

2. Truth, eternal by its nature, *is* immutable as God himself.

3. I never *let* a day *pass* without devoting an hour or two to reading the ancients.

4. It is this week that the new piece *comes* out.

5. The armies were in sight: nothing was heard on all sides but dreadful cries: the engagement began. Immediately a cloud of arrows *darkens* the air and *covers* the combatants; nothing *is* heard but doleful cries of the dying, or the clattering of the arms of those who *fall* in the conflict; the earth *groans* beneath a heap of dead bodies, and rivers of blood *stream* every where; there *is* nothing in this confused mass of men enraged against one another but slaughter, despair, revenge, and brutal fury.

(1.) *Is relaxing*, délasser; *reading*, lecture.
(2.) *By*, de; *immutable*, immuable.
(3.) *Let**; *devoting*, consacrer; *reading*, la lecture de.
(4.) *Come out*, on donner.
(5.) *Sight*, présence; *nothing was*, &c. on ne que, ind-2; *the engagement began*, on en venir aux mains, ind-3; *cloud*, nuée; *arrows*, trait; *darkens*, obscurcir; *nothing is*, &c. on ne plus que; *doleful*, plaintif; *clattering*, bruit; *conflict*, mêlée; *groans*, gémir; *beneath*, sous; *heap*, monceau; *rivers*, ruisseau; *stream*, couler; *there is nothing in*, &c. ce ne être dans; *mass*, amas; *enraged*, acharné; *but*, que; *slaughter*, massacre.

2. For a past which has some duration, especially in narrations, as,

Rome était d'abord gouvernée par des rois,†	Rome was at first governed by kings.

In French, the *preterit definite* and the *preterit indefinite* are not used indifferently.

The preterit *definite* is used, when speaking of a time which is entirely past, and of which nothing remains, as,

Je fis un voyage à Bath le mois dernier,	I took a journey to Bath last month.
J'écrivis hier à Rome,	I wrote yesterday to Rome.

To authorize the use of this tense, there must be the interval of, at least, one day. It is the most used in the historic style, and for that reason called *parfait historique.*

† EXERCISE ON THE USE OF THE IMPERFECT.

1. When I *was* at Paris, I *went* every morning to take a walk in the *Champs Elysées,* or the *Bois de Boulogne :* afterwards I *came* home, where I employed myself till dinner, either in reading or writing ; and, in the evening, I generally *went* for amusement to the French Theatre or the Opera.

2. When I *was* in the prime of life, like the light butterfly, I *fluttered* from object to object, without being able to settle to any thing : eager for pleasure, I *seized* every thing that *had* its appearance : alas! how far *was* I then from foreseeing that I should deplore with so much bitterness the loss of that precious time.

3. For a short time after Abraham, the knowledge of the true God still *appeared* in Palestine and Egypt. Melchisedec, king of Salem, *was* the priest of the Most High 2 God 1. Abimelech, king of Gerar, and his successor of the same name, *feared* God, *swore* by his name, and *reverenced* his power. But in Moses' time, the nations *adored* even beasts and reptiles. Every thing *was* God but God himself.

(1.) *Take a walk*, se promener ; *in*, à ; *came home*, rentrer chez soi ; *was busy*, s'occuper ; *reading*, (by the verb) ; *for amusement*, me délasser ; *French Theatre*, Comédie Française.

(2.) *Prime of life*, fleur de l'âge ; *butterfly*, papillon ; *fluttered*, voler ; *being able*, pouvoir ; *settle*, me fixer ; *eager for*, avide de ; *had its appearance*, m'en presentait l'image ; *how*, que ; *with so much bitterness*, (so bitterly).

(3.) *Swore*, jurer ; *reverenced*, admirer ; *the nations*, on ; *even*, jusqu'à ; *but*, excepté.

The preterit *indefinite* is used either for a past indeterminate, or for a past of which something still remains, as,

J'ai voyagé en Italie,	I have travelled in Italy.
J'ai déjeûné ce matin à Londres, et dîné à Richmond,‡	I breakfasted this morning in London, and dined at Richmond.

The preterit indefinite is sometimes used instead of a future just approaching, as,

Avez-vous bientôt fini?	Have you soon done?
Oui, j'ai fini dans le moment, ¶	Yes I shall have done in a moment.

‡ EXERCISE ON THE PROPER USE OF THE PRETERIT.

Amenophis *conceived* the design of making his son a conqueror. He *set about* it, after the manner of the Egyptians, that is, with great ideas. All the children who were born on * the same day as Sesostris, *were brought* to court by order of the king: he *had* them educated as his own children, and with the same care as Sesostris. When he *was* grown up, he made him serve his apprenticeship in a war against the Arabs: this young prince *learned* there to bear hunger and thirst, and *subdued* that nation, till then invincible. He afterwards *attacked* Lybia, and *conquered* it. After these successes, he *formed* the project of subduing the whole world. In consequence of this, * he entered Ethiopia, which he *made* tributary. He *continued* his victories in Asia. Jerusalem *was* the first to feel the force of his arms: the rash Rehoboam *could* not resist him, and Sesostris *carried* away the riches of Solomon. He *penetrated* into the Indies, farther than Hercules and Bacchus, and farther than Alexander did afterward. The Scythians *obeyed* him as far as the Tanais; Armenia and Cappadocia *were* subject to him. In a word, he *extended* his empire from the Ganges to the Danube.

Making, faire de; *set about it*, s'y prendre; *after*, à; *ideas*, pensée; *brought*, amener; *had educated*, faire élever; *grown up*, grand; *made serve*, fit faire; *apprenticeship*, apprentissage; *in*, par; *entered*, entrer dans; *made*, rendre; *as far as*, jusqu'à; *Cappadocia*, Cappadoce.

¶ EXERCISE.

1. Enflamed with the desire of knowing mankind, I *have travelled*, not only among the most polished nations, but even among the most barbarous. I *have observed* them in the different degrees of civilization, from the state of simple nature to the

(1.) *With*, de; *mankind*, homme, pl.; *to*, chez; *polished nations*, peuple policé; *barbarous*, nation sauvage; *from*, depuis; *simple*, pur; *to*, jusqu'à,

The two preterits anterior differ in the same manner as the two preceding preterits, but they are always accompanied by a conjunction, or an adverb of time, as,

Je suis sorti dès que j'ai eu dîné, I went out as soon as I had dined.

J'eus fini hier à midi, I had done yesterday at noon.

The *pluperfect* denotes that a thing took place before another, which had itself already taken place, as,

J'avais soupé quand il entra,† I had supped when he came in.

---

most perfect state of society, and wherever I went, the result *was* the same: that is to say, I *have* every where *seen* beings occupied in drying up the different sources of happiness that nature had placed within their reach.

2. I *have travelled* this year in Italy, where I *had* an * opportunity of seeing several master-pieces of antiquity, and where I *made* a valuable collection of scarce medals. I there *admired* the perfection to which they *have brought* architecture, painting, and music; but what *pleased* me most there, was the beauty of the climate of Naples.

---

wherever I went, dans tous les pays ; *the result was the same*, (I had the same result ;) *in drying up*, à tarir ; *within their reach*, à leur portée.

(2.) *Opportunity*, occasion ; *master-pieces*, chef d'œuvre ; *scarce*, rare ; *pleased me most*, faire le plus de plaisir ; *was*, ind-l.

---

† EXERCISE.

1. As soon as I *had examined* this phenomenon, I tried to find out its causes.

2. As soon as we *had crossed* the river, we found ourselves in a wood where there was not a single foot-path traced.

3. As soon as the great Sesostris *had satisfied* his ambition by the conquest of so many empires, he returned into Egypt, where he devoted the whole of the day to administering strict justice to his people, and, in the evening, he recreated himself by holding conferences with the learned, or by conversing with the most upright people of his kingdom.

4. I *had* only *received*, like most of the grandees, an education in which I *had imbibed* nothing but sentiments of pride and insensibility; that is, they *had done* every thing in their power,

---

(1.) *As soon as*, dès que ; *tried to find out*, en rechercher.

(2.) *Crossed*, traverser ; *found ourselves*, se trouver engagé ; *foot-path*, sentier de.

(3.) *The whole of the day*, jour entier ; *administering*, rendre, inf-l ; *strict*, exact ; *recreated*, délasser ; *by holding conferences*, à s'entretenir ; *upright*, honnête ; *people*, gens.

(4.) *Grandee*, grand ; *imbibed*, puiser ; *they*, on ; *in their power*, ce qu'on pouvoir, ind-l ; *stifle*, étouffer ; *benevolent*, bienfaisant.

As the use of these different preterits is attended with some difficulty, the following analysis is added, in order more clearly to explain the manner in which they are used.

We read in Marmontel the following extract ;

Célicour, à l'âge de quinze ans, avait été *dans le monde ce qu'on appelle un petit prodige.*

Célicour, at the age of fifteen, *had been* in the world what is called a little prodigy.

The author employs the pluperfect, as he speaks of a period of time anterior to all those which he is going to mention.

Il faisait *des vers les plus galans du monde ; il n'y* avait *pas dans le voisinage une jolie femme qu'il n'eût célébrée :* c'était *dommage de laisser tant de talens enfouis dans une petite ville ; Paris* devait *en être le théâtre.*

He *composed* the most agreeable love-sonnets imaginable ; there *was* not a pretty woman in the neighbourhood that he had not celebrated : it *was* a pity to let so many talents be buried in a little town ; Paris *was* the theatre on which they ought to be exhibited.

Here the author makes use of the imperfect, because he speaks of the habitual employment of Célicour.

*Et l'*on fit *si bien, que son père se* résolut *de l'y envoyer.*

And they *contrived* matters so that his father *determined* to send him there.

Now, the author passes to the preterit definite, because he is no longer speaking of what Célicour used to do, but what he did at a time past, and of which nothing remains.

Ce père était *un honnête homme, qui* aimait *l'esprit sans en avoir, et qui* admirait, *sans savoir pourquoi, tout ce qui* venait *de la capitale. Il* avait *même des rélations littéraires, et du nombre de ses correspondans* était *un connaisseur nommé M. de Fintac.*

This father *was* a good sort of man, who *was* fond of wit, without having any, and *admired,* without knowing why, every thing that *came* from the metropolis. Nay, he *even* had some literary connexions, and among his correspondents *was* a connoisseur of the name of Fintac.

---

to stifle in me happy and benevolent dispositions which I *had received* from nature.

Here, again, the author resumes the form of the imperfect, as he is now speaking of the habitual state of Célicour's father in his little town, and because, in this passage, he merely relates what that father was doing, at a time past, which has no kind of relation to the present.

Ce fut *principalement à lui que Célicour* fut *recommandé,*	It *was* paaticularly to him that Célicour *was* recommended.

The form of the preterit definite is now resumed, because this is an action passed, at a time of which nothing is left, &c.‡

There is this difference between the two future

---

‡ EXERCISE.

1. God, who *had created* his angels in holiness, *would* have their happiness depend upon themselves: they *could* insure their felicity, by giving themselves willingly to their Creator; but they *delighted* in themselves, and not in God: immediately those spirits of light *became* spirits of darknèss.

2. There is a letter which Philocles *has written* to a friend of his, about his project of making himself king of Carpathus. I *perused* that letter, and it *seemed* to me to be the hand of Philocles. They *had* perfectly *imitated* his writing. This letter *threw* me into a strange surprise. I *read* it again and again, and *could* not persuade myself that it *was* written * by Philocles, when I recalled to my mind the affecting marks which he *had given* me of his disinterestedness and integrity.

3. Those who *had shewn* the greatest zeal for the state and my person, *did not think* themselves obliged to undeceive me, after so terrible an example. I myself *was afraid* lest truth should break through the cloud, and reach me in spite of all my flatterers. I *felt* within myself that it would have raised in me bitter remorse. My effeminacy, and the dominion which a treacherous minister *had gained* over me, *threw* me into a kind of despair of ever recovering my * liberty.

(1.) *Have their happiness depend*, (that their happiness,) dépendre, subj-2; *could*, pouvoir; *delighted in*, se plaire en; *of light*, lumineux; *darkness*, ténèbres.

(2.) *There is*, voilà; *about*, sur; *Carpathus*, Carpathie; *to be*, de; *they*, on, *again and again*, sans cesse; *by*, de; *when I recalled to*, repasser dans, inf-3; *integrity*, bonne foi.

(3.) *Did not think themselves obliged to*, se croire dispensé de; *was afraid lest*, craindre que; *break through*, percer, subj-2; *reach*, parvenir jusqu'à; *in spite of*, maigré; *raised in*, causer à; *effeminacy*, mollesse; *dominion*, ascendant; *treacherous*, perfide; *gained*, prendre; *threw*, plonger, *recovering*, rentrer en.

tenses, that the period of time expressed by the future absolute, may, or may not be determined, as,

J'irai à la campagne, or *j'irai demain à la campagne,*

while, in the future anterior, the time is necessarily determined, as,

J'aurai fini, quand vous arriverez.¶

CONDITIONAL.

The conditional is used—1. To express a wish, as,

Que je serais, or, *que j'aurais été content de réussir dans cette affaire !*	How glad I should be, or should have been to succeed in that affair.

2. With *si*, if, whether, expressing a doubt, as,

Demandez-lui s'il serait venu avec nous supposé qu'il n'eût pas eu affaire,	Ask him whether he would have come with us, had he not been busy.

3. Before, or after the imperfect, or pluperfect of the indicative, preceded by *si*, as,

Nous nous épargnerions bien des peines, si nous savions modérer nos désirs,	We should spare ourselves much pain, did we know how to moderate our desires.

¶ EXERCISE.

1. Remember that youth is but a flower, which *will wither* almost as soon as it * opens. Thou *wilt see thyself* gradually changed. Smiling graces, sweet pleasures, strength, health, and joy, *will vanish* like a pleasing dream; nothing but the sad remembrance will be left thee.

2. I *shall* next year *take* a journey into Greece, and I am preparing myself for it by reading the travels of the young Anacharsis.

3. When you *have read* the celebrated discourse of Bossuet on Universal History, and *studied* in it the causes of the rise and fall of states, you *will be* less astonished at the revolutions, more or less sudden, that modern empires have experienced, which appeared to you in the most flourishing state.

(1.) *Will wither*, (will be almost as soon withered,) sécher; *opens*, éclose, *gradually*, insensiblement; *lively*, riant; *pleasing*, beau; *nothing will be left*, il n'en reste.

(2.) *Take*, faire; *for it*, y; *reading*, lecture de; *(the travels*, celui.)

(3.) *Have read*, ind-3; *and*, que vous, ind-3; *in it*, y; *rise*, grandeur; *fall*, chute; *sudden*, subite; (that have experienced the modern empires, which, &c.) *appeared*, ind-2.

Vous auriez été plus heureux, si vous aviez suivi mes conseils,	You would have been more happy, if you had followed my advice.

4. With *quand*, used instead of *si*, *quoique*, or *quand même ;* the verb preceded by *quand* is generally in one of the conditionals, as,

Quand l'avare posséderait tout l'or du monde, il ne serait pas encore content,	Were the miser to possess all the gold in the world, still he would not be satisfied.

5. Lastly, for various tenses of the indicative, as,

Croiriez-vous votre fils ingrat ?	Could you think your son ungrateful ?

which means, *croyez-vous*, &c.

L'auriez-vous soupçonné d'un tel vice ?	Could you have suspected him of such a vice ?

which means, *l'avez-vous*, &c.

Quelle raison pourrait m'empêcher d'aller vous voir ?	What cause could prevent me from coming to see you ?

which means, *quelle cause pourra*, &c.†

---

†EXERCISE ON THE CONDITIONAL.

1. If it *were* even possible for men always to act conformably to equity, as it is the multitude that must judge their conduct, the wicked would always blame and contradict them from malignity, and the good sometimes from mistake.

2. What false steps I *should have made* but for you, at my entrance into the world !

3. But for your counsels, I *should have failed* in this undertaking.

4. How satisfied I *should have been*, if you had sooner informed me of your happiness !

5. If we gave to infancy none but just and clear notions, *there would* not be by far so many false wits in the world.

6. *Had* Alexander *conquered* the whole world, his ambition

(1.) *If even*, quand même ; *were*, cond-1 ; *for men*, (that men ;) *to act*, sub-2 ; *judge*, juger de ; *would blame*, ind-7 ; *contradict*, croiser, ind-7.
(2.) *What*, que de ; *steps*, démarche ; *but for*, sans.
(3.) *But for*, sans ; *failed*, échouer. (4.) *How*, que.
(5.) *We*, on ; *there would not be by far so many*, il y aurait bien moins de.
(6.) (When Alexander would have conquered ;) *straitened*, trop à l'étroit.

REMARK ON THE USE OF THE CONDITIONAL AND FUTURE.

Foreigners are very apt to use the future, or the conditional after *si*, when meaning *supposé que*. They say,

J'irai demain à la campagne, s'il fera *beau*,	I shall go into the country to-morrow, if the weather be fine.
Vous auriez vu le roi, si *vous* seriez *venu*,	You would have seen the king if you had come.

The impropriety of this construction will be obviated by attending to the following

RULE. When a verb is preceded by *si*, meaning *supposé que*, the present is used instead of the future absolute ; the preterit indefinite instead of the future anterior ; the imperfect instead of the conditional present, and the pluperfect instead of the conditional past.

EXAMPLES.

J'irai demain à la campagne, s'il fait *beau*,	I shall go to-morrow into the country, if it be fine weather.
Il aura eu l'avantage, s'il a suivi *vos conseils*,	He will have had the advantage, if he has followed your advice.
Je serais content, si je *vous* voyais *appliqué*,	I should be pleased, if I saw you apply to study.
J'aurais été content, si je *vous* avais vu *appliqué*,	I should have been pleased, if I had seen you attentive to your studies.

---

would not have been satisfied ; he *would* still *have found* himself straitened in it.

7. *Could you believe* him vain enough to aspire to that high degree of honour ?

8. *Could you* ever *have thought* him capable of deserting the good cause, to go and side with rebels ?

9. *Would you renounce* being useful to the present generation, because envy fastens on you ?

(8.) *Deserting*, abandonner ; *to go and side with*, pour se ranger sous les drapeaux de.

(9.) *Renounce*, renoncer à ; *fastens*, s'attacher ; *on you*, à vos pas.

REMARK. This rule does not hold good, either when *si* is placed between two verbs, the first of which implies doubt, uncertainty, as,

Je ne sais s'il viendra,

Or, with the second conditional post, as,

Vous m'eussiez trouvé, si vous fussiez venu ce matin.‡

SUBJUNCTIVE.

There are conjunctions which govern the indicative, (p. 294), and others which govern the subjunctive, (p. 295). We call *principal proposition* the phrase which is followed by the conjunction, and *incidental*, or

‡ EXERCISE.

1. A young man who is just entering the career of letters, *will conciliate* the good will of the public, *if he consider* his first successes only as an encouragement to do better.

2. That absurd criticism *will have amused* only fools or malicious people,* if attention *has been paid* to the spirit that pervades the whole, and the manner in which it is written.

3. Life *would possess* many more sweets and charms, *if men*, instead of tearing one another to pieces, *formed* but one society of brethren.

4. The Athenians *would have found* in the young Alcibiades the only man capable of insuring their superiority in Greece, *had not* that vain thoughtless people *forced* him, by an unjust, or, at least, imprudent sentence, to banish himself from his country.

5. I know not *whether* reason *will* soon *triumph* over prejudice and ignorance, but I am certain it will be the case sooner or later.

6. Rome *would have never attained* that high degree of splendour and glory which astonishes us, *had it* not *extended* its conquests as much by its policy as by its arms.

(1.) *Is just entering*, débuter dans ; *career*, carrière ; *conciliate*, s'attirer ; *good will*, bienveillance ; *consider*, regarder.

(2.) *Fools*, sot ; *malicious*, méchant ; *paid*, faire ; *pervades the whole*, régner d'un bout à l'autre ; *in which*, dont.

(3.) *Possess*, avoir ; *tearing one another to pieces*, s'entredéchirer.

(4.) *Superiority*, prépondérance ; *thoughtless*, léger ; *sentence*, condamnation.

(5.) *Know*, savoir ; *it will be the case*, cela être.

(6.) *Attained*, parvenir à ; *policy*, politique.

subordinate proposition, that which is placed after the conjunction. In this sentence,

Je crois que vous aimez à jouer.

Je crois is the principal proposition, and *vous aimez a jouer* is the subordinate proposition : *que* is the conjunction that unites the two phrases.

General Rule. The verb of the *subordinate* proposition must be put in the *indicative*, when the verb of the *principal* proposition expresses affirmation, in a direct, positive, and independent manner ; but it is put in the *subjunctive*, when that of the *principal* proposition expresses doubt, wish, or uncertainty.

Je sais qu'il est surpris,	I know he is surprised.
Je crois qu'il viendra,	I believe he will come.
Je doute qu'il soit surpris,	I doubt his being surprised.
Je doute qu'il vienne,	I doubt his coming.
Je souhaite qu'il réussisse,	I wish he may succeed.
Je tremble qu'il ne succombe,¶	I tremble lest he should fail.

¶ EXERCISE ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. The glory which has been ascribed to the Egyptians of being the most grateful of all men, *shows* that *they were* likewise the most sociable.

2. In Egypt, when it *was proved* that the conduct of a dead man* *had been* bad, they condemned his memory, and he was denied burial.

3. I *am sure* that by moderation, mildness, and politeness, you *will disarm* even* envy itself.

4. The new philosophers *say* that colour *is* a sensation of the soul.

5. I *believe you* are as honest and disinterested as you seem to be.

6. I *doubt* whether the Romans *would* ever *have triumphed* over the Gauls, if the different chiefs of this warlike people had not been disunited.

7. I *could wish* that the love, which we ought to have for one another, *were* the principle of all our actions, as it is the basis of all virtues.

(1.) *Which has*, &c. qu'on ; *ascribed*, donner ; *grateful*, reconnaissant, sing. ; *men*, peuple (2.) *Was denied*, priver de ; *burial*, sépulture.
(3.) *By*, avec ; *politeness*, honnêteté. (5.) *Seem to be*, le paraître.
(6.) *Whether*, que.

Do, *did*, *will*, *would*, *should*, *can*, *could*, *may*, and *might*, are sometimes, with respect to the French language, simply signs of tenses, at others they are real verbs.

There can be no difficulty about *do* and *did;* these are mere expletives, denoting interrogation, negation, or merely emphasis, when they are joined to a verb.

I do love,	J'aime.
I did love,	J'aimois, *or*, j'aimai.
Do I love?	Aimé-je?
Did I love?	Aimais-je, *or*, aimai-je?
I do not love,	Je n'aime pas.
I did not love,	Je n'aimais pas, *or*, je n'aimai pas.

In all these cases they are not expressed in French. But when they are followed by a noun, or a pronoun, then they are real verbs, and mean, *faire*.

Do me that favour,	Faites-moi ce plaisir.
He did it,	Il le fit.

In short, by any thing else, except the verb with which they are necessarily connected, as,

He did more than could have been expected,	Il fit plus qu'on n'eût pu espérer.

Should is only a sign of the conditional, when it expresses a thing which may happen upon some condition.

I should like a country life, if my affairs would permit me to indulge my inclination,	J'aimerais la vie champêtre, si mes affaires me permettaient de suivre mon goût.

But when it implies duty or obligation, it is a verb, and must be expressed by the verb *devoir*, as,

---

8. *Fear*, lest it *should be said* that you feed upon chimeras, and that you take the shadow for the reality.

9. The new philosophers *will have* colour *to be* a sensation of the soul.

10. I *will have* you *to be* as honest and disinterested as you seem to be.

(8.) *It*, on ne ; *feed upon*, se repaître de.
(9.) *Will have*, vouloir ; *colour to be*, (that colour be.)

We should never swerve from the path of virtue,	Nous ne devrions jamais nous écarter du sentier de la vertu.

Can, could, may, and *might,* are not so difficult as they appear at first sight ; because, in almost every instance, there is no impropriety in rendering them by the verb *pouvoir.* In general the first two imply a power, a possibility, a capability, &c. and the others, a permission, probability, &c.

Do, did, shall, will, &c. in English, are sometimes used elliptically in the answers to interrogative sentences. The French answer with the repetition of the verb, accompanied with a pronoun expressive of the idea of the interrogative sentence, as,

Will you do your exercise today ?—Yes, I will.	Ferez-vous votre thême aujourd'hui ?—Oui, je le ferai.

RELATIONS BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

Rule. When the first verb is in the imperfect, the preterit, or the pluperfect, and the second denotes a temporary action, this second verb is put in the imperfect, if we mean to express a present.

EXAMPLE.

Je croyais, j'ai cru, j'avais cru que vous étudiez les mathématiques,	I thought, I have thought, I had thought that you were studying mathematics.

—In the pluperfect, if we mean to express a past.

EXAMPLE.

Il m'assura qu'il n'avait jamais tant ri,	He assured me that he had never laughed so much.

—And in the present of the conditional, if we mean to express a future absolute.

EXAMPLE.

On m'a dit que votre frère viendrait à Londres l'hiver prochain,	I was told your brother would come to town next winter.

But, although the first verb may be in some of these

tenses, yet the second is put in the present, when this second verb expresses a thing which is true at all times.

EXAMPLE.

Je vous disais, je vous ai dit, je vous avais dit, que la santé fait la félicité du corps, et le savoir celle de l'âme,	I told you, I have told you, I had told you, that health constitutes the happiness of the body, and knowledge that of the soul.

REMARK. In phrases where the imperfect is preceded by *que*, it denotes, sometimes a past, sometimes a present, with respect to the preceding verb. It denotes a past, when the verb which is joined to it by the conjunction *que* is in the present, or future.

EXAMPLE.

Vous savez, or *vous saurez que le peuple Romain* était *aussi avide qu'ambitieux,*	You know, *or* you must know that the Romans were a people as covetous as they were ambitious.

But it denotes a present, when the verb, which precedes it, is in the imperfect, one of the peterits, or the pluperfect.

EXAMPLE.

On disait, on a dit, on avait dit que Phocion était *le plus grand et le plus honnête homme de son temps,*	It was said, it has been said, it had been said, that Phocion was the greatest and most upright man of his age.
Dès qu'on eut appris à Athènes qu' Alcibiade était *à Lacédémone, on se repentit de la précipitation avec laquelle on l'avait, condamné.*	As soon as it was known at Athens that Alcibiades was at Lacedemon, the Athenians repented of the precipitation with which they had condemned him.

Nevertheless, the imperfect denotes the past, in this last instance, when it signifies an action which was past before that which is expressed by the first verb.

EXAMPLE.

En lisant l'histoire des temps héroïques, vous devez avoir remarqué que ces hommes dont on a fait des demi-dieux, étaient *des chefs féroces et barbares, dignes à peine du nom d'homme.*	In reading the history of heroic times, you must have remarked that those men who have been made demi-gods, were ferocious and barbarous chiefs, scarcely deserving the name of men.

RELATIONS BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND THOSE OF THE INDICATIVE.

Rule I. When the verb of the principal proposition is in the present, or future, that of the subordinate proposition is put in the present of the subjunctive, to express a present, or future; but in the preterit, to express a past. We say,

---

† EXERCISE.

1. I *thought* you *were not ignorant* that, to teach others the principles of an art or science, it is necessary to have experience and skill.

2. I *have been told* that your sweetest occupation *was* to form your taste, your heart, and your understanding.

3. Darius, in his flight, being* reduced to the necessity of drinking water muddy and infected by dead bodies, *affirmed* that he never *had drunk* with so much pleasure.

4. Care *has been taken* to inculcate in me, from infancy, that *I should succeed* in the world, only in proportion as I should join to the desire of pleasing, a great deal of gentleness and civility.

5. Ovid *has said*, that study *softens* the manners and *corrects* every thing that is found in us rude and barbarous.

6. You *know* that those pretended heroes, whom Pagan antiquity has made gods, *were* only barbarous and ferocious kings, who overran the earth, not so much to conquer as to ravage it, and who left every where traces of their fury and of their vices.

7. It *has been said of* Pericles, that his eloquence was like a thunderbolt, which nothing could resist.

8. As soon as Aristides *had said*, that the proposal of Themistocles *was* unjust, the whole people *exclaimed*, that they must not think of it any longer.

9. Had you read the history of the early ages, *you would know* that Egypt *was* the most enlightened country in the universe, and the original spot* whence knowledge *spread* into Greece and the neighbouring countries.

(1.) *Were ignorant*, ignorer ; *teach*, instruire dans ; *it is necessary*, avoir besoin ; *skill*, habileté. (2.) *I have*, &c. (by the active voice) on.
(3.) *Flight*, déroute ; *muddy*, bourbeux ; *affirmed*, assurer.
(4.) *Care has*, &c. (active voice) on avoir ; *in me*, me ; *in proportion*, autant *civility*, honnêteté. (5.) *Corrects*, effacer ; *is found*, se trouver de.
(6.) *Overran*, parcourir ; *not so much*, moins.
(7.) *It*, on ; *thunderbolt*, foudre, m. ; (to) *which*.
(8.) *Exclaimed*, s'écrier ; *they must*, falloir, ind-2 ; *of it*, y ; *any longer* plus.
(9.) *Ages*, temps ; *the original spot* * *whence*, celui d'où ; *neighbouring*, circonvoisin ; *countries*, lieu.

Il faut que celui qui parle se mette *à la portée de celui qui l'écoute,*
He that speaks should accommodate himself to the understanding of him that listens.

Il voudra que votre frère soit *de la partie,*
He will wish your brother to be one of the party.

But we must say,

Pour s'être élevé à ce point de grandeur, il faut que Rome ait eu *une suite non interrompue de grands hommes,*
To have risen to that pitch of grandeur, Rome must have had an uninterrupted succession of great men.

EXCEPTION. Though the first verb be in the present, or future, yet the second may be put in the imperfect, or pluperfect of the subjunctive, when some conditional expression is introduced into the sentence.

Il n'est point d'homme, quelque mérite qu'il ait, qui ne fût *très-mortifié, s'il savait tout ce qu'on pense de lui,*
There is no man, whatever merit he may have, that would not feel very much mortified, were he to know all that is thought of him.

Où trouvera-t-on un homme qui ne fît *la même faute, s'il était exposé aux mêmes tentations ?*
Where will you find the man who would not have committed the same error, had he been exposed to the same temptations ?

Je doute que votre frère eût réussi *sans votre assistance,*†
I doubt whether your brother would have succeeded, had it not been for your assistance.

---

‡ EXERCISE.

1. He who wishes to teach an art, must *know it* thoroughly, he must *give* none but clear, precise, and well-digested notions of it : he must *instil* them, one by one, into the minds of his pupils, and, above all, he must not overburden their memory with useless, or unimportant rules.

2. He *must yield* to the force of truth, when they *shall have suffered* it to appear in its real light.

3. There is no work, however perfect people may suppose it, that would not be liable to criticism, if it were examined with severity and in every point of view.

(1.) *It must* (that he who, &c. know it) ; *he must* (not repeated), que ; *instil*, faire entrer ; *by*, à ; *overburden*, surcharger ; *unimportant*, insignificant.

(2.) (It must, ind-7, that he) ; *yield*, se rendre ; *suffered*, permettre ; *it to appear*, (that it appear) ; *real light*, vrai jour.

(3.) *Would be liable*, preter, subj-2 ; *with severity*, à la rigueur ; *in*, sous ; *point of view*, face.

RULE II. When the first verb is in the imperfect, either of the preterits, the pluperfect, or either of the conditionals, the second is put in the imperfect of the subjunctive, if we mean to express a present, or future; but it is put in the pluperfect, if we wish to express a past.

Je voulais, j'ai voulu, j'eus voulu, je voudrais, or *j'eusse voulu que* vous finissiez *cette affaire*.

Je ne savais pas, je n'ai pas su, &c. *que* vous eussiez étudié *les mathématiques*.

REMARK. With the preterit indefinite the second verb is put in the present, if it expresses an action which is, or may be done at all times, as,

Dieu a entouré les yeux de tuniques fort minces, transparentes au dehors, afin qu'on puisse *voir à travers,*	God has surrounded the eyes with very thin tunics, transparent on the outside, that we may see through them.

And in the preterit, if we mean to express a past, as,

*Il a fallu qu'*il ait sollicité *ses juges,*¶	He must have been obliged to solicit his judges.

4. I doubt whether his piece would have had the approbation of *connaisseurs*, if he had not determined to make in it the changes you judged necessary.

(4.) *Approbation*, suffrage; *had determined*, se décider; *in it*, y; *judged*, ind-4.

¶ EXERCISE.

1. Mr. de Turenne never *would* buy any thing on credit, of tradesmen, for fear, he used to say, they *should lose* a great part of their demand, if he happened to be killed. All the workmen who were employed about his house, had orders to bring in their bill, before he set out for the campaign, and they were regularly paid.

2. It *would be better*, for a man who truly loves himself, *to lose* his life, than to forfeit his honour by some base and shameful action.

3. Lycurgus, in one of his laws, *had forbidden* to light home

(1.) *Would*, vouloir, ind-2; *buy on credit*, prendre à crédit; *of*, chez; *happened*, venir; *were employed*, travailler; *about*, pour; *bills*, mémoire; *he*, on; *set out for*, se mettre en.

(2.) *To lose*, (that he *would lose*); *forfeit*, ternir.

(3.) *In*, par; *to light*, que on éclairer, subj-2; *that*, afin que; *reach their houses*, se rendre chez eux; *getting intoxicated*, s'enivrer.

In interrogative and negative sentences, the second verb is generally put in the subjunctive, as,

Quel est l'insensé qui tienne *pour sûr qu'il vivra demain ?*
Vous ne vous persuadiez pas que les choses pussent *tourner si mal.*

The verb is likewise in the subjunctive after the superlative relative, and frequently after an impersonal verb, as,

Le meilleur cortége qu'un prince puisse *avoir, c'est le cœur de ses sujets.*

The subjunctive is elegantly used in elliptical phrases, where the principal proposition is omitted, as,

Qu'il vive ! (je souhaite qu'il),	May he live !
Qu'il se soit oublié jusqu'à ce point ! (je suis surpris qu'il),	That he should have so far forgotten himself !
Qui m'aime, me suive ! (je veux que celui qui),	Whoever loves me let him follow me.
Heureux l'homme qui peut, ne fût-ce que dans sa vieillesse, jouir de toute la force de sa raison ! (quand ce ne serait que),†	Happy the man that can, were it only in his old age, enjoy the whole strength of his reason.

---

those who came from a feast in the evening, that the fear of not being able to reach their houses might *prevent* them from getting intoxicated.

4. People *used* the bark of trees, or skins, to write upon*, before paper *was* known.

5. Go and * ask that old man : for whom are you planting ? he will answer you : for the immortal gods, who *have ordered* both that I *should profit* by the labour of those that have preceded me, and that those who should come after me, *should profit* by mine.

(4.) *People*, on ; *bark*, écorce ; *skins*, peau ; *known*, en usage.
(5.) *Have ordered*, vouloir ; *both*, et ; *by*, de.

---

† EXERCISE.

1. *Is there any one* who does not *feel* that nothing is more degrading in a writer, than the pains he takes to express ordinary and common things in a singular and pompous style.

2. *Do you think* that, in forming the republic of bees, God *has*

(1.) *Is degrading in*, dégrader ; *in*, de. (2.) *Had in view*, vouloir.

REMARK. The relative pronouns *qui, que, quel, dont,* and *où,* govern the subjunctive in similar circumstances.‡

Further Observations upon the CONDITIONAL *and* SUBJUNCTIVE.

We have said the English auxiliaries *should, would, could, may,* and *might,* are not always to be considered as essentially and necessarily appertaining to the conditional and subjunctive. Indeed it seldom happens that the French tenses are the same as the English, at

not had in view to teach kings to govern with gentleness, and subjects to obey with love ?

3. You *will never be* at peace, either with yourself or with others, unless you seriously endeavour to restrain your natural impetuosity.

(3.) *Be at peace,* avoir la paix ; *either,* ni ; *or,* ni ; *endeavour,* s'appliquer.

‡ EXERCISE.

1. *Who is the writer* that does not sometimes *experience* moments of sterility and languor ?

2. *There is not in* the heart of man a good impulse that God does not *produce.*

3. *Choose* a retreat where you *may be* quiet, a post whence you *may defend* yourself.

4. The most flattering reward that a man *can* reap from his labours, is the esteem of an enlightened public.

5. May he live, reign, and long constitute the happiness of a nation which he loves, and by which he is adored !

6. That he should thus degrade himself, is what posterity will find very difficult to believe.

7. A man just and firm is not shaken, either by the clamours of an inconsiderate mob, or by the threats of an imperious tyrant : though * the whole world *were* to fall into ruins, he would be struck by it, but not moved.

(2.) *Impulse,* mouvement. (3.) *May,* pouvoir.
(5.) *May he,* repeated before every verb) ; *constitute,* faire ; *which he loves,* chérir.
(6.) *Find difficult,* avoir de la peine ; *believe, se* persuader.
(7.) *Is shaken,* ébranler ; *inconsiderate,* insensé; *mob,* populace ; *imperious,* fier ; *were,* devoir ; *to fall into ruins,* s'écrouler.

least in subordinate, though they may be in the principal propositions. For instance,

I wish you would come to-night,

Cannot be translated by

Je souhaite que vous viendriez *ce soir,*

Because, " when the verb of the principal proposition is in the present, the verb of the subordinate proposition is put in the present of the subjunctive, if we mean to express a future." Therefore we must say,

Je souhaite que vous veniez.

Or, " if the first verb is in either of the conditionals, the second must be in the imperfect of the subjunctive." For which reason we must also say,

Je voudrais que vous vinssiez. (See Rule II.)

Now, in the first example, *que vous veniez* is marked in the conjunction of the verb by, *that you* may *come,* and in the second, *que vous vinssiez,* by, *that you* might *come,* neither of which is in the examples given. Again,

Il n'y a personne qui le croie,

Cannot be translated by, *there is nobody who* may believe it, although *may* is the sign of the subjunctive in the meaning ; but the meaning is,

There is nobody that believes *it,* or simply *nobody believes it.*

RELATIONS BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE DIFFERENT MOODS.

Remark. Our intention is not to give the relations which all the tenses bear to each other, but simply to mention some of the principal.

RELATIONS OF THE INDICATIVE.

To the imperfect are subjoined three tenses.

Standard.—*Je lisais* { *quand vous écriviez* / *quand vous avez écrit* / *quand vous écrivîtes.*

The preterit anterior requires the preterit definite, as, *quand j'eus fini, vous entrâtes.*

To the pluperfect are subjoined the preterit definite, the preterit indefinite, the preterit anterior, and the imperfect.

STANDARDS.—*J'avais lu* { *quand vous entrâtes* / *quand vous êtes entré* / *quand vous fûtes entré* / *quand vous entriez.*

To the preterit anterior indefinite is subjoined the preterit indefinite, as, *quand j'ai eu dîné, vous êtes entré.*

In conjunction with *si*, for *supposé que*, the future absolute requires the present, and the future anterior, the preterit indefinite.

STANDARD.— { *Vous partirez, si je veux.* / *Il sera parti, si vous l'avez voulu.*

Relations to the Conditional and of the Conditional.

In conjunction with *si*, for *supposé que*, the conditional present is accompanied by the imperfect, and the first conditional past by the pluperfect, or by the second conditional past.

STANDARDS.— { *Vous partiriez, si je le voulais.* / *Vous seriez parti* { *si je l'avais voulu* / *si je l'eusse voulu.*

The tenses of the conditional present, and of the two conditionals past are likewise accompanied by themselves.

STANDARDS.— { *Quand l'avare posséderait tout l'or du monde, il ne serait pas encore content.* / *Quand Alexandre aurait conquis tout l'univers, il n'aurait pas été content.* / *Vous fussiez parti, si je l'eusse voulu.*

It has been observed that when two words are joined by the conjunction *que*, the second verb is put sometimes in the indicative and sometimes in the subjunctive.

Relations of the Present *and* Future Absolute, *of the Indicative to the Tenses of their own Mood and of the Conditional.*

These two tenses may be accompanied by all the tenses of the indicative and conditional.

STANDARD.— { *On dit* / *On dira* } *que* { *vous partez aujourd'hui* / *vous partirez demain* / *vous serez parti, quand,* &c. / *vous partiez hier* / *vous partîtes hier* / *vous êtes parti ce matin* / *vous fûtesparti hier, quand,* &c. / *vous étiez parti hier, quand,* &c. / *vous partiriez aujourd'hui, si,* &c. / *vous seriez parti hier, si,* &c. / *vous fussiez parti plus tôt, si,* &c.

REMARK. The same relation subsists when the sentence is negative ; except that for the present absolute of the indicative, the present of the subjunctive is substituted. Instead of, *on ne dit pas que vous partez aujourd'hui ;* the genius of the French language requires that we should say, *on ne dit pas que vous partiez aujourd'hui.*

The imperfect, the preterit definite, the preterit indefinite, and the pluperfect, are accompanied either by the imperfect, or by the pluperfect.

STANDARDS.— { *On disait* / *On dit hier* / *On a dit* / *On avait dit* } *que* { *vous partiez aujourd'hui* / *vous étiez parti.*

The future anterior requires the preterit indefinite, as, *on aura dit que vous avez menti.*

The conditional present may be accompanied by the present, the imperfect, the preterit indefinite, the pluperfect, the future of the indicative as well as by the three conditionals.

STANDARDS.—*On croirait.* { *qu'il se trompe* / *qu'il se trompait* / *qu'il s'est trompé* / *qu'il s'était trompé* / *qu'il se trompera* / *qu'il se tromperait, si, &c.* / *qu'il se serait trompé, si, &c.* / *qu'il se fût trompé, si, &c.*

The first conditional past may be accompanied by the imperfect, the pluperfect, as well as by the two other conditionals.

STANDARDS.—*On auroit cru* { *qu'il tombait* / *qu'il était tombé* / *qu'il serait tombé* / *qu'il fût tombé*

The second conditional past may be accompanied by the same tenses.

Principal Relations with the Subjunctive.

To the present, the future absolute, and the future anterior of the indicative is generally subjoined the present of the subjunctive.

STANDARD.— { *Il veut* / *Il voudra* / *Il aura voulu* } *que vous partiez.*

To the imperfect, the preterit definite, the preterit indefinite, the pluperfect, and the preterit anterior may be subjoined the imperfect of the subjunctive.

STANDARD.— { *Je voulais* / *Je voulus* / *J'ai voulu* / *J'avais voulu* / *J'eus voulu* } *que vous partissiez.*

To the future anterior the preterit of the subjunctive, as : *Il aura voulu qu'il soit parti.*

The conditional present is accompanied either by the imperfect, or by the pluperfect of the subjunctive.

STANDARD.— { *Je voudrais que* { *vous partissiez* / *vous fussiez parti.*

To the first and second conditionals past is subjoined the pluperfect of the subjunctive.

STANDARD.— { *J'aurais voulu* / *J'eusse voulu* } *que vous fussiez parti,*
&c. &c. &c. &c.

OF THE INFINITIVE.

The preposition *to* before an infinitive, is, according to circumstances, rendered either by *pour*, by *à*, or by *de*; sometimes even, it is not expressed at all.

When *to* means *in order to*, it is expressed in French, by *pour*, as,

He came to speak to me,	Il vint pour me parler.

As for the other two cases, there is hardly any fixed rule to distinguish whether *à* or *de*, is to be used; the regimen which the preceding French verb requires after it is the only guide. Thus,

He likes to play, will be expressed by *il aime à jouer; he told me to go*, by *il me dit d'aller;* and *he preferred dying*, by *il aima mieux mourir.*

The participle present is used in English both as a substantive and an adjective, and frequently instead of the present of the infinitive.

His ruling *passion is hunting,*	Sa passion *dominante* est *la chasse.*
He is gone a walking,	Il est allé se promener.
Prevent him from doing mischief,	Empêchez-le de faire le mal.
There is a pleasure in silencing great talkers,	Il y a plaisir à fermer la bouche aux grands parleurs.

It likewise takes almost every other preposition. In the first of the above examples it is translated by the substantive; in the second by the verbal adjective; and in the others by the present of the infinitive. But sometimes it must be expressed by the relative *qui*, with the verb in the indicative, especially when a different mode might create any ambiguity in the sense; as,

I met them riding post,	Je les ai rencontrés qui couraient la poste.

Sometimes it must be expressed by the conjunction *que*, with the verb in the indicative, or in the subjunctive, as circumstances may require : this is when the participle present is preceded by a possessive pronoun, as,

The fear of his coming vexed us,	La crainte qu'il ne vint nous tourmentait.
I doubt his being faithful,	Je doute qu'il soit fidèle, &c.

It may be proper to observe that, in French, the preposition *en* alone is followed by the participle present. All other prepositions require the present of the infinitive.

Foreigners are apt to mistake in the use of the participle present, because they do not consider that, as it expresses an incidental proposition, it must evidently relate to the word which it restrains and modifies.

Rule. The participle present always forming a phrase incidental and subordinate to another, must necessarily relate to the subject of the principal phrase, when it is not preceded by another noun, as in this sentence :

Je ne puis vous accompagner à la campagne, ayant des affaires qui exigent ici ma présence,	I cannot accompany you into the country, having some business that requires my presence here.

The participle present *ayant* relates to the subject *je*, since the subordinate proposition, formed by *ayant*, could have no kind of relation to the principal proposition, if it could not be resolved into this, *parce que j'ai des affaires qui*, &c. But, in this sentence ;

Combien voyons-nous de gens, qui, connaissant le prix du temps, le perdent mal-à-propos !	How many people do we see, who, knowing the value of time, waste it improperly !

Connaissant relates to the substantive *gens*, because this is the word which it restrains and modifies, and because the relative *qui*, placed between that substan-

tive as the regimen, and the participle present, obviates every kind of ambiguity.

Remarks. 1. Two participles ought never to be used together without being united by a conjunction, as, &c.

C'est un homme aimant et craignant Dieu,	He is a man loving and fearing God.

2. The relative *en* ought never to be put either before a participle present, or before a gerund. We cannot say:

Je vous ai remis mon fils entre les mains, en *voulant faire quelque chose de bon.*

Because the sense would be ambiguous: for, the meaning is not:

As I wish to do something good, or, *as I wish to do well, I have put my son into your hands,*

But,

I have put my son into your hands, as I wish to make something of him.

We should say: *Voulant* en *faire*, &c.

Likewise this sentence would be improper:

Le prince tempère la rigueur du pouvoir, en en *partageant les fonctions,*

on account of the repetition of the word *en*, used in two different senses, viz., as a preposition and a relative. Another turn must be then adopted, as,

C'est en *partageant les fonctions du pouvoir, qu'un prince* en *tempère la rigueur.*

CHAP. VI.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

The office of prepositions is to bring the two terms between which they are placed, into a state of relation. And that relation is generally expressed by their own signification, as,

Avec, sur, pendant, dans, &c.

But *à*, *de*, and *en*, express it, either by their primitive and proper meaning, or figuratively and by extension ; so that, in this last case, they are merely prepositions serving to unite the two terms ; whence it happens that they often express, either the same relations that others do, or opposite relations. For instance, in these two sentences :

Approchez-vous du feu,	Come near the fire.
Eloignez-vous du feu,	Go from the fire.

De merely establishes a relation between the two terms, without expressing in the first, the relation of approximation, or in the second, the relation of distance. In order, therefore, to form a just idea of *these three* propositions, it is of importance to consider only their primitive and proper signification.

En and *dans* have nearly the same meaning ; but they differ in this, that the former is used in a more vague, the latter in a more determinate sense, as :

J'étais en *Angleterre,* dans *la province de Middlesex.*

From what has just been said, it follows then that *en*, on account of its indeterminate nature, ought not to be followed by the article, except in a small number of phrases sanctioned by usage, such are,

En la *présence de Dieu ;* en la *grand' chambre du parlement ;* en l'*absence d'un tel ;* en l'*année mil huit cent dix-sept,* &c.

with respect to the expressions

En l'honneur, en l'âge, it is better to say, à l'*honneur,* à l'*âge.*

Avant is a preposition in this phrase :

Avant le jour,	Before day-light.

But it is an adverb in this :

N'allez pas si avant,	Do not go so forward.

Some other prepositions are likewise occasionally adverbs.

Autour and *alentour*, must not be confounded ; *autour* is a preposition, and *alentour* an adverb, thus ;

Tous les grands étaient autour du trône,	All the grandees stood round the throne.
Le roi était sur son trône, et les grands étaient alentour,	The king was upon the throne, and the grandees stood round.

Avant and *auparavant* are not used indifferently.

Avant is followed by a regimen, as,

Avant Pâques,	*Before Easter.*
Avant ce temps,	*Before that time.*

Auparavant is followed by no regimen, as,

Si vous partez, venez me voir auparavant,	If you set off, come and see me first.

Prêt à and *près de*, are not the same expressions. *Prêt* is an adjective:

Je suis prêt à faire ce que vous voudrez,	I am ready to do what you please.

But *près* is a preposition:

Mon ouvrage est près d'être fini,	My work is nearly finished.

Au travers and *à travers* differ in this; the first is followed by the preposition *de*, the second is not, as,

Il se fit jour au travers des ennemis,	*He fought his way through the enemy.*
Il se fit jour à travers les ennemis,	

Avant denotes priority of time and order, as,

Il est arrivé avant *moi*, l'article se met avant le *nom*.

Devant is used for *en présence, vis-à-vis*, as,

Il a paru devant *le juge; il loge* devant *l'église*.

Remark. *Devant* is likewise a preposition marking order, and is the opposite of *après*, as,

Il a le pas devant *moi,*	He has precedence of me.
Si vous êtes pressé, courez devant,	If you are in a hurry, run before.

THE USE OF THE ARTICLE WITH PREPOSITIONS.

Some prepositions require the article before their regimen; others do not; and others again, sometimes admit, sometimes reject it.

RULE I. The following prepositions, generally require the article before the noun, which they govern.

avant,	*depuis,*	*envers,*	*nonobstant,*	*selon,*
après,	*devant,*	*excepté,*	*parmi,*	*suivant,*
chez,	*derriere,*	*hors,*	*pendant,*	*touchant,*
dans,	*durant,*	*hormis,*	*pour,*	*vers,*

avant l'aurore, *chez le prince,* *envers les pauvres,*
après la promenade, *dans la maison,* *devant l'église,* &c.

There are however exceptions, as,

avant terme, *avant diner,* *pour lit une paillasse,*
avant midi, *après diner,* *depuis minuit,* &c.

RULE II. A noun governed by the preposition *en*, is not, in general, preceded by the article, as,

En ville, en campagne, en extase, en songe, en pièces, &c.

REMARK. *L'armée est entrée en campagne*, means the army has taken the field ; but *Mr. N. est allé à la campagne*, means Mr. N. is gone into the country.

RULE III. These eleven prepositions, *à, de, avec, contre, entre, malgré, outre, par, pour, sur, sans*, sometimes admit, sometimes reject the article before their regimen.

If the article is used in these phrases :

Jouer sur le *velours,*
St. Paul veut de la subordination entre la *femme et* le *mari.*
Sans les *passions, où serait le mérite ?*

It is suppressed in,

Etre sur pied ; *un peu de façons ne gâte rien* entre *mari et femme.*
Vivre sans passions, *c'est vivre* sans plaisirs *et* sans peines.

REPETITION OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

RULE I. The prepositions *de, à*, and *en*, must be repeated before all the nouns which they govern, as,

Voyons qui l'emportera de *vous,* Let us see which of us will ex-
de *lui, ou* de *moi,* cel, you, he, or I.

Elle a de *l'honnêteté,* de *la douceur,* des *grâces, et* de *l'esprit,*	She has politeness, sweetness, grace, and abilities.
La loi, que Dieu a gravée au fond de mon cœur, m'instruit de tout ce que je dois à *l'auteur de mon être,* au *prochain,* à *moi-même,*	The law which God has deeply engraven on my heart, instructs me in every thing I owe *to* the author of my being, *to* my neighbour, and *to* myself.
En *Asie,* en *Europe,* en *Afrique, et jusqu'*en *Amérique, on trouve le même préjugé.*	*In* Asia, *in* Europe, *in* Africa, and even *in* America, we find the same prejudice.

Rule II. The other prepositions, especially those consisting of two syllables, are generally repeated—before nouns, which have meanings totally different; but seldom before nouns, that are nearly synonymous.

Rien n'est moins selon *Dieu et* selon *le monde,*	Nothing is less according to God and according to the world.
Cette action est contre l'honneur et contre toute espèce de principes,	That action is contrary to honour, and to every kind of principle.

But we ought to say,

Il perd sa jeunesse dans *la mollesse et la volupté,*	He wastes his youth in effeminacy and pleasure.
Notre loi ne condamne personne sans *l'avoir entendu et examiné.*	Our laws condemn nobody without having heard and examined him.

OF THE GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS.

Some prepositions govern nouns without the help of another preposition, as,

Devant le maison,	Before the house.
Hormis son frère,	Except his brother.
Sans son épée,	Without his sword, &c.

Others require the help of the preposition *de*, as,

Près de la maison,	Near the house.
A l'insu de son frère,	Unknown to his brother.
Au-dessus du pont,	Above the bridge, &c.

These four, *jusque*, *par rapport*, *quant* and *sauf* are followed by the preposition *à*, as,

Jusqu'au mois prochain,	Till the next month.
Quant à moi,	As for me, &c.

Practice alone can teach these different regimens.

RULE. A noun may be governed by two prepositions, provided they do not require different regimens; thus we may say with propriety,

Celui qui écrit selon les circonstances, pour *et* contre *un parti, est un homme bien méprisable,*	He who writes according to circumstances, both for and against a party, is a very contemptible man.

But it would be wrong to say,

Celui qui écrit en faveur *et* contre *un parti,* &c.

because *en faveur* requires the preposition *de.*

RULE. Prepositions which, with their regimen, express a circumstance, are generally placed as nearly as possible to the word to which that circumstance relates, as,

On voit des personnes qui, avec beaucoup d'esprit, *commettent de très-grandes fautes.*	We see persons who, with a great deal of wit, commit very great faults.
J'ai envoyé à la poste *les lettres que vous avez écrites,*	I have sent to the post-office the letters which you have written.
Croyez-vous pouvoir ramener par la douceur *ces esprits égarés ?*	Do you think you can reclaim by gentleness, those mistaken people ?

If we attempt to alter the place of these prepositions, we shall find that the sentences will become ambiguous.

CHAP. VII.

OF THE ADVERB.

OF THE NEGATIVE *ne.*

Negation is expressed in French by *ne,* either alone or accompanied by *pas* or *point.* On this point the Academy has examined the four following questions :

1. Where is the place of the negatives?

2. When is *pas* to be used in preference to *point,* and *vice versa ?*

3. When may both be omitted ?
4. When *ought* both to be omitted ?

As this subject is of very material importance, we shall treat it upon the plan of the Academy, and agreeably to their views.

First Question. Where is the place of the negatives ?

Ne is always prefixed to the verb ; but the place of *pas* and *point* is variable.

When the verb is in the infinitive, these are placed indifferently before, or after it ; for we say,

Pour ne point voir, or, *pour ne voir pas.*

In the other moods, except the imperative, the tenses are either simple, or compound. In the simple tenses, *pas* or *point* is placed after the verb.

Il ne parle pas ; ne parle-t-il pas ?

In the compound tenses, it is placed between the auxiliary and the participle.

Il n'a pas parlé ; n'a-t-il pas parlé ?

In the imperative, it is placed after the verb.

Ne badinez pas. Ne vous en allez pas.

Second Question. When is *pas* to be used in preference to *point*, and *vice versa ?*

Point is a stronger negative than *pas :* besides, it denotes something permanent : *Il ne lit point*, means, he *never* reads.

Pas denotes something accidental : *Il ne lit pas*, means, he does not read *now*, or he is not reading.

Point de denotes an absolute negation. Thus :

Il n'a point d'esprit, is to say, he has no wit at all.

Pas de allows the liberty of a reserve. So :

Il n'a pas d'esprit, is to say, he has nothing of what can be called wit.

Hence, the Academy concludes, that *pas* is more proper,

1. Before *plus, moins, si, autant,* and other words denoting comparison, as,

Milton n'est pas moins sublime qu'Homère,	Milton is not less sublime than Homer.

2. Before nouns of number, as,

Il n'y a pas dix ans,	It is not ten years ago.

Point is elegantly used,

1. At the end of a sentence, as,

On s'amusait à ses dépens, et il ne s'en apercevait point,	They were amusing themselves at his expense, and he did not perceive it.

2. In elliptical sentences, as,

Je croyais avoir affaire à un honnête homme ; mais point,	I thought I had to deal with an honest man ; but no.

3. In answer to interrogative sentences, as,

Irez-vous ce soir au parc ?— point,	Shall you go this evening to the park ?—no.

The Academy also observes, that when *pas,* or *point* is introduced into interrogative sentences, it is with meanings somewhat different. We make use of *point,* when we have any doubt on our minds, as,

N'avez-vous point été là ?	Have you not been there ?

But we use *pas,* when we are persuaded. Thus,

N'avez-vous pas été là ?	But you have been there, have not you ?

Third Question. When may both *pas* and *point* be omitted ?

They may be suppressed,

1. After the words *cesser, oser,* and *pouvoir ;* but this omission is only for the sake of elegance, as,

Je ne cesse de m'en occuper,	I am incessantly attentive to it.
Je n'ose vous en parler,	I dare not speak to you about it.
Je ne puis y penser sans frémir,	I cannot think of it without shuddering.

We likewise say, but only in familiar conversation,

Ne bougez,	Do not stir.

2. In expressions of this kind,

Y a-t-il un homme dont elle ne médise ?	Is there a man that she does not slander ?
Avez-vous un ami qui ne soit des miens ?	Have you a friend that is not likewise mine ?

Fourth Question. When ought both *pas* and *point* to be omitted ?

They are omitted,

1. When the extent which we mean to give to the negative is sufficiently expressed either by the words which restrict it, by words which exclude all restriction, or lastly, by such as denote the smaller parts of a whole, and which are without the article.

To exemplify the first part of this remark, we say,

Je ne sors guère,	I go out but seldom.
Je ne sortirai de trois jours,	I shall not go out for three days

To exemplify the second, we say,

Je n'y vais jamais,	I never go there.
Je n'y pense plus,	I think no more of it.
Nul ne sait s'il est digne d'amour, ou de haine,	Nobody knows whether he be deserving of love, or hatred.
N'employez aucun de ces stratagêmes,	Use none of these stratagems.
Il ne plaît à personne,	He pleases nobody.
Rien n'est plus charmant,	Nothing is more charming.
Je n'y pense nullement,	I do not think of it at all.

To exemplify the third, we say,

Il n'y voit goutte,	He cannot see at all.
Je n'en ai cueilli brin,	I did not gather a sprig.
Il ne dit mot,	He speaks not a word.

But if to *mot* we join an adjective of number, *pas* must be added, as,

Il ne dit pas un mot qui n'intéresse,	He speaks not a word but what is interesting.
Dans ce discours, il n'y a pas trois mots à reprendre,	In that speech, there are not three words that are exceptionable.

Pas is likewise used with the preposition *de*, as,

Il ne fait pas de démarche inutile,	He does not take any useless step.

Remark. If, after the sentences we have just mentioned, either the conjunction *que*, or the relative pronouns *qui* or *dont*, should introduce a negative sentence, then in this last *pas* and *point* are omitted, as,

Je ne fais jamais d'excès que je n'en sois incommodé,	I never commit any excess, without being ill after it.
Je ne vois personne qui ne vous loue,	I see nobody but what commends you.

2. When two negatives are joined by *ni*, as,

Je ne l'aime ni ne l'estime,	I neither love nor esteem him.

And when the conjunction *ni* is repeated, either in the subject, as,

Ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous rendent heureux,	Neither gold nor greatness can make us happy.

Or, in the attribute, as,

Il n'est ni prudent ni sage,	He is neither prudent nor wise.

Or, in the regimen, as,

Il n'a ni dettes ni procès,	He has neither debts nor law suits.

Remark. *Pas* is preserved, when *ni* is not repeated, and when this last serves only to unite two members of a negative sentence, as,

Je n'aime pas ce vain étalage d'érudition, prodiguée sans choix et sans goût, ni ce luxe de mots qui ne disent rien,	I do not like that vain display of erudition, lavished without choice and without taste, nor that pomp of words which have no meaning.

3. With the verb which follows *que*, used instead of *pourquoi*, and with *à moins que*, or *si*, used instead of it, as,

Que n'êtes-vous aussi posé que votre frère ?	Why are you not as sedate as your brother ?
Je ne sortirai pas, à moins que vous ne veniez me prendre,	I shall not go out, unless you come to fetch me.
Je n'irai pas chez lui, s'il ne m'y engage,	I shall not go to his house, if he do not invite me.

4. With *ne—que* used instead of *seulement*, as,

Une jeunesse, qui se livre à ses	Youth, which abandons itself

passions, ne transmet à la vieillesse qu'un corps usé,	to its passions, transmits to old age nothing but a worn-out body.

When before the conjunction *que*, the word *rien* is understood, as,

Il ne fait que rire.	He does nothing but laugh.

Or when that conjunction may be changed into *sinon*, or *si ce n'est*, as,

Il ne tient qu'à vous de réussir,	The success wholly depends upon you.
Trop de maîtres à la fois ne servent qu'à embrouiller l'esprit,	Too many masters at once only serve to perplex the mind.

5. With a verb in the preterit, preceded by the conjunction *depuis que*, or by the verb *il y a*, denoting a certain duration of time, as,

Comment vous êtes-vous porté depuis que je ne vous ai vu?	How have you been since I saw you?
Il y a trois mois que je ne vous ai vu,	I have not seen you for these three months.

But they are not omitted, when the verb is in the present, as,

Comment vit-il depuis que nous ne le voyons point?	How does he live now we do not see him?
Il y a six mois que nous ne le voyons point,	We have not seen him these six months.

6. In phrases where the conjunction *que* is preceded by the adverbs of comparison *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, &c. or some other equivalent term, as,

On méprise ceux qui parlent autrement qu'ils ne pensent,	We despise those who speak differently from what they think.
Il écrit mieux qu'il ne parle,	He writes better than he speaks.
C'est pire qu'on ne le disait,	It is worse than was said.
C'est autre chose que je ne croyais,	It is different from what I thought.
Peu s'en faut qu'on ne m'ait trompé,	I have been very near being deceived.

7. In sentences united by the conjunction *que* to the

verbs *douter*, *désespérer*, *nier*, and *disconvenir*, forming a negative member of a sentence, as,

Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne,	I doubt not that he will come.
Ne désespérez pas que ce moyen ne vous réussisse,	Do not despair of the success of these means.
Je ne nie pas, or *je ne disconviens pas que cela ne soit,*	I do not deny that it is so.

The Academy says, that after the two last verbs, *ne* may be omitted, as,

Je ne nie pas, *or*, je ne disconviens pas que cela soit.

8. With a verb united by the conjunction *que* to the verbs *empêcher* and *prendre garde*, meaning to take care, as,

J'empêcherai bien que vous ne soyez du nombre,	I shall prevent your being of the number.
Prenez garde qu'on ne vous séduise,	Take care that they do not corrupt you.

Remark. The Academy observes, that in the above acceptation, *prendre garde* is followed by a subjunctive; but when it means to *reflect*, the indicative is used with *pas* or *point*, as,

Prenez garde que vous ne m'entendez pas,	Mind, you do not understand what I mean.

9. With a verb united by the conjunction *que* to the verb *craindre*, and those of the same meaning, when we do not wish the thing expressed by the second verb, as,

Il craint que son frère ne l'abandonne,	He is afraid his brother should forsake him.
Je crains que mon ami ne meure,	I fear my friend will die.

But *pas* is not omitted, when we wish the thing expressed by the second verb, as,

Je crains que mon père n'arrive pas,	I am afraid my father will not come.

10. With the verb which follows *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, in similar circumstances with *craindre*. Thus, when we say,

De crainte qu'il ne perde son procès,

We wish that he may gain it, and, when we say,

De crainte qu'il ne soit pas puni,

We wish that he may be punished.

REMARK. In these phrases,

Je crains que mon ami ne meure,	I am afraid my friend will die.
Vous empêchez qu'on ne chante.	You prevent them from singing.

The expression *ne* is not a negation ; it is the *ne*, or *quin* of the Latins introduced into the French language, as may be seen by the English translation.

11. After *savoir*, whenever it has the meaning of *pouvoir*, as,

Je ne saurais en venir à bout,	I cannot accomplish it.

When it means *être incertain*, it is the best to omit *pas* and *point*, as,

Je ne sais où le prendre,	I do not know where to find him.
Il ne sait ce qu'il dit,	He does not know what he says.

REMARK. But *pas* and *point* must be used when *savoir* is taken in its true meaning, as,

Je ne sais pas le Francais,	I do not know French.

12. We also say,

Ne vous déplaise, ne vous en déplaise,	By your leave, under favour, *or*, let it not displease you.

Plus and *davantage* must not be used indifferently. *Plus* is followed by the preposition *de*, or the conjunction *que*, as,

Il a plus de brillant que de solide,	He has more brilliancy than solidity.
Il se fie plus à ses lumières qu'à celles des autres,	He relies more upon his own knowledge than upon that of others.

Davantage is used alone and at the end of sentences, as,

La science est estimable, mais la vertu l'est davantage,	Learning is estimable, but virtue is still more so.

Though *davantage* cannot be followed by the preposition *de*, it may be preceded by the pronoun *en*, as,

Je n'en dirai pas davantage,	I shall not say any more about it.

It is incorrect to use *davantage* for *le plus*. We must say,

De toutes les fleures d'un parterre, l'anémone est celle qui me plaît le plus,	Of all the flowers of a parterre the anemone is that which pleases me most.

Si, *aussi*, *tant*, and *autant*, are always followed by the conjunction *que*, expressed or understood.

Si and *aussi* are joined to adjectives, adverbs, and participles ; *tant* and *autant* to substantives and verbs.

L'Angleterre n'est pas si grande que la France,	England is not so large as France.
Il est aussi estimé qu'aimé,	He is as much esteemed as he is beloved.
Elle a autant de beauté que de vertu,	She has as much beauty as virtue.

Remark. *Autant* may, however, be substituted for *aussi*, when it is preceded by one adjective, and followed by *que* and another adjective, as,

Il est modeste autant que sage,	He is as modest as wise.

Aussi and *autant* are used in the affirmative ; *si* and *tant* in negative and interrogative sentences. The two last are, however, alone to be used in affirmative sentences, when they are put for *tellement*, as,

Il est devenu si gros, qu'il a de la peine à marcher,	He is become so bulky that he can hardly walk.
Il a tant couru qu'il en est hors d'haleine,	He has been running so fast that he is out of breath.

Jamais takes sometimes the preposition *à*, and *toujours* the preposition *pour*, as,

Soyez à jamais heureux,	Be for ever happy.
C'est pour toujours,	It is for ever.

CHAP. VIII.

OF GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTION.

GRAMMATICAL construction is the order which the genius of a language has assigned, in speech, to the different sorts of words into which it is distinguished. Construction is sometimes mistaken for syntax; but there is this difference, the latter consists in the rules which we are to observe, in order to express the relations of words one to another, whereas grammatical construction consists in the various arrangements which are allowed while we observe the rules of syntax. Now this arrangement is irrevocably fixed, not only as phrases may be interrogative, imperative, or expositive, but also as each of these kinds may be affirmative or negative.

In sentences simply interrogative, the subject is either a noun or pronoun.

If the subject be a noun, the following is the order to be observed: first, the noun, then the verb, then the corresponding personal pronoun, the adverb, if any, and the regimen in the simple tenses: in the compound tenses, the pronoun and the adverb are placed between the auxiliary and the participle, as,

Les lumières sont-elles un bien pour les peuples? ont-elles jamais contribué à leur bonheur?	Are sciences an advantage to nations? Have they ever contributed to their happiness?

If the subject be a pronoun, the verb begins the series, and the other words follow in the order already pointed out, as,

Vous plairez-vous toujours à médire?	Will you always take pleasure in slandering?
Aurez-vous bientôt fini?	Shall you have soon done?

N. B. When the verb is reflected, the pronoun forming the regimen begins the series; this pronoun

always preserves its place before the verb, except in sentences simply imperative.

In interrogative sentences, with negation, the same order is observed; but *ne* is placed before the verb, and *pas*, or *point*, after the verb in the simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle in the compound tenses, as,

Votre frère ne viendra-t-il pas demain ?	Will not your brother come to-morrow ?
N'aurez-vous pas bientôt fini ?	Shall you not have soon done ?

REMARK. There are in French several other ways of interrogating.

1. With an absolute pronoun, as,

Qui vous a dit cela ? or, *Qui est-ce qui vous a dit cela ?*	Who told you that ?

2. With the demonstrative pronoun *ce*, as,

Est-ce-vous ?	Is it you ?	*Est-ce qu'il pleut !*	Does it rain ?

3. With an interrogative verb, as,

Pourquoi ne vient-il pas ?	Why does he not come ?
Comment vous trouvez-vous ?	How do you find yourself ?

Hence we see that the absolute pronouns and the interrogative adverbs always begin the sentence : but the demonstrative pronoun always follows the verb.

In sentences, simply imperative, the verb is always placed first, in the first and second persons ; but in the third, it comes after the conjunction *que* and the noun or pronoun, as,

Allons là,	Let us go there.
Venez ici,	Come here.
Qu'ils y aillent,	Let them go there.
Que Pierre aille à Londres,	Let Peter go to London.

With negation *ne* and *pas* are placed as in interrogative sentences.

For the place of the pronouns, (see p. 241.)

Sentences are expositive, when we speak without either interrogating, or commanding. The following is the order of the words in those which are affirmative :

the subject, the verb, the adverb, the participle, the regimen, as,

Un bon prince mérite l'amour de ses sujets, et l'estime de tous les peuples,	A good prince deserves the love of his subjects, and the esteem of all nations.
César eût inutilement passé le Rubicon, s'il y eût eu de son temps des Fabius,	Cæsar would have crossed the Rubicon to no purpose, had there been Fabii in his time.

The negative sentences differ from this construction, only as *ne* is always placed before the verb, and *pas*, or *point*, either after the verb, or between the auxiliary and the participle, as,

Un homme riche ne fait pas toujours le bien qu'il pourrait,	A rich man does not always do all the good he might.
Cicéron n'eût peut-être pas été un si grand orateur, si le désir de s'élever aux premières dignités n'eût enflammé son âme,	Cicero would not perhaps have been so great an orator, had not the desire of rising to the first dignities inflamed his soul.

Sentences are either simple, or compound. They are simple, when they contain only one subject and one attribute, as,

Vous lisez,	You read.
Vous êtes jeune,	You are young.

They are compound, when they associate several subjects with one attribute, or several attributes with one subject, or several attributes with several subjects, or several subjects with several attributes.

This sentence, *Pierre et Paul sont heureux*, is compound by having several subjects ; this, *cette femme est jolie, spirituelle et sensible*, is compound by having several attributes ; and this, *Pierre et Paul sont spirituels et savans*, is composed at once of several subjects and several attributes.

A sentence may be compound in various other ways ; by the subject, by the verb, or by the attribute.

By the subject, when this is restricted by an incidental proposition, as,

Dieu, qui est bon.

By the verb, when it is modified by some circumstance of time, order, &c., as,

Dieu, qui est bon, n'abandonne jamais.

By the attribute, when this attribute is modified by a regimen which is itself restricted, as,

Dieu, qui est bon, n'abandonne jamais les hommes, qui mettent sincèrement leur confiance en lui.

These simple, or compound sentences, may be joined to others by a conjunction, as,

Quand on aime l'étude, le temps passe sans qu'on s'en apercoive, When we love study, time flies without our perceiving it.

The two partial phrases here form but one.

RULE. When a sentence is composed of two partial phrases, joined by a conjunction, harmony and perspicuity generally require the shortest to go first.

EXAMPLES.

Quand les passions nous quittent, nous nous flattons en vain, que c'est nous qui les quittons, When our passions leave us, we in vain flatter ourselves that it is we that leave them.

On n'est point à plaindre, quand, au défaut de plaisirs réels, on trouve le moyen de s'occuper de chimères, He is not to be pitied, who for want of real pleasure, finds means to amuse himself with chimeras.

Periods result from the union of several partial phrases, the whole of which make a complete sense. Periods, to be clear, require the shortest phrases to be placed first. The following example of this is taken from Fléchier.

N'attendez pas, Messieurs,

1. Que j'ouvre une scène tragique ;

2. Que je représente ce grand homme étendu sur ses propres trophées ;

3. Que je découvre ce corps pâle et sanglant, auprès duquel fume encore la foudre qui l'a frappé ;

4. Que je fasse crier son sang comme celui d'Abel, et que j'expose à vos yeux les images de la religion et de la patrie éplorée.

This admirable period is composed of four members, which go on gradually increasing. It is a rule not to give more than four members to a period, and to avoid multiplying incidental sentences.

Obscurity in style is generally owing to those small phrases which divert the attention from the principal sentences, and make us lose sight of them.

The construction which we have mentioned is called direct, or regular, because the words are placed in those sentences according to the order which has been pointed out. But this order may be altered in certain cases, and then the construction is called indirect, or irregular. Now, it may be irregular, by *inversion*, by *ellipsis*, by *pleonasm*, or by *syllepsis ;* these are what are called the four figures of words.

OF INVERSION.

Inversion is the transportation of a word into a place different from that which by usage is properly assigned to it. This ought never to be done except when it introduces more perspicuity, energy, or harmony into the language ; for it is a defect in construction, whenever the relation subsisting between words is not easily perceived.

There are two kinds of inversion: the one, by its boldness seems to be confined to poetry: the other is frequently employed even in prose.

We shall speak here of the latter kind only.

The following inversions are authorized by custom.

The subject by which a verb is governed may with propriety be placed after it, as,

Tout ce que lui promet l'amitié des Romains,	All that the friendship of the Romans promises him.

Remark. This inversion is a rule of the art of speaking and writing, whenever the subject is modified

by an incidental sentence, long enough to make us lose sight of the relation of the verb governed to the subject governing.

The noun governed by the prepositions *de* and *à* may likewise be very properly placed before the verb, as,

D'une voix entrecoupée de sanglots, ils s'écrièrent,	In a voice interrupted by sobs, they exclaimed.
A tant d'injures, qu'a-t-elle répondu ?	To so much abuse, what answer did she give ?

The verb is likewise elegantly preceded by the prepositions *après*, *dans*, *par*, *sous*, *contre*, &c. with their dependencies, as well as by the conjunction *si*, *quand*, *parce que*, *puisque*, *quoique*, *lorsque*, &c. as,

Par la loi du corps, je tiens à ce monde qui passe,	By the law of the body, I am connected with this passing world.
Puisqu'il le veut, qu'il le fasse.	Since he wishes it, let him do it.

OF THE ELLIPSIS.

Ellipsis is the omission of a word, or even several words which are necessary to make the construction full and complete. In order to form a good ellipsis, the mind must be able easily to supply the words omitted, as,

J'accepterais les offres de Darius, si j'étais Alexandre :—et moi aussi, si j'étais Parmenion,	I would accept the offers of Darius, if I were Alexander:—and so would I, if I were Parmenio.

Here the mind easily supplies the words *je les accepterois* in the second member.

The ellipsis is very common in answers to interrogative sentences, as,

Quand viendrez-vous ?—demain,	When will you come ?—tomorrow.

that is, *je viendrai demain.*

In order to know whether an ellipsis be good, the

words that are understood must be supplied. It is correct, whenever the construction completely expresses the sense denoted by the words which are supplied; otherwise it is not exact.

OF THE PLEONASM.

Pleonasm, in general, is a superfluity of words; in order to constitute this figure good, it must be sanctioned by custom, which never authorizes its use, but to give greater energy to language, or to express, in a clearer manner, the internal feeling with which we are affected.

Et que m'a fait *à moi* cette Troie où je cours !
Je *me* meurs. S'il ne veut pas vous le dire, je vous le dirai, *moi*.
Je l'ai vu *de mes propres yeux*.
Je l'ai entendu *de mes propres oreilles*.

—*A moi*, in the first sentence ;—*me*, in the second ; —*moi*, in the third ;—*de mes propres yeux*, in the fourth ; and —*de mes propres oreilles*, in the fifth, are employed merely for the sake of energy, or to manifest an internal feeling. But this manner of speaking is sanctioned by custom.

REMARK. Expletives must not be mistaken for pleonasms, as,

C'est une affaire, où il y va du salut de l'état,	It is an affair in which the safety of the state is concerned.

Which is better than *c'est une affaire, où il va*, &c. by omitting *y*, which is in reality useless on account of *où :* but *y* here, is a mode of expression from which it is not allowable to deviate.

OF THE SYLLEPSIS.

The syllepsis is a figure by which a word relates more to our meaning, than to the literal expressions, as in these :

Il est onze heures ; l'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt-dix-neuf.

When using it, the mind, merely intent upon a precise meaning, pays no attention to either the number, or the gender of *heure* and *an*.

There is likewise a syllepsis in these sentences :

Je crains qu'il ne vienne.
J'empêcherai qu'il ne vous nuise.
J'ai peur qu'il ne m'oublie, &c.

Full of a wish that the event may not take place, we are willing to do all we can, that nothing should present an obstacle to that wish. This is the cause of the introduction of the negative, which, although unnecessary to complete the sense, yet must be preserved for the idiom.

There is again a very elegant syllepsis in sentences like the following from Racine :

Entre le *peuple* et vous, vous prendrez Dieu pour juge ;
Vous souvenant, mon fils, que caché sous ce lin,
Comme *eux* vous fûtes pauvre, et, comme *eux*, orphelin.

The poet forgets that he has been using the word *peuple :* nothing remains in his mind but *des pauvres* and *des orphelins*, and it is with that idea of which he is so fully impressed that he makes the pronoun *eux* agree. For the same reason, Bossuet and Mézengui have said,

Quand le *peuple Hébreu* entra dans la terre promise, tout y célébrait *leurs* ancêtres.—Bossuet.

Moïse eut recours au Seigneur, et lui dit: que ferai-je à *ce peuple ?* bientôt *ils* me lapideront.—Mezengui.

Leurs and *ils* stand for *les Hébreux*.

CHAP. IX.

OF GRAMMATICAL DISCORDANCES, AMPHIBOLOGIES, AND GALLICISMS.

We have chiefly to notice two incorrect modes of construction, which are contrary to the principles laid down in the preceding chapters—grammatical discordances, and amphibologies.

OF DISCORDANCES.

In general, there is a discordance in language, when the words, which compose the various members of a sentence, or period, do not agree with each other, either because their construction is contrary to analogy, or because they bring together dissimilar ideas, between which the mind perceives an opposition, or can see no manner of affinity.

The following examples will serve to illustrate this ;

Notre réputation ne dépend pas des louanges qu'on nous donne, mais des actions louables que nous faisons.

This sentence is not correct, because the first member being negative, and the second affirmative, cannot come under the government of the same verb. It ought to be :

Notre réputation dépend, non des louanges qu'on nous donne, mais des actions louables que, &c.	*Our reputation depends, not upon the praises which are bestowed on us, but upon the praiseworthy actions which we perform.*

But the most common discordances are those which arise from the wrong use of tenses, as in this sentence :

Il regarde votre malheur comme une punition du peu de complaisance que *vous avez eue* pour lui, dans le temps qu'il vous *pria*, &c.

Because the two preterits, definite and indefinite, cannot well agree together ; it should be :

Que vous eûtes pour lui dans le temps qu'il vous pria.

There is discordance in this sentence :

On en ressentit autant de joie que d'une victoire complète dans un autre temps,

Because the verb cannot be understood after the *que* which serves for the comparison, when that verb is to be in a different tense ; it should be :

On en ressentit autant de joie qu'on en aurait ressenti, &c.

This line of Racine,

Le flot, qui l'apporta, recule épouvanté,

is also incorrect, because the form of the present cannot associate with that of the preterit definite ; it should have been : *qui l'a apporté.*

OF AMPHIBOLOGIES.

Amphibology in language is when a sentence is so constructed as to be susceptible of two different interpretations : this must be carefully avoided. As we speak only to be understood, perspicuity is the first and most essential quality of language ; we should always recollect that *what is not clearly expressed in any language, is no language at all.*

Amphibologies are occasioned, 1. By the misuse of —moods, and—tenses. 2. Of—the personal pronouns, *il, le, la,* &c. 3. Of—the possessive pronouns, *son, sa, ses,* &c. 4. By giving a wrong place to nouns.

EXAMPLE.

Of an Amphibology of the first Kind.

Qu'ai-je fait, *pour venir* accabler en ces lieux
Un héros, sur qui seul j'ai pu tourner les yeux ? RACINE.

Pour venir forms an amphibology, because we do not know whether it relates to the person who speaks, or to the person spoken to : it should have been : *Pour que vous veniez.*

EXAMPLE.

Of an Amphibology of the second Kind.

César voulut premièrement surpasser Pompée ; les grandes richesses de Crassus *lui* firent croire, qu'*il* pourrait partager la gloire de ces deux grands hommes.

This sentence is faulty in its construction, because the pronouns *il* and *lui* seem to relate to *César*, although the sense obliges us to refer them to *Crassus*.

EXAMPLE.

Of an Amphibology of the third Kind.

Valère alla chez Léandre ; il y trouva *son* fils.

The pronoun *son* is ambiguous, because we do not know to which it relates, to *Valère*, or to *Leandre*.

EXAMPLE.

Of an Amphibology of the fourth Kind.

J'ai envoyé les lettres, que j'ai écrites, a la poste.

A la poste, thus placed, is equivocal, because we do not know whether it is meant that the letters have been *written at* the post-office, or *sent to* the post-office.

OF GALLICISMS.

We have distinguished in our "Grammaire Philosophique et Littéraire," four sorts of gallicisms : we shall only mention here those of construction.

The gallicisms of construction are, in general, irregularities and deviations from the customary rules of syntax : there are some, however, which are mere ellipses, and others which can only be attributed to the caprice of custom.

General Principle. Every gallicism of construction which obscures the meaning of the sentence, ought to be condemned. Those only ought to be preserved which do not impair perspicuity, by introducing irregularity of construction, and which are, at the same time, sanctioned by long practice.

According to this principle, this elliptic gallicism is now rejected :

Et qu'ainsi ne soit, *meaning :* ce que je vous dis est si vrai que,

because it obscures the sentence. For instance :

J'étais dans ce jardin, *et qu'ainsi ne soit,* voilà une fleur que j'y ai cueillie, *that is :* Et pour preuve de cela, voilà une fleur, &c.

Molière and La Fontaine seem to have been the last great writers that have used this expression.

One of the most common gallicisms is that in which the impersonal verb *il y a,* is used for *il est, il existe.* These expressions :

Il y avait une fois un roi ;—il y a cent à parier contre un,

are gallicisms. There are two in the following sentence :

Il n'y a pas jusqu'aux enfans, qui ne s'en mêlent, Even children will meddle with it.

The verb *falloir* forms a sort of gallicism with the pronoun *en,* when it is conjugated like pronominal verbs with the double pronouns, *il se ;* as,

Il s'en faut, il s'en fallait, &c.

It then means *to be wanting,* and when preceded by an adverb of quantity, the first pronoun is omitted, as,

Peu s'en faut, tant s'en faut.

These several manners of using the verb *falloir* will be found in the following sentences :

EXAMPLES.

Il s'en faut bien qu'il soit aussi habile qu'il croit l'être,	*He is far from being so clever as he thinks.*
Peu s'en est fallu qu'il n'ait succombé dans cette entreprise,	*He was very near failing in that undertaking.*
Il ne s'en est presque rien fallu qu'il n'ait été tué,	*He was as near as possible being killed.*

Vous dites qu'il s'en faut vingt livres que la somme entière n'y soit, mais vous vous trompez, il ne peut pas s'en falloir tant,	*You say it wants twenty pounds to complete the sum, but you are mistaken, it cannot want so much.*
Son rhume est entièrement guéri, ou peut s'en faut,	*His cold is entirely well, or very near.*
Que s'en est-il fallu que ces deux amis ne se soient brouillés ?	*How near were these two friends quarrelling ?*
Je ne suis pas content de votre application à l'étude, tant s'en faut,	*I am not satisfied with your application to study, far from it.*
Tant s'en faut que cette comédie me plaise, elle me semble au contraire détestable,	*So far from this play pleasing me, I think it insufferable.*
Il s'en fallait beaucoup que je vous approuvasse dans cette circonstance,	*I was far from approving your conduct on that occasion.*

The sentences :

Il n'est rien moins que généreux,	He is far from being generous.
Vous avez beau dire,	You may say what you please, but, &c.
A ce qu'il me semble,	By what I can see, as the matter appears to me, &c.
Nous voilà à nous lamenter,	We began to lament, here we are lamenting, crying, &c.
Qu'est-ce que de nous,	What wretched beings we are ! &c. &c.

are also gallicisms.

The use which is made of the preposition *en*, in many sentences, is likewise another source of gallicisms ; some of this kind will be found in the following expressions :

A qui en avez-vous ?	Whom are you angry with ?
Où en veut-il venir ?	What does he aim at ? what would he be at ?
Il lui en veut,	He has a quarrel with him, &c.

The preposition *en* changes also, sometimes, the signification of verbs, and then gives rise to gallicisms.

The conjunction *que* produces as great a number of gallicisms ; as,

C'est une terrible passion que le jeu,	Gaming is a terrible passion.
C'est donc en vain que je travaille,	It is in vain then that I work.
Ce n'est pas trop que cela,	That is not too much.
Il n'est que d'avoir du courage,	There is nothing like having courage.

Many others will be found in the use which is made of the prepositions *à*, *de*, *duns*, *après*, &c. but enough has been said on the subject.

Gallicisms are of very great use in the simple style, therefore La Fontaine and Mad. de Sévigné abound in them. The middling style has not so many, and the solemn oratorical but few, and these even of a peculiar nature. Only two examples of this kind, both taken from the tragedy of Iphigenia, by Racine, will be here inserted.

> Avez-vous pu penser qu'au sang d'Agamemnon
> Achille préferât une fille sans nom,
> *Qui* de tout son destin ce qu'elle a pu comprendre,
> C'est qu'elle sort d'un sang, &c.

And

> *Je ne sais qui m'arrête* et retient mon courroux,
> *Que* par un prompt avis de tout ce qui se passe.
> *Je ne coure* des dieux divulguer la menace.

In the first instance, *qui* is the subject, though without relating to any verb ; and in the second, *je ne sais qui m'arrête que je ne coure*, is contrary to the rules of common construction. "But," says Vaugelas, "these extraordinary phrases, far from being vicious, possess the more beauty, as they belong to a particular kind of language."

FREE EXERCISES.

I.

MADAME DE MAINTENON TO HER BROTHER.

We can only be 1 unhappy by our own fault; this shall always be my text, and my reply to your lamentations. Recollect 2, my dear brother, the voyage to America, the misfortunes of our father, of our infancy and our youth 3; and you will bless Providence instead of murmuring against fortune. Ten years ago, we were both very far (below our present situation 4;) and our hopes were so feeble 5, that we limited our wishes to an (income of three thousand livres 6.) At present we have four times that sum 7, and our desires are not yet satisfied! we enjoy the happy mediocrity which you have so often extolled 8; let us be content. If possessions 9 come to us, let us receive them from the hand of God, but let not our views be 10 too extravagant 11. We have (every thing necessary 12) and comfortable 13; all the rest is avarice 14; all these desires of greatness spring from 15 a restless heart. Your debts are all paid, and you may live elegantly 16, without contracting more 17. What have you to desire? must 18 schemes 19 of wealth and ambition occasion 20 the loss of your repose and your health? read the life of St. Louis; you will see how unequal 21 the greatness of this world is to the desires of the human heart; God only can satisfy them 22. I repeat it, you are only unhappy by your own fault. Your uneasiness 23 destroys your health, which you ought to preserve, if it were 24 only because I love you. Watch 25 your temper 26: if you can render it less splenetic 27 and less gloomy, (you will have gained a great advantage 28.) This is not the work of reflection only; exercise, amusement, and a regular life, (are necessary for the purpose 29.) You cannot think well (whilst your health is affected 30;) when the body is debilitated 31, the mind is without vigour. Adieu! write to me more frequently, and in a style less gloomy.

---

1 On ne être...que. 2 Songer à. 3 The misfortunes of our infancy and those of our, &c. 4 Du point où nous sommes aujourd'hui. 5 Si peu de chose. 6 Trois mille livres de rente. 7 *That sum*, en...plus. 8 *Have so often extolled*, vanter si fort, ind-2. 9 *Possessions*, biens. 10 Let us not have views. 11 Trop vaste. 12 Le nécessaire. 13 Le commode. 14 *Avarice*, cupidité. 15 *Spring from*, partir du vide de. 16 Délicieusement. 17 *Contracting more*, en faire de nouvelles. 18 *Must*, faut-il que. 19 Projet. 20 *Occasion*, coûter, sub-1. 21 *Unequal*, au-dessous de. 22 *Satisfy them*, le rassasier. 23 *Uneasiness*, inquiétude pl. 24 *If it were*, quand ce être, cond-1. 25 Travailler sur. 26 Humeur. 27 Bilieux. 28 Ce être un grand point de gagné. 29 Il y faut de. 20 Tant que vous se porter mal. *Debilitated*, dans l'abattement.

II.

THE CONVERT.

AN EASTERN TALE.

Divine mercy 1 had brought a vicious man into a society of sages, whose morals were holy and pure. He was affected by their virtues; it was not long 2 before 3 he imitated them and lost his old habits: he became just, sober, patient, laborious, and benevolent. His deeds nobody could deny, but they were attributed 4 to odious motives. They praised his good actions, without loving his person: they would always judge him by what he had been, not by what he was become. This injustice filled him with grief; he shed tears in the bosom of an ancient sage, more just and more humane than the others. "O my son," said the old man to him, "thou art better than thy reputation; be thankful "to God for it. Happy the man who can say, my enemies and "my rivals censure in me vices of which I am not guilty. What "matters 5 it, if thou art good, that men persecute thee as wick-"ed? Hast thou not, to comfort thee, the two best witnesses of "thy actions, God and thy conscience?" SAINT-LAMBERT.

Mr. de Montausier has written a letter to Monseigneur upon the taking of Philipsbourgh, which very much pleases me. "Monseigneur, I do not compliment you on the capture of Phi-"lipsbourg: you had a good army, bombs, cannon, and Vauban; "neither shall I compliment you upon your valour: for that is "an hereditary virtue in your family. But I rejoice that you "are liberal, generous, humane, and that you know how to "recompense the services of those who behave well: it is for this that I congratulate you." SEVIGNE.

III.

THE GOOD MINISTER.

AN EASTERN TALE.

The great Aaron Raschild began to suspect that his vizier Giafar was not deserving of the confidence which he had reposed in him. The women of Aaron, the inhabitants of Bagdad, the courtiers, the dervises, censured the vizier with bitterness. The calif loved Giafar; he would not condemn him upon the clamours of the city and the court: he visited his empire; every where he saw the land well cultivated, the country smiling, the cottages opulent, the useful arts honoured, and youth full of gaiety. He visited his fortified cities and sea-ports, he saw numerous ships,

---

1 Miséricorde. 2 Ne pas tarder. 3 A, inf-l. 4 On donner des motifs. 5 Importer.

which threatened the coasts of Africa and of Asia ; he saw warriors disciplined and content ; these warriors, the seamen and the peasantry, exclaimed: "O God, pour thy blessings upon the "faithful, by giving them a calif like Aaron, and a vizier like "Giafar." The calif, affected by these exclamations, enters a mosque, falls upon his knees, and cries out : "Great God, I re- "turn thee thanks ; thou hast given me a vizier of whom my "courtiers speak ill, and my people speak well."

SAINT-LAMBERT.

Providence conducts us with so much goodness through the different periods of our life, that we (do not perceive our progress 1.) This loss takes place gently 2, it is imperceptible, it is the shadow of the sun-dial whose motion we do not see. If, at twenty years of age, we could see 3 in a mirror, the face we shall have at three-score, we (should be shocked at the contrast 4,) and terrified at our own figure; but it is day by day we advance : we are to-day as we were yesterday, and shall be to-morrow as we are to-day ; so we go forward without perceiving it, and this is a miracle of that Providence whom I adore. SEVIGNE.

IV.

THE MAGNIFICENT PROSPECT.

This beautiful house was on the declivity of a hill, from whence you beheld the sea, sometimes clear and smooth as glass, sometimes idly 1 irritated against the rocks on which it broke, bellowing 2 and swelling its waves like mountains. On another side was seen a river, in which were islands bordered with blooming limes, and lofty poplars, which raised their proud heads to the very clouds. The several channels, which formed those islands, seemed sporting 3 in the plain. Some rolled their limpid waters with rapidity ; some had a peaceful and still course ; others, by long windings, ran back again, to reascend as it were to their source, and seemed not to have power to leave these enchanting borders. At a distance were seen hills and mountains, which were lost in the clouds, and formed, by their fantastic figure, as delightful a horizon (as the eye could wish to behold 4.) The neighbouring mountains were covered with verdant (vine branches, 5) hanging in festoons ; the grapes, brighter than purple, could not conceal themselves under the leaves, and the vine 6 was overloaded with its fruit. The fig, the olive, the pomegranate, and all other trees, overspread the plain, and made it one large garden. FENELON.

---

1 Ne le sentir presque pas. 2 Va doucement. 3 On nous faire voir. 4 Tomber à la renverse.

1 Follement. 2 En gémir. 3 Se jouer. 4 A souhait pour le plaisir de. 5 Pampre, m. 6 Vigne, f.

Long hopes wear out 7 joy, as long illness wears out pain.

All philosophic systems are only good when one (has no use for them 8.) SEVIGNE

V.

A GENERAL VIEW OF NATURE.

With what magnificence does nature shine 1 upon earth! A pure light, extending from east to west, gilds successively the two hemispheres of this globe; an element transparent and light, surrounds it; a gentle fecundating heat animates, gives being 2 to the seeds of life; salubrious running streams contribute to their preservation and growth; eminences diversified over the level land, arrest the vapours of the air, make these springs inexhaustible and always new; immense cavities made to receive them, divide the continents. The extent of the sea is as great as that of the earth; it is not a cold, barren element; it is a new empire, as rich, as populous as the first. The finger of God has marked their boundaries.

The earth, rising above the level of the sea, is secure 3 from its eruptions: its surface, enamelled with flowers, adorned with ever-springing verdure, peopled with thousands and thousands of species of different animals, is a place of rest, a delightful abode, where man, placed in order to second nature, presides over all beings. The only one among them all, capable of knowing and worthy of admiring, God has made him spectator of the universe, and a witness of his wonders. The divine spark with which he is animated, enables him to participate in the divine mysteries; it is by this light that he thinks and reflects; by it he sees and reads in the book of the universe, as in a copy of the Deity.

Nature is the exterior throne of the divine Majesty; the man who contemplates, who studies it, rises by degrees to the interior throne of Omnipotence. Made to adore the Creator, the vassal of heaven, sovereign of the earth, he ennobles, peoples, enriches it; he establishes among living beings, order, subordination, harmony; he embellishes nature herself; he cultivates, extends, and polishes it; lops off the thistle and the briar, and multiplies the grape and the rose. BUFFON

VI.

ANOTHER GENERAL VIEW OF NATURE.

Trees, shrubs, and plants, are the ornaments and clothing 1 of the earth. Nothing is so melancholy 2 as the prospect of a coun-

7 User. 8 N'en avoir que faire.
1 Ne briller pas. 2 Faire écloire. 3 A l'abri de.
1 Vêtement. 2 Triste

try naked and bare 3, exhibiting to the eye nothing but stones, mud, and sand. But, vivified by nature, and clad 4 in its nuptial robe, amidst the course of streams and the singing of birds, the earth presents to man, in the harmony of the three kingdoms, a spectacle full of life, of interest and charms, the only spectacle in the world of which his eyes and heart are never weary 5.

The more a (contemplative man's soul is fraught with sensibility 6,) the more he yields to the extacies which this harmony produces in him. A soft and deep melancholy then takes possession of his senses, and in an intoxication of delight, he loses himself in the immensity of that beautiful system, with which he feels himself identified. Then every particular object escapes him, he sees and feels nothing but in the whole. Some circumstance must contract his ideas, and circumscribe his imagination, before 7 he can observe by parcels that universe which he was endeavouring to embrace. J. J. Rousseau.

VII.

CULTIVATED NATURE.

How beautiful is cultivated nature! by the labours of man, how brilliant it is, and how pompously adorned! He himself is its chief ornament, its noblest part; by multiplying himself, he multiplies the most precious germ; she also seems to multiply with him: by his art, he (brings forth to view 1) all that she concealed 2 in her bosom. How many unknown treasures! What new riches! Flowers, fruits, seeds brought to perfection, multiplied to infinity; the useful species of animals transported, propagated, increased without number; the noxious species reduced, confined, banished; gold, and iron more necessary than gold, extracted from the bowels of the earth; torrents confined 3, rivers directed, contracted 4; the sea itself subjected, explored 5, crossed, from one hemisphere to the other; the earth accessible in every part, and every where rendered equally cheerful and fruitful: in the vallies, delightful meadows; in the plains, rich pastures and still richer harvests; hills covered with vines and fruits: their summits crowned with useful trees and young forests; deserts changed into cities inhabited by an immense population, which, continually circulating, spreads itself from these centres to their extremities; roads opened and frequented, communications established every where, as so many witnesses of the strength and union of society; a thousand other monuments of power and glory sufficiently demonstrate that man, possessing dominion over the earth, has changed, renewed the whole of its surface, and that, at all times, he shares the empire of it with nature.

3 Pelé. 4 Revêtu. 5 Se lasser. 6 Contemplateur avoir l'âme sensible. 7 Pour qu'il.

1 Mettre au jour. 2 Recéler. 3 Contenu. 4 Resserre. 5 Reconnu.

VIII.

THE SAME SUBJECT CONTINUED.

However, man only reigns by right of conquest; he rather enjoys than possesses, and he can preserve only by means of continual labour. If this ceases, every thing droops, every thing declines, every thing changes, and again returns 1 under the hand of nature; she reassumes her rights, erases the work of man, covers with dust and moss his most pompous monuments, destroys them in time, and leaves him nothing but the regret of having lost, through his fault, what his ancestors had conquered by their labours. Those times, in which man loses his dominion, those barbarous 2 ages, during which every thing is seen to perish, are always preceded by war, and accompanied by scarcity and depopulation. Man, who can do nothing but by number, who is strong only by union, who can be happy only by peace, is mad enough to arm himself for his misery, and to fight for his ruin. Impelled by an insatiable thirst of having, blinded by ambition still more insatiable, he renounces all the feelings of humanity, turns all his strength against himself, seeks mutual destruction, actually 3 destroys himself; and, after these periods of blood and carnage, when the smoke of glory has vanished, he contemplates with a sad eye, the earth wasted, the arts buried, nations scattered, the people weakened, his own happiness ruined, and his real power annihilated. BUFFON.

IX.

INVOCATION TO THE GOD OF NATURE.

Almighty God! whose presence alone supports nature, and maintains the harmony of the laws of the universe: Thou, who, from the immoveable throne of the empyrean, seest the celestial spheres roll under thy feet, without shock or confusion: who, from the bosom of repose, reproducest every moment their immense movements, and alone governest, in profound peace, that infinite number of heavens and worlds; restore, restore at length tranquillity to the agitated earth! let it be silent at thy voice; let discord and war cease their proud clamours! God of goodness, author of all beings, thy paternal eye takes in 1 all the objects of the creation; but man is thy chosen being; thou hast illumined 2 his soul with a ray of thy immortal light: complete the measure of thy kindness by penetrating his heart with a ray of thy love: this divine sentiment, diffusing itself every where, will reconcile opposite natures; man will no longer dread the sight of man; his hand will no longer wield the murderous steel 3; the devouring flames of war will no longer dry up 4 the

1 Rentrer. 2 De barbarie. 3 En effet.
1 Embrasser. 2 Eclairer. 3 Le fer.....armer sa main. 4 Tarir.

sources of population: the human species, now weakened, mutilated, mowed down in the blossom, will spring anew 5 and multiply without number; nature, overwhelmed under the weight of scourges 6, will soon re-assume, with a new life, its former fruitfulness; and we, beneficent God, will second it, we will cultivate it, we will contemplate it incessantly, that we may every moment offer thee a new tribute of gratitude and admiration.

BUFFON.

X.

Happy they who are disgusted with 1 turbulent pleasures, and know how to be contented 2 with the sweets of an innocent life! Happy they who delight in being instructed 3, and who take a pleasure 4 in storing their minds with knowledge! Wherever adverse fortune may throw them, they always carry entertainment with them; and the disquiet which preys upon others, even in the midst of pleasures, is unknown to those who can employ themselves in reading. Happy they who love to read, and are not like me deprived of the ability. As these thoughts were passing in my mind, I went into a gloomy forest, where I immediately perceived an old man, holding a book in his hand. The forehead of this sage was broad, bald, and a little wrinkled: a white beard hung down to his girdle; his stature was tall and majestic; his complexion still fresh and ruddy, his eyes lively and piercing, his voice sweet, his words plain and charming. I never saw so venerable an old man. He was a priest of Apollo, and officiated 5 in a marble temple, which the kings of Egypt had dedicated to that God in this forest. The book which he held in his hand was a collection of hymns in honour of the Gods. He accosted me in a friendly manner; and we discoursed together. He related things past so well, that they seemed present, and yet with such brevity, that his account never tired me. He foresaw the future by his profound knowledge, which made him know men and the designs of which they are capable. With all this wisdom he was cheerful and complaisant, and the sprightliest youth has not so many graces as this man had at so advanced an age. He accordingly loved young men when they were teachable 6, and had a taste for study and virtue.

FENELON.

XI.

THOUGHTS ON POETRY.

Wherever I went, I found that poetry was considered as the

5 Germer de nouveau. 6 Fléau.

1 Se dégoûter de. 2 Se contenter de. 3 S'instruire. 4 Se plaire. 5 Servir. 6 Docile.

(highest learning 1) and regarded with a veneration (somewhat approaching to 2,) that which men would pay to angelic nature.

It yet fills me with wonder that, in almost all countries, the most ancient poets are considered as the best; whether (it be that 3) every kind of knowledge is an acquisition gradually attained, and poetry is a gift conferred at once; or that the first poetry of every nation surprised them as a novelty, and retained the credit by consent, which it received by accident at first; or whether, as the province 4 of poetry is to describe nature and passion, which are always the same, the first writers (took possession 5) of (the most striking objects for description 6,) and (the most probable occurrences for fiction 7,) and left nothing to those that followed them, but transcription 8 of the same events, and new combinations 9 of the same images. Whatever be the reason, it is commonly observed, that the early writers are in possession of nature, and their followers 10 of art: that the first excel in strength and invention, and the latter in elegance and refinement.

I was desirous to add my name to this illustrious fraternity 11. I read all the poets of Persia and Arabia, and was able to repeat by memory the volumes that are suspended in the mosque of Mecca. But I soon found that no man was ever great by imitation. My desire of excellence 12 impelled 13 me to transfer 14 my attention to nature and to life 15. Nature was to be my subject, and men to be my auditors: I could never describe what I had not seen; I could not hope (to move those with delight or terror 16) whose interests and opinions I did not understand 17.

XII.

THE SAME SUBJECT CONTINUED.

Being now resolved to be a poet, I saw every thing (with a new purpose 18;) my sphere of attention was suddenly magnified: no kind of knowledge (was to be overlooked 19.) I ranged mountains and deserts for 20 images and resemblances, and (pictured upon my mind 21) every tree of the forest and flower of the valley. I observed with equal care the crags of the rock and the pinnacles of the palace. Sometimes I wandered along the mazes of the rivulet, and sometimes watched the changes of the summer-clouds. To a poet nothing can be useless. What-

1 Partie la plus sublime de la littérature. 2 Qui tenoit de. 3 Cela vienne de ce que. 4 But. 5. S'emparer. 6 Objets qui fournissaient les plus riches descriptions. 7 Evénemens qui prêtaient le plus à la fiction. 8 De copier. 9 Faire de nouvelles combinaisons. 10 Successeurs. 11 Famille. 12 Exceller. 13 Engager. 14 Reporter...sur. 15 Tableau de la vie. 16 Réveiller le plaisir ou la terreur dans ceux. 17 Ne connaître ni. 18 Sous un nouveau jour. 19 Je ne devais négliger. 20. Pour recueiller. 21 Pénétrer mon esprit du tableau de.

ever is beautiful, and whatever is dreadful, must be familiar to his imagination: he must (be conversant 22) with all that (is awfully vast or elegantly little 23.) The plants of the garden, the animals of the wood, the minerals of the earth, and the meteors of the sky, must all concur to store his mind with inexhaustible variety: for every idea is useful for the (enforcement or decoration 24) of moral or religious truth; and he who knows most, will have most power 25 of diversifying his scenes 26, and gratifying his reader with remote allusions and unexpected instruction.

All the appearances of nature I was, therefore, careful to study 27, and every country which I have surveyed has contributed something to my poetical powers.

In so wide a survey, interrupted the prince, you must surely have left much unobserved. I have lived, till now, within the circuit of these mountains, and yet cannot walk abroad without the sight of something which I had never beheld before, or never heeded 28.

XIII.

THE SAME SUBJECT CONTINUED.

The business of a poet, said Imlac, is to examine, not the individual, but the species; to remark general properties and (large appearances 29:) he does not number the streaks of the tulip, or describe the different shades in the verdure of the forest. He is to exhibit, in his portraits of nature, such prominent and striking features, as 30 recal the original to every mind; and must neglect the minuter discriminations 31, which one may have remarked, and another neglected, for those characteristics 32 which are alike obvious 33 to vigilance 34 and carelessness 35.

But the knowledge of nature is only half 36 the task of a poet: he must be acquainted likewise with all the modes 37 of life. His character requires that he estimate 38 the happiness and misery of every condition: observe the power of all the passions, in all their combinations, and trace the changes 39 of the human mind, as they are modified by various institutions, and accidental influences of climate or custom: from the sprightliness of infancy to the despondence of decrepitude. He must divest himself 40 of the prejudices of his age or country; he must consider right and wrong 41 in their abstracted and invariable state 42; he must disregard present laws and opinions, and rise

22 Bien connaitre. 23 Etonne par sa grandeur, ou charme par son élégante petitesse. 24 Fortifier, ou embellir. 25 Ressources pour. 26 Tableau. 27 Etudier avec soin toutes les, &c. 28 Remarquer. 29 Considérer les objets en grand. 30 De ces traits saillans et frappans qui, &c. 31 Ces petits détails. 32 Pour s'appliquer à caractériser, &c. &c. 33 Frappe également. 34 Œil observateur. 35 Esprit insouciant 36 The half of. 37 Tous les différens aspects 38 Apprécier. 39 Suivre les vicissitudes. 40 Se dépouiller. 41 Ce qui est juste ou injuste. 42

to general and transcendent truths, which will always be the same; he must, therefore, (content himself with the slow progress of his name 43,) contemn the applause of his own time, and commit his claims to the justice of posterity. He must write as the interpreter of nature, and the legislator of mankind, and consider himself as presiding 44 over the thoughts and manners of future generations, as a being superior to time and place.

His labour is not yet at an end: he must know many languages, and many sciences; and, that his style may be worthy of his thoughts, he must, by incessant practice, familiarize himself to every delicacy of speech and grace of harmony. S. Johnson.

XIV.

First follow nature, and your judgment frame,
By her just standard, which is still the same:
Unerring nature, still divinely bright,
One clear, unchanged, and universal light,
Life, force, and beauty, must to all impart; 1
At once the source, and end, and test of art. 2
Art, from that fund, each just supply provides;
Works without show, and without pomp presides;
In some fair body thus th' informing soul.
With spirits feeds, with vigour fills the whole;
Each motion guides, and every nerve sustains
Itself unseen, but in th' effect remains. 3
Some, to whom heav'n in wit has been profuse,
Want as much more to turn it to its use:
For wit and judgment often are at strife,
Tho' meant each other's aid, like man and wife. 4
'Tis more to guide, than spur the muse's steed,
Restrain his fury, than provoke his speed: 5
The winged courser, like a gen'rous horse,
Shows most true mettle, when you check its course. 6

Pope.

Abstraction faite de ces divers préjugés. 43 Se résigner à voir son nom percer difficilement. 44 Influer.

1 Light, clear, immutable, and universal nature, which never errs, and shines always with a divine splendour, must impart to all she does, life, force, and beauty. 2 She is at once the source, &c.

3 So in a fair body, unseen itself, but always sensible by its effects, the soul continually acting, feeds the whole with spirits, fills it with vigour, guides every motion of it, and sustains every nerve

4 Some to whom heaven has given wit with profusion, want as much yet to know the use they ought to make of it; for wit and judgment, though made, like man and wife, to aid each other, are often in opposition.

5 It is more difficult to guide than spur the courser of the muses, and to restrain its ardour than provoke its impetuosity.

6 The winged courser is like a generous horse: the more we strive to stop it in its rapid course, the more it shows unconquerable vigour.

EXAMPLES OF PHRASES

ON THE

PRINCIPAL DIFFICULTIES OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

Sur les Collectifs Partitifs.

La plupart des fruits verts sont d'un goût austère.

La plupart des gens ne se conduisent que par intérêt.

La plupart du monde se trompe.

Il méprise par philosophie les honneurs, que la plupart du monde recherche.

Il devait me fournir tant d'arbres ; mais j'en ai rejeté la moitié qui ne valait rien.

Un grand nombre de spectateurs ajoutait à la beauté du spectacle.

Tout sorte de livres ne sont pas également bons.

Beaucoup de personnes se sont présentées.

Bien des personnes se font des principes à leur fantaisie.

On the Collective Partitives.

The greater part of green fruit is of a harsh taste.

Most people are guided only by interest.

The greater part of mankind live in error.

As a true philosopher he despises those honours which mankind in general court.

He was to furnish me so many trees, but I refused half of them which were good for nothing.

A considerable number of spectators added to the splendour of the scene.

Every kind of books are not equally good.

Many people presented themselves.

Many persons form principles to themselves, according to their fancy.

Sur quelques Verbes qu'on ne peut conjuguer avec *Avoir* sans faire des barbarismes.

Il lui est échu une succession du chef de sa femme.

Il est bien déchu de son crédit.

Ne sommes-nous pas convenus du prix ?

N'est-il pas intervenu dans cette affaire, comme il l'avait promis ?

Il est survenu à l'improviste.

La neige, qui est tombée ce matin, a adouci le temps.

Que de neige il est tombé ce matin !

Toutes les dents lui sont tombées.

Ce propos n'est pas tombé à terre.

Etes-vous allé voir votre ami ?

Ils sont arrivés à midi et sont repartis de suite.

Ces fleurs sont à peine écloses.

Ils est né de parens vertueux, qui n'ont rien négligé pour son éducation.

Mademoiselle votre sœur est-elle rentrée ?

Madame votre mère n'est-elle pas encore venue ?

On some Verbs which cannot be conjugated with the verb Avoir, *without making barbarous phrases.*

An estate fell to him in right of his wife.

He has lost much of his credit.

Have we not agreed about the price ?

Did he not interfere in that affair as he had promised ?

He came up unawares.

The snow which fell this morning has softened the weather.

How much snow has fallen this morning !

All his teeth have fallen out.

That remark was not allowed to escape.

Have you been to see your friend ?

They arrived at noon and set out again immediately.

These flowers are scarcely blown.

He was born of virtuous parents, who bestowed on him the best education.

Is your sister returned ?

Is not your mother come yet ?

Sur les Mots de Quantité.

Il a beaucoup d'esprit, mais encore plus d'amour-propre.

Il a assez d'argent pour ses menus plaisirs.

Il y avait bien du monde à l'Opéra.

Il y avait hier au Parc je ne sais combien de gens.

Il boit autant d'eau que de vin.

Il a tant d'amis qu'il ne manquera de rien.

Personne n'y a plus d'intérêt que lui.

Il n'a pas plus d'esprit qu'il n'en faut.

Trop de loisir perd souvent la jeunesse.

J'y ai bien moins d'intérêt que vous.

On Words of Quantity.

He has a great deal of sense, but still more vanity.

He has sufficient pocket-money.

There were a great many people at the Opera.

There were I do not know how many people in the Park yesterday.

He drinks as much water as wine.

He has so many friends that he will want for nothing.

Nobody has more interest there than he.

He is not overburdened with sense.

Too much leisure time is frequently the destruction of youth.

I am much less concerned in it than you.

Sur les Pronoms Personnels.

Sors et te retire.

Cours vite etc. N'amuse point.

On the Personal Pronouns.

Go out and retire, withdraw

Go quick and do not loiter.

Il dit aujourd'hui une chose et demain il se démentira

Il s'est démenti lui-même.

La jeunesse est naturellement emportée ; elle a besoin de quelque entrave qui la retienne.

Il ne peut voir personne dans la prospérité sans lui porter envie.

Ce que vous me dites est une énigme pour moi.

C'est un homme extrême en tout ; il aime et il hait avec fureur.

Si vous n'y avez jamais été, je vous y mènerai.

Je l'ai connu doux et modeste ; il s'est bien gâté dans le commerce de ses nouveaux amis.

Elle n'est pas encore revenue du saisissement, que lui causa cette nouvelle.

Il menace de l'exterminer, lui et toute sa race.

Si vous n'avez que faire de ce livre-là, prêtez-le-moi.

Je lui avais envoyé un diamant, il l'a refusé, je le lui ai renvoyé.

Il apprend facilement et oublie de même.

Je lui pardonne facilement d'avoir voulu se faire auteur ; mais je ne saurais lui pardonner toutes les puérilités dont il a farci son livre.

Je me plains à vous de vous même.

Si vous ne voulez pas être pour lui, au moins ne soyez pas contre.

Quand sera-ce que vous viendrez nous voir ?

He advances a thing to-day, and will contradict himself to-morrow.

He has contradicted himself.

Youth is naturally hasty, it needs some check to restrain it.

He can see the prosperity of nobody without envying them.

What you tell me is a perfect riddle to me.

He is a man that carries every thing to excess; he is alike violent in his love and in his hatred.

If you have never been there, I will take you.

I knew him when he was mild and modest ; he has been much corrupted by associating with his new acquaintances.

She is not yet recovered from the consternation into which that intelligence threw her.

He threatens to exterminate him and all his family.

If you have done with this book, lend it me.

I had sent him a diamond, and he refused it, but I sent him it back again.

He learns easily and forgets the same.

I can easily pardon him for having attempted to turn author ; but I cannot pardon him all the absurdities with which he has filled his book.

I complain to you of yourself.

If you will not be for him, at least do not be against him.

When will you come to see us ?

Sur soi, lui, soi-même et lui-même.

Quand on a pour soi le témoignage de sa conscience, on est bien fort.

L'estime de toute la terre ne sert de rien à un homme qui n'a pas le témoignage de sa conscience pour lui.

Un homme fait mille fautes, parce qu'il ne fait point de réflexions sur lui.

On fait mille fautes, quand on ne fait aucune réflexion sur soi.

Il aime mieux dire du mal de lui, que de n'en point parler.

L'égoïste aimera mieux dire du mal de soi, que de n'en point parler.

On a souvent besoin d'un plus petit que soi.

Un prince a souvent besoin de beaucoup de gens plus petits que lui.

C'est un bon moyen de s'élever soi-même, que d'exalter ses pareils ; et un homme adroit s'élève ainsi lui-même.

On *soi*, *lui*, *soi-même* and *lui-même*.

The approbation of our conscience imparts great courage.

The good opinion of the whole world is of no use to a man who has not the approbation of his own conscience.

A man commits a thousand faults, because he does not reflect on future consequences.

We commit a thousand faults, when we neglect to reflect on ourselves.

He had rather speak ill of himself than not talk of himself at all.

The egotist prefers speaking ill of himself rather than not be the subject of his own conversation.

We frequently want the assistance of one who is below ourselves.

A prince frequently needs the assistance of many persons inferior to himself.

It is an excellent method of exalting ourselves to exalt our equals, and a man of address by this means exalts himself.

Sur les Pronoms Relatifs.

Il n'y a rien de si capable d'efféminer le courage, que l'oisiveté et les délices.

Il faut empêcher que la division, qui est dans cette famille, n'éclate.

Il y a bien des événemens que l'on suppose se passer pendant les entr'actes.

Je le trouvai qui s'habillait.

Qui le tirera de cet embarras, le tirera d'une grande misère.

On the Relative Pronouns.

Nothing is so calculated to enervate the mind as idleness and pleasure.

The dissention in that family must be prevented from becoming public.

There are many events in a piece which are supposed to happen between the acts.

I found him dressing.

Whoever extricates him from this difficulty will relieve him from much distress.

Ceux là sont véritablement heureux, qui croient l'être.

Il n'y a que la vertu, qui puisse rendre un homme heureux en cette vie.

Il n'y a règle si générale, qui n'ait son exception.

C'est un orateur qui se possède et qui ne se trouble jamais.

Il n'y a pas dans le cœur humain de repli que Dieu ne connaisse.

On n'a trouvé que quelques fragmens du grand ouvrage qu'il avait promis.

La faute, que vous avez faite, est plus importante que vous ne pensez.

Les premières demarches qu'on fait dans le monde, ont beaucoup d'influence sur le reste de la vie.

Cette farce est une des plus risibles qu'on ait encore vues.

Amassez-vous des trésors que les vers et la rouille ne puissent point gâter, et que les voleurs ne puissent point dérober.

L'incertitude, où nous sommes de ce qui doit arriver, fait que nous ne saurions prendre des mesures justes.

Je m'étonne qu'il ne voie pas le danger où il est.

L'homme dont vous parlez, n'est plus ici.

Celui de qui je tiens cette nouvelle ne vous est pas connu.

Celui, à qui ce beau château appartient ne l'habite presque jamais.

Ce sont des événemens auxquels il faut bien se soumettre.

C'est ce à quoi vous ne pensez guère.

Those are really happy who think themselves so.

Virtue alone can render a man happy in this life.

There is no rule so general but it admits of exceptions.

He is an orator who is master of himself, and who is never embarrassed.

There is no recess of the human heart but God perceives it.

Only some fragments of the great work he had promised have been found.

The error you have committed is of more consequence than you imagine.

The first steps we take on entering the world have considerable influence on the rest of our lives.

That farce is one of the most truly comic that ever was seen.

Lay up for yourselves treasures which neither moth nor rust can corrupt, and which thieves cannot steal.

Our uncertainty as to what shall happen makes us incapable of properly providing against it.

I am astonished he does not see the danger he is in.

The man whom you are speaking of is not here now.

The person from whom I received the intelligence is not known to you.

The proprietor of that beautiful seat seldom resides there.

These are events to which we must submit.

It is what you seldom think of.

Sur les Pronoms Demonstratifs.

Ne point reconnaître la divinité, c'est renoncer à toutes les lumières de la raison.

Mentir, c'est mépriser Dieu et craindre les hommes.

Il y a des épidémies morales, et ce sont les plus dangereuses.

Je crois que ce que vous dites est bien éloigné de ce que vous pensez.

Les hommes n'aiment ordinairement que ceux qui les flattent.

Celui qui persuade à un autre de faire un crime, n'est guere moins coupable que celui qui le commet.

Penser ainsi, c'est s'aveugler soi-même.

Ce qu'on rapporte de lui est inconcevable.

Ce qui m'afflige, c'est de voir le triomphe du crime.

Connaissez-vous la jeune Emilie ? c'est une enfant dont tout le monde dit du bien.

Imitez en tout votre amie : elle est douce, appliquée, honnête et compatissante.

On the Demonstrative Pronouns.

Not to acknowledge the divinity, is totally to renounce the light of reason.

To lie is to despise God and to fear man.

There are moral contagious disorders, and these are the most dangerous.

What you advance is, I think, widely different from your sentiments.

Men in general love only those who flatter them.

He who persuades another to the commission of a crime, is hardly less guilty than he who commits it.

To think in this manner is to be wilfully blind.

The reports concerning him are hardly conceivable.

What distresses me is to see guilt triumphant.

Do you know little Emily ? she is a child of whom every body speaks well.

Imitate your friend in every thing ; she is mild, assidnous, polite and compassionate.

Sur le Verbe *avoir* employé à l'Impersonnel.

Remarque. Quand le verbe *avoir* s'emploie à l'impersonnel, c'est dans le sens d'*être*, et alors il se joint toujours avec *y*.

Il y a *un an que je ne vous ai vu.*

Y a-t-il des nouvelles ?

Non, il n'y en a pas, du moins que je sache.

On the Verb avoir, to have, *employed impersonally.*

When the verb avoir *is used impersonally it signifies* être, *to be, and in this sense it is always accompanied by the adverb* y.

It is a twelvemonth since I saw you.

Is there any news ?

No, there is none, at least that I know.

N'y a-t-il pas cinquante-quatre milles de Londres à Brighton ?
Il y avait *déjà beaucoup de monde lorsque j'arrivai.*
Il n'y avait hier presque personne au parc.

Y avoit il de grands débats ?
N'y avait-il pas beaucoup de curieux ?
Je l'avais vu il y avait à peine vingt-quatre heures.
Il n'y avait pas deux jours qu'il avoit dîné chez moi.
Y avait il si long-temps que vous ne l'aviez vu ?
Il y eut *hier un bal chez M. un tel.*
Il n'y eut pas hier de spectacle.
Y eut-il beaucoup de confusion et de désordre ?
N'y eut-il pas un beau feu d'artifice ?
Il y a eu *aujourd'hui une foule immense à la promenade.*
Il n'y a pas eu de bal, comme on l'avait annoncé.
Est-il vrai qu'il y a eu un duel ?
N'y a-t-il pas eu dans sa conduite un peu trop d'emportement ?
Quand il y eut eu *une explication, les esprits se calmèrent.*
N'y avait-il *pas* eu *un plus grand nombre de spectateurs ?*
Il y aura *demain un simulacre de combat naval.*
Il n'y aura aucun de vous.
Y aura-t-il une bonne récolte cette année ?
N'y aura-t-il pas quelqu'un de votre famille ?
A coup sûr il y aura eu *bien du désordre.*

Sur cent personnes, il n'y en aura pas eu dix de satisfaites.
Y aura-t-il eu un bon soupé ?
N'y aura-t-il pas eu de mécontens ?
Il y aurait *de la malhonnêté dans ce procédé.*
Il n'y aurait pas grand mal à cela.
Y aurait-il quelqu'un assez hardi pour l'attaquer ?
N'y aurait-il pas quelqu'un assez charitable pour l'avertir de ce qu'on dit de lui ?
Il y aurait eu *de l'imprudence à cela.*

Il n'y aurait pas eu tant de mesintelligence, si l'on m'en avait cru.
Il n'y aurait pas eu dix personnes.
Y aurait-il eu de l'inconvénient ?

N'y aurait-il pas eu de jaloux pour le traverser dans ses projets ?
Je ne crois pas qu'il y ait un *spectacle plus magnifique.*
Je désirerais qu'il y eût *moins de fausseté dans le commerce de la vie.*
Je n'ai pas ouï dire qu'il y ait eu *hier des nouvelles du continent.*
Auriez-vous cru qu'il y eût eu *tant de personnes compromises dans cette affaire ?*

Phrases diverses.

Sa vie, ses actions, ses paroles, son air même et sa démarche, tout prêche, tout édifie en lui.

Is not it fifty-four miles from London to Brighton ?
There were already a great many people when I arrived.
There was hardly any body in the Park yesterday.
Were there violent debates ?
Were there not many curious people ?
I had seen him scarcely four-and-twenty hours before.
He had dined with me not two days before.
Was it so long since you had seen him ?

There was yesterday a ball at Mr. A's.
There was no play yesterday.
Was there a great deal of confusion and disorder ?
Were there not handsome fire-works ?
There was an immense crowd to-day at the public walks.
There has not been any ball as had been mentioned.
Is it true that there has been a duel ?
Was there not rather too much hastiness in his behaviour ?
After there had been an explanation, tranquillity was restored.
Was not there a great number of spectators ?
To-morrow there will be the representation of a sea-fight.
There will be none of you.
Will there be a good harvest this year ?
Will not there be some of your family ?

There must certainly have been much disorder.
Out of a hundred persons there will not have been ten satisfied.
Will there have been a good supper ?
Will therenot have been some dissatisfied?
Such a step would have been ungenteel.

There would be no great harm in that.
Would there be any one bold enough to attack him ?
Would there be nobody kind enough to acquaint him with what is said of him ?
There would have been some imprudence in that.
There would not have been so great a misunderstanding had I been believed.
There would not have been ten persons.
Would there have been any inconvenience ?
Would there not have been some envious person to thwart him in his designs ?
I do not think there can be a more superb spectacle.
I wish there were less duplicity in the concerns of life.
I have not heard that there was any news from the continent yesterday.
Could you have thought so many persons would have been exposed in that affair ?

Promiscuous Phrases.

His life, his actions, his very look and deportment, every thing in him instructs and edifies.

On craignait qu'il n'arrivât quelque désordre dans l'assemblée, mais toutes choses s'y passèrent fort doucement.

La vigne et le lierre s'entortillent autour des ormes.

On ne disconvient point qu'il ne soit brave, mais il est un peu trop fanfaron.

Le cadet est riche, mais l'aîné l'est encore davantage.

Le ciel est couvert de nuages, et l'orage est prêt à fondre.

Après qu'il eut franchi les Alpes avec ses troupes, il entra en Italie.

La frugalité rend les corps plus sains et plus robustes.

Ce discours est peut-être un des plus beaux morceaux d'éloquence, qu'il y ait jamais eu.

C'est un homme qui aime la liberté ; il ne se gêne pour qui que ce soit.

Il est plus haut que moi de deux doigts.

Irez-vous vous exposer à la barbarie et à l'inhospitalité de ces peuples ?

A la longue, les erreurs disparaissent, et la vérité surnage.

Si vous le prenez avec moi sur ce ton de fierté, je serai aussi fier que vous.

C'est un homme rigide, qui ne pardonne rien, ni aux autres ni à lui-même.

Les uns montent, les autres descendent, ainsi va la roue de la fortune.

Je ne vois rien de solide dans tout ce que vous me proposez.

L'art n'a jamais rien produit de plus beau.

Lequel est-ce des deux qui a tort ?

On aime quelquefois la trahison, mais on hait toujours les traîtres.

It was apprehended some disorder would take place in the assembly, but every thing went off very quietly.

The vine and ivy twist round the elms.

They do not deny that he is brave, but he boasts rather too much.

The youngest is rich, but the eldest is still more so.

The sky is covered with clouds, and the storm is preparing to burst.

After having crossed the Alps with his troops, he entered Italy.

Temperance imparts an increase of health and strength to the body.

This speech is perhaps one of the finest pieces of eloquence that was ever pronounced.

He is a man fond of liberty, he will be restrained by nobody.

He is taller than me by two inches.

Will you go and expose yourself to the barbarity and inhospitality of those nations ?

In time errors vanish and truth survives.

If you treat me with that haughtiness, I can be as haughty as you.

He is a stern character, who pardons nothing either in himself or others.

Some mount, others descend ; thus goes the wheel of fortune.

I see nothing certain in all you propose to me.

It is one of the finest productions of art.

Which of the two is in the wrong ?

We sometimes love the treason, but we always hate the traitor.

Continuation.

L'éléphant se sert de sa trompe pour prendre et pour enlever tout ce qu'il veut.

Plus j'examine cette personne, plus je crois l'avoir vue quelque part.

La nuit vint, de façon que je fus contraint de me retirer.

Il faut vivre de façon qu'on ne fasse tort à personne.

Elle sut qu'on attaquait son mari et courut aussitôt tout éperdue pour le secourir.

Je trouvai ses parens tout éplorés.

Cet arbre pousse ses branches toutes droites.

J'en ai encore le mémoire toute fraîche.

Il a voulu faire voir par cet essai qu'il pouvait réussir en quelque chose de plus grand.

Il fut blessé au front et mourut de cette blessure.

Ces chevaux prirent le mors aux dents et entraînèrent le carrosse.

C'est un homme qui compose sans chaleur ni imagination ; tout ce qu'il écrit est froid et plat.

Ce bâtiment a plus de profondeur que de largeur.

Cet homme est un prodige de savoir, de science, de valeur, d'esprit, et de mémoire.

Il est attaché à l'un et à l'autre, mais plus à l'un qu'à l'autre.

Ils ont bien de l'air l'un de l'autre.

Continuation.

The elephant makes use of his trunk to take and lift whatever he pleases.

The more I look at that person, the more I think I have seen him (or her) somewhere.

Night came on, so that I was obliged to retire.

We must live in such a manner as to injure nobody.

She knew her husband was attacked, and in a state of distraction ran to his assistance.

I found his relations all in tears.

The branches of that tree grow quite straight.

It is still quite fresh in my memory.

He wished to shew by that attempt that he could succeed in an enterprise of more consequence.

He was wounded in the forehead, and died of his wound.

Those horses ran away with the carriage.

He is a man that writes without the least warmth or animation : all his productions are cold and insipid.

That building is deeper than it is broad.

That man is a prodigy of knowledge, judgment, courage, sense, and memory.

He is attached to both, but to one more than to the other.

They very much resemble each other.

Si l'on ruine cet homme-là, le contre-coup retombera sur vous.

Il serait mort, si on ne l'eût assisté avec soin.

Ce poème serait parfait, si les incidens, qui le font languir, n'interrompaient la continuité de l'action.

If that man is ruined, his misfortune will recoil upon you.

He would have died, if he had not been kindly assisted.

That would be a perfect poem, if the incidents which give a heaviness to it, did not break the connection of the subject.

Continuation.

Quand je le voudrais, je ne le pourrois pas.

Je serai toujours votre ami, quand même vous ne le voudriez pas.

Quand vous auriez réussi, que vous en serait-il revenu ?

Quand on découvrirait votre démarche, on ne pourrait la blâmer.

Quand vous auriez consulté quelqu'un sur votre marriage, vous n'auriez pas mieux réussi.

Le tonnerre et l'éclair ne sont sensibles que par la propagation du bruit et de la lumière jusqu'à l'œil et à l'oreille.

Le langage de la prose est plus simple et moins figuré que celui des vers.

Le commencement de son discours est toujours assez sage ; mais, dans la suite, à force de vouloir s'élever, il se perd dans les nues : on ne sait plus ni ce qu'on voit, ni ce qu'on entend.

C'est un faute excusable dans un autre homme, mais à un homme aussi sage que lui, elle ne se peut pardonner.

Il ne suffit pas de paraître honnête homme, il faut l'être.

Il nous a reçus avec bonté, et nous a écoutés avec patience.

Tout y est si bien peint, qu'on croit voir ce qu'il décrit.

On ne pense rien de vous, qui ne vous soit glorieux.

Les eaux de citernes ne sont que des eaux de pluie ramassées.

S'il n'est pas fort riche, du moins a-t-il de quoi vivre honnêtement.

Quel quantième du mois avons-nous ?

Il lui tarde qu'il ne soit majeur, il compte les jours et les mois.

Des qualités excellentes, jointes à de rares talens, font le parfait mérite.

Il a une mauvaise qualité, c'est qu'il ne saurait garder un secret.

Continuation.

If I were disposed I could not do it.

I will always be your friend, even though you should not wish it.

Had you even succeeded, what were you to have derived from it ?

Should the steps you have taken be discovered, they could not be blamed.

Had you consulted somebody about your marriage, you could not have succeeded better.

Thunder and lightning are only perceptible by the transmission of sound and light to the ear and eye.

Prose language is much more simple and less figurative than poetic.

The beginning of his speech is always tolerably sensible : but afterwards, by affecting the sublime, he loses himself, and we no longer understand either what we see or hear.

This fault would be excusable in another man, but in a man of his sense it is unpardonable.

It is not enough to seem an honest man, we must be so.

He received us with kindness, and heard us patiently.

Every thing in it is so well delineated, you think you see what he describes.

They think nothing of you but what is to your honour.

Cistern water is only rain-water collected.

If he is not rich, at least he has enough to live upon respectably.

What day of the month is it ?

He longs to be of age, and counts the days and months.

Excellent qualities, joined to distinguished talents, constitute perfect merit.

He has one bad quality, he cannot keep a secret.

Modèles de phrases dans lesquelles, on doit faire usage de l'article.

Examples of phrases in which the Article is used.

L'homme *est sujet à bien des vicissitudes.*

Les hommes *d'un vrai génie sont rares.*

Les hommes à imagination *sont rarement heureux.*

L'homme, *dont vous parlez, est un de mes amis.*

La vie *est un mélange de biens et de maux.*

La perfection *en tout genre est le but auquel on doit tendre.*

La beauté, les grâces, *et* l'esprit *sont des avantages bien précieux, quand ils sont relevés par la modestie.*

Voilà des tableaux *d'une grande beauté.*

Faites-vous des principes, *dont vous ne vous écartiez jamais.*

Cet arbre porte des fruits *excellens.*

Ces raisons sont des conjectures *bien faibles.*

Man is liable to a variety of changes.

Men of real genius are scarce.

Men of a visionary character are seldom happy.

The man you speak of is a friend of mine.

Life is a compound of good and evil.

Perfection in every thing ought to be our object.

Beauty, gracefulness, and wit, are valuable endowments when heightened by modesty.

These are very beautiful pictures.

Establish rules for yourself, and never deviate from them.

This tree bears very excellent fruit.

These reasons are very idle conjectures

Servez-vous des termes *établis par l'usage.*

On doit éviter l'air de l'affectation.

Le Jupiter *de Phidias était d'une grande beauté.*

Continuation des même phrases.

La mémoire est le trésor de l'esprit, *le fruit* de l'attention *et* de la réflexion.

J'achetai hier des gravures *précieuses et rares.*

La France *est le plus beau pays de l'Europe.*

L'intérêt de l'Allemagne *était opposé à celui* de la Russie.

La longueur de l'Angleterre *du nord au sud est de* 360 *milles, et sa largeur de l'est a l'ouest est de* 300.

Il arrive de la Chine, du Japon, *et* des Indes Orientales, *&c.*

Il arrive de l'Amérique, de la Barbade, de la Jamaïque, *&c.*

Il vient de la Flandre *Française.*

Il s'est établi dans la province *de Middlesex*

Des petits-maîtres *sont des êtres insupportables dans la société.*

C'est l'opinion des nouveaux philosophes.

Elle a bien de la grâce *dans tout ce qu'elle fait.*

Cette étoffe se vend une guinée l'aune.

Ce vin coûte 70 *livres sterling* la pièce.

Modèles de phrases dans lesquelles on ne doit pas faire usage de l'article.

Nos connoissances doivent être tirées de principes *évidens.*

Cet arbre porte d'excellens fruits.

Ces raisons sont de faibles conjectures.

Evitez tout ce qui a un air d'affectation.

Ces exemples peuvent servir de modèles.

Il a une grande présence d'esprit.

La mémoire de raison *et* d'esprit *est plus utile que les autres sortes* de mémoire.

Peu de personnes *réfléchissent sur la rapidité de la vie.*

Que d'événemens *inconcevables se sont succédés les uns aux autres !*

Il y a plus d'esprit, *mais moins* de connaissances, *dans ce siècle que dans le siècle dernier.*

On ne vit jamais autant d'effronterie.

Je pris hier beaucoup de peine *pour rien.*

Candie *est une des îles les plus agréables de la Méditerranée.*

Il arrive de Perse, d'Italie, d'Espagne, *&c.*

Il est revenu de Suisse, d'Allemagne, *&c.*

Les vins de France *seront chers cette année ; les vignes ont coulé.*

L'empire d'Allemagne *est composé de grands et de petits états.*

Les chevaux d'Angleterre *sont excellens.*

Après mon départ de Suisse, *je me retirai à Rome.*

Continuation des mêmes phrases.

Vous trouverez ce passage page 120, livre *premier*, chapitre *dix.*

Il s'est retiré en Angleterre.

Use the expressions established by custom.

We ought to avoid the appearance of affectation.

The Jupiter of Phidias was extremely beautiful.

The same Phrases continued.

Memory is the treasure of the mind, the result of attention and reflection.

I yesterday bought some valuable and scarce engravings.

France is the finest country in Europe.

The German interest was contrary to the Russian.

The length of England from north to south is 360 miles, and its breadth from east to west is 300.

He comes from China, Japan, and the East Indies.

He comes from America, Barbadoes, Jamaica, &c.

He comes from French Flanders.

He has settled in the county of Middlesex.

Coxcombs are unsufferable beings in society.

It is the opinion of the new philosophers.

She does every thing most gracefully.

This stuff sells at a guinea the ell.

This wine costs seventy pounds a pipe.

Examples of phrases in which the Article is omitted.

Our knowledge ought to be derived from evident principles.

This tree produces excellent fruit.

These reasons are idle conjectures.

Avoid whatever bears the appearance of affectation.

These examples may serve as models.

He has great presence of mind.

The memory of reason and sense is more useful than any other kind of memory.

Few people reflect on the rapidity of life.

How many inconceivable events have followed in succession !

There is more wit but less knowledge in this age than in the last.

So much assurance never was met with.

I took a great deal of trouble yesterday about nothing.

Candia is one of the most agreeable islands in the Mediterranean.

He comes from Persia, Italy, Spain, &c.

He is returned from Switzerland, Germany, &c.

French wines will be dear this year ; the vines have been blighted.

The German empire is composed of great and small states.

The English horses are excellent.

After leaving Switzerland, I retired to Rome.

Continuation of the same phrases.

You will find this passage at page 120, book the first, chapter the tenth.

He has retired to England.

Il vit dans sa retraite en vrai philosophe.
Quand il réfléchit sur sa conduite, il en eut honte.
C'est un homme qui cherche fortune.
Il entend malice *à tout.*

Ne portez envie *à personne.*
Si vous promettez, tenez parole.
Dans les affaires importantes ne vous décidez jamais sans prendre conseil.
Courage, soldats, *tenons fermes ; la victoire est à nous.*
Cette femme n'a ni grâce *ni* beauté.

Monseigneur le duc de &c. prince *du sang, alla hier à la campagne.*
Montrer tant de faiblesse, c'est n'être pas homme.
Cet homme est une espèce de misanthrope, *dont les brusqueries sont quelquefois très-plaisantes.*
L'ananas est une sorte de fruit *très-commun aux Antilles.*
C'est un genre de vie *qui ne me plaît point.*

Continuation des mêmes phrases.

Cette dame *plaît à tout le monde par son honnêteté et sa douceur.*
Tout homme *a des défauts plus ou moins sensibles.*
Cette conduite *augmentait* chaque jour *le nombre de ses amis.*
Tous les biens nous viennent de Dieu.
Vénus *était la déesse de la beauté, et la mère de l'amour et des grâces.*
Selon les païens, Jupiter *était le premier des dieux.*
Apollon *étoit frère jumeau de Diane.*
Rubens a *été un grand peintre.*
Homère *et* Virgile *sont les deux plus grands poëtes épiques.*
Londres *est la plus belle ville que je connaisse.*
L'eau de rivière *est douce, et l'eau* de mer *est salée.*
C'est un excellent poisson de mer.
Voilà une superbe table de marbre.
L'eau de Seine *est celle qu'on préfère à Paris.*
Pauvreté *n'est pas* vice.
Citoyens, étrangers, grands, peuples, *se sont montrés sensibles à cette perte.*

Modèles de phrases sur le Pronom *Le.*

Est-ce là votre opinion *?—ne doutez point que ce* ne la *soit.*
Sont-ce là vos domestiques *?—oui, ce les sont.*
Mesdames, êtes-vous les étrangères *qu'on m'a annoncées ?—oui, nous* les *sommes.*
Madame, êtes-vous la malade *pour laquelle on m'a appelé ?—oui, je* la *suis.*
Madame, êtes-vous la mère *de cet enfant ?—oui, je* la *suis.*
Mesdames, etes-vous contentes *de cette musique ?—qui, nous* le *sommes.*
Elle est malheureuse, *et je crains bien qu'elle ne* le *soit toute la vie.*
Madame, êtes-vous mère *?—oui, je* le *suis.*
Madame, êtes-vous malade*?—oui, je* le *suis.*

He lives in his retreat like a real philosopher.
When he reflected on his conduct, he was ashamed of it.
He is a man that seeks to make a fortune.
He puts a malicious construction on every thing.
Envy nobody.
If you promise, keep your word.
In matters of consequence, never decide without advice.
Cheer up, soldiers, let us continue firm ; the day is our own.
This woman is destitute both of grace and beauty.
The duke of &c. a prince of the blood, went yesterday into the country.
To shew so much weakness is not acting like a man.
This man is a kind of misanthropist, whose oddities are sometimes comical.

The pine-apple is a kind of fruit very common in the Antilles.
It is a kind of life that is not agreeable to me

The same sentences continued.

This lady pleases every one by her good breeding and mildness.
Every one has defects more or less obvious.
This behaviour daily increased the number of his friends.
Every blessing comes from God.
Venus was the goddess of beauty, and the mother of love and the graces.
According to the Heathens, Jupiter was the first of the gods.
Apollo was twin brother to Diana.
Rubens was a great painter.
Homer and Virgil are the two greatest epic poets.
London is the finest city that I know.

River water is sweet, and sea water is salt.
It is an excellent sea-fish.
There is a superb marble table.
The water of the Seine is preferred at Paris.
Poverty is not a vice.
Citizens, strangers, grandees, people, have shewn themselves sensible of this loss.

Forms of phrases upon the pronoun Le.

Is that your opinion ?—do not question it.

Are these your servants ?—yes they are.

Ladies, are you the strangers that have been announced to me ?—yes, we are.
Madam, are you the sick person for whom I have been called ?—yes, I am.
Madam, are you the mother of this child ?—yes, I am.
Ladies, are you pleased with this music ?—yes, we are.
She is unhappy, and I much fear she will continue so for life.
Madam, are you a mother ?—yes I am.
Madam, are you sick ?—yes, I am.

Madame, depuis quel temps êtes-vous mariée *?—je* le *suis depuis un an.*

Y a-t-il long-temps que vous êtes arrivée *?—je* le *suis depuis quinze jours.*

Aristote croyait que le monde était de toute éternité ; mais Platon ne le *croyait pas.*

Quoique cette femme montre plus de fermeté que les autres, elle n'est pas pour cela la *moins affligée.*

Cette femme a l'art de répandre des larmes dans le temps même qu'elle est le *moins affligée.*

Madam, how long have you been married ?—a year.

Is it long since you arrived ?—a fortnight.

Aristotle believed the world to have been from all eternity ; but Plato did not.

Although this woman shows more resolution than the others, she is nevertheless not the least afflicted.

This woman has the art of shedding tears, even when she is least afflicted.

Modèles de phrases sur les différentes règles du participe passé.

La nouvelle pièce *a-t-elle été* applaudie ?

Vos parens *y seront-ils* arrivés *à temps ?*

Elle s'est donné *de belles robes.*

Elles nous ont apporté *de superbes œillets.*

Cette ruse ne lui a pas réussi.

La vie *tranquille que j'ai* menée *depuis dix ans, a beaucoup contribué à me faire oublier mes malheurs.*

Les lettres, *qui j'ai* reçues, *m'ont beaucoup affligé.*

Que de peines *vous vous êtes* données !

Quelle tâche *vous vous êtes* imposée !

C'est une satire *que j'ai* retrouvée *dans mes papiers.*

Les lettres *qu'a* écrites *Pline le jeune, quelque agréables qu'elles soient, se ressentent néanmoins un peu de la décadence du goût parmi les Romains.*

Je ne serais pas entré avec vous dans tous ces détails de grammaire, si je ne les *avais* crus *nécessaires.*

L'Egypte *s'était* rendue célèbre *par la sagesse de ses lois long-temps avant que la Grèce sortît de la barbarie.*

C'est une des plus grandes merveilles *qu'on ait* vues.

L'homme de lettres, dont vous m'avez parlé, *a un goût exquis.*

Vous avez très-bien instruit *vos élèves.*

Lucrèce s'est donné *la mort.*

La sécheresse qu'il y a eu *au printemps a fait périr tous les fruits.*

Je n'ai point réussi, malgré les mesures que vous m'avez conseillé *de prendre.*

Quelle aventure vous est-il arrivé *?*

Cette femme s'est proposée *pour modèle à ses enfans.*

Cette femme s'est proposé *d'enseigner la géographie et l'histoire à ses enfans.*

Forms of Phrases upon the different rules of the participle past.

Did the new piece meet with applause ?

Will your relations arrive there in time ?

She has given herself fine gowns.

They have brought us beautiful pinks.

He has not succeeded in this stratagem.

The quiet life I have led these ten years has greatly contributed to make me forget my misfortunes.

The letters I have received have afflicted me greatly.

What a deal of trouble you have given yourself !

What a task you have imposed on yourself ?

It is a satire that I have again met with in my papers.

The letters which the younger Pliny has written, however agreeable they may be, savour, nevertheless. a little of the decline of taste among the Romans.

I would not have entered into these grammatical details with you, had I not thought them necessary.

Egypt had become celebrated for the wisdom of its laws long before Greece had emerged from barbarism.

It is one of the greatest wonders that has ever been seen.

The man of letters you spoke to me of has an excellent taste.

You have instructed your pupils extremely well.

Lucretia killed herself.

The dry weather we had in the spring has destroyed all the fruit.

I have not succeeded, notwithstanding the steps you advised me to take.

What adventures have you met with ?

This woman proposed herself as a model for her children.

This woman proposed to teach geography and history to her children.

Modèles de phrases sur les principaux rapports des modes et des temps.

Je l'attendais depuis long-temps, quand il vint me joindre.

Il sortit au moment même que j'entrais.

Je commençais à voir des craintes sur la réussite de votre affaire, lorsque j'ai reçu votre lettre.

Dès que j'eus fait quelques visites indispensables, je rentrai chez moi, et je ne sortis plus.

J'avais déjà tout préparé pour mon dé-

Forms of phrases upon the principal relations of moods and tenses.

I had waited a long time for him, when he came to me.

He was going out at the time I was entering.

I was beginning to be apprehensive of the success of your business when I received your letter.

As soon as I had paid some indispensable visits, I went home and did not go out afterwards.

I had already made every preparation for

part, lorsque des affaires imprévues m'ont forcé à le différer de quelques jours.

Vous étiez déjà sorti, quand je me présentai chez vous.

J'avais déjà livré à l'impression mon ouvrage. lorsque vous me demandiez, si je le donnerais bientôt au public.

Lorsque j'ai eu terminé mon affaire vous avez commencé la vôtre.

Lorsque j'eus déjeûné je montai à cheval, et je fus à Londres.

Lorsque j'aurai lu la nouvelle pièce, je vous dirai avec franchise ce que j'en pense.

Iriez-vous à Rome si vous le pouviez ?—oui, j'irais.

Auriez-vous consenti à ces conditions, si on vous les avait proposées ?

Irez-vous demain à Londres, si vous le pouvez ?—oui, j'irai.

Il sera sûrement parti, si vous l'avez voulu.

Vous eussiez laissé échapper une occasion si favorable, si l'on ne vous eût averti à temps.

my departure, when some unexpected business occurred, that obliged me to defer it for some days.

You were already gone out when I called upon you.

My work had been sent to be printed when you asked me if I should soon bring it out.

When my business was over you began yours.

When I had done breakfast, I got on horseback, and went to London.

When I have read the new piece, I will candidly give you my opinion of it.

Would you go to Rome if it were in your power ?—Yes, I would.

Would you have agreed to those terms, had they been proposed to you ?

Shall you go to London to-morrow, if you can ?—yes, I shall.

He will certainly have set out, if you wished it.

You would have let so favourable an opportunity slip, had you not been warned in time.

Continuation des mêmes phrases.

On dit que vous partez aujourd'hui pour Paris.

Tout le monde soutient que vous accepterez la place qu'on vous offre.

On soupçonne que vous aviez hier reçu cette agréable nouvelle quand on vous rencontra.

Beaucoup de vos amis croient que vous partîtes hier pour la campagne.

Le bruit se répand que vous avez fait une grosse perte.

J'apprends dans l'instant que vous fussiez parti il y a trois jours, si des engagemens, que vous aviez contractés depuis longtemps, ne vous avaient retenu.

N'est-il pas vrai que vous partiriez aujourd'hui, si vous le pouviez ?

Est-il vrai que vous seriez parti depuis long-temps pour la campagne, si votre amour pour les arts ne vous avait retenu à la ville ?

Je ne crois pas que vous partiez, quoique tout le monde l'assure.

Je ne croyais pas qu'il fût si-tôt de retour.

Il a fallu qu'il ait eu affaire a bien des personnes.

Je doute que votre ami fût venu à bout de ses projets, s'il n'avait pas été fortement protégé.

Il n'est point d'homme, quelque mérite qu'il ait, qui ne fût très-mortifié, s'il savoit toute ce qu'on pense de lui.

Vous ne vous persuadiez pas que les affaires pussent si mal tourner.

The same phrases continued.

It is said that you set off to-day for Paris.

Every one maintains that you will accept of this place that is offered to you.

It is suspected that you had received this agreeable intelligence when you were met yesterday.

Many of your friends believe that you set out yesterday for the country.

There is a report that you have met with a considerable loss.

I have this moment learnt that you would have set out three days since, had not engagements which you had formed long ago detained you.

It is not true that you would set out today, if you could ?

Is it true that you would have set out for the country long since, had not your love for the arts detained you in town ?

I do not imagine that you will set out, although every body asserts it.

I did not believe he had gone back so soon.

He must have had business with a great many people.

I doubt that your friend would have succeeded in his plan, had he not been strongly patronised.

There is not a man, whatever merit he may possess, that would not be very much mortified, were he to know every thing that is thought of him.

You never persuaded yourself that matters could have taken so unfortunate a turn.

Modèles de Phrases sur la Négative *Ne*.

Il n'y a pas *beaucoup d'argent chez ces gens de lettres.*

Il n'y a point *de ressource dans une personne qui n'a* point *d'esprit.*

C'est à tort que vous l'accusez de jouer ; je vous assure qu'il ne *joue* point.

Forms of Phrases upon the Negative Ne.

There is not much money to be found among men of letters.

There are no resources in a person without sense.

You accuse him wrongfully of gaming ; I assure you he never games.

Entrez dans le salon ; vous pourrez lui parler ; il ne *joue* pas.

Si pour avoir du bien, il en coûte à la probité, je n'*en veux* point.

Rien n'est sûr avec les capricieux ; vous croyez être bien en faveur, point *du tout : l'instant de la plus belle humeur est suivi de la plus fâcheuse.*

Vous ne cessez *de nous répéter les mêmes choses.*

Je n'*aurais* osé *vous en parler le premier.*

Malgré ses protections, il n'a pu *réussir dans ses projets.*

Cet ouvrage serait fort bon, n'*était pour la négligence du style.*

Y a-t-il quelqu'un dont elle ne *médise.*

J'ai pris tant de goût pour une vie retirée, que je ne *sors presque* jamais.

Voilà ce qui s'est passé ; n'*en parlez à* personne.

Mon parti est pris ; ne *m'en parlez* plus.

N'*employez* aucun *de ces moyens : ils sont indignes de vous.*

Rien n'*est plus joli.*

Je ne *dis* rien *que je ne pense.*

Je ne *fais* jamais *d'excès que je n'en sois incommodé.*

Continuation des mêmes Phrases.

C'est un homme pour qui je n'*ai* ni *amour*, ni *estime.*

Il n'*est* ni *assez prudent* ni *assez éclairé.*

Je vous assure que je ne *le fréquente* ni ne *le vois.*

Ne *faire* que *parcourir les différentes branches des connaissances humaines sans s'arrêter à aucune, c'est moins chercher à s'instruire, qu'à tuer le temps.*

Que n'*êtes-vous toujours aussi complaisant ?*

Il ne le fera pas, à moins que *vous* ne *l'y engagiez.*

Il n'ira pas, si *vous* ne *l'en priez.*

Il nous a menacés de se venger ; nous n'*avons fait* qu'*en rire.*

Trop d'insouciance ne *peut* que *nuire.*

Que devenez-vous ? il y a *trois mois* que *nous* ne *vous avons vu ?*

Comment vous êtes-vous porté depuis que *nous* ne *vous avons vu ?*

C'est bien pire *qu'on* ne *le disait.*

Peu s'en faut que je n'aie donné tête baissée dans le piége.

Dites la vérité en toute occasion ; on méprise toujours ceux qui parlent autrement *qu'ils* ne *pensent.*

Ne désespérez *pas que la vérité* ne *se fasse jour à la longue.*

Je ne disconviens *pas que la chose* ne *soit ainsi.*

Prenez garde *qu'on* ne *vous entraîne dans quelque fausse démarche.*

J'empêcherai *bien qu'on* ne *vous nuise dans cette affaire.*

Il craint *qu'on* ne *le soupçonne d'avoir trempé dans ce complot.*

Go into the room, you may speak to him; he is not playing.

I do not wish to make a fortune, if it can only be done at the expense of honesty.

Nothing is certain with capricious people; you think yourself in favour, by no means; the moment of the best humour is followed by that of the worst.

You are constantly repeating the same thing to us.

I should not have dared to be the first to speak to you of it.

With all his interest he has not been able to succeed in his plans.

This work would be very good, were it not for the negligence of the style.

Is there any one she does not slander?

I have acquired so great a taste for retirement, that I seldom go abroad.

This is what has passed; do not speak of it to any one.

My resolution is fixed; talk to me no more of it.

Do not employ any one of these measures; they are unworthy of you.

Nothing is more beautiful.

I never speak but what I think.

I never commit any excess without suffering by it.

Continuation of the same Phrases.

He is a man for whom I have neither love nor esteem.

He is neither sufficiently prudent nor enlightened.

I assure you I neither associate with him nor see him.

To go through the different branches of human knowledge only, without fixing upon any one of them, is not to seek for instruction, but to kill time.

Why are you not at all times equally complaisant?

He will not do it, unless you persuade him to it.

He will not go, if you do not request it of him.

He has threatened us with vengeance; we only laughed at him.

Too great supineness cannot but be hurtful.

What has become of you? we have not seen you these three months.

How have you been since we saw you?

It is much worse than was said.

I was near running headlong into the snare.

Tell the truth on all occasions: those who speak what they do not think are always despised.

Do not despair that truth will appear in time.

I admit that it is so.

Take care that you are not led into some false step.

I shall prevent them from doing you any harm in this business.

He is apprehensive that he is suspected of being concerned in this plot.

On lui a donné d'excellens conseils, de crainte *qu'il* ne *manquât l'occasion de faire connaître ce qu'il est en état de faire.*

J'y ai long-temps travaillé ; je ne saurais *en venir à bout.*

Vous feriez mieux de vous taire ; vous ne *savez ce que vous dites.*

Vous ne *sauriez me faire un plus grand plaisir.*

They have given him excellent advice, lest he should lose the opportunity of shewing what he was capable of doing.

I have been long employed about it ; I cannot accomplish it.

You had better be silent, you do not know what you are saying.

You cannot do me a greater favour.

Phrases sur quelques Délicatesses de la Langue Française.

Irez-vous ce soir à l'opéra ?—oui, j'irai.

Iriez-vous avec plaisir à Rome ?—oui j'irais.

La justice qui nous est quelquefois refusée par nos contemporains, la postérité soit nous la rendre.

Cette grandeur qui vous étonne si fort, il la doit à votre nonchalance.

Il périt, ce héros, si cher à son pays.

Je l'avais bien prévu que ce haut degré de grandeur serait la cause de sa ruine.

Citoyens, étrangers, ennemis, peuples, rois, empereurs, le plaignent et le révèrent.

L'assemblée finie, chacun se retira chez soi.

Heureux le peuple qu'un sage roi gouverne.

Il refusa les plus grands honneurs, content de les mériter.

Prières, remontrances, commandemens, tout est inutile.

Le vent renverse tours, cabanes, palais, églises.

Notre réputation ne dépend pas du caprice des hommes ; mais elle dépend des actions louables que nous faisons.

Il y a beaucoup de choses qu'il n'importe point du tout de savoir.

La vue de l'esprit a plus d'étendue que la vue du corps.

Ce qui sert à la vanité, n'est que vanité.

Tout ce qui n'a que le monde pour fondement, se dissipe et s'évanouit avec le monde.

C'est le privilége des grands hommes de vaincre l'envie ; le mérite la fait naître, le mérite la fait mourir.

L amour-propre est plus habile que le plus habile homme au monde.

En quittant le monde, on ne quitte le plus souvent ni les erreurs, ni les folles passions du monde.

Phrases on some Delicacies of the French Language.

Shall you go to the opera this evening? —yes, I shall.

Would you cheerfully go to Rome ?—yes, I would.

Posterity knows how to do us that justice which is sometimes refused us by our contemporaries.

That greatness which so much astonishes you, he owes to your indifference.

That hero, so dear to his country, perished.

I foresaw that the greatness of his elevation would be his ruin.

Citizens, strangers, enemies, nations, kings, emperors, pity and respect him.

The assembly being over, each returned home.

Happy are the people who are governed by a wise king.

He refused the greatest honours, satisfied with having deserved them.

Entreaties, remonstrances, injunctions are all useless.

The wind overturns towers, cottages, palaces, churches.

Our reputation does not depend on the caprice of men, but on the commendable actions we perform.

There are many things which it is of no consequence at all to know.

The eye of the mind reaches much farther than the bodily eye.

What promotes vanity is only vanity.

All that is confined to this lower world disperses and vanishes with the world.

It is the prerogative of great men to conquer envy ; merit gives it birth, and merit destroys it.

Self-love is more ingenious than the most ingenious man in the world.

In renouncing the world we generally renounce niether the errors nor giddy passions of the world.

FINIS.

Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: Sept. 2006

PreservationTechnologies
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION
111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111

WERT
BOOKBINDING
Grantville PA
July August 1986
We're Quality Bound